

PHYSIOLOGICAL REVIEWS

VOLUME 23

1943

PHYSIOLOGICAL REVIEWS

VOLUME 23

BALTIMORE MD
1943

Reprinted with the permission of The American Physiological Society

JOHNSON REPRINT CORPORATION
New York, New York

CONTENTS

No 1 JANUARY, 1943

PHYSIOLOGICAL AND CLINICAL TESTS OF AUTONOMIC FUNCTION AND AUTONOMIC BALANCE	1
<i>Chester W Darrow</i>	
MUSCULAR DISORDERS ASSOCIATED WITH DEFICIENCY OF VITAMIN E	37
<i>Alwin N Pappenheimer</i>	
MICRORESPIRATION TECHNIQUES	51
<i>Julian M Tobias</i>	
INTERRELATIONS OF CALCIUM AND ASCORBIC ACID TO CELL SURFACES AND INTERCELLULAR SUBSTANCES AND TO PHYSIOLOGICAL ACTION	76
<i>Mary Elizabeth Reid</i>	

No 2 APRIL, 1943

MALIGNANCY IN RELATION TO ORGANIZATION AND DIFFERENTIATION	101
<i>N J Berrill</i>	
PATHWAYS OF GLYCOLYSIS	124
<i>Albert Dorfman</i>	
INFLUENCE OF ESTROGENS AND ANDROGENS ON THE SKELETAL SYSTEM	139
<i>W U Gardner and Carroll A Pfeiffer</i>	
CHRONIC MOUNTAIN SICKNESS	166
<i>Carlos Monge</i>	

No 3 JULY 1943

THE ROLE OF THE LIPIDS IN ATHEROSCLEROSIS	185
<i>Edwin F Hirsch and Sidney Weinhouse</i>	
THE NATURE OF THE FORCES BETWEEN ANTIGEN AND ANTIBODY AND OF THE PRECIPITATION REACTION	203
<i>Linus Pauling Dan H Campbell and David Pressman</i>	
PHYSIOLOGICAL STUDY OF THE VERTICAL STANCE OF MAN	220
<i>F A Hellebrandt and Elizabeth Brogdon Franseen</i>	
NON-CALORIC FUNCTIONS OF DIETARY FATS	256
<i>George O Burr and Richard H Barnes</i>	
QUANTITATIVE AND QUALITATIVE VARIATIONS IN NORMAL LEUKOCYTES	279
<i>Cyrus C Sturgis and Frank H Bethell</i>	

No 4 OCTOBER, 1943

SELENIUM POISONING	305
<i>Alvin L Moxon and Morris Rhian</i>	
BIOCHEMICAL PROBLEMS OF THE CHEMO-AUTOTROPHIC BACTERIA	338
<i>C B van Niel</i>	
INTERRELATIONS BETWEEN THYROID FUNCTION AND VITAMIN METABOLISM	355
<i>Victor A Drill</i>	

buffers for controlling pH in the blood. So sensitive are they that the intervention incidental to a given test procedure may actually produce results in certain effectors exactly the opposite of the expected peripheral change. Under 7 we shall consider the mechanisms of maintaining "balance" or *dynamic equilibrium*.

The criteria by which we may determine the sympathetic (orthosympathetic) as opposed to the parasympathetic character of a given mechanism are varied and not always consistent with one another. The following will be tentatively accepted as indicators of sympathetic (orthosympathetic) as opposed to parasympathetic activity pending specific exceptions which may later be referred to: 1, thoraco-lumbar as opposed to crano-sacral innervation, 2, postganglionic as opposed to preganglionic peripheral innervation, and 3, adrenergic as opposed to cholinergic humoral transmission of impulses to the effector. The possible rôles of the ions potassium vs calcium, catabolic vs anabolic metabolism, dehydration vs hydration, etc., may be given weight in specific instances.

I. *Tests based on autonomic mechanisms having a single innervation.* A. *The nictitating membrane.* The most definite indications of normal autonomic function are perhaps obtained in the case of those effectors having an innervation from only one of the opposed branches of the autonomic system. The autonomic innervation of the nictitating membrane of the cat, as shown by Rosenblueth and Bard (1932) is purely sympathetic¹ and, barring certain antagonistic effects from the skeletal external rectus muscle, eliminated by curare or deep anesthesia, it provides an ideal sympathetic indicator. It is pharmacologically adrenergic, being maximally sensitive to excitatory (E) sympathin (Rosenblueth and Cannon, 1932). That the reaction to adrenalin may be enhanced by eserine and decreased by atropine (Rosenblueth, 1932, Secker, 1937) and that the N M may react to large doses of acetylcholine in the animal sensitized by denervation (Morrison and Acheson, 1938) does not seriously detract from its usefulness as a sympathetic indicator under normal conditions. It has been utilized as such an indicator of sympathetic activity, among others, by Acheson, Rosenblueth and Partington (1936), Bargeton (1938), Rosenblueth and Schwartz (1935), Brooks (1933), Brown (1934), Gellhorn and Darrow (1939).

As a sympathetic indicator the N M may provide an index not only of sympathetic excitation, but also of a decrease or inhibition of sympathetic tone. Such effects from stimulation of the viscera (bladder and rectum) have been reported by Watkins (1938). Gellhorn and Darrow (unpublished) have observed the effect following traction on the intestines. Rosenblueth and Schwartz (1935) show relaxation of the N M following vagal (depressor nerve?) stimulation. Relaxation of the N M or decrease of response in the presence of a rise in the blood pressure as reported by these latter authors and by Gellhorn, Darrow and Yesnick (1940) does not detract from its function. Rather, such mechanism as an index of sympathetic activity, the application of this the moderator nerves

¹ Bucy (1927) rat

in the rabbit

ands Another group of mechanisms having a single innervation ed as indicators of intact sympathetic nerve supply are the sweat ns of the postganglionic nerves to the periphery produce local the skin which may be registered as an extreme rise in the electrical chter 1927) with no return of spontaneous activity (Tower and After preganglionic section in the cat the rise in resistance was r postganglionic section, restoration of function being registered 28 days (Tower and Richter, 1931, see also Hinsey Phillips and

t of sweating is provided by applying to the skin bits of filter paper aking in a solution of cobalt chloride which changes from red to y (Wetherell, 1905) Graded series of color changes have been he writer by adding as hygroscopic agent varying percentages of he cobalt chloride solution For photographic mapping of sweat 1 neurologic cases the method of Minor (1928) has had wide and lication (Guttman, 1931 Last and Peet 1938-1939 Richter and 42 Hyndman and Wolkin 1941a, b) A solution of iodine and prayed over the patient, after which he is dusted with fine starch turns blue-black in the presence of moisture from the sweat glands Woodruff (1941-42) have correlated the iodine-starch with the stance methods of mapping, demonstrating their correspondence nd the concomitant (Darrow, 1927 1932, 1934) electrical changes pecially of the palms of the hands is not only dependent upon an hetic supply (Richter, 1927) but is extremely susceptible to alter ig the level of activity of the central nervous system such as sleep (Richter, 1926), and attention or alertness (Darrow, review it must be conceded that from sleep to alert attention sympa altered more or less in parallel with the activity manifested by the it may still be questioned whether measurements of palmar ide an uncomplicated measure of sympathetic activity In the cat glands themselves are dependent upon cholinergic transmis- tor (Dale and Feldberg, 1934) and conditions altering such cho-, whether by the amount of available acetylcholine the concen inesterase, or the presence of adrenalin (Billigheimer, 1920, y, 1922, Darrow and Gellhorn, 1939, Darrow review, 1937) secretory activity and the magnitude of response to stimulation nenergetic limitation of sweating at the effector should be taken (see sec V) when sweat measurements are the basis for de- the activity in the autonomic nervous system reflex palmar sweating in response to peripheral stimuli is in med by centers located in the forebrain (Langworthy and ung and Lu, 1930, Schwartz 1936) and ease of elicitation of the dent to a very great extent upon the state of the higher levels pointed out by others and as we have had repeated occasion n Gellhorn and Darrow, 1941) light anesthesia, too moderate

CONTENTS

No 1 JANUARY, 1943

PHYSIOLOGICAL AND CLINICAL TESTS OF AUTONOMIC FUNCTION AND AUTONOMIC BALANCE	1
<i>Chester W Darrow</i>	
MUSCULAR DISORDERS ASSOCIATED WITH DEFICIENCY OF VITAMIN E	37
<i>Alwin N Pappenheimer</i>	
MICRORESPIRATION TECHNIQUES	51
<i>Julian M Tobias</i>	
INTERRELATIONS OF CALCIUM AND ASCORBIC ACID TO CELI SURFACES AND INTERCELLULAR SUBSTANCES AND TO PHYSIOLOGICAL ACTION	76
<i>Mary Elizabeth Reid</i>	

No 2 APRIL, 1943

MALIGNANCY IN RELATION TO ORGANIZATION AND DIFFERENTIATION	101
<i>N J Berrill</i>	
PATHWAYS OF GLYCOLYSIS	124
<i>Albert Dorfman</i>	
INFLUENCE OF ESTROGENS AND ANDROGENS ON THE SKELETAL SYSTEM	139
<i>W U Gardner and Carroll A Pfeiffer</i>	
CHRONIC MOUNTAIN SICKNESS	168
<i>Carlos Monge</i>	

No 3 JULY 1943

THE RÔLE OF THE LIPIDS IN ATHEROSCLEROSIS	185
<i>Edwin F Hirsch and Sidney Weinhouse</i>	
THE NATURE OF THE FORCES BETWEEN ANTIGEN AND ANTIBODY AND OF THE PRECIPITATION REACTION	203
<i>Linus Pauling Dan H Campbell and David Pressman</i>	
PHYSIOLOGICAL STUDY OF THE VERTICAL STANCE OF MAN	220
<i>F A Hellebrandt and Elizabeth Brogdon Franseen</i>	
NON CALORIC FUNCTIONS OF DIETARY FATS	256
<i>George O Burr and Richard H Barnes</i>	
QUANTITATIVE AND QUALITATIVE VARIATIONS IN NORMAL LEUKOCYTES	279
<i>Cyrus C Sturgis and Frank H Bethell</i>	

No 4 OCTOBER, 1943

SELENIUM POISONING	305
<i>Alvin L Moxon and Morris Rhian</i>	
BIOCHEMICAL PROBLEMS OF THE CHEMO-AUTOTROPHIC BACTERIA	338
<i>C B van Niel</i>	
INTERRELATIONS BETWEEN THYROID FUNCTION AND VITAMIN METABOLISM	355
<i>Victor A Drill</i>	

PHYSIOLOGICAL REVIEWS

VOL 23

JANUARY, 1942

No 1

PHYSIOLOGICAL AND CLINICAL TESTS OF AUTONOMIC FUNCTION AND AUTONOMIC BALANCE

CHESTER W. DARROW

*Institute for Juvenile Research and Department of Physiology, University of Illinois College
of Medicine Chicago*

To attain significance a test of autonomic function must circumvent the mutually antagonistic action of the two branches of the autonomic nervous system so that it may be clear whether an observed peripheral event is due to increase of activity in one branch of the autonomic system or to decrease of activity in the other. There must be no question, for example, whether an observed pupillary dilatation is due to sympathetic excitation or to inhibition of the parasympathetically determined irido-constrictor tone. The problem is literally to determine the weight on either side of a "balance" when that on neither side is known. The mere knowledge that the balance has been upset by a given condition, as afforded by many so-called tests of autonomic function, may be physiologically or clinically of little value except as indication that something has been disturbed. It does not necessarily define the foregoing events in the neural and neurohumoral systems, and in consequence may even be misleading in determining proper corrective procedures. Furthermore, peripheral autonomic events which now may bear one relation and now another to initiating processes in the nervous system need have no consistent relation to those manifestations of nervous system function known as "behavior." This may explain the sterility which, with few exceptions, has beset attempts to correlate measurements of peripheral autonomic changes with human "behavior."

Circumvention of the difficulties in the pathway to interpretation of peripherally observed autonomic effects in terms of events in the neurohumoral system has been attempted in several ways: 1, by recording changes in those exceptional mechanisms having only a single autonomic innervation, e.g., in the micturating membranes, 2, by elimination of one of the opposing dual innervations surgically, e.g., by cutting the sympathetic supply to the pupils, 3, by assaying *in vitro* or *in vivo* the output of the respective neurohumoral mediators, adrenalin or sympathin, and acetylcholine, 4, by blocking one of the opposed neurohumoral mechanisms pharmacologically, e.g., by administration of atropine or ergotoxin, 5, by deriving the activity of the autonomic system from the respective effects on differentially sensitive autonomic effectors, 6, by recording the electric activity of the respective autonomic nerves. The main methods of autonomic measurement will be considered in the above order.

The interpretation of findings so obtained is further beset by difficulties imposed by homeostasis, since the rôle of the autonomic system is not merely to produce adaptive changes, but to maintain the internal milieu. Medullary, hypothalamic, hypophyseal, aortic and carotid sinus *feed back* "buffer" or "moderator" mechanisms are as important for neurohumoral control as are the

B Sweat glands Another group of mechanisms having a single innervation and widely used as indicators of intact sympathetic nerve supply are the sweat glands. Lesions of the postganglionic nerves to the periphery produce local anhidrosis of the skin which may be registered as an extreme rise in the electrical resistance (Richter, 1927) with no return of spontaneous activity (Tower and Richter, 1932). After preganglionic section in the cat the rise in resistance was less than after postganglionic section, restoration of function being registered electrically in 28 days (Tower and Richter, 1931, see also Hinsey, Phillips and Fare, 1939).

Another test of sweating is provided by applying to the skin bits of filter paper dried after soaking in a solution of cobalt chloride which changes from red to blue when dry (Wetherell, 1905). Graded series of color changes have been obtained by the writer by adding as hygroscopic agent varying percentages of glycerine to the cobalt chloride solution. For photographic mapping of sweat distribution in neurologic cases the method of Minor (1928) has had wide and successful application (Guttman, 1931. List and Peet, 1938-1939. Richter and Woodruff, 1942, Hyndman and Wolkin, 1941a, b). A solution of iodine and castor oil is sprayed over the patient, after which he is dusted with fine starch powder which turns blue-black in the presence of moisture from the sweat glands. Richter and Woodruff (1941-42) have correlated the iodine starch with the electrical resistance methods of mapping, demonstrating their correspondence.

Sweating and the concomitant (Darrow, 1927, 1932, 1934) electrical changes of the skin, especially of the palms of the hands, is not only dependent upon an intact sympathetic supply (Richter, 1927) but is extremely susceptible to alterations affecting the level of activity of the central nervous system such as narcosis and sleep (Richter, 1926), and attention or alertness (Darrow, review 1936). While it must be conceded that from sleep to alert attention sympathetic tone is altered more or less in parallel with the activity manifested by the sweat glands, it may still be questioned whether measurements of palmar sweating provide an uncomplicated measure of sympathetic activity. In the first place the sweat glands themselves are dependent upon cholinergic transmission at the effector (Dale and Feldberg, 1934) and conditions altering such cholinergic activity, whether by the amount of available acetylcholine, the concentration of cholinesterase, or the presence of adrenalin (Billigheimer, 1920, Langlois and Uyeno, 1922, Darrow and Gellhorn, 1939, Darrow review, 1937) limit the level of secretory activity and the magnitude of response to stimulation. The apparent adrenergic limitation of sweating at the effector should be taken into consideration (see sec V) when sweat measurements are the basis for deductions regarding the activity in the autonomic nervous system.

Furthermore, reflex palmar sweating in response to peripheral stimuli is in great part determined by centers located in the forebrain (Langworthy and Richter, 1930, Wang and Lu, 1930, Schwartz, 1936) and ease of elicitation of the response is dependent to a very great extent upon the state of the higher levels of the brain. As pointed out by others and as we have had repeated occasion to observe (Carlson, Gellhorn and Darrow, 1941) light anesthesia, too moderate

to interfere with sympathetic activity as indicated by nictitating membranes or other sympathetic mechanisms, decreases or may eliminate reactions in the footpads of the cat. Palmar or foot pad sweating, most commonly measured as the "galvanic skin reflex," is not, despite its single sympathetic innervation, an uncomplicated indicator of sympathetic function.

C *Adrenal medulla* That the adrenal medulla is another example of mechanisms having a purely sympathetic innervation (Elliott, 1912, 1913, Hollinshead, 1936, McFarland and Davenport, 1941) offers better justification for the utilization of circulating adienalin as an index of sympathetic activity than the fact that it is a "sympathomimetic hormone," for whereas the production of adrenalin is by sympathetic excitation, the action of adrenalin is both excitatory and inhibitory. Aside from the fact 1, that the peripheral transmission of impulses to the adrenal glands is cholinergic and determined by conditions affecting cholinergic activity (Feldberg and Tsudjemura, 1934), and the fact 2, to be considered in more detail later, that the action of inhibitory (I) adrenalin is the inhibition of parasympathetic or cholinergic mechanisms rather than an effect on sympathetic ones, and the fact 3, that adrenalin by sensitizing the moderator nerves (Heymans, 1929) produces a degree of reflex inhibition of general sympathetic activity, circulating adienalin (plus undifferentiated sympathin) may be considered an index of general sympathetic function. The assay of humoral mediators is considered in section III.

Other mechanisms alleged to have but a single autonomic innervation such as the pilomotor, the spleen and the uterus have been variously used as autonomic indicators. Those subject to adrenergic inhibition such as the uterus are discussed in section III.

II *Tests based on the elimination of the nerve supply from one of the opposing branches of the autonomic innervation* This method has had wide application in the delimitation of responses from dually innervated mechanisms, as witness the use of vagotomy in the attempt to reduce the parasympathetic factors in circulatory changes. The method should be confined to acute experiments in order to exclude the possibility of sensitization of the humoral mechanisms whose neural counterpart it is desired to eliminate. Although maximum sensitization occurs only after nerve degeneration, even within the period of an acute experiment there appears the possibility of a degree of sensitization as suggested by the observations of Darrow and Gellhorn (1939) in the case of the pupil.

A *The pupil* One of the most useful applications of this method of control is that of cutting the cervical sympathetic supply to the pupil on one side to permit study of reactions determined by a purely parasympathetic innervation. The difference between the reactions of the parasympathetically innervated pupil and those of the dually innervated structure of the opposite side gives indication also of the concomitant sympathetic activity. In corresponding manner the parasympathetic supply from the third nerve has been severed (Anderson, 1904, Ury and Gellhorn, 1939) to provide a pupil having only a sympathetic innervation. This method of experimental control provides striking experimental confirmation of the fact that it is the inhibition of parasympathetic tone rather than sympathetic excitation which is the predominating factor in

the dilatation of the iris of the cat and rabbit following painful stimuli. The sympathetic supply unquestionably also contributes to the pupillary response after emotional stimuli affecting the hypothalamus (Wang, Lu and Lau, 1932, Carlson, Gellhorn and Darrow, 1941, Hodes and Magoun, 1941) and perhaps also when the inhibitory effects of adrenalin have been eliminated (Darrow and Gellhorn, 1939). The neural mechanisms of the response have been worked out by Karplus and Kreidl (1911), Lieben and Kahn (1930), Bain, Irving and McSwiney (1935), Harper, McSwiney and Suffolk (1935), Harper and McSwiney (1937), McSwiney and Suffolk (1938). The evidence that inhibition of parasympathetic tone plays an important, if not a predominating rôle (possibly different in the monkey, (Bender, 1938, Bender and Siegal, 1940) in a response which has often been referred to uncritically as indicating "sympathetic" activity may well lead to a re-examination of the evidence behind similar interpretations in the case of other dually innervated mechanisms.

B Blood pressure Perhaps nowhere is such a re-examination more appropriate than in the case of blood pressure. Too often it is uncritically assumed that a sympathetic-like rise in blood pressure in the intact animal is an indication of sympathetic activity, and that a parasympathetic like fall in pressure indicates parasympathetic activity. That the rise may actually be due to decrease of parasympathetic tone and that a fall may be the result of inhibition of sympathetic tone, as for example by action of the carotid sinus, is often disregarded. The same workers sometimes committing this oversight may take great pains at other times to eliminate the ambiguity of blood pressure interpretation by vagotomy, carotid sinus denervation, atropinization, sympathectomy, and so on. The prevailing lack of correspondence between blood pressure changes and changes in valid sympathetic indicators such as the nictitating membranes, as shown by studies of Acheson, Rosenblueth, and Partington (1936), Rosenblueth and Schwartz (1935), and Watkins (1938) among investigators already mentioned in this paper is proof of the ambiguous significance of blood pressure, assuming of course that the sympathetic system discharges as a whole (Cannon, 1915, 1920, Bard 1923, 1929). Even after hypothalamic stimulation it was shown by Carlson, Gellhorn and Darrow (1941) that some of the sympathetic like effects commonly associated with rise in blood pressure may be due to inhibition of parasympathetic tone. On the other hand the fact that Bronk, Pitts and Larrabee (1940) have demonstrated an inhibition of sympathetic impulses in the nerve to the heart following increase of blood pressure in the carotid sinus, and the fact that section of the nerves to the carotid sinus and other moderator mechanisms results in a chronic hypertension of varying duration as shown by Heymans and Bouckaert (1931, 1935), Bacq, Brouha and Heymans (1932, 1934), which can be prevented by prior complete sympathectomy (Heymans and Bouckaert, 1935, Grimson, 1940) points to carotid sinus inhibitory control of the sympathetic system as a factor in blood pressure.

Autonomic control of factors in blood pressure such as heart rate and stroke volume, venous and pulmonary return and vasoconstriction and dilatation should receive separate consideration. Two will be discussed.

C Pulse rate The indiscriminate use of pulse rate as an index of sympa

thetic function in the intact animal is perhaps more to be deprecated than the uncritical employment of blood pressure for that purpose. Not only is pulse rate, like blood pressure, a function of the balance or "resultant" of sympathetic and parasympathetic influences (Rosenblueth and Simeone, 1934, Brown and Eccles, 1934 a, b) but by action of the aortic, carotid sinus, and other moderator nerves upon sympathetic and vagus centers, there tends to be a compensatory slowing of the heart when there is a rise in pressure, and an acceleration with a fall. In addition there is the direct effect of pressure within the heart itself. The clinical value of pulse rate as an indicator depends little or not at all upon its rôle as a sympathetic-parasympathetic indicator (Henderson, Haggard and Dolley, 1927). Even as an index of emotional changes it is of less value than blood pressure (Armstrong, 1938), and its physiologic interpretation is questionable (Gantor, 1925, Shock and Schlatter, 1942). Recorded along with simultaneous changes in blood pressure, however, it may provide valuable indication of compensatory activity by the moderator nerves which should be taken into account in the interpretation of an autonomic change. Pulse rate in the chronically denervated heart is of course determined by humoral mechanisms, to be considered later.

D Vasomotor activity This is a most important variable determining blood pressure, though obviously not the only one. The inference that there has been vasoconstriction when rise in blood pressure is the sole observation is at best a loose manner of speech. And the frequent identification of vasoconstriction with sympathetic activity and of vasodilatation with parasympathetic action is likewise often in disregard of the facts. Not only do vasomotor functions represent in many instances the resultant of a balance between opposed neuro-humoral influences, a change in either one of which may alter the vasomotor tone, but the existence of both sympathetic cholinergic vasodilators (Euler and Gaddum, 1931, Bulbring and Burn, 1934, 1935, Sherif, 1935) and adrenergic vasodilators (Rosenblueth and Cannon, 1935, Wyman and Tum Suden, 1936) is always a threat to such interpretation. Sympathetic vasodilatation has long been recognized as a common characteristic of muscle (Hoskins, Gunning and Barry, 1916, Hartman and collaborators, 1928a, b, and Clark, 1934) where it obviously may serve an emergency function. It is particularly marked in the dog and the hare, "animals of the chase" not only in muscle but in other structures (Langley and Dickenson, 1890, Burn, 1938) and is demonstrable without ergotoxin or eserine. Room (1938) indicated that at least in some cases adrenergic dilatation may be confined to the capillaries and constriction to the arteries and arterioles. However, the skin and splanchnic region of most animals including man most frequently and under most conditions manifest sympathetic adrenergic vasoconstriction and cholinergic vasodilatation.

Of great importance is the fact that evidence indicates the presence of sympathetic cholinergic vasodilator activity in many blood vessels where there are no demonstrable parasympathetic nerve connections. It thus becomes possible readily to explain in these structures the vasodilator effects of parasympathetic drugs and to account at the same time for the depressor effects of weak sympa-

thetic nerve stimulation and of small doses of adrenalin. It is probable that only with strong stimulation or with larger doses of adrenalin will the inhibitory action of sympathin I or inhibitory adrenalin become strong enough completely to counteract this sympathetic cholinergic vasodilator action. The depressor action of adrenalin after ergotamine will later receive a similar explanation. Another mechanism of adrenalin depressor effects is of course the adrenalin sensitization of the carotid sinuses.

Tests of vasomotor function have become of very great concern to the physiologist and clinician because of their usefulness in the attack on the problems of hypertension and other neurocirculatory disorders. These are discussed in reviews by Brown (1936) and by Weiss (1939). They are given consideration under the present heading because of the predominantly sympathetic hyperactivity apparently involved, and the use of sympathetic nerve section as a therapeutic procedure.

Tests of sympathetic vasomotor function are urgently needed to determine the probable benefits of sympathectomy. The question is always whether such radical intervention would sufficiently restore normal circulation to be justified. The use of nerve block (White, 1930, Scott and Morton, 1931) to determine the probable effects of nerve section appears logical. The employment of spinal anesthesia and general anesthesia (Scott and Morton, 1930) and sleep inducing barbiturates (Craig, 1938) to test the effect of temporary elimination of central sources of sympathetic activity also provide a relatively direct approach. The rationale behind those other tests which employ what appear to be active vasodilatation techniques is not so obvious, inasmuch as their operation may be quite independent of an effect on the sympathetic system. The use of fever (Brown, 1926, Adson and Brown 1929, Adson, 1936), placing the hands in hot water (Landis and Gibbin, 1933), and the employment of cholinergic drugs are examples of this approach. In so far as these latter methods are satisfactory tests of the possible benefits of sympathectomy it must be inferred that they operate by effecting a central impairment or reflex inhibition of sympathetic tone, or that they work peripherally by opposing the action of inhibitory sympathin and adrenalin on the cholinergic vasodilators.

A test of sympathetic reactivity which has had wide application in the diagnosis of hypertension is the cold pressor test of Hines and Brown (1932, 1933), White and Gildae (1937). For this test, the patient rests for 30 minutes after which one hand is immersed in ice water for 2 minutes. A rise in pressure of over 22 mm is considered indicative of a tendency toward hypertension. Recovery of the pre test level should occur in the normal person within two minutes. Of special value in the diagnosis of hypertension also is the ophthalmoscopic observation of the eyegrounds (Weiss, 1939, Keith, Wagener and Kernohan 1928, Wagener, 1933, Hallum, 1930, and Hallum and Gibson, 1938). Tests of skin temperature (Craig, Horton and Sheard, 1933), plethysmographic volume and plethysmographic blood flow are of course useful as are also photoelectric plethysmographic techniques (Hertzman and Dillon, 1938, 1940) especially when combined with stimulating procedures of the types described above.

III *Assay of the output of humoral mediators adrenalin or sympathin and acetylcholine* The evidence that the transmission of nerve impulses to the effector organs depends upon the mediation of the humoral agents acetylcholine and sympathin needs no elaboration (Dale, review, 1935, Cannon and Rosenblueth, 1937, Butt, review, 1937) The assay of the humoral mediators may be accomplished *in vitro* either by chemical tests or by strips of excised sensitized tissue, and it may be accomplished *in vivo* either in the same or in a second animal by registration of effects on denervated sensitized organs It should perhaps be pointed out that any humorally determined autonomic response in the absence of nerve activity is, in effect, an *in situ* biological assay of humoral mediator

A *Assay of acetylcholine* Space permits only mention of some of the organic preparations which have been employed Quoting from Cannon and Rosenblueth (1937)

According to Gaddum (1936) the relative sensitiveness, measured in γ (0.001 mgm) per liter, of common indicators of acetylcholine, is as follows

Leech muscle (isolated and treated with eserine)	2
Rabbit auricle (isolated and treated with eserine)	4
Frog heart (Straub method)	10
Mouse intestine	10
Rabbit intestine	20
Frog's rectus abdominis (isolated and treated with eserine)	20
Cat's denervated gastrocnemius	100

Since none of these organs is strictly specific, the suggestions of Chang and Gaddum (1933) as to ways of distinguishing between their reaction to acetylcholine and to other substances become important

Other tests may be mentioned, such as the slowing of the denervated heart and the hypotensive effect (blocked by atropine) of acetylcholine on the blood pressure of the eviscerated chloralose cat

B *Excitatory and inhibitory sympathin and adrenalin* The fact that sympathin, mediating the sympathetic effects is of two types, E and I, excitatory and inhibitory (Cannon and Rosenblueth, 1933, 1935, 1937) must be given more than passing attention The more rarely mentioned evidence that adrenalin itself is also of two types (Bacq, 1933, 1934, 1940, Greer, Pinkston, Baxter and Brannon, 1938) one of which is primarily excitatory and the other of which is both excitatory and inhibitory is of no less importance²

It has been pointed out by Bacq (1934) that the two types of sympathin, E and I, correspond in their effects to those of an undifferentiated adrenalin and those of an adrenaline, "nor adrenalin," partially oxidized (Bacq, 1935) which has thus been deprived of its inhibitory action

Even more significant is the usually unmentioned fact that *the inhibitory action of either inhibitory sympathin, I, or of inhibitory adrenalin appears only in structures having a parasympathetic (cholinergic) nerve supply, or those in which, in the absence of a demonstrated parasympathetic supply, the presence of cholinergically*

² For simplicity the excitatory and inhibitory effects of adrenalin will here be referred to as "E" and "I," respectively, analogous to Cannon and Bacq's designation of the different types of sympathin

activated effectors is indicated by a sensitivity to parasympathetic drugs. For example, the contractions of the nerveless amnion of the fowl are inhibited by adrenalin (Langley, 1905, Bauer, 1928) but the amnion notwithstanding its absence of nerve supply is a cholinergically activated mechanism (Bauer, 1928). Even the cholinergic "pseudomotor" contractions of denervated skeletal muscle, most familiar in the Sherrington contraction, are blocked by adrenalin as shown by Gasser and Dalo (1926), Dale and Gaddum (1930), Hinsey and Gasser (1930), Bulbring and Burn (1936), and Bender (1938). It should be emphasized that there is no clear evidence of an inhibitory action of adrenalin on purely *adrenergic* structures, except secondarily by way of effects of adrenalin on the cholinergic sympathetic ganglia (Marazzi, 1939) or by way of the carotid sinus and other moderator nerves (Heymans, 1929, Gellhorn, Darrow and Yesnick, 1939, Bronk, Pitts and Larrabee, 1940). Recognition that the antagonistic or inhibitory effects of inhibitory sympathin or adrenalin are functionally inhibitory of cholinergic mechanisms* (regardless of what the chemical, permeability, or other mechanisms of that antagonism may be) permits some simplification of the main facts of neurohumeral transmission and of pharmacologic action.

The reaction of the *denervation sensitized nictitating membrane* is that of a relatively pure adrenergically excitable structure. It is a sensitive indicator of excitatory (E) sympathin (Hampel, 1935, Liu and Rosenblueth, 1935, Simeone, 1937). The N M is little or not at all affected by inhibitory (I) sympathin or the inhibitory action of adrenalin. Extensive utilization of the chronically denervated nictitating membrane for the *in vivo* assay of excitatory sympathin and adrenalin by such workers as McGoun and Ranson (1937), Cattell and Wolff (1934), Rosenblueth and Morrison (1934), Partington (1936), Liu (1935), and Bender and Siegel (1940) bear testimony to its value.

Differentiation of excitatory (E) from inhibitory (I) sympathin was early provided by the differential reaction of the *non pregnant uterus* of the cat and the *nictitating membranes*. An amount of excitatory sympathin from stimulation of hepatic nerves, which was sufficient to contract the nictitating membrane, had relatively little inhibiting effect on the non pregnant uterus of the cat (Cannon and Rosenblueth, 1933), whereas inhibitory sympathin from stimulating inhibited structures of the gastrointestinal tract produced a marked relaxation of the uterus (see end of section) but relatively little contraction of the nictitating membrane.

Further differentiation of excitatory from inhibitory sympathin was provided by the nictitating membrane in combination with the response of the pupil. Cannon and Rosenblueth (1935) showed that an amount of excitatory (E) sympathin sufficient to produce a measured contraction of the nictitating membrane occasioned little dilatation of the pupil, although an amount of inhibitory (E plus I) sympathin sufficient to produce the same contraction of the nictitating membrane produced a large dilatation of the pupil. Only after cutting the constrictor fibers of the iris could Cannon and Rosenblueth (1935) obtain appre-

* Necheles and Neuwelt (1938) have demonstrated an antagonism between pituitrin and acetylcholin.

ciable pupillary dilatation with their sympathin E. They inferred from this that sympathin E must somehow stimulate the cholinergic constrictor mechanism. However, the evidence that inhibitory sympathin or inhibitory adrenalin relaxes the cholinergic constrictor mechanism of the iris, thus facilitating dilatation, as shown by Joseph (1916), Miller (1926), Poos (1927), Yonkman (1930), and Shackler, Christiansen and Schlossman (1937), offers another if not a better explanation. It is apparent that combined inhibitory and excitatory sympathin may work synergistically by relaxing the constrictor fibers while simultaneously contracting the dilator fibers to produce a greater dilatation than would be possible by excitation alone. Obviously the operation of the humoral mediators E and I adrenalin or sympathin on the pupil parallels the action of nerve stimulation where there may also be synergistic action of sympathetic excitation and inhibition of parasympathetic tone.

When both sympathetic and parasympathetic nerve supplies have been removed the pupil in the eserinizd animal provides a valuable indicator of the synergistic combined effects of excitatory and inhibitory adrenalin. Bender and Weinstein (1940) have employed such a denervated iris as an adrenergic indicator along with the denervated facial musculature as a cholinergic indicator.

The gastrointestinal tract, and particularly the musculature of the large and small intestine, have provided some of the earliest and most used tests for the assay of the inhibitory action of adrenalin and sympathin. The fact is again not without significance that motility and tone are here parasympathetically or cholinergically maintained. Indeed, the intestine is itself often used as a test indicator for acetylcholine. Reflex inhibition of these structures is exemplified in the studies of King (1924), Percy and Van Liere (1926), Loew and Patterson (1935), and Youmans and Meek (1937). That these inhibitory effects of nerve stimulation are neurologically sympathetic is inferred from the fact that they may be abolished by splanchnicotomy and duplicated by adrenalin. Youmans, Meek and Herrin (1938) employ both innervated and denervated Thierry fistulae in the same dog for the simultaneous testing of both the neurally and the humorally transmitted effects. That the inhibitory effects of nerve stimulation may be mediated in the gastrointestinal tract by an inhibitory sympathin indistinguishable from adrenalin is suggested by the observations of Youmans (1938), Youmans, Aumann and Haney (1939).

The rate of the denervated heart has also been used as a differential indicator for the humoral effects (Cannon and Urdil, 1921, Cannon, Lewis and Britton, 1926, Newton, Zwemer and Cannon, 1931, Rosenblueth and Phillips, 1932, Whitelaw and Snyder, 1934). It is of course sensitive to both cholinergic and adrenergic humoral mediators, but in the absence of eserine or similar drugs the cholinergic effects may be assumed negligible, except as far as it is possible that resident acetylcholine may be subject to adrenergic inhibition. In any case excitatory and inhibitory actions, whether of adrenalin or of sympathin, would work synergistically.

Coagulation time of the blood may also be used as an indicator of adrenergic effects (Cannon, 1929).

Blood sugar is another frequently used indicator in which, having important corticoadrenal and hypophyseal effects (Soskin, 1941) changes are the resultant of opposed neuro humoral autonomic influences. The widespread identification of increased blood sugar with sympathicoadrenal function doubtless received its impetus in Cannon's early work with Britton (1925, 1927) and his emphasis on its emergency function in his book on *Bodily changes* (1929). A degree of correspondence between changes in blood sugar and other sympathetic indicators following sympathetic stimulation is shown by Chang (1937) and Bodo and Benaglia (1938). Such correspondence may be eliminated by sympathectomy (Bodo and Benaglia, 1938). Although long used as an indicator of emotion in animals (Cannon and Britton, 1925, Bömer, 1930), only strong emotion is apparently effective in increasing the blood sugar of normal human subjects (Gildae, 1905), and there is general agreement that while elevation of blood sugar may be met with in depressed human subjects, the "emotions" of schizophrenic patients tend to be devoid of hyperglycemic concomitant (Bowman and Kasanin, 1929, McCowan and Quastel, 1931, Whitehorn, 1934, Gildae, Mailhouse and Morris, 1935). The failure to obtain emotional hyperglycemia in these cases may not, as has often happened, be attributed necessarily to a defect in the sympathicoadrenal function, but may, as will appear, be equally well a consequence of an increased vagal activity and insulin secretion.

Dual neuro-humoral control of blood sugar by both sympathico-adrenal and vagal insulin mechanisms was early shown in morphine hyperglycemia by Housay and Lewis (1923). They demonstrated that the hyperglycemia could be abolished by splanchnicotomy and that it could then be restored by cutting the vagus. They inferred the antagonistic action of the sympathetic and the vagus. The rôle of the vagal cholinergic innervation of the pancreas (Clark, 1931, La Barre and Vesselovsky, 1933, Babkin, Hebb and Sergeyeva, 1939) as the factor determining the frequent absence of emotional hyperglycemia which has been the concomitant of excitation following adrenalectomy (Britton, 1925, Lumley and Nice, 1930, Harris and Ingle, 1937, McQuarrie, Ziegler, Wangenstein and Dennis, 1939, and Bodo and Benaglia 1939) has apparently been overlooked until its recent demonstration as a general principle by Gellhorn, Feldman and Cortell. Under a wide range of conditions such as anoxia and convulsant drugs (1940), fever (1941), sham rage, and hypothalamic stimulation (1941), and heat and cold (1941) they demonstrate that after adreno-demedullation there is a consistent tendency for such conditions to produce a hypoglycemia which is reversed if there is subsequently a subdiaphragmatic section of the vagus to eliminate the parasympathetic innervation of the pancreas. Thus blood sugar is added to the list of indicators which must be interpreted as the resultant of a balance of opposed autonomic influences.

Employing the hypophysectomized adreno-demedullated rat as an extremely sensitive indicator, Gellhorn, Feldman and Allen (1941a, b) demonstrated an abnormally high insulin content in the blood of emotionally disturbed schizophrenic patients. This probably accounts in part at least for the absence of emotional hyperglycemia in the several studies of schizophrenic patients pre-

viously cited. Related and superficially conflicting evidence will be considered later in its relation to the problem of "autonomic balance" (see section VII).

The non-pregnant uterus of the cat, as previously noted, is another of the earlier used indicators of adrenergic inhibitory effects. This organ is unusual in that it is one of the few among inhibited structures having definite sympathetic innervation, but, at least until recently, no established parasympathetic, pelvic nerve innervation (Reynolds, 1939). However, Sheehan and Labate, according to Sheehan (1941) have now "established beyond question the presence of a parasympathetic (sacral) outflow." The important consideration is that despite its sympathetic innervation the uterus is also cholinergically activated (Reynolds, 1939). Sherif (1935) demonstrated acetylcholine secretion by hypogastric (sympathetic) stimulation in the dog.

The effects of adrenalin and sympathetic stimulation is to produce relaxation of the non-pregnant uterus of the cat as contrasted with contraction when the animal is pregnant. This action of adrenalin in the cat is perhaps not surprising in view of the prevalence of other adrenergic manifestations in this animal. Van Dyke and Gustavson (1929) and Robson and Schild (1938a, b) showed that the change is dependent in the cat on the secretion of the corpus luteum and may be found in pregnancy, pseudo-pregnancy, or after progesterone (see Kennard, 1937). That the effects are mediated by an altered response to the inhibitory factor in ordinary (E + I) adrenalin and sympathin is indicated by the absence of appreciable relaxation effect by either non-inhibitory sympathin from hepatic nerve stimulation (Cannon and Rosenblueth, 1933) or by non-inhibitory nor-epinephrine (Greer, Pinkston, Baxter and Brannon, 1933). When, however, according to these latter authors, a uterus is found which, for some reason, does not give the usual relaxation in response to ordinary (E + I) epinephrine, that uterus will give a contraction in response to the relatively non-inhibitory nor-epinephrine. In other words, when inhibition is not too pronounced, contractility may be demonstrated. In view of the apparent relation of adrenergic inhibition to cholinergic function it would seem that acetylcholine may be involved. Demonstration by Reynolds and Foster (1939) of acetylcholine in the pregnant, pseudopregnant and progesterone treated uterus of the rabbit makes this seem possible. A similar reversal of inhibitory response by physostigmine (Agar, 1940) and by the physostigmine-like action of ergotoxine (see section IV) also implicates acetylcholine. The limited available evidence suggests that animals having a low level of acetylcholine or an absence of cholinergic response to estrogens such as the nonpregnant cat (Reynolds and Foster, 1940) and the rat (Astwood, 1940, Holden, 1939) typically show relaxation in response to adrenalin, and that animals on the other hand which assay a higher acetylcholine content of the uterus during estrus or pregnancy such as the rabbit (Reynolds and Foster, 1939a, b), the dog (Sherif, 1935), and possibly by inference, the pregnant cat (?) typically show contraction in response to adrenalin. This suggests that adrenalin-inhibitory effects may become ineffective in the presence of excess acetylcholine, and that in the absence of inhibition the excitatory effects of adrenergic or cholinergic action may be clearly manifest. This is consistent

with observations on the sphincter of the iris by Joseph (1916), Poos (1927), and Yonkman (1930). This is also the implication of the change of adrenergic relaxation to contraction following administration of physostigmine or of physostigmine-like ergotamine.

There is, however, the complicating fact that during pregnancy ergotamine, while itself producing near maximal contraction of the uterus (Agar, 1940), typically reverses the adrenalin response from contraction to relaxation (Dale, 1906, Cushny, 1906, 1910). This phenomenon has contributed no little to the confusion which has prevailed regarding the mechanism of adrenalin inhibition. It is not improbable, however, that notwithstanding the fact that in general blood flow and muscular activity in the uterus vary independently (Robson and Schild, 1938), the greater susceptibility of the pregnant uterus to circulatory embarrassment is an important factor in this reaction. Vasoconstrictor reactions become more pronounced at this time (Reynolds, 1939) and any deficiency of oxygenation results in a marked increase in the tendency toward uterine contraction (Reynolds 1939) even to the point of abortion. Under such conditions adrenergic inhibition of uterine vasodilatation may decrease blood flow and occasion contraction of the uterine musculature. On the other hand, after ergotamine, the reversal of the vasomotor response to adrenalin (Robson and Schild, 1938) may favor an improvement in circulation and result in relative muscular relaxation. The rôle of ergotamine and ergotoxine in the blocking of inhibitory adrenergic effects will be considered.

IV *Autonomic tests involving pharmacologic blocking of one or the other branches of the autonomic system.* This type of test has had application clinically as well as physiologically because the reversibility of the effects permits of their application in human subjects.

A *Ergotamine ergotoxine*. This drug has enjoyed a wide reputation as a "sympathicolytic" drug by which sympathetic excitatory effects could be blocked pharmacologically. This has been assumed to permit the differentiation of sympathetic excitatory from other autonomic effects. That this interpretation of its action is misleading, that ergotoxin blocks primarily not sympathetic excitatory (E) but sympathetic inhibitory (I) effects (Rothlin, 1929, Thienes, 1929, Issekutz and Lenzinger, 1928), and that this action is in fact not an action on the sympathetic mechanisms but a protection of parasympathetic activity or a "physostigmine-like" action (Loewi and Navratil, 1926, Matthes, 1930, Lanegar, 1939) is supported by the following facts.

The primary action of ergotamine is the contraction of smooth muscle, especially of cholinergically (Sherif, 1935) activated smooth muscle such as that of the uterus (Dale, 1906, Sharp, 1911, Agar, 1940, intestine (Rothlin, 1929), excised sphincter iridis (Crouch and Thompson, 1939), stomach (Smith, 1918), and retractor penis (Dale, 1906). In the intact animal it increases intestinal motility (Planelles, 1925), occasions extreme miosis (Dale, 1906, Crouch and Thompson, 1939), lowers blood sugar, but not after pancreatectomy (Shpiner, 1929) and decreases blood pressure (Wright, 1930). Frequently cases of increased blood pressure have been attributed to contraction of muscular organs. Carotid sinus

desensitization by ergotamine (Heymans, Regniers and Bouckaert, 1930, Bacq, Brouha and Heymans, 1930) may also be a factor in cases of increased blood pressure following this drug.

Even where sympathetic excitatory effects have appeared blocked by ergotoxine, the blocking is not impossible, as in the case of the nictitating membrane (Rosenblueth, 1932, Rosenblueth, Leese and Lambert, 1933) and the pregnant uterus (Agar, 1940), attributable to the accompanying tonic response or contraction. The sensitivity of these sympathetically innervated structures to acetylcholine has been shown in the case of the nictitating membrane by Morrison and Acheson (1938) and in the case of the uterus by Reynolds (1939). As noted in the foregoing, even the sympathetic impulses via the hypogastric nerves to the uterus are mediated by acetylcholine in the dog according to Sherif (1935). The increased peristalsis (Planelles, 1924), increased excitability of the vagus to acetylcholine, the nausea and emesis, and the uterine contractions attending administration of ergotamine, all point to a physostigmine-like action.

It is the inhibitory effects of adrenalin or sympathetic stimulation on cholinergically activated mechanisms which are blocked by ergotoxine. It is, as already noted, the ability of adrenalin or sympathetic stimulation to relax or block the spontaneous activity and tone in the intestine or the nonpregnant uterus of the cat which is prevented by ergotoxine. Even in denervated skeletal muscle adrenalin inhibition of the cholinergic pseudomotor contraction can be blocked by ergotoxine (Hinsey and Gasser, 1928). Also in the nerve-free but acetylcholine rich human placenta (Chang and Gaddum, 1935) adrenalin constriction of the blood vessels is blocked by ergotoxine (Euler, 1938). And even the familiar reversal of vasomotor response to adrenalin and sympathetic stimulation following ergotoxine are accounted for if we accept the evidence (Burn, review, 1939) for sympathetic cholinergic vasodilator fibers. We may assume that these cholinergic vasodilators normally are inhibited by inhibitory sympathetic action or inhibitory adrenalin, resulting thereby in a constriction which is synergic with the reaction of the adrenergic constrictors. Following ergotoxine this inhibition of the vasodilators does not take place, and there is in consequence a decreased pressor, or even a depressor effect. Bulbring and Burn (1935) and Herwick, Linegar and Koppanyi (1939) showed a similar vasomotor reversal after eserine—abolished by atropine. This again suggests that inhibitory adrenergic effects may be blocked or possibly swamped in the presence of sufficient acetylcholine. That ergotamine may likewise potentiate the depressor effects of acetylcholine and that this action may be reversed to a pressor action by atropine is shown by Linegar (1939) and by Herwick, Linegar and Koppanyi (1939). The previously considered (section III) relation of ergotamine to the reversal of adrenergic response in the pregnant and non-pregnant cat is consistent with this point of view.

That ergotamine may have considerable value as a means of testing for the presence of sympathetic inhibitory and adrenalin inhibitory effects on parasympathetic cholinergic functions appears to be indicated.

B Atropine The employment of atropine to block the action of cholinergic or parasympathetic mechanisms is the most familiar of pharmacologic blocking technics. Two types of measurements have been sought by this means—1, an index of the normally present parasympathetic activity derived from the changes induced when that activity is blocked, and 2, an index of sympathetic function derived from the magnitude of the total residual activity after parasympathetic opposition is eliminated.

Both of these effects are to some extent obscured or damped by the possible effect of the drug upon cholinergic transmission of nerve impulses within the sympathetic ganglia and adrenals, as well as in the central nervous system, and by the possible compensatory action of the carotid sinus and other moderator nerves.

As early as 1870, Schmiedberg demonstrated that atropine blocked the inhibitory effects of the vagus on the heart. Escudro (1923) and Danielopolu (1926) devised tests of sympathetocotonia and parasympathetocotonia based on the effects of atropine in blocking the parasympathetic control of the heart. Fentress and Solomon (1936) have applied the procedure in the study of autonomic function in psychoneurotic patients.

The contrasting effects of atropine, of parasympathicomimetic and sympathicomimetic drugs have been used as autonomic tests by Myerson, Loman and Dameshek (1937) and by Brohoff, Grosse and Kaldenberg (1938) in the study of the synergistic and antagonistic pharmacologic responses of human subjects. In physiological experiments the use of atropine to determine the rôle of cholinergic mechanisms in a given response is, of course, so common as to be almost routine.

V Equating of effects in differentially sensitive autonomic indicators The classic instance of derivation of autonomic activity from differential effects on peripheral autonomic indicators is Cannon and Rosenbluth's (see p. 9) differentiation of sympathin E from sympathin I on the basis of the differential effects on the iris or uterus and nictitating membrane.

Darrow and Gellhorn (1939) used a somewhat similar equating technic in contrasting the effects of nerve stimulation on a sympathetomized pupil having only a parasympathetic nerve supply with that of the normal pupil of the opposite side having both parasympathetic and sympathetic innervations. From the denervated pupil it was possible to determine the presence of inhibition of parasympathetic tone following stimulation, while from the difference between that and the normal pupil it was possible to infer the presence of sympathetic excitation.

Darling and Darrow (1938) and Darling (1938) attempted a similar derivation from the differential effects of stimulation upon blood pressure and palmar sweating (galvanic) activity. As the method is more recently being applied (Darrow and Solomon, 1939, 1940) the rationale depends upon the assumption 1, that blood pressure change represents the difference between opposing effects of sympathico-adrenal and parasympathico-cholinergic influences. Galvanic

or sweating activity on the other hand, depends upon both sympathetic nerve conduction and upon cholinergic transmission at the effector (see p 3) These relationships are symbolized in the equations

$$BP = S - P$$

$$\text{and Galv.} = S + P$$

where S represents sympathico-adrenal activity, and P represents parasympathico-cholinergic activity

Given simultaneous galvanic and blood pressure responses to stimulation these simultaneous equations may be solved for either S or P . Or, if desired, the data may be plotted into two-dimensional graphs or "autonomograms". The results of the method indicate simultaneous effects on both sympathetic and parasympathetic activity in the normal individual with sympathetic effects predominating. They indicate, further, the presence of decreased sympathetic responses and a tendency toward the inhibition of parasympathetic tone following stimulation in "resistant" hostile, inhibited, unco-operative psychotic patients. Evidence from the studies of Darrow and Gellhorn (1939a, b, c) that the presence of adrenalin in the circulating blood disposes toward exaggeration of responses of the type involving inhibition of parasympathetic tone, as well as a diminution of sympathetic responses, suggests that adrenalin may be a factor in determining the reaction pattern of the "resistant" psychotic patients. A possible rôle of adrenalin in accounting for the condition of these patients will be considered under "Autonomic balance" (see section VII)

VI *Electrical recording of autonomic potentials* Action potentials of the autonomic effectors or of their innervating nerves provide valuable indications of autonomic activity. A familiar example is the electrical recording of sweat gland activity by the use of endosomatic potentials (Tarchanoff, 1890) (See reviews of galvanic response literature, Landis and Dewick 1929, Landis, 1932, Darrow, 1936, 1937). The nictitating membranes and pilomotor muscles have been recorded electrically (Orias, 1932, Rosenblueth, Leese and Lambert, 1933, Rosenblueth, Davis and Rempel, 1936a, b, Eccles and Magladery, 1937a, b). Effects of ovulation have been registered as abdominal or vaginal action potentials by Burr, Hill and Allen (1935), Reboul, Davis and Friedgood (1937), and Bourdillon (1939). Effects of pharmacologic agents on uterine potentials have been studied by Bozler (1938), Morrison (1940) and Balassa and Gurd (1941). Gastrointestinal motility was studied by Bozler (1938, 1939, 1941), and paccinian corpuscle potentials of the mesentery by Gammon and Bronk (1935). Gastric impulses in the vagus are reported by Partridge and Wilson (1933) and vagal (carotid sinus?) effects by Fischer, Gantt and Lowenback (1934). Comparison of electrical responses in various types of smooth muscle such as the nictitating membranes, pilomotors, intestine, bladder, uterus and ureter by Rosenblueth, Leese and Lambert (1933), Lambert and Rosenblueth 1935, and Davis, Rosenblueth and Rempel (1936), and Bozler (1938) indicate that the initial potentials, types I and II of Cannon and Rosenblueth (1937) are associated with excitation, whether in the case of the sympathetic nerves or in the case of the parasympathe-

tic ones. The effects of various pharmacologic agents on the magnitude of these potentials relates to effects on permeability (Rosenblueth and Cannon, 1936). Inhibitory effects are accompanied only by type III delayed and prolonged potentials, identified by Cannon and Rosenblueth with actual contraction. In the salivary glands the possibility of differential negative as opposed to positive potentials, associated respectively with parasympathetic as opposed to sympathetic stimulation, is indicated by Bronk and Gesell (1928). Pharmacologic effects on the potentials of the submaxillary gland were studied by Rosenblueth, Forbes and Lambert (1933).

Effects of adrenalin, atropine and other drugs in damping cholinergic transmission in sympathetic (cholinergic) ganglia, as well as the facilitating effect of moderate concentrations of parasympathetic drugs on the ganglia have been studied electrically by Marazzi (1939a, b). Potentials from several different autonomic nerves as a means toward the solution of problems of autonomic control have been employed by Hinsey and Gasser (1930), Corbin and Hinsey (1935) and Bishop, Hembecker and O'Leary (1934).

Especially important are the records of sympathetic action potentials and the correlation of these with cardiovascular control from the hypothalamus and carotid sinus as reported by Bronk, Ferguson, Margaria and Solandt (1930), Bronk, Lewy and Larrabee (1936), Pitts, Larrabee and Bronk (1941), and Pitts and Bronk (1942). The rhythmic character of these potentials and their frequency at about that of the cortical potentials (notwithstanding anesthesia) is of particular interest in view of the evidence assembled by Darrow, Jost, Solomon and Mergener (1942) for an association of alpha potentials with cerebral vasoconstrictor tone.

Of great interest also is the recording of potentials from the carotid sinus and the demonstration of specific functional relationships to sympathetic regulation which could have been derived only by electrical methods (Bronk, 1931, Bronk and Stella, 1932, 1935, Fischer and Löwenback, 1934, Bogue and Stella, 1934, 1935, Samaan and Stella, 1935, and Pitts, 1942). The possible applications of such electrical recording techniques (Bronk, Pitts and Larrabee, 1940) are as extensive as the ramifications of the autonomic system.

VII *Autonomic balance—dynamic equilibrium*. Autonomic dysfunction is often times referred to as "autonomic imbalance." This may be begging the question, for obviously in a balanced system abnormal activity would be recognized only if it were sufficient to upset the balance. A dysfunction of one part of the autonomic system, balanced by a compensatory dysfunction of another part of the system might conceivably constitute a double liability, and yet not be demonstrable as an "imbalance." The futility of treating symptoms under such conditions is obvious, and it is likely that many of the baffling problems of autonomic dysfunctions are of this type.

Although the Eppinger and Hess (1909) concept of balance, of sympathicotonia, and of parasympathicotonia has served a useful purpose in directing and stimulating research, the actual clinical and physiological consequences of its application have unquestionably been disappointing. Without detracting from

the importance of the concept in the development of our thinking, it should be pointed out that present day knowledge of the physiological processes involved in maintenance of "balance" dictates that discussion to be profitable must be concerned but little with "balance" in the abstract and concentrated rather on specific neurophysiological mechanisms of homeostatic control

Since the discovery by Hering in 1923 of the main mechanisms of autonomic regulation or maintenance of balance and the confirmation by Koch (1923) and by Heymans (1928) our knowledge of carotid sinus, aortic and abdominal vasosensory mechanisms has advanced so rapidly and the specific determinants of sympathicotonic and vagotonic effects have been sufficiently defined that reference to such terms as "autonomic balance," "sympathicotonia," and "parasympathicotonia" without physiologic qualification partakes almost of mysticism. Such terms are too general and too indefinite, though on occasion it is conceded that they may be useful for purposes of classification.

The carotid sinus mechanism, and also the carotid bodies, at the bifurcation of the internal and external carotid arteries, the vasosensory zone located in the arch of the aorta, and the less important, less well localized "vasotatic" receptors in the abdominal region established by Heymans (1929a, b), Heymans, Bouckaert, Farber and Hsu (1936), and Hsu and Chu (1937) supply neurosensory impulses for the reflex control of circulatory and respiratory equilibrium. The carotid sinuses exercise control by maintaining and varying the tonic inhibition over these most essential life-maintaining functions as well as over the more general emergency functions of the sympathetic system. They determine, as it were, the varying *negative bias* required to "modulate" or moderate oscillations in the circulatory system. In general, optimal conditions of oxygenation and blood pressure which favor bodily activity *activate* carotid sinus function also, and the carotid sinus in turn lowers blood pressure to that minimum which is commensurate with the maintenance of its own activity. Conditions of low oxygen, low blood pressure, or excess carbon dioxide (Bielinski and Wierzuchowski, 1939) in the carotid sinus, on the other hand, tend to reduce or *inactivate* carotid sinus inhibitory processes and release the restrained sympathetic mechanisms from tonic inhibition. At the same time tonic parasympathetic impulses from the carotid sinus are reduced. Such conditions tend, like denervation, toward hypertension, and in more extreme conditions they may occasion hyperpnea (Heymans and Bouckaert, 1930a, b, Winder, 1937a, b, 1938, Schmidt, 1932). The terms *activation* and *inactivation* are here employed relative to the carotid sinus because of the current confusion with respect to the word "sensitization" as applied for example to Vercauteren's (1932) demonstration that in the presence of carbon dioxide the added embarrassment of a standard reduction in intrasinus pressure will produce a larger compensatory hypertensive effect than a similar change in pressure without the carbon dioxide. Since usage has designated this effect a "sensitization" it is pointed out that in this case one agent merely potentiates the *inactivation* produced by the other (Bielinski and Wierzuchowski, 1939). This general interpretation of carotid sinus function is offered with full consideration of the fact that in extremely low pressure, "paradoxical"

reactions with failure of respiration and blood pressure may obscure normal carotid sinus compensations. It is not assumed that these principles apply equally to the chemoreceptors of the carotid bodies, for these apparently operate by a positive rather than by an inhibitory mechanism of control.

Gesell and collaborators have recently called attention to still another buffering action on ganglionic structures. They point out that acetylcholine is rapidly destroyed by cholinesterase in an alkaline medium, but that it is conserved, increasing its duration and intensity of action, in an acid medium. This provides a direct biochemical buffering mechanism in which accumulation of acetylcholine with its facilitation of myoneural and ganglionic transgression parallels carotid sinus disinhibition of sympathetic activity.

Not only do the moderator nerves normally maintain a regulatory inhibitory control over sympathetic activity, actually reducing the magnitude of vasomotor and other reactions to afferent nerve stimulation (see Rosenbluth and Schwartz, 1935, for miculating membrane, Izquierdo, 1920, for vasomotor effects) but there is evidence likewise of a positive control by way of the parasympathetic system (Hering 1927, Heymans 1928, Bernthal and Motley, 1939). Of effects (blocked by atropine) via the vagus on the heart there can be no question, and even increased intestinal motility and tone has been reported following carotid sinus stimulation (Tournade and Malmajac, 1929). Evidence to the contrary (Thomas and Brooks, 1937, Grimson, 1940) that reflex carotid sinus control is completely lost following sympathectomy does not disprove the existence of normal parasympathetic regulation by the carotid sinus, for the reason that carotid sinus function is dependent both upon the presence of adequate internal pressure, and on the presence of sensitizing adrenalin, either or both of which may be eliminated by sympathectomy.

Adrenalin secretion, so often identified as an emergency blood pressure raising device, apparently plays an important, and not always considered, rôle in the carotid sinus limitation and homeostatic regulation of autonomic activity. The presence of circulating adrenalin in the carotid sinus tends to sensitize that mechanism and increase inhibitory effects both on blood pressure and respiration (Heymans, 1929a, b). This was attributed by Stella (1932) to the increase of blood pressure and the effect of adrenalin on the "centers," but Malmajac, Donnet and Desants (1935a, b), Battencourt (1935) and Chu and Hsu (1938) showed that the presence of adrenalin actually increases the sensitivity of the carotid sinus mechanisms to the existing pressure. Thus may adrenalin occasion a depressor blood pressure reaction independently of its depressor peripheral effects previously considered. Thus adrenalin by increasing carotid sinus inhibition of the sympathetic may exercise an inhibitory control over medullary adrenal secretion. It thereby provides homeostatic limitation of its own output. In like manner may adrenalin limit the reactivity of other sympathetic functions (Darrow and Gellhorn, 1939, Gellhorn, Darrow and Yesnick, 1939).

Conversely, the action of acetylcholine in the carotid sinus may decrease inhibition of sympathetic activity as shown by Heymans, Bouckaert, Farber and Hsu (1935) resulting in hypertension. This may be considered a cholinergic inacti-

vation of the carotid sinus, since the effects are similar in direction if not in degree to those of denervation. The same apparently may be said of the physostigmine-like action of ergotamine in the carotid sinus, which may also result in hypertension according to Bacq, Brouha and Heymans (1932), again probably as an effect of disinhibition of the sympathetic by depression of carotid sinus reflexes, as demonstrated after ergotamine by Heymans, Regniers and Bouckaert (1930). The increased blood pressures observed in human subjects following ergotamine by Freeman and Carmichael (1936) are possibly so accounted for.

Inhibitory control by the carotid sinus apparently extends likewise over the activities of those tonic postural mechanisms which are sometimes associated with sympathetic function. Not only will increase of intra-carotid pressure block respiration (Bouckaert and Heymans, 1930, Schmidt, 1932) but it will halt shivering (Tournade and Malmajac, 1929) decrease action potentials in skeletal muscle (Spychela, 1935) eliminate the knee jerk (Schweitzer and Wright, 1937) reduce other skeletal reflexes (Kaufman, 1938, Koch, 1932) occasion relaxation and sleep (Koch, 1932), halt convulsions and/or induce sleep in previously narcotized animals aroused by metrazol (Gellhorn, Darrow and Yesnick, 1939). Effects such as hyperpnea, convulsions, increased muscle potentials, increased somatic reflexes and convulsions have been observed following decrease of blood pressure by the same authors. Thus conditions of autonomic equilibrium within the carotid sinus may exert a most important direct influence over the activities of the central nervous system.

The most definitely identified clinical effects of carotid sinus dysfunction are probably the syncopal attacks attributed to carotid sinus hyperirritability (Weiss and Baker, 1933a, b). Ferris, Capps and Weiss (1935, 1936) following Weiss and Baker, have subdivided such attacks into 1, cerebral, 2, cardiac, and 3, vasomotor types, depending upon the probable mechanisms of precipitation. In "cerebral" attacks there is apparently a direct action of carotid sinus reflexes upon the brain or its circulation. In the other types the syncope is secondary to the embarrassment of general circulation. Convulsions in these latter cases are consequent to the syncopal attack (Freedberg and Sloan, 1937) and not directly an effect of carotid sinus hyperirritability, although Lennox, Gibbs and Gibbs demonstrate the possibility of attacks without cerebral anoxemia, by direct action of the carotid sinus on the brain. Weiss and Baker (1933) note that in idiopathic epilepsy (150 cases) carotid sinus pressure does not produce seizures. Marinresco and Kraandler (1931a, b) offer further evidence that epilepsy is actually associated not with carotid sinus hypersensitivity but with hyposensitivity and that it may often be a result of failure of that mechanism to protect the brain from mechanical shocks transmitted by the circulation. That a deficiency of the buffering mechanism is an etiologic factor in some cases of epilepsy is indeed not unlikely, but it seems to the author that electroencephalographic evidence suggests that it is the inadequate buffering of the autonomic discharges to the brain, rather than the lack of hydrodynamic control, which is probably most frequently involved.

The complexity of the problem of testing and interpreting the equilibrium

which is the final product of the moderator nerves is further illustrated in certain cases of schizophrenia. Hypersensitivity and over regulation by the carotid sinus are here possibly indicated. There is a relative absence of sinus arrhythmia (Whitehorn and Richter, 1937) which, according to Regniers (1920), is a sign of carotid sinus activity. Sympathetic functions are depressed (Darrow and Solomon, 1934, 1939, 1940, Gellhorn, 1938). Blood pressure tends to be low (Truman, Hoskins and Sleeper, 1932). Pulse tends to be slow (Hoskins and Welch, 1932). Postural activity may be inhibited as is evident in many of the so-called "withdrawal" symptoms. The vago-insulin secretion is increased (Gellhorn, Feldman and Allen, 1941) and emotional hypoglycemia is the rule (Bowman and Kasanin, 1929, McCowan and Quastel, 1931, Whitehorn, 1934, Gildae, Mailhouse and Morris, 1935). Insulin desensitization with the development of an anti insulin factor may occur (Meduna and Gerty, 1932), just as insulin hypersensitivity may follow carotid sinus denervation (Casas and Hinsberg, 1932). And a possible mechanism for such a carotid sinus sensitization in resistant hostile unco-operative patients is the secretion of adrenalin suggested by the studies of Darrow and Solomon (1940). This is further supported by the aggravation of schizophrenic symptoms by subcutaneous adrenalin as reported by Lindeman (1935) and the decreased sensitivity to it (Kanner, 1918, and Freeman and Carmichael, 1935) which is a natural consequence of adrenalin adaptation according to Hoskins and Rowley (1915) and Rudolph (1938). Ergotamine which desensitizes the carotid sinus has proved effective as therapy (Baber and Tietz, 1937).

We may seek, then, tests of autonomic balance in terms of specific moderator compensatory mechanisms. Symptoms of imbalance may conceivably arise 1, from exaggeration or displacement of one type of autonomic activity such that the normal buffering mechanisms are unable to restore equilibrium, 2, from a deficiency or insensitivity of the moderator mechanisms, 3, displacement of activity in one part of the autonomic system and an overcompensation by the buffer mechanisms as far as other activities of the organism are concerned, and possibly 4, from overactive or oversensitive moderator mechanisms. A tabulation of symptoms might not differentiate these conditions, yet treatment would properly differ according to the cause of the dysfunction.

Tests of autonomic balance which have had wide application are in general of two types (A) those which examine the reaction of the organism or of some of its organs to a specific autonomic stimulus, and (B) those which impose a more or less non-specific load on the organism and attempt to measure the efficiency of the equilibrium maintaining machinery under conditions of regulated stress. Such are really tests, not of static "balance" but of dynamic equilibrium. Space permits only the mention of some of the more common tests of these two types.

A. *Tests of reaction to a specific autonomic stimulus*. Among such tests probably should be included the *oculo-cardiac test* (Aschner) in which pressure on the eyeballs elicits slowing of the heart, said to be marked in "vagotonic" individuals. The effects are different from those for carotid sinus pressure (Mandelsturm and Lipschutz, 1932a, b, Regniers, 1930, Wright, 1932). The oculocardiac effects,

probably primarily vagal, apparently affect pulse more than blood pressure. Carotid sinus pressure causes both vagal stimulation and sympathetic inhibition. Jacobivici and Nitzescu (1929) employ electrical stimulation of the carotid sinus producing effects similar to pressure. The cold-pressor test previously described (p 7) is probably effective primarily as a means of sympathetic stimulation. That this test may be effective because it provides a harmless though moderately severe pain stimulus has probably been given less than due consideration. Orthostatic tests, with or without a tilting table may be mentioned in this connection because of action on the carotid sinus. Correspondence of findings with those obtained by carotid sinus pressure appear not too good. The use of autonomic drugs by various routes should doubtless also be included in this group of tests. In the case of intravenous injections interpretation is always complicated by the fact that peripheral effects and central and carotid sinus compensatory effects may work in opposition. The compensatory effect is often the important one. Reactions to intravenous adrenalin and "wheal" and "flare" reactions to subcutaneous adrenalin may have quite different significance. Tests of reaction to carbon dioxide and to overventilation and attempts to shift the acid-base equilibrium as for example with bicarbonate or ammonium chloride deserve mention in this connection, not only because of the relation of ionic equilibrium to ganglionic and myoneural transmission, but more especially because of the activation by hypocapnia, high pH and calcium of the carotid sinus complex.

It must be emphasized that *a priori* interpretations of such tests involving autonomic stimulation is hazardous. For example, the fact that pressure on the eyes produces marked vagal-like effects in certain individuals does not automatically render this a valid test of "vagotonia." Only demonstration of the correlation of these stimulation effects with results of other valid indicators can be justification for such an interpretation.

B Tests which attain significance because they impose an effective load on the organism and thus provide a means of gauging the effectiveness of various homeostatic mechanisms in handling the load are almost too non-specific to be included as autonomic tests. We should perhaps mention the Schneider (1920) test of cardiovascular efficiency, with its regulated mounting and demounting of a standard staircase. Tests in which the ability of the organism to cope with a low oxygen pressure and acapnia also deserve mention. Apparently it makes little difference whether the subject ascends high altitudes by breathing a low percentage of oxygen from a Douglas bag, by being subjected to reduced pressure in a tank, or by boarding a plane. This adds to the facility and convenience of making such studies. A third class of tests worthy of special mention are the so-called "neurosis" producing tests which permit study of equilibrium maintaining mechanisms which may be upset in emotion.

Such tests tend to go afield from the category of strictly autonomic tests. Metabolic activity, brain function, electroencephalographic activity, electrocardiographic activity, biochemistry and other functions without number may be and are on occasion properly measured in pursuit of information regarding autonomic functions. The only limitation is what can be measured and what is the aspect of autonomic function under consideration.

Batteries of autonomic tests have been employed for the study of autonomic function and balance with a view toward determining individual differences and to throw light on the rôle of the autonomic system in the broader clinical adaptive and psychological relations. The clinical pathological studies of Peterson and collaborators (1930-1938) provide an exploration in this field with clues to possible relationships which should be mentioned. The pharmacologic studies of Meyerson, Loman, Damesbek et al also provide a systematic approach. The correlational studies employing factorial analysis by Darling and by Wenger (1941) suggest possibilities for the application of modern mathematical technics to the solution of autonomic problems where results from batteries of autonomic tests are available. The latter method should reveal any tendency for autonomic test results to be grouped according to any principle. For example, if sympathetic and parasympathetic activities play different and determining rôles these should be derivable by such factorial analyses as indeed they were in the results of Darling. Factorial analysis, it should be pointed out, may reveal relationships which otherwise might escape attention. They cannot, however, impart autonomic significance to tests which are not themselves valid according to acceptable physiologic criteria. Such correlational procedures should nevertheless provide tests for the validity of accepted test technics and assist in the identification of still undiscovered autonomic indicators.

REFERENCES

- ACHESON, G. H., A. ROSENBLUTH and P. F. PARTINGTON. Some afferent nerves producing reflex responses of the nictitating membrane. *Am J Physiol* 115: 308 1936.
- ADSON, A. W. and G. E. BROWN. The treatment of Raynaud's disease by resection of the upper thoracic and lumbar sympathetic ganglia and trunks. *Surg Gynec and Obst* 48: 577 1929.
- ADSON, A. W. Indications for operation on the sympathetic nervous system. *J A M A* 105: 360 1936.
- AGAR, W. T. The action of adrenalin upon the uterus of the guinea pig and its modification by eserine. *J Physiol* 98: 492 1940.
- ANDERSON, H. K. Reflex pupil dilatation by way of the cervical sympathetic nerve. *J Physiol* 30: 15 1904.
- ARMSTRONG, H. G. The blood pressure and pulse rate as an index of emotional stability. *Am J Med Sci* 195: 211 1938.
- ASTWOOD, E. B. Factors influencing the early action of estrogen upon the uterus. *Am J Physiol* 129: 302 1940.
- BABER, E. A. and E. B. TIETZ. The effect of ergotamine tartrate on the behavior of psychotic patients. *Ohio J Med* 17: 551 1937.
- BABKIN, B. P., C. O. HERR and M. A. SERGYZEVA. The parasympathetic like effect of splanchnic nerve stimulation on pancreatic secretion. *Quart J Exper Physiol* 29: 217 1939.
- BACQ, Z. M., L. BROUHA and C. HEYMANS. Reflexes vaso-moteurs d'origine sino-carotidienne chez le chat sympathectomisé. *Compt Rend Soc de Biol* 111: 152 1932.
- BACQ, Z. M. Les propriétés biologiques et physico-chimiques de la sympathine comparées à celles de l'adrenaline. Liège 1933.
- La Pharmacologie du système nerveux autonome et particulièrement du sympathique d'après la théorie neurohumorale. *Ann de Physiol* 10: 467 1934.
- La Transmission chimique des influx dans le système nerveux autonome. *Ergebn d Physiol* 37: 82 1935.

- BACQ, Z M, L BROUHA AND C HEYMANS Réflexes vasomoteurs d'origine sino-carotidienne et actions pharmacologiques chez le chat et le chien sympathectomisés *Arch Internat Pharmacodynam* 48 429, 1934
- BAIN, W A, J T IRVING AND B A McSWINEY The afferent fibres from the abdomen in the splanchnic nerves *J Physiol* 84 322, 1935
- BALASSA, G AND M K GURD Action of adrenaline and potential changes in the cat uterus *J Pharmacol and Exper Therap* 72 63, 1941
- BARD, P A diencephalic mechanism for the expression of rage with special reference to the sympathetic nervous system *Am J Physiol* 84 490, 1928
The neuro-humoral basis of emotional reactions *Foundations of Experimental Psychology*, Chap 12, pp 449-487 Clark Univ Press, 1929
- BARGETON, D Some effects of acute anemia on the transmission of impulses through a sympathetic ganglion *Am J Physiol* 121 261, 1938
- BAUER, M Versuche am Amnion von Huhn and Gans *Arch f exper Path u Pharmacol* 134 49, 1928
- BENDER, M B Sensitized pupillary dilator and facial muscles as indicators of sympathetic and parasympathetic substances in blood *Proc Soc Exper Biol* 39 62, 1938
Fright and drug contractions in denervated facial and ocular muscles of monkeys *Am J Physiol* 121 609, 1938
- BENDER, M B AND S SIEGEL Release of autonomic humoral substances in hypoglycemic cats and monkeys *Am J Physiol* 128 324, 1940
- BENDER, M B AND E A WEINSTEIN Actions of adrenalin and acetylcholine on the denervated iris of the cat and monkey *Am J Physiol* 130 268, 1940
- BERNTHAL, T AND H E MOTLEY The efferent pathway of chemoreflex vasomotor reactions of carotid body origin *Am J Physiol* 126 443, 1939
- BETTENCOURT, J M DE Adrenaline et zone réflexogène carotidienne *Compt Rend Soc de Biol* 120 541, 1935
- BIELINSKI, C AND M WIERZUCHOWSKI Antagonism des gaz dans leur action sur les pressorecepteurs du sinus carotidien *Compt Rend Soc de Biol* 130 1549, 1442, 1939
- BILLIGHEIMER, E Ueber einem Antagonismus zwischen Pilocarpin und Adrenalin Beitrag zur Innervation der Schweiss-drüsen *Arch f exper Path u Pharmacol* 88 172, 1920
- BISHOP, G H, P HEINBECKER AND J O'LEARY The significance in vasomotor responses to vagus and depressor nerve stimulation in the rabbit *Am J Physiol* 109 409, 1934
- BODO, R C AND A E BENAGLIA The effect of sympathin on blood sugar *Am J Physiol* 116 12, 1936
Hyperglycemia produced by sympathin in emotional excitement *Am J Physiol* 121 738, 1938
- BOGUE, J Y AND G STELLA Impulses in the carotid sinus nerve *J Physiol* 82 23, 1934
Afferent impulses in the carotid sinus nerve (nerve of Hering) during asphyxia and anoxemia *J Physiol* 83 459, 1935
- BÖMER, M Ueber die Wirkung einiger Kramfgifte auf Blutzucker und Blutmilchsäure *Arch exper Path u Pharmacol* 149 247, 1930
- BOURDILLOX, R B Vaginal potentials in rabbits *J Physiol* 97 138, 1939
- BOWMAN, K M AND J KASANIN Sugar content of the blood in emotional states *Arch Neurol and Psychiat* 21 342, 1939
- BOZLER, E The action potentials of visceral smooth muscle *Am J Physiol* 124 502, 1938
Electric stimulation and conduction of excitation in smooth muscle *Am J Physiol* 122 614, 1938
Electrophysiological studies on the motility of the gastrointestinal tract *Am J Physiol* 127 301, 1939

- An analysis of the excitatory and inhibitory effects of sympathetic nerve impulse and adrenalin on visceral smooth muscle *Am J Physiol* 130 627 1941
- BRITTON S W The nervous control of insulin secretion *Am J Physiol* 74 291, 1925
The prepotency of medulladrenal influence in emotional hyperglycemia *Am J Physiol* 86: 340 1923
- BROCKOFF, F G AND F KALDENBERG Ueber den Antagonismus von Sympathetic und Vagus unter der Einwirkung adrenalinähnlicher Substanzen *Arch f Exper Path u Pharmacol* 188: 333, 1933
- BRONK D W Afferent impulses in the carotid sinus and aortic nerves *Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med* 28 1014 1931
- BRONK D W AND G STELLA Afferent impulses in the carotid sinus nerve *J Cell and Comp Physiol* 1 113 1932
The response to steady pressures of single end organs in the isolated carotid sinus *Am J Physiol* 110 703 1935
- BRONK, D W L K FERGUSON, R MARGARIA AND D Y SOLANDT Activity in cardiac sympathetic centers *Am J Physiol* 117 237 1936
- BRONK, D W F H LEWY AND M G LARRABEE The hypothalamic control of sympathetic rhythms *Am J Physiol* 118: 15 1936
- BRONK D W AND R. GESELL. Electrical conductivity, electrical potential and H ion concentration measurements on the submaxillary gland of the dog recorded with continuous photographic methods *Am J Physiol* 77: 570 1926
- BRONK, D W, R. F PITTS AND M G LARRABEE Role of hypothalamus in cardiovascular regulation *Assn Res Nerv and Ment Dis The hypothalamus Chap X*, pp 323-341 1940
- BROOKS, C M Reflex activation of the sympathetic system in the spinal cat *Am J Physiol* 106: 251 1933
- BROWN, G E Clinical tests of function of the autonomic system *J A M A* 106: 353, 1933
The treatment of peripheral vascular disturbances of the extremities *J A M A* 87: 379 1926
- BROWN G L Conduction in the cervical sympathetic *J Physiol* 81 223, 1934
- BROWN, G L AND J C ECCLES The action of a single vagal volley on the rhythm of the heart beat *J Physiol* 82 211 1934a
Further experiments on vagal inhibition of the heart beat *J Physiol* 82 242, 1934b
- BUCK, P C The nictitating membrane and the superior cervical ganglion in the rabbit *J Comp Neurol* 43-44 221, 1927
- BULBRING E AND J H. BURN Cholinergic nature of sympathetic vasodilator fibers *J Physiol* 81 42 1934
The sympathetic dilator fibers in the muscles of the cat and dog *J Physiol* 83: 483, 1935
The Sherrington phenomenon *J Physiol* 85 61, 1936
- BURN J H Sympathetic vasodilator fibers *Physiol Revs* 13: 137 1933
- BURN, H S R. T HILL AND E ALLEN Detection of ovulation in the intact rabbit *Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med* 33 109, 1935
- BUTT, H R Chemical mediation of nerve impulses *Arch Neurol and Psychiat.* 37: 141, 1937
- CANNON, W B Bodily changes in pain hunger fear and rage *New York D Appleton*, 1915 1920
- CANNON W B AND S W BRITTON Pseudoaffective medulladrenal secretion *Am J Physiol* 72: 283 1923
The influence of motion and emotion on medulladrenal secretion *Am. J Physiol* 79: 433 1927
- CANNON W B J T LEWIS AND S W BRITTON Studies on the conditions of activity in endocrine glands *Am J Physiol* 77: 326 1926

- CANNON, W B AND A ROSENBLUETH Studies on conditions of activity in endocrine organs, sympathin E and sympathin I *Am J Physiol* 104 557, 1933
 A comparison of the effects of sympathin and adrenine on the iris *Am J Physiol* 113 251, 1935
 A comparative study of sympathin and adrenine *Am J Physiol* 112 268, 1935
 Autonomic neuro-effector systems New York, Macmillan, 1937
- CANNON, W B AND J E URIDIL Some effects on the denervated heart of stimulating the nerves of the liver *Am J Physiol* 58 353, 1921
- CARLSON, H B, E GELLHORN AND C W DARROW Representation of the sympathetic and parasympathetic nervous system in the forebrain of the cat *Arch Neurol and Psychiat* 45 105, 1941
- CASAS, J AND K HINSBERG Ueber Insulinempfindlichkeit und Sinus carotidiens *Klin Wchnschr* 11 641, 1932
- CATTELL, M, H G WOLFF AND D CLARK The liberation of adrenergic and cholinergic substances in the submaxillary gland *Am J Physiol* 109 375, 1934
- CHANG, H C AND J H GADDUM Choline esters in tissue extracts *J Physiol* 79 255, 1935
- CHANG, S A comparative study of the effect of adrenaline on the blood sugar, blood pressure, denervated heart, nictitating membrane, stomach, iris, hair and salivary gland in the cat *Chinese J Physiol* 12 397, 1937
- CHU, L W AND F Y HSU The effect of adrenalin on vasomotor reflexes *J Exper Physiol* 27 307, 1938
- CLARK, G A The influence of the vagus nerves on the secretion of insulin *J Physiol* 73 297, 1931
 The vaso-dilator action of adrenaline *J Physiol* 80 429, 1934
- COMBIE, J H AND C F SCHMIDT The part played by reflexes from the carotid body in the chemical regulation of respiration in the dog *Am J Physiol* 121 75, 1938
- CORBIN, K B AND J C HINSEY Dorsal roots of spinal nerves and regulation of skin temperature *Proc Soc Exper Biol* 2 368, 1935
- CRAIG, W M Hypertension and its surgical treatment *South Surgeon* 7 140, 1938
- CRAIG, W M, T HORTON AND C SHEARD Thermal changes in peripheral vascular diseases during sympathetic ganglionectomy *J Clin Investigation* 12 573, 1933
- CROUCH, L AND K THOMPSON Autonomic functions of the cerebral cortex *J Nerv and Ment Disease* 89 328, 1939
- CUSHNY, A R On the movements of the uterus *J Physiol* 35 1, 1906
 The action of atropine, pilocarpine, and physostigmine *J Physiol* 41 233, 1910
- DALE, H H On some physiological actions of ergot *J Physiol* 34 163, 1906
 A survey of present knowledge of the chemical regulation of certain functions by natural constituents of the tissues *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 53 297, 1933
- DALE, H H AND W FELDBERG The chemical transmission of secretory impulses to the sweat glands of the cat *J Physiol* 82 121, 1934
- DALE, H H AND J H GADDUM Reactions of denervated voluntary muscle and their bearing on the mode of action of parasympathetic and related nerves *J Physiol* 70 109, 1930
- DANIELOPOLU, D, I MARCOU AND G G PROCA Sur le Réflexe Respiratoire sinocarotidien Filets centripètes sino-carotidiens excitable et inhibiteurs *Compt rend Soc de Biol* 106 734, 1931
 Sur le tonus respiratoire sino-carotidienne Mécanisme du fonctionnement des centres respiratoires *Compt rend Soc de Biol* 106 737, 1931
- DARLING, R P Autonomic action in relation to personality traits of children *J Abn and Soc Psychol* 35 246, 1940
- DARLING, R P AND C W DARROW Determining activity of the autonomic nervous system from measurements of autonomic change *J Psychol* 5 85, 1938

- DARROW, C W Sensory secretory and alectrical changes in the ekin following bodily ex-
citation J Exper Psychol 10 192 1927
The relation of the galvanic akin reflex recovery curve to reactivity resistance
level and perspiration J Gen Psychol 7 261 1932
Quantitative records of cutaneous secretory reactions J Gen Psychol 11:
445, 1934
The galvanic akin reflex (sweating) and blood pressure as preparatory and facili-
tative functions Psychol Bull 33 73 1936
Neural mechanisms controlling the palmar galvanic akin reflex and palmar sweat-
ing Arch Neurol and Psychiat 37 641, 1937
- DARROW, C W AND E GELLHORN The effects of adrenalin on the reflex excitability of
the autonomic nervous system Am J Physiol 127 243 1939
- DARROW, C W H JOST A. P. SOLOMON AND J C MEROENER Autonomic indications of
excitatory and homeostatic effects on the electroencephalogram J Psychol 14
115 1942
- DARROW C W AND A P SOLOMON Galvanic skin reflex and blood pressure reactions in
psychotic states Arch Neurol and Psychiat 32 273, 1934
- DARROW C W A P SOLOMON AND M BLAUROCK Blood pressure and palmar sweat
(galvanic) responses of psychotic patients before and after insulin and metrazol
therapy Psychosom Med 1: 118 1939
- DARROW C W AND A P SOLOMON Mutism and resistance behavior in psychotic patients
Am J Psychiat 96 1441 1940
- DAVIA H A. ROSENBLUETH AND B REMPEL Interpretation of the electrogram of certain
smooth muscles Am J Psychol 116 85 1936
- ECCLES, J C AND J W MAGLADERY The excitation and response of smooth muscles
J Physiol 90 31 1937
- ECCLES J C AND J W MAGLADERY Rhythmic responses of smooth muscle J Physiol
90 68 1937
- ELLIOTT T R The control of the suprarenal glands by the splanchnic nerves J Physiol
44: 374 1912
The innervation of the adrenal glands J Physiol 46 285 1913
- EPPINGER, H AND L HESS Zur Pathologie des vegetativen Nervensystems Ztschr f
klin Med 66 345 68 205 1909
- ESCURO, P Pilocarpine and atropine tests. Endocrinology 7: 305 1923
- EULER, U S AND J H GADNUM Pseudomotor contractures after degeneration of the
facial nerve J Physiol 73: 54 1931
- EULER, U S Action of adrenaline acetylcholine and other substances on nerve-free ves-
sels (human placenta) J Physiol 93: 129 1938
- FELDBERG, W B MINZ AND H TAUBENHUR The mechanism of the nervous discharge
of adrenalin J Physiol 80: 15, 1934
- FENTRESS T L AND A P SOLOMON Galvanic skin reflex and Danielopolu test in psycho-
neurotic patients Arch Neurol Psychiat 35 770 1936
- FERRIS, E. B R. B CAPPS AND S WEISS Carotid sinus syncope and its bearing on the
mechanism of the unconscious state and convulsions Med 14 377 1935
- FISCHER M H AND H LÖWENBACH Aktionsströme des Ganglion ciliatum und des
Nervus depressor Pflüger's Arch 233 722 1934
- FISCHER M H W H GANTT AND H LÖWENBACH Aktionsströme des Nervus vagus beim
Warmblüter Pflüger's Arch 233: 732 1934
- FREEDBERG A S AND L H SLOAN Association of carotid sinus reflexes with syncope
and convulsions Arch Neurol and Psychiat 36: 761, 1937
- FREEMAN H AND H T CARMICHAEL A pharmacodynamic study of the autonomic ner-
vous system in normal men The effects of intravenous injections of epinephrine
atropin ergotamine and physostigmina upon the blood pressure and pulse rate
J Pharmacol and Exper Therap 58 409 1936 Arch Neurol and Psychiat
33: 342 1935

- FREEMAN, H, R G HOSKINS AND F H SLEEPER The blood pressure in schizophrenia
Arch Neurol and Psychiat 27 333, 1932
- GADDUM, J H Gefässerweiternde Stoffe der Gewebe Leipzig, 1936
- GAMMON, G D AND D W BRONK The discharge of impulses from Pacinian corpuscles in the mesentery and its relation to vascular changes Am J Physiol 114 77 1935
- GANTOR, G Ueber sogenannte vagotonische and sympathikotonische Symptome München med Wchnschr 72 1411, 1925
- GASSER, H S AND H H DALE The pharmacology of denervated mammalian muscle II Some phenomena of antagonisms and the formation of lactic acid in chemical contracture J Pharmacol 28 237, 1926
- GELLHORN, E The action of hypoglycemia on the central nervous system and the problem of schizophrenia from the physiologic point of view J A M A 110 1433, 1938
- GELLHORN, E, R CORTELL AND J FELDMAN The effect of emotion, sham rage and hypothalamic stimulation on the vago-insulin system Am J Physiol 133 532, 1941
- GELLHORN, E AND C W DARROW The action of metrazol on the autonomic nervous system Arch Internat Pharm and Therap 62 114, 1939
- GELLHORN, E, C W DARROW AND L YESINICK Effect of epinephrine on convulsions Arch Neurol and Psychiat 42 826, 1939
Effect of variation of blood pressure on the autonomic nervous system Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 43 236, 1940
- GELLHORN, E, J FELDMAN AND R CORTELL On the vago-insulin and sympathico adrenal system and their mutual relationship under conditions of central excitation induced by anoxia and convulsant drugs Am J Physiol 131 281, 1940
- GELLHORN, E AND J FELDMAN The influence of fever on the vago insulin and sympathico adrenal systems Endocrinology 29 141, 1941
The influence of cold and heat on the vago-insulin and the sympathico-adrenal systems Am J Physiol 133 670, 1941
- GELLHORN, E, J FELDMAN AND A ALLEN Assay of insulin on hypophysectomized-adreno demedullated rat Endocrinology 29 137, 1941, Am J Physiol 133 193, 1941
Effect of emotional excitement on the insulin content of the blood Arch Neurol and Psychiat 47 234, 1941
- GEMMILL, D L, E W OVERSTREET AND L M HELLMAN The effect of occlusion of the carotid arteries on heart and respiratory rates before and after denervation of the carotid sinus in normal dogs Am J Physiol 105 36, 1933
- GESELL, R, C R BRASSFIELD AND M A HAMILTON An acid neuro-humoral mechanism of nerve cell activation Am J Physiol 136 604, 1942
- GIBSON, G G Clinical significance of retinal changes in hypertensive toxemias of pregnancy J Ophthal 21 22, 1938
- GILDAE, E F, V L MAILHOUSE AND D P MORRIS Relationship between various emotional disturbances and the sugar content of the blood Am J Psychiat 92 115, 1935
- GREER, C M, J O PINKSTON, J H BAXTER AND E S BRANNON Nor epinephrine [B-(3,4-Dehydroxyphenyl)-B-Hydroxylamine] as a possible mediator in the sympathetic division of the autonomic system J Pharmacol and Exper Therap 62 189, 1938
- GRIMSON, K S Rôle of the sympathetic nervous system in experimental neurogenic hypertension Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 44 219, 1940, Arch Surg 43 284, 1941
- GUTTMANN, G L Die Schweisssekretion des Menschen in ihren Beziehungen zum Nervensystem Ztschr f d ges Neurol u Psychiat 135 1, 1931
- HALLUM, A V Eye changes in hypertensive toxemia of pregnancy J A M A 106 1649, 1936

- HAMPEL, C W The effect of denervation on the sensitivity to adrenaline of the smooth muscle in the clotting membrane of the cat *Am J Physiol* 111 611 1935
- HARPER A A AND B A McSWINEY Ascending spinal pathways of the pupillo-dilator fibres *J Physiol* 90 395 1937
- HARPER, A A B A McSWINEY AND S F SUFFOLK Afferent fibres from the abdomen in the vagus nerves *Am J Physiol* 85 267, 1935
- HARRIS, R E AND D J INGLE The influence of destruction of adrenal medulla on emotional hyperglycemia in rats *Am J Physiol* 120 420 1937
- HARTMAN F A, J I EVANS B T MALACHOWSKI AND L M MICHALEK Effect of sympathetic nerve stimulation upon the capillaries and fibers of skeletal muscle *Am J Physiol* 85 99 1928
- HARTMAN F A, J I EVANS AND H G WALKER The action of epinephrin upon the capillaries and fibers of skeletal muscle *Am. J Physiol* 85 91 1928
- HENDERSON Y H W HAGGARD AND F S DOLLEY The efficiency of the heart and the significance of rapid and slow pulse rates *Am J Physiol* 82 512, 1927
- HERING H E Der Karotisdrukversuch *München med Wchnschr* 70: 1287 1923
Die Karotissinus Reflexe auf Herz u Gefäße *Dresden* 1927
- HERWICK R P C R. LINKOAR AND T KOFFANY The effect of anesthesia on the vasomotor reversal *J Pharmacol and Exper Therap* 85: 185 1939
- HERTZMAN A B Photoelectric plethysmography and apygmography in man and animal *Am J Physiol* 123 99, 1938
- HERTZMAN, A B AND J B DILLON Reaction of large and small arteries in man to vasoconstrictor stimuli *Am J Physiol* 130: 55 1940
- HEYMANS C Sur les actions vasomotrices réflexes déterminées par les variations de la pression artérielle dans la circulation céphalique *Compt Rend Soc de Biol* 99: 1236 1928
Le sinus carotidien isolé et perfusé zone réflexogène régulatrice de l'adrenalino sécrétion *Compt Rend de Soc de Biol* 100: 199 1929
Sur la régulation réflexe du tonus vasomoteur et de l'adrénalinosecrétion en rapport avec la pression artérielle *Compt Rend Soc de Biol* 100 785 1929
Le sinus carotidien et les autres zones vasosensibles réflexogènes *Rev Belge d Sc Med* 1: 507, 1929
Recherches sur la physiologie et la pharmacologie du sinus carotidien *Am J Physiol* 90: 387 1929
- HEYMANS C AND J J BOUCKAERT Observations chez le chien en hypertension artérielle chronique et expérimentelle *Comp Rend Soc de Biol* 106 471 1931
Hypertension artérielle expérimentale et sympathectomie *Compt Rend Soc de Biol* 120: 83 1935
Sinus carotidien et réflexes respiratoire *Compt Rend Soc de Biol* 103 498 1930
Sinus carotidus and respiratory reflexes *J Physiol* 69 254 1930
- HEYMANS C J J BOUCKAERT S FARBER AND F Y Hsu Influence de l'acetylcholine sur récepteurs chimio-sensitifs du sinus carotidien *Compt Rend Soc de Biol* 120 1354 1935
Spinal vasomotor reflexes associated with variations in blood pressure *Am J Physiol* 117: 619 1936
- HEYMANS C R REONTERS AND J J BOUCKAERT Ergotamine et réflexes vasomoteurs la localisation de l'action de l'ergotamine sur les réflexes vasomoteurs du sinus carotidien *Arch Intern de Pharm et de Therapie* 39 213 1930
- HILL, I G W Stimulation of vagus nerve and carotid sinus in man. *Quart J Exper Physiol* 22 79 1932
- HINES E A AND G E BROWN A standard test for measuring the variability of blood pressure; its significance as an index of the prehypertensive state *Ann Int. Med* 7 209, 1933

- A standard stimulus for measuring vasomotor reactions, its application in the study of hypertension *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin* 7 332, 1932
- HINSEY, J C AND H S GASSER The component of the dorsal root mediating vasodilatation and the Sherrington contracture *Am J Physiol* 92 679, 1930
The Sherrington Phenomenon I, II, III Antagonism by adrenalin *Am J Physiol* 87 368, 1928
- HINSEY, J C, R A PHILLIPS AND K HARE Observations on cats following pre-and post-ganglionic sympathectomies *Am J Physiol* 126 534, 1939
- HODES, R AND H W MAGOUN A further study of pupillary responses to electrical stimulation of the forebrain and midbrain *Am J Physiol* 133 330, 1941
- HOLDIN, R B Vascular reactions of the uterus of the immature rat *Endocrinology* 25 593, 1939
- HOLLINSHEAD, W H The innervation of the adrenal glands *J Comp Neurol* 64 449, 1936
- HOSKINS, R G, R E L GUNNING AND E L BERRY The effects of adrenin on the distribution of the blood *Am J Physiol* 41 513, 1916
- HOSKINS, R G AND W N ROWLEY The effects of epinephrin infusion on vasomotor irritability *Am J Physiol* 37 471, 1915
- HOSKINS, R G AND A WALSH Oxygen consumption (basal metabolic rate) in schizophrenia *Arch Neurol and Psychiat* 28 1346, 1932
- HOUSSAY, B A AND J T LEWIS *Etudes sur les hyperglycémies expérimentales* Mechanisme nerveux de l'action de la morphine *Compt Rend Soc Biol* 89 1120, 1923
- Hsu, F Y AND L CHU The diffuse vasotatic reflex *Chinese J Physiol* 12 37, 1937
- HYNDMAN, O R AND J WOLKIN Sweat mechanisms in man Study of distribution of sweat fibers from the sympathetic ganglia, spinal roots, spinal cord and common carotid artery *Arch Neurol and Psychiat* 45 446, 1941a
The pilocarpine sweating test A valid indicator in differentiation of preganglionic and postganglionic sympathectomy *Arch Neurol and Psychiat* 45 992, 1941b
- ISSEKUTZ, B V AND M V LENZINGER Ueber die pharmakologische Wertbestimmung des Mutterkorns *Arch f exper Path u Pharmacol* 129 165, 1928
- IZQUIERDO, J J Influence of the aortic and carotid sinus nerves upon the height and form of the rise of blood pressure produced by peripheral stimulation of the splanchnic nerve *J Physiol* 70 221, 1930
- JACOBOWICZ, J, J J MITZESCU AND A POP Experimentelle Untersuchungen über die Physiologie der carotisdrüse beim Menschen *Ztschr f d ges exper Med* 66 359, 1929
- JOSEPH, D R The inhibitory influence of the cervical sympathetic nerve upon the sphincter muscle of the iris *Am J Physiol* 55 279, 1921
The mutually antagonistic actions of adrenalin and physostigmin upon the sphincter muscle of the iris *J Pharmacol and Exper Therap* 9 358, 1916-17
- KANNER, L The adrenalin blood pressure curves in dementia praecox and emotional psychoses *Am J Psychiat* 8 75, 1918
- KARPLUS, J P AND A KREIDL Sympathicusleitung im Gehirn und Halsmark *Pflüger's Arch* 129 138, 1911
- KAUFMAN, W Effects of chemical stimulation of the carotid body upon the reflex contraction of the tibialis anticus muscle *Am J Physiol* 123 677, 1938
- KEITH, N M, N P WAGENER AND J W KERNOHAN Syndrome of malignant hypertension *Arch Int Med* 41 141, 1928
- KENNARD, J H The reversal by progesterin of the response of the non-pregnant uterus of the cat *Am J Physiol* 118 190, 1937
- KING, C E Studies of intestinal inhibitory reflexes *Am J Physiol* 70 183, 1924
The effect of double vagotomy and carotid sinus denervation on the reaction of

- KOCH, E Die Irradiation der pressoreceptorischen Kreislaufreflexe *Klin Wchnschr* 11 225, 1932
Klinische Beobachtungen zum Karotidsdrückversuch *München med Wchnschr* 70: 1316, 1923
- LA BARRE AND O VESSELOVSKY Contributions à l'étude des variations physiologiques de la sécrétion interne du pancréas le pneumogastrique nerf insulino-sécréteur chez le chat *Arch Int de Physiol* 37 188 1933
- LAMBERT E F AND A ROSENBLUTH A further study of the electric responses of smooth muscle *Am J Physiol* 114 147 1935
- LANDIS C AND H N DE WICK The electrical phenomena of the skin (psychogalvanic reflex) *Psychol Bull* 26 64 1929
- LANDIS C Electrical phenomena of the skin *Psychol Bull* 29 693, 1932
- LANDIS E M AND J H GIBSON A simple method of producing vasodilatation in the lower extremities with reference to its usefulness in studies of peripheral vascular disease *Arch Int Med* 62 735 1933
- LANGLEY J N On the reaction of cells and of nerve endings to certain poisons (nerve endings and receptive substance) *J Physiol* 33:374 1905
- LANOLEY J N AND K. UYENO The secretion of sweat II The effect of vasoconstriction and of adrenalin; *J Physiol* 56:207, 1922
- LANGWORTHY, O R AND C P RICHTER The influence of efferent cerebral pathways upon the sympathetic nervous system *Brain* 53 173, 1930
- LENNOX W G F A GIBBS AND E L GIBBS Relationship of unconsciousness to cerebral blood flow and to anoxemia *Arch Neurol and Psychiat* 34:1001 1935
- LIEBEN S AND R. H. KAHN Die emotionelle Reaction der Pupille *Pflügers Arch* 225: 699 1930
- LINDEGAR C R The effect of ergotamine on the hemodynamic actions of acetylcholine *J Pharmacol and Exper Therap* 66:22, 1939
- LINDEMANN E The psychopathological effect of drugs affecting the vegetative system I Adrenalin *Am J Psychiat* 91:633 1935
- LIST F AND M M PEET Sweat secretion in man *Arch Neurol and Psychiat* 39 1223 1933 40:27 269, 443, 1933 42 1098, 1939
- LIU, A C The cooperative action of sympathetic nerve impulses, adrenaline and sympathin on the clotting membrane of the cat *Am J Physiol* 112:690, 1935
- LIU A C AND A ROSENBLUTH Reflex liberation of circulating sympathin *Am J Physiol* 113 555, 1935
- LOEWI, O AND E NAVRATIL Ueber humorale Uebertragbarkeit der Herznervenwirkung Ueber den Mechanismus der Vaguswirkung von Physostigmin und Ergotamin *Pflügers Arch* 214:689, 1923
- LOEW E R AND T L PATTERSON The reflex influence of the lower portion of the large gut on the tone and movements of the empty stomach in dogs *Am J Physiol* 113 89 1935
- LUMLEY, F H AND L. B. NICE Blood sugar of adrenalectomized rats *Am J Physiol* 83 152 1930
- MACFARLAND W E AND H. A. DAVENPORT Adrenal innervation *J Comp Neurol* 75 219 1941
- MAGOUN H W S W RANSON AND N M HETHERINGTON The liberation of adrenalin and sympathin induced by stimulation of the hypothalamus *Am J Physiol* 119 615 1937
- MALMÉJAC, J, V DONNET AND E DESANTI Sur un des mécanismes par lequel une injection continue d'adrénaline réduit l'adrénalino-sécrétion *Compt Rend Soc de Biol* 119 1155 1935
Injection continue d'adrénaline et adrénalino-sécrétion *Compt Rend Soc de Biol* 119 1152 1935

- MANDELSTAMM, M AND S LIFSCHITZ Die Wirkung der Augenreflexe (des Aschnerschen Bulbusdrucksversuches) auf der Blutdruck Wien Arch f inn Med 22 435, 1932
Die Wirkung der Karotissinusreflexe auf den Blutdruck beim Menschen Wien Arch f inn Med 22 397, 1932
- MARINESCO, G AND A KREINDLER Les reflexes du sinus carotidiens en pathologie nerveuse J de Physiol et de Path 29 77, 1931
- MARINESCO, G, A KREINDLER AND A BRUCH Weitere Beiträge zum Studium der Reflexe des Sinus caroticus in der Epilepsie Ztschr f d ges exper Med 79 333, 1931
- MARRAZZI, A S A self-limiting mechanism in sympathetic homeostatic adjustment Science 90 251, 1939
Electrical studies on the pharmacology of autonomic synapses J Pharmacol and Exper Therap 65 18, 1939
- MATTHES, K The action of blood on acetylcholine J Physiol 70 338, 1930
- MCCOWAN, P K AND J H QUASTIL Blood sugar studies in abnormal states J Ment Sc 77 525, 1931
- MCQUARRIE, I, M R ZEIGLER, O H WANGENSTEEN AND C DENNIS Mechanism of insulin convulsions III Effects of varying partial pressures of atmospheric gases after adrenalectomy Proc Soc Exper Biol Med 42 513, 1939
- MCSWINEY, B A AND S F SUFFOLK Segmental distribution of certain visceral afferent neurones of the pupillodilator reflex in the cat J Physiol 93 104, 1938
- MEDUNA, L J, F J GERTY AND V G URSE Biochemical disturbances in mental disorders, anti insulin effect of blood in cases of schizophrenia Arch Neurol and Psychiat 44 38, 1942
- MILLER, G H The effect of cocaine on the iris compared with its effect on certain other structures containing smooth muscle J Pharmacol and Exper Therap 28 219, 1926
- MINOR, V Ein neues Verfahren zu der klinischen Untersuchung der Schweissabsonderung Zeitschr f Nervenheilk 101 302, 1928
- MORISON, R S The effects of adrenalin and of nerve stimulation of the mechanical and electric responses of uterine muscle Am J Physiol 128 372, 1940
- MORISON, R S AND G H ACHESON Effects of acetylcholine and adrenalin on nictitating membrane Am J Physiol 121 149, 1938
- MYERSON, A, J LOMAN AND W DAMESHEK Physiologic effects of acetyl-beta-methylcholine (mecholy) and its relationship to other drugs affecting the autonomic nervous system Am J Med Sc 193 198, 1937
- NECHELES, H AND F NEUWELT Antagonism between posterior pituitary secretion and acetylcholine Am J Physiol 124 142, 1938
- NEWTON, H F, R L ZWEMER AND W B CANNON The mystery of emotional acceleration of the denervated heart after exclusion of known humeral accelerators Am J Physiol 96 377, 1931
- ORIAS, O Response of the nictitating membrane to prolonged stimulation of the cervical sympathetic Am J Physiol 102 87, 1932
- PARTINGTON, P P The production of sympathin in response to physiological stimuli in the unanesthetized animal Am J Physiol 117 55, 1936
- PARTRIDGE, R C AND M J WILSON Gastric impulses in the vagus J Cell and Comp Physiol 4 123, 1933
- PEARCY, J F AND E J VAN LIERE Studies of the visceral nervous system Reflexes from the colon 1 Reflexes to the stomach Am J Physiol 78 64, 1926
- PETERSON, W F AND S A LEVINSON The skin reactions, blood chemistry and physical status of "normal" men and of clinical patients Ann Arbor, Edwards Bros, 1930
- PETERSON, W F AND M E MILLIKEN The patient and the weather Vols I-IV Ann Arbor, Edwards Bros, 1934-1938

- PITTS, R F Excitation and inhibition of phrenic motor neurones *J Neurophysiol* 5 75, 1942
- PITTS R. F AND D W BRONK Excitability cycle of the hypothalamus-sympathetic neurone system *Am J Physiol* 135 504 1942
- PITTS R. F M G LARRABEE AND D W BRONK An analysis of hypothalamic cardiovascular control *Am J Physiol* 134 359 1941
- PLANELLES J Ueber die Zusammenwirkung von Ergotamin und Adrenalin am Meerschweinchendarm *Arch f Exper Peth u Pharmacol* 105 38, 1924
- POOS F Pharmacologische und physiologische Untersuchungen an den isolierten Irismuskeln *Arch f Exper Path u Pharmacol* 126 307 1927
- REBOUL, J H DAVIS AND H B FRIEDGOOD Electrical studies of ovulation in the rabbit *Am J Physiol* 120 724, 1937
- REGUIERS P Nerfs cardio aortiques et sino-carotidiens rythmiques cardiaques expérimentales chez le lapin Influence de l'ergotamine *Arch Internat de Pharmecodyn et de Therapie* 39 371 1930
- Le sinus carotidien en clinique *Rev Belge des sc Med* 2 601 1930
- REYNOLDS S R M Physiology of the uterus with clinical correlations New York, Hoeber, 1939
- REYNOLDS S R M AND F I FOSTER Acetylcholine-equivalent content of the uterus and placenta in rabbits *Am J Physiol* 127 843 1939
- Relative cholinergic effects of selected estrogens *Am J Physiol* 128: 147, 1939
- Species differences in the cholinergic action of estrogen *Am J Physiol* 131 200 1940
- RICHTER C P The significance of changes in electrical resistance of the body during sleep *Proc Nat Acad Sci* 12 214 1926
- A study of the electrical skin resistance and the psychogalvanic reflex in a case of unilateral sweating *Brain* 50 216 1927
- RICHTER, C P AND B G WOODBRUFF Facial patterns of electrical skin resistance Their relation to sleep external temperature hair distribution sensory dermatomes and skin disease *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 70 442 1942
- Changes produced by sympathectomy in the electrical resistance of the skin. *Surgery* 10 957, 1941
- ROBSON, J M AND H O SCHILD Response of the cat's uterus to the hormones of the posterior pituitary lobe *J Physiol* 92 1 1938
- Effect of drugs on the blood flow and activity of the uterus *J Physiol* 92: 9, 1938
- ROOME, N W The effects of intra-arterial epinephrin on the blood flow in an extremity *Am J Physiol* 123 543 1938
- ROSENBLUETH A The action of certain drugs on the nictitating membrane *Am J Physiol* 100 443 1932
- ROSENBLUETH A AND P BARD The innervation and functions of the nictitating membrane in the cat *Am J Physiol* 100 537 1932
- ROSENBLUETH A AND W B CANNON The adequacy of the chemical theory of smooth muscle excitation *Am J Physiol* 116 414 1936
- Some effects of sympathin on the nictitating membrane *Am J Physiol* 99: 398, 1932
- The chemical mediation of sympathetic vasodilator nerve impulses *Am J Physiol* 112 33 1935
- ROSENBLUETH A, H DAVIS AND B REMPEL The physiological significance of the electric responses of smooth muscle *Am J Physiol* 116: 387 1936
- The electrograms of the pilomotor muscles *Am J Physiol* 116 131 1936
- ROSENBLUETH A A FORBES AND E LAMBERT Electric responses in the submaxillary gland *Am J Physiol* 105 503 1933
- ROSENBLUETH A C LEASE AND E LAMBERT Electrical potentials in smooth muscle *Am J Physiol* 103 659 1933

- ROSENBLUETH, A AND R S MORISON A quantitative study of the production of sympathin *Am J Physiol* 109 209, 1934
- ROSENBLUETH, A AND R A PHILLIPS Sympathin and the hepatic sympathicomimetic hormone in the dog *Am J Physiol* 102 332, 1932
- ROSENBLUETH, A AND H G SCHWARTZ Reflex responses of the nictitating membrane *Am J Physiol* 112 422, 1935
- ROSENBLUETH, A AND F A SIMEONE The interrelations of vagal and accelerator effects on the cardiac rate *Am J Physiol* 110 42, 1934
- ROTHLIN, E The specific action of ergot alkaloids on the sympathetic nervous system *J Pharmacol and Exper Therap* 36 658, 1929
- RUDOLPH, G DEM Unusual results following the injection of epinephrine *Endocrinology* 23 366, 1938
- SAMAAN, A AND G STELLA The response of the chemical receptors of the carotid sinus to the tension of CO in the arterial blood of the cat *J Physiol* 85 309, 1935
- SCHMIDT, C F Carotid sinus reflexes to the respiratory center *Am J Physiol* 102 94, 119, 1932
- SCHNEIDER, E C A cardiovascular rating as a measure of physical fatigue and efficiency *J A M A* 74 1507, 1920
- SCHNEIDER, E C AND D TRUESDALE A statistical study of the pulse rate and arterial blood pressure in recumbency, standing, and after a standard exercise *Am J Physiol* 61 429, 1922
- SCHWEITZER, A AND S WRIGHT The action of adrenalin on the knee jerk *J Physiol* 88 476, 1937
- SCHWARTZ, H G Effect of experimental lesions of the cortex on the "psychogalvanic reflex" in the cat *Arch Neurol and Psychiat* 38 308, 1937
- SCOTT, W J M AND J J MORTON Obliteration of vasoconstrictor gradient in the extremities under nitrous oxide-oxygen, ether, and tribromethyl alcohol anaesthetics *Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med* 27 945, 1930
- Sympathetic activity in certain diseases, especially those of the peripheral circulation *Arch Int Med* 48 1065, 1931
- SECKER, J The chemical agent in the sympathetic control of retraction of the nictitating membrane of the cat *J Physiol* 89 296, 1937
- SHAKLER, A O, K CHRISTENSEN AND A KAPLAN Action of drugs, nerves and electric current in iris sphincter *Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med* 34 399, 1936
- SHEEHAN, D The autonomic nervous system *Ann Rev Physiol* 3 399, 1941
- SHERIF, M A F Chemical transmitter of sympathetic nerves to the uterus *J Physiol* 85 298, 1935
- SHOCK, N W AND M J SCHLATTER Pulse rate response of adolescents to auditory stimuli *J Exper Psychol* 30 414, 1942
- SHPINER, L B The effect of ergotamine on the blood sugar level *J Physiol* 88 245, 1929
- SIMEONE, F A The effect of regeneration of the nerve supply on the sensitivity of the denervated nictitating membrane to adrenaline *Am J Physiol* 120 466, 1937
- SOSKIN, S Metabolic function of the endocrine glands *Ann Rev Physiol* 3 543, 1941, *Physiol Rev* 21 140, 1941
- SPYCHALA, W Ueber den Einfluss der pressorezeptorischen Reflexerfolge auf die Aktionsströme von Skelettmuskeln *Verhandl d deutsch Gesellsch f Kreislaufforsch* 25 140, 1933
- STELLA, G The action of adrenalin upon the cardiac vagus centers *J Physiol* 77 68, 1932-33
- TARCHANOFF, J Ueber die galvanischen Erscheinungen an der Haut des Menschen bei Reizung der Sinnesorgane und bei verschiedenen Formen der psychischen Tätigkeit *Pflüger's Arch* 46 46, 1890
- THIENNES, C H Action of ergot alkaloids on intestine and uterus *Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med* 26 501, 1929

- THOMAS C B AND C M BROOKS The effect of sympathectomy on the vasomotor carotid sinus reflexes of the cat *Am J Physiol* 120: 105, 1937
- TOURNADE A AND J MALMÉJAC Diversité des actions réflexes que déclenche l'excitation du sinus carotidien et de son nerf *Compt Rend Soc de Biol* 100: 708 1929
- TOWER S S AND C P RICHTER. Injury and repair within the sympathetic nervous system I The preganglionic neurones *Arch Neurol and Psychiat* 28: 485 1931
- II The post ganglionic neurones *Arch Neurol and Psychiat* 28: 1139 1932
- URY, B AND E GELLHORN Rôle of the sympathetic system in reflex dilatation of pupil *J Neurophysiol* 2: 268 1939
- VAN DYKE H B AND R G GUSTAVSON On the pregnancy response of the uterus of the cat *J Pharmacol and Exper Therap* 37: 379 1929
- VERCAUTEREN E Influence de l'injection sous-cutanée de cocaïne sur les réflexes vasomoteurs *Compt Rend Soc de Biol* 103: 244 1931
- Recherches sur la pharmacologie des réflexes vasomoteurs du sinus carotidien *Arch Internat de Pharmacodyn et de Therap* 42: 339 1932
- WAGENER M P Arterioles of retina in toxemia of pregnancy *J A M A* 101: 1380, 1933
- WANG G H AND T W LU Galvanic skin reflex induced in the cat by stimulation of the motor area of the cerebral cortex *Chinese J Physiol* 4: 303 1930
- WANG G H T W LU AND T T LAU Pupillary dilatation from cortical stimulation *Chinese J Physiol* 6: 225 1932
- WATKINS, A L Reflex responses of the nictitating membrane and the blood pressure to distention of the bladder and rectum *Am J Physiol* 121: 82 1938
- WEISS E Recent advances in the pathogenesis and treatment of hypertension *Psychosom Med* 1: 180 1939
- WEISS S AND J P BAKER The carotid sinus reflex in health and disease *Med* 12: 297, 1933
- Dizziness, fainting and convulsions due to hyperactivity of the carotid sinus reflex *Proc Soc Exper Med and Biol* 30: 614 1933
- WEISS S R B CAPPS, E B FERRIS AND D MUNRO Syncope and convulsions due to a hyperactive carotid sinus reflex. *Arch Int Med* 58: 407 1936
- WETHERELL, H E Hygromedry Philadelphia Ellis Johnson and Co., 1905 (4th ed.), pp 1-82
- WHITE, J C Diagnostic blocking of sympathetic nerves to extremities with procain A test to evaluate the benefit of sympathetic ganglionectomy *J A M. A* 94: 1882, 1930
- WHITE, B V AND E. F GILDEA 'Cold pressor test' in tension and anxiety a cardio-chronographic study *Arch Neurol and Psychiat* 38: 964 1937
- WHITEHORN J C The blood sugar in relation to emotional reactions *Am J Psychiat* 13: 987, 1934
- WHITEHORN, J C AND H RICHTER Unsteadiness of the heart rate in psychotic and neurotic states *Arch Neurol and Psychiat* 38: 62 1937
- WHITELAW, G P AND J C SNYDER The physiological production of sympathin in the liver *Am J Physiol* 110: 247, 1934
- WINDER C V On the mechanism of stimulation of carotid gland chemoreceptors *Am J Physiol* 118: 389 1937
- WINDER, C V Pressoreceptor reflexes from the carotid sinus *Am J Physiol* 118: 379, 1937
- WINDER C V, C BEANSTHAL AND F WEEKS Reflex hyperpnea and vasoconstriction due to ischemic excitation of the carotid body *Am J Physiol* 124: 238 1938
- WRIGHT S Recent work on afferent control of circulation in health and disease *Brit Med J* 1: 457 1932
- Studies of reflex activity in involuntary nervous system *J Physiol* 69: 331, 1930

- WYMAN, L C AND C TUM SUDEN The distribution of adrenergic vasodilators in the rat
Am J Physiol **116** 182, 1936
- YONKMAN, F F Mydriasis affected by sympathomimetic agents J Pharmacol and
Exper Therap **40** 195, 1930
- YUUMANS, W B Similarity of effects of adrenalin and inhibitory sympathin on intestinal
motility, sensitization by denervation Am J Physiol **123** 424, 1938
- YUUMANS, W B, K W AUMANN AND H F HANEY Relation of the various groups of the
adrenalin molecule to its intestine inhibiting function in unanesthetized dogs
Am J Physiol **126** 237, 1939
- YUUMANS, W B, W J MEEK AND R C HERRIN Extrinsic and intrinsic pathways con-
cerned with intestinal inhibition during intestinal distention Am J Physiol
124 470, 1938
- YUUMANS, W B AND W J MEEK Reflex and humoral gastrointestinal inhibition in un-
anesthetized dogs during rectal stimulation Am J Physiol **120** 750, 1937

MUSCULAR DISORDERS ASSOCIATED WITH DEFICIENCY OF VITAMIN E

ALWIN M. PAPPENHEIMER

Department of Pathology, College of Physicians and Surgeons Columbia University New York N Y

It has become increasingly obvious from the work of the past few years that the substances designated by the term "vitamin E" play an indispensable part in the metabolism of skeletal muscle. It is the purpose of this review to assemble the evidence in support of this statement.

The first hint that the effects of vitamin E deficiency were not restricted to the reproductive sphere is to be found in the observation of Evans and Burr (1) in 1928 that the offspring of mother rats, partially deprived of vitamin E, tend to become paralyzed toward the end of the nursing period. We may quote from their description of the clinical picture: "A day or two before the weaning period (21st day of life), it is frequently noted that the young in these litters have begun to have difficulty in regaining their limbs when placed on their backs. The disability increases. By the 21st day of life, about three-fourths of such young are paralyzed in part of the musculatures of the body wall and the posterior extremities. The disease increases in severity during the ensuing 4 or 5 days and by the 25th day of life, practically all animals destined to develop the disease will exhibit it, though occasional instances of a still later development have been encountered." "The suddenness of onset is remarkable. One encounters seriously affected animals known to have been normal the previous day." "Less than 20 per cent recovered, and some of these were left with residual paralysis."

"Complete protection was obtained when wheat germ oil or concentrates (non-saponifiable fraction, freed of steroids) was administered to the young." Although vitamin E had not at that time been chemically identified, the evidence pointed to a "complexity of vitamin E in the production of this disorder."

Evans and Burr did not themselves investigate the underlying pathology but placed material at the disposal of Lipschütz (2) who, eight years later, published a paper describing widespread degenerative changes in the central nervous system in these rats. Curiously, the patent, grossly visible alterations of the skeletal muscles completely escaped his observation, and it was not until Olcott's (3) paper in 1938 that the paralysis of suckling rats was recognized as being due to extensive necrosis of the voluntary muscles. Olcott could find no lesions in the central nervous system.

In the meantime, the production of generalized muscular lesions by dietary means had been achieved by other workers in different species. Goettsch and Pappenheimer (4) in 1931 described profound alterations of the skeletal muscles in rabbits and guinea pigs maintained upon a scorbutic diet, supplemented by adequate amounts of orange or tomato juice and treated with ethereal ferric chloride to destroy the vitamin E (Waddell and Steenbock, 5)

They proposed for this disease the now generally accepted term "nutritional muscular dystrophy." Other species have been found to be susceptible to a similar disorder, sheep and goats (Madsen, McCay and Maynard, 6), ducks (Pappenheimer and Goettsch, 7), the tree kangaroo (Goss, 8), mice (Pappenheimer, 9), and hamsters (10). Symptoms suggesting muscle dystrophy have been noted by Anderson, Elvehjem and Gonce (11) in pups bred of vitamin E deficient mothers, but no studies on the pathology have yet been reported. Dogs with chronic biliary fistulae have been found by Brinkhous and Warner (12) to develop muscle lesions, and these have been ascribed to failure of absorption of vitamin E when bile is excluded from the intestine.

Chicks only exceptionally develop muscle lesions on an E deficient diet (Pappenheimer, Goettsch and Jungherr, 13, Glavind, 14).

Abundant evidence has accumulated to prove that this selective necrosis of the muscle fibers results from a deficiency of vitamin E in the diet. It has been shown that vitamin E in the form of natural or synthetic alpha-tocopherol prevents or cures the disease in rabbits and guinea pigs (Shimotori, Emerson and Evans, 15, Mackenzie and McCollum, 16, Eppstein and Morgulis, 17). The minimal requirement of rabbits for dl-alpha-tocopherol acetate has been estimated by Eppstein and Morgulis on the basis of curative experiments at about 0.32 mgm per kilo per day, somewhat less than the figure of 0.6 to 1.06 mgm given by Mackenzie, Levine and McCollum (18).

The paralysis of suckling rats derived from vitamin E deficient mothers can also be prevented by the administration of natural or synthetic alpha-tocopherol, 0.5 mgm fed on the 15th to the 17th day affording protection to at least 85 per cent of the young (19, 20). The nutritional myopathy of ducklings is prevented by daily doses of 2 to 4 mgm of synthetic dl-alpha-tocopherol (21).

Two factors have been much discussed as to their importance in the production of experimental muscular atrophy.

The first is whether cod liver oil in the diet of herbivorae exerts a direct toxic effect upon the skeletal muscles or whether it favors the dystrophic change by destroying, through its rancidity, vitamin E in the intestinal tract. The first point of view was maintained by Madsen, Maynard and McCay (6), and by Davis, Maynard and McCay (22), who clearly demonstrated that the addition of cod liver oil expedites and intensifies the muscle lesions. Nevertheless, the complete omission of cod liver oil from the experimental diet does not entirely eliminate the injury. Goettsch and Pappenheimer (4), Madsen (23) and Mackenzie and McCollum (24) have shown that muscular dystrophy can be produced in guinea pigs with diets containing no cod liver oil. This would seem to exclude toxicity of cod liver oil as a primary factor in the production of the lesions. Mattill (25, 26), demonstrating the vulnerability of vitamin E to oxidation in the presence of unsaturated fatty acids, strongly questions the assumption of a direct toxic action. In a recent paper, Mattill and Golumbic (27) bring additional evidence that the effect of cod liver oil is to favor the destruction of vitamin E through the development of rancidity in the gut.

Another question which may be regarded as settled is the alleged participation

of a water soluble, not further identified member of the vitamin B complex in the deficiency. A dual deficiency was first postulated by Morgulis and Spencer (28). At that time pure preparations of alpha tocopherol were not available. Further work on the prevention and cure of the disease in both rabbits and guinea pigs has convincingly excluded the complicity of a deficiency of a water soluble B factor in the causation of the lesions.

It was recently reported by Holmes and Pigott (29) that orally administered thiamin chloride was effective in curing the suckling paralysis of rats. The authors appear to have been unfamiliar with the spontaneous regression of the lesions after weaning. Terry (30) has proven the ineffectiveness of vitamin B₁ in the prevention and cure of suckling paralysis.

CHEMICAL STUDIES 1 *Changes in electrolytes* Fenn and Goettsch (31) analyzed dystrophic rabbit muscle for K, Na, Cl, Mg and Ca. Potassium and magnesium were found decreased, sodium was increased out of proportion to gain in chloride, from which it was concluded that it entered the cells in exchange for potassium and magnesium. High concentration of Ca and total P were found in muscles showing histologic evidence of calcification of the fibers.

A similar study by Morgulis and Osheroff (32) confirmed the loss of potassium and the increase in the sodium and chloride content. The calcium was also increased. The interpretation of these over all changes in electrolyte content is difficult because of the complex and varying composition of dystrophic muscles as regards normal, necrotic, and regenerating fibers, wandering cells, interstitial fat and connective tissue, and pathologic calcification of dead fibers.

2 *Phosphorus compounds* Morgulis and Spencer (33) found a decrease in total and soluble phosphorus and fractions thereof. Goettsch, Lonstein and Hutchinson (34) analyzed normal and dystrophic rabbit muscle for total phospholipid, total acid soluble phosphorus and total inorganic orthophosphate phosphorus. No striking changes were found until the muscle became severely degenerated. No change was detected in the total phospholipid phosphorus. Total acid soluble, and total inorganic phosphorus were decreased except in the presence of calcification, in which case, as might be predicted, the total acid soluble and total inorganic phosphate were increased. The phospho-creatin content of degenerated resting muscle was reduced absolutely, but was unchanged relative to total acid soluble phosphorus.

Lu, Emerson and Evans (35) have also determined various phosphorus fractions of dystrophic rat muscle, as compared with muscle of rats on normal diet. There was a marked increase in total P and total acid soluble P, no change in creatin phosphate, a slight decrease in organic phosphate. The ability of the affected muscle to phosphorylate glycogen was reduced by about 40 per cent as compared with normal muscle.

There is nothing in these studies to indicate that the described changes in phosphorus fractions precede the onset of lesions, nor do they offer any clue as to the intimate nature of the disturbed metabolism.

3 *Lipids* Morgulis, Wilder, Spencer and Eppstein (36) studied the lipid content of various tissues of rabbits with muscular dystrophy. They found no

changes in the heart and various internal organs, but the skeletal muscles showed a great increase in fat, lipoid P and especially in cholesterol (100 to 350 per cent) The rise in cholesterol preceded that of total lipoid P and fat, and must be regarded as a "specific characteristic" of dystrophic muscle, the proportion of esters to free cholesterol also increasing as the dystrophy progresses There is an accompanying hypercholesterinemia (33)

4 *Creatin* A number of workers (37, 33, 38) have demonstrated a reduction in the creatin content of dystrophic muscle of guinea pigs and rabbits, and of old and young rats (39, 40) An increased urinary excretion of creatin in vitamin E deficient rats was reported by Verzář (41), and in rabbits by Morgulis (42) Advantage has been taken of this creatinuria in following the progress of the disease in rabbits, its disappearance under vitamin E therapy has been a valuable test of the efficacy of the treatment (43, 44)

5 *Oxygen consumption* One of the most interesting and perhaps significant alterations in the biochemistry of dystrophic muscle is the increased O_2 consumption Victor (45), using a modified Warburg technic with Fenn volumeters, was able to demonstrate an average increase of from 200 to 400 per cent in rate of O_2 consumption per gram per minute when dystrophic rabbit muscle was compared with normal muscle from animals on a stock diet Madsen (23) repeated these experiments with muscle from both rabbits and guinea pigs, and fully confirmed Victor's observations Friedman and Mattill (46) likewise found an increased O_2 uptake in dystrophic muscle of rabbits when compared with that of animals on Purina rabbit chow, and a similar increase of more than 40 per cent was obtained in the muscles of 5 months old female rats kept since weaning on E deficient diet At 13 months, when the rats had severe paralytic symptoms, the difference tended to disappear, and the Q_{O_2} was hardly above normal A few preliminary experiments indicated that the administration of 5 mgm of dl-alpha-tocopherol acetate was followed by a fall in O_2 consumption within 24 to 120 hours

Houchin (10) has made similar observations in the hamster An average Q_{O_2} of 1.70 was obtained in the semitendinosus muscle of normal control animals The Q_{O_2} of degenerated muscle was as high as 4.55 After therapeutic doses of alpha-tocopherol, normal values were reached within 30 hours

A recent preliminary report by Houchin and Mattill (47) adds the very important observation that water soluble alpha-tocopherol phosphate dissolved in Ringer-Locke solution, brings about a reduction of 41.3 per cent and 35.7 per cent respectively in the O_2 consumption of dystrophic rabbit and hamster muscle They believe that the alpha-tocopherol participates in a biological system, and does not act merely as a chemical antioxidant The metabolism of normal muscle was not affected by the addition of alpha-tocopherol, so that it may be assumed that it already contains the optimal amount

All the preceding studies on O_2 consumption have been made on dystrophic muscle in which the interpretation of the results may be complicated by the presence of inflammatory or regenerating cells, or a variable proportion of fibrous or adipose tissue Usually the metabolism of muscle from animals on a

stock diet of very different composition from the experimental one has been taken as a normal standard of reference. It therefore seemed important to find out whether a rise in the *in vitro* O_2 consumption on vitamin E deficient diet occurred also in the absence of morphologic changes in the muscle, and whether the administration of alpha tocopherol, without other modification of the diet, would inhibit this rise. The problem has been taken up by Kaunitz and Pappenheimer (48). The skeletal muscle of young rats born of vitamin E deficient mothers has been found to show a significant increase in Q_{O_2} as compared with litter-mates which had received a single dose of dl alpha tocopherol acetate on the 15th day, and this increase occurred not only in dystrophic muscle, but also in the absence of lesions. The pectoralis muscle of chicks on an E deficient diet was also studied. In this species, lesions of the muscles occur only exceptionally and were completely absent in the material examined. The findings were comparable to those of rat muscle.

These observations complement those of previous observers by demonstrating that the increased O_2 consumption reflects an altered metabolism of the muscle tissue itself, and is independent of visible alterations in structure.

6 *Total O_2 consumption of intact animals on vitamin E deficient diet.* This has been little studied. Wood and Hines (49) discovered no difference in the cubic centimeter O_2 per M^2 of surface area per hour, between guinea pigs on Goettsch-Pappenheimer dystrophy-producing diet 13, and on a stock diet of grains, alfalfa and lettuce.

Kaunitz and Pappenheimer (48) have followed the total O_2 consumption of rats from the 10th to the 150th day. As controls, in addition to rats on a stock diet (Rockland pellets), litter-mates were given a single dose of 1 mgm of dl-alpha-tocopherol on the 15th day, completely protecting them from the lactational paralysis. The O_2 consumption measurements were carried out in a closed circuit apparatus at $29^\circ C$, the animals were maintained in a warm room at about the same temperature. Determinations were made at 1 or 2 day intervals during the early growth period, and weekly thereafter. Results were calculated as cubic centimeters O_2 per kilo per minute, and as cubic centimeters per M^2 surface per minute (Lee formula), both on basis of weight and age. From the time of weaning until the 70th to 80th day, or until the rats had attained a weight of about 100 grams, the oxygen consumption of rats which had received a single protective dose of dl alpha tocopherol during the lactational period remained consistently and significantly lower than that of their litter mate controls. After this time there was no appreciable difference.

During the paralytic period, from the 18th to the 23rd days, the affected rats usually lost weight, probably because of inability to nurse, and their subsequent growth was retarded as compared with treated litter mates. To determine whether the subsequent increase in Q_{O_2} was due to this transient weight loss, rats on a complete stock diet were subjected to partial starvation from the 17th to the 21st day. This resulted in a temporary depression in total O_2 consumption, but this was rapidly ironed out, and after the 21st day there was no significant difference between the starved rats and their litter mate

controls It would seem therefore that the effect of the tocopherol in lowering the total oxygen consumption throughout the adolescent period is a specific one, and that transient inanition during lactation *per se* does not influence the subsequent O_2 consumption

The question may be raised at this point whether the increased metabolism in the vitamin E deficient animals is to be attributed to the altered metabolism of the muscle tissue, or whether it is possibly an indirect effect mediated through the thyroid The literature bearing upon the condition of the thyroid in vitamin E deficiency is rather conflicting Singer (50) reported the thyroid to be histologically hyperplastic in female rats which had been on an E deficient diet for 12 to 18 months, and Barrie (51) observed the same thing in the young of vitamin E deficient mothers Telford, Emerson and Evans (52) were unable to confirm Barrie's findings, and Morgulis (53) states that the relative dry weight of the thyroid in dystrophic animals on a vitamin E diet is unchanged On the other hand, Biddulph and Meyer (54) found a two-fold increase in the weight of the thyroid in male rats after 6 months on vitamin E deficient diet, as compared with those receiving wheat germ oil or stock diet The addition of iodine to the E deficient diet restrained the thyroid weight to normal limits In the female they found no difference In a second paper (55) hypertrophy of the thyroid is brought into definite relation with the low iodine content of the experimental diet and drinking water The addition of wheat germ oil to the diet, without iodine supplement, alone reduced the thyroid weight and basal metabolism to normal limits

It is obvious that the increased O_2 consumption noted by Kaunitz and Pappenheimer during the period from 1 to 3 months cannot be ascribed to increased thyroid activity, since it is inhibited by alpha-tocopherol without other supplement Moreover, the Hawk-Oser salt mixture in their experimental diet contains abundant iodine The direct effect of alpha-tocopherol phosphate *in vitro* upon the muscle metabolism, as described by Houchin and Mattill, is further evidence against participation of endocrine glands

PHYSIOLOGICAL STUDIES There have been few studies of muscular functions in vitamin E depleted animals Victor (45) has determined the chronaxie and rheobase in dystrophic rabbit and duck muscle, and found them both significantly increased Knowlton and Hines (39) have studied the functional capacity of the gastrocnemii of adult rats on a vitamin E deficient diet The animals were survivors of offspring of vitamin E depleted mothers The maximum isometric tension developed by the intact gastrocnemius in response to condensor discharges at 50 per second, was found to be definitely less than that of control animals receiving wheat germ oil Histological examination of the muscle showed hyaline necrosis in only a few fibers, so that the functional alteration appeared not to be closely correlated with visible changes in structure In a subsequent paper, Knowlton, Hines and Brinkhous (56) demonstrated that synthetic dl-alpha-tocopherol, like wheat germ oil, favorably affected the muscular strength Both preventive and curative experiments were made

Effect of inactivity Section of the sciatic nerve or of the Achilles tendon in

young rats born of vitamin E depleted mothers has been found to protect the corresponding gastrocnemius from becoming dystrophic, provided the operation be performed before the 17th day (57, 58). The significance of this observation is not clear, but it does suggest that vitamin E is in some way implicated in the contractile phase of muscle metabolism rather than in the resting phase.

SMOOTH MUSCLE There is little to indicate that vitamin E deficiency has a profound effect upon non-striated muscle. Goettsch and Pappenheimer (4) found the smooth muscle of intestine, bronchi, blood vessels and uterus unaffected in rabbits and guinea pigs. In female rats, however, there does occur, after long-standing vitamin E deficiency, a very striking brown coloration of the uterine musculature, not only in animals which have had repeated fetal resorptions, but in virgin rats as well (59, 60, 61). The pigment accumulates within the muscle fibers and interstitial cells, and may lead to degeneration and fibrous replacement. It does not give an iron reaction, but hemosiderin does occur in the mucosa and interstitial tissue after repeated resorptions (Hessler, 62). The reactivity of the uterine muscle to various pharmacologic agents—acetyl-choline, pilocarpin, prostigmin, adrenalin, ergotamin—was found by Hessler not to be altered. The source and chemical nature of the pigment have not been satisfactorily determined.

The only animal thus far studied in which smooth muscle appears to be selectively affected is the turkey, in which vitamin E deficiency regularly leads to necrosis of the gizzard musculature, with subsequent replacement fibrosis (63).

NERVOUS SYSTEM Because of the large array of clinical papers which have appeared during the past two years dealing with the effects of vitamin E therapy in certain diseases of the central nervous system, it seems desirable to review with some care the experimental work upon which this treatment has been grounded.

We have already referred to the paper of Lipschütz (2), who studied the brains and cords of young rats with suckling paralysis supplied by Evans and Burr. He described (on the basis of Marchi preparations) degenerative changes in *a*, the crossed and homolateral, descending and ascending vestibular tracts, *b*, the columns of Goll and Burdach, *c*, the tecto-spinal tract. With Nissl preparations, it was possible to detect three or four stages of degeneration of the medio-ventral and lateral anterior horn cells, which alone were affected,—vacuoles, diffuse coloration of the cytoplasm, loss of nucleus and Nissl substance. These changes were accompanied by neuroglia proliferation.

Lipschütz attributed the paralytic symptoms in suckling rats entirely to these neurologic lesions, having failed to recognize the presence of severe changes in the skeletal muscles. These were first described by Olcott in 1938 (3), and later by Pappenheimer (64), Barrio (65), Verzáz (41), Demole and Pfalz (66) and by Evans and collaborators (67, 68). Olcott and Pappenheimer were unable to find any changes in the central nervous system.

Undoubtedly the most thorough study of the central nervous system in vitamin E deficiency is that of Einarsen and Ringsted (69) published in 1938. This is invariably taken as supplying the experimental ground work for the therapeutic use of vitamin E in amyotrophic lateral sclerosis and other chronic

nervous disorders (70-91) Ringsted (92) in 1935 had observed certain clinical abnormalities of gait and behavior in adult rats that had been kept on vitamin E deficient diet for a prolonged period. The animals developed a waddling gait, with inco-ordination and spreading of the hind legs, hypesthesia and hypalgesia, roughening of the pelage and loss of hair. Some of the rats survived for 2 years in spite of the progressive paresis.

The lesions found by Einarsen and Ringsted did not tally exactly with those described by Lipschütz. The first structures to be attacked, according to these authors, were the proximal parts of the posterior roots, and the proprioceptive and possibly also the uncrossed paths in the fasciculus cuneatus and fasciculus gracilis. Later, there appeared increasing degeneration in the motor cells of the anterior horns, to which was attributed the progressive atrophy of the leg muscles. It was doubtful whether the peripheral afferent fibers were affected, changes in the spinal ganglia were relatively slight. In several animals, clinically in the last stages of the disease, partial degeneration of the cortico-spinal tract was noted. No changes were found in the tecto-spinal tracts, nor in the nuclei of the medulla or mesencephalon.

As a rule, the "first and largest site" of the process was in the lumbo-sacral part of the spinal cord. The process gradually extended upward to the thoracic and lower cervical cord as far as the 5th segment. In a few cases the cervical cord seemed most severely affected.

The anatomical picture thus resembled closely a combination of *tabes dorsalis* and progressive muscular atrophy. In the few cases in which the pyramidal tract was affected, the lesions were regarded by Einarsen and Ringsted as analogous to those of amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. The muscle lesions were interpreted as secondary to the spinal cord changes—a simple, neurogenic atrophy with occasional increase in the sarcolemma nuclei.

Monnier (93) has also described alterations in the central nervous system in adult rats on vitamin E deficient diet. His material consisted of 38 adult rats which had been maintained by Verzář on a diet of starch, casein, lard, salts, cod liver oil and brewer's yeast. Symptoms were observed after 9 to 10 weeks and became progressively more severe. Three of the animals died between the 14th and 23rd months, with a loss of weight of 40 to 70 grams in the final 12 days. In addition to the symptoms described by Einarsen and Ringsted, the rats displayed head tremor, dysmetria, diminution in olfactory and auditory sensation, trophic or vegetative disturbances, exophthalmos, urinary incontinence, alopecia and ulceration.

The skeletal muscles showed segmental necrosis, multiplication of sarcolemma nuclei and invasion of mononuclear elements. These muscular changes were associated with partial demyelination of the intra-muscular branches of the peripheral nerves, and with slight rarefaction of the posterior columns of the cord. Later there occurred marked degeneration of the fasciculi of Goll and hyperchromatosis and sclerosis of anterior horn cells. Contrary to the findings of Einarsen and Ringsted, the pyramidal tracts were never affected.

In this country, similar studies have been made by Gutierrez-Mahoney (94) on rats supplied by Dr. Karl Mason. Young rats with paralysis, offspring of

vitamin E depleted mothers and surviving rats, maintained for over a year on the vitamin E deficient diet and comparable to the adult rats of Einarsen and Ringsted, furnished material for this work.

Emphasis is placed on changes found in the ganglion cells—hyperchromatosis of cytoplasm with loss of Nissl substance, thinning and elongation of cell bodies, or a second type of change characterized by diminution of stainable contents and vacuolization and phagocytosis. Both anterior and posterior horn cells, the nuclei of the medulla, Purkinje cells, the larger and smaller cells of the dorsal ganglia and the cells of the cerebral cortex were affected. Myelin stains disclosed alterations in the sciatic nerves—swelling, fragmentation, ball formation and loss of myelin. The anterior and posterior roots in the cauda equina and long conducting pathways were also involved. Changes were seen in the anterior and lateral tracts, in the posterior columns and to a lesser extent in the cortico-spinal pathways and the corona radiata and median forebrain bundles. Thus the lesions described by Gutierrez-Mahoney were even more severe and widespread than those noted by Einarsen and Ringsted.

We have listed the various lesions described by these authors in some detail. It is plain that there are wide discrepancies in the findings, indeed, no two investigators agree as to the distribution of the lesions.

Wolf and Pappenheimer (95) have recently reported on the results of their study of this problem. Their material included 19 rats on vitamin E deficient diet, comprising 11 adult males, 4 females killed after periods varying from 180 to 365 days, and 4 young. Control animals on stock diet, on a simplified complete diet, and on vitamin E deficient diet supplemented by wheat germ oil or by alpha tocopherol were taken for comparison. Through the courteous cooperation of Dr. Karl Mason, rats from his colony exhibiting the characteristic signs of chronic vitamin E deficiency were also placed at their disposal.

Aside from changes caused by technical artefacts, and present with equal frequency in the control material, they found the central nervous system unaffected in vitamin E deficient rats.

Whether this cardinal discrepancy between their work and that of previous observers is attributable to subtle differences in diet, to differences in technical procedure or to differences in interpretation, it is difficult to say. As regards diet, Einarsen and Ringsted's diet V was extremely low in fat, nevertheless they found that the addition of oleic and linoleic acid, in addition to 50 mgm of peanut oil daily, did not prevent the appearance of the lesions. The diets used by Lipschütz, Monnier and by Gutierrez-Mahoney were practically identical with those in use in this laboratory. It is beyond the scope of this review to discuss the technical pitfalls which may give rise to wrong interpretations in the histologic study of the central nervous system, but it seems probable that the diversity in the distribution and character of the reported lesions may be ascribed to variations in technique. One may also call attention to the lack of adequate control material for comparison. The proper controls in this instance—animals on vitamin E deficient diet supplemented by protective doses of alpha tocopherol were not studied by the authors cited.

In view of these contradictions, it would seem that the therapeutic use of

vitamin E in amyotrophic lateral sclerosis and other degenerative diseases of the spinal cord rests upon a very insecure experimental basis

There remains the possibility that the primary effect of the deficiency is upon the motor end plates of the muscles, and here again there is no complete unanimity in the reported findings. Rogers, Pappenheimer and Goettsch (96) were unable to detect visible alterations in the terminal neurites or end plates of dystrophic guinea-pig muscles, and Pappenheimer (9) reported similar negative observations in young rats with severe muscle lesions. Telford (97), on the other hand, found a reduction in the number of end plates in severely damaged muscles, with a return to normal upon recovery. There is at least complete agreement that the necrosis of muscle fibers precedes any loss of neurites, and that the nerve endings may be morphologically normal even when necrosis of the muscle has taken place. The possibility that there may be functional alterations in the absence of demonstrable morphological lesions has not been ruled out.

Lesions of the brain in chicks on vitamin E deficient diet Under the designation of nutritional encephalomalacia, Pappenheimer and Goettsch (98), in 1931, described extensive ischemic necrosis occurring in chicks on a diet deficient in vitamin E.

The first symptoms indicative of severe cerebral damage appeared between the 20th and 30th day after hatching—coarse tremors, ataxia, head retraction, propulsive, retropulsive or rotational movements, usually ending in death. Some animals recovered and went on to normal development, a phenomenon comparable to the spontaneous regression of the lesions in the suckling paralysis of rats. The pathology is distinctive. The lesions affect the cerebellum, cerebrum and medulla in that order of frequency and are essentially areas, often large and grossly visible, of ischemic necrosis. There is death of ganglion cells and glial elements, hemorrhage, edema and capillary thrombosis. Later, if the chicks survive, reparative changes take place (99).

The disease is preventable by various vegetable oils and by their non-saponifiable fractions after removal of the sterols (100), and by alpha-tocopherol, natural or synthetic, in daily dosage of 0.1 to 0.2 mgm (101, 13). The disease can be produced on a complete diet in which vitamin E is destroyed by heating with ethereal ferric chloride (102), and it occurs as a spontaneous disease under field conditions (103). Although the brain in vitamin E deficient chicks bears the brunt of the injury, the lesions cannot be interpreted as a specific toxic effect upon nerve tissue, since they are obviously the effect of vascular occlusion. The pathogenesis of the lesions is still obscure, whether due to vascular spasm or to capillary thrombosis, but their infarct-like nature cannot be denied.

The "alimentary exudative diathesis" described by Dam and his co-workers (104), and preventable by large doses of alpha-tocopherol, appears not to be correlated with the encephalomalacic condition. It has occurred very rarely with the standard diet 108 used in this laboratory, and prolonged extraction of the casein with alcohol and the low fat content of the diet seem to be, if not essential, yet favoring factors in its onset (105).

Mason (106) has recently called attention to the frequent occurrence of cu-

taneous and intracerebral hemorrhage in rat embryos of vitamin E deficient mothers. Subcutaneous edema, with or without muscle necrosis, occurs also in new born mice, born of vitamin E depleted mothers (9). It would seem that in certain species and under certain conditions not yet defined, vitamin E deficiency is attended by circulatory disturbances, and perhaps by alteration in capillary permeability.

GENERAL DISCUSSION In concluding our review, we may summarize this analysis of the literature with the generalization that vitamin E plays an essential part in the metabolism of skeletal muscle in all species of mammals that have been investigated and in ducklings. It has, in our opinion, not been satisfactorily shown that vitamin E is essential to the integrity of the nervous system.

There are many interesting and fundamental problems that demand further inquiry. The most pressing, it would seem, is to define in chemical terms the exact rôle that the tocopherols enact in the complex chemistry of skeletal muscle. With active, water soluble preparations now available, progress along this line is inevitable. The observation that immobilization of muscle, whether by nerve section or tenotomy, offers protection against degeneration of the fibers, suggests that the vitamin is concerned with the contractile, rather than the resting metabolism of the muscle. The proven fact that the total O_2 consumption of the muscle of vitamin E deficient animals is reduced by alpha tocopherol, both *in vitro* and *in vivo*, should give a clue to further analysis of its action. Very uncertain still is the importance of vitamin E in the nutrition of human muscle, although it is most unlikely that human muscle will be found to differ fundamentally in its requirements for this vitamin from that of other mammals. As chemical tests are perfected and adapted to clinical use, dietary assays extended, and more is learned about the conditions which govern absorption and utilization, the rôle and importance of vitamin E in human muscle nutrition will become clearer.

For other discussions of the relation of vitamin E to the neuro-muscular systems, the writer wishes to call attention to the recent excellent reviews of H. M. Evans (107), Wolbach and Bessey (108), and Karl Mason (106).

REFERENCES

- (1) EVANS H. M. AND G. O. BURR. J Biol Chem 76: 273 1923
- (2) LIPSCHÜTZ M. Rev neur 65: 221 1936
- (3) OLCOTT H. S. J Nutrition 15: 221, 1933.
- (4) GOETTSCHE M. AND A. M. PAPPENHEIMER. J Exper Med 54: 145 1931
- (5) WADDELL, J. AND H. STEENBOCK. J Biol. Chem 80: 431 1928
- (6) MADSEN L. L. C. M. MCCAY AND L. A. MAYNARD. Cornell Univ Agric Exper Station Memoir 178 1935
- (7) PAPPENHEIMER, A. M. AND M. GOETTSCHE. J Exper Med 57: 35 1934
- (8) GOSS L. J. Zoologica 25 (part 4): 523 1940
- (9) PAPPENHEIMER, A. M. Am J Path 18: 169 1942.
- (10) HOUGHIN O. B. Federation Proc 1: 1, 117 1942.
- (11) ANDERSON H. D. C. A. ELVERJEM AND J. E. GONCE. Proc. Soc. Exper Biol and Med 42: 750 1939
- (12) BRINKHOUTS, K. M. AND E. D. WARNER. Am J Path. 17: 81 1941

- (13) PAPPENHEIMER, A M , M GOETTSCH AND E JUNGHERR Storrs Agric Exper Station Bull 229, 1939
- (14) GLAVIND, J Personal communication.
- (15) SHIMOTORI, N , G A EMERSON AND H M EVANS Science 90 89, 1939
- (16) MACKENZIE, C G AND E V MCCOLLUM Science 89 370, 1939, J Nutrition 19 345, 1940
- (17) EPPSTEIN, S H AND S MORGULIS Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 45 715, 1940
- (18) MACKENZIE, C G , M D LEVINE AND E V MCCOLLUM J Nutrition 20 399, 1940
- (19) EVANS, H M AND G A EMERSON Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 44 636, 1940
- (20) GOETTSCH, M AND A M PAPPENHEIMER J Nutrition 22 463, 1941
- (21) PAPPENHEIMER, A M Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 45 457, 1940
- (22) DAVIS, G , L A MAYNARD AND C M MCCAY Cornell Univ Agric Exper Station, Memoir 217, 1938
- (23) MADSEN, L L J Nutrition 11 471, 1936
- (24) MACKENZIE, C G , J B MACKENZIE AND E V MCCOLLUM Science 94 216, 1941
- (25) MATTILL, H A J A M A 89 1505, 1927
- (26) MATTILL, H A Intern Physiol Congress 16 112, 1938
- (27) MATTILL, H A AND C GOLUMBIC J Nutrition 23 625, 1942
- (28) MORGULIS, S AND H C SPENCER J Nutrition 11 573, 1936
- (29) HOLMES, A D AND M G PIGOTT Am J Physiol 132 211, 1941
- (30) TERRY, R Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 48 35, 1941
- (31) FENN, W G AND M GOETTSCH J Biol Chem 120 41, 1937
- (32) MORGULIS, S AND W OSHEROFF J Biol Chem 124 767, 1938
- (33) MORGULIS, S AND H C SPENCER J Nutrition 12 173, 1936
- (34) GOETTSCH, M , I LONSTEIN AND J J HUTCHINSON J Biol Chem 128 9, 1939
- (35) LU, F D , G A EMERSON AND H M EVANS Am J Physiol 129 408, 1940
- (36) MORGULIS, S , V M WILDER, H C SPENCER AND S EPPSTEIN J Biol Chem 124 755, 1938
- (37) GOETTSCH, M AND E BROWN J Biol Chem 97 549, 1932
- (38) NI', T G Chinese J Physiol 10 199, 1936
- (39) KNOWLTON, G A AND H M HINES Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 38 665, 1938
- (40) TELFORD, I R , G A EMERSON AND H M EVANS Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 41 315, 1939
- (41) VERZAR, F Ztsch f Vitaminforsch 9 242, 1939
- (42) MORGULIS, S Nutritional muscular dystrophy Act Sc et Indust 752, Paris, Herman & Cie , 1938
- (43) MACKENZIE, C G AND E V MCCOLLUM J Nutrition 19 345, 1940
- (44) MACKENZIE, C G AND E V MCCOLLUM Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 49 313, 1942
- (45) VICTOR, J Am J Physiol 108 229, 1934
- (46) FRIEDMAN, I AND H A MATTILL Am J Physiol 131 595, 1941
- (47) HOUCHIN, O B AND H A MATTILL Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 50 216, 1942
- (48) KAUNITZ, H AND A M PAPPENHEIMER Am J Physiol In press
- (49) WOOD, C C AND H M HINES Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 36 746, 1937
- (50) SINGER, E J Physiol 87 287, 1936
- (51) BARRIE, M M O Nature 139 286, 1937, *ibid* 140 426, 1937, Lancet 2 251, 1937
- (52) TELFORD, I R , G A EMERSON AND H M EVANS Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 38 623, 1938
- (53) MORGULIS, S Endocrinology 20 393, 1936
- (54) BIDDULPH, C AND R K MEYER Am J Physiol 132 259, 1941
- (55) BIDDULPH, C AND R K MEYER Endocrinology 30 551, 1942
- (56) KNOWLTON, G A , H M HINES AND K M BRINKHOUS Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 42 804, 1939
- (57) PAPPENHEIMER, A M AND M GOETTSCH Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 43 313, 1940

- (58) PAPPENHEIMER, A. M. J Mt Sinai Hosp 7 65 1940
- (59) MARTIN A J P AND T MOORE J Hygiene 39 643 1939
- (60) BARRIE M M O Biochem J 32 2134 1938
- (61) DEMOLE, V Verh 3rd internat. neur Kong 927, 1939
- (62) HESSLER, W Ztsch. f Vitaminforsch 11 929 1941
- (63) JUNGHEER, E AND A. M PAPPENHEIMER. Proc Soc. Exper Biol. and Med 37: 520 1937
- (64) PAPPENHEIMER A. M. Am J Path 15 179 1939
- (65) BARRIE M M O Nature 142:799 1938
- (66) DEMOLE V AND H PFALL. Schweiz med Wchnschr 69:123, 1939
- (67) EVANS H. M G A. EMERSON AND I R. TELFORD Proc Soc Exper Biol. and Med. 38 625 1938.
- (68) TELFORD I R. G A. EMERSON AND H. M EVANS Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 41 291, 1939
- (69) EINARSON L. AND A. RINOSTED Effect of chronic vitamin E deficiency in the nervous system and the skeletal musculature in adult rats, etc London Humphrey Milford 1938
- (70) BICKNELL, F Lancet 1:10 1940
- (71) STONE S J A. M. A 114 2187 1940
- (72) WECHSLER, I S J A. M. A 114 948 1940 Am J Med Sc 200 765 1940 Trans Am. Neurol Assoc 66 59 1940, J Nerv and Ment. Dis 93 353, 1941, Arch. Neurol and Psychiat. 45 873 1941
- (73) SHELTON C H H R. BUTT AND H W WOLTMAN Proc Staff Meetings Mayo Clinic 15 577 1940
- (74) RAVINA A AND A. FLICHT Presse Méd 48 886 1940
- (75) WEINBERG M A AND A. F KNOLL. Med Rec 152 447 1940
- (76) AQUIRRE, M R. Med Bull Vet. Adm. 17: 376 1940-41
- (77) DENKER, P G AND L. SCHEINMAN J A. M. A 116 1893 1941
- (78) FERREREE J W W O KLINGMAN AND A M FRANTZ J A M. A. 116 1895, 1941
- (79) VIETS H. R. S H TROWBRIDGE, JR. AND T GUNDERSON J Nerv and Ment. Dis. 94: 101 1941
- (80) FITZGERALD G AND B MCARDLE. Brain 64 19 1941
- (81) WORSTER DROUGHT C AND J SHAPAR Lancet 2: 209, 1941
- (82) ROSENBERG A. I J Nerv and Ment. Dis 83 370 1941
- (83) SLAUGHTER R F AND H CLECKLEY J Med Assoc Georgia 3 106 1941
- (84) DOYLE A. M. AND H H MERRITT Arch Neurol and Psych. 45:672, 1941
- (85) DE JONO R. N Arch Neurol and Psych 46 375 1941
- (86) GUTIERREZ MAHONEY W DE South Med J 34 389 1941
- (87) HARVEY R. W AND P P HUME Cal and West. Med. J 55 293 1941
- (88) MELLER, R. L. J Lancet 61: 471 1941
- (89) BANO J L. EINARSON, A M FOG AND A. RINGSTED Nordisk. Med 10 1201 1941
- (90) LUBIN A. J Arch Int. Med 69 836 1942.
- (91) CORDERO J Bol. Assoc. Med de Puerto Rico 34: 211, 1942.
- (92) RINOSTED A Biochem. J 29:788 1935
- (93) MONNIER M C R. soc phys. et hist. nat Genève 57 (4) 252, 1940
- (94) GUTIERREZ MAHONEY W DE K. E MASON AND H SWANSON Abstr Proc Am. Physiol Soc 53rd meeting 120 1941
- (95) WOLF A AND A M PAPPENHEIMER. Arch Neurol and Psych 45 538 1942
- (96) ROGERS, W M. A. M PAPPENHEIMER AND M GOETTSCHE J Exper Med 54 167 1931
- (97) TELFORD I R. Anat. Rec. 81:171 1941
- (98) PAPPENHEIMER, A. M AND M GOETTSCHE. J Exper Med 53 11 1931
- (99) WOLF A AND A M PAPPENHEIMER. J Exper Med 54: 399 1931
- (100) GOETTSCHE M AND A M PAPPENHEIMER. J Biol Chem 114: 673 1936

- (101) DAM, H, J GLAVIND, O BERNTH AND E HAGENS Nature **142** 1157, 1938
- (102) ADAMSTONE, F B Arch Path **31** 603, 1941
- (103) JUNGHERR, E Science **84** 559, 1936
- (104) DAM, H AND J GLAVIND Nature **143** 810, 1939
- (105) DAM, H AND J GLAVIND Skand Arch f Physiol **82** 299, 1939
- (106) MASON, K Yale J Biol and Med **14** 605, 1942
- (107) EVANS, H M J Mt Sinai Hosp **6** 233, 1940
- (108) WOLBACH, S B AND O A BESSEY Physiol Reviews **22** 233, 1942

MICRORESPIRATION TECHNIQUES

JULIAN M TOBIAS

University of Chicago, Department of Physiology

Microrespirometer techniques have been developed in response to needs for methods of high sensitivity, rapidity of response, or both. The problems approached by these methods may, in general, be grouped into one of two categories

1 Investigations into the temporal distribution, over relatively long total times, of processes whose progression is mirrored in gas concentration changes. Micromethods are needed for reactions producing a small total change. Stability and sensitivity are equally important.

2 Investigations into the temporal distribution, over short total times, of processes whose progression is mirrored in gas concentration changes. Speed of response and sensitivity are at a premium whereas stability of the measuring instrument becomes progressively less important as observation time shortens.

During the past forty years or so a number of procedures have been developed to deal with such problems as they have arisen in biological researches. It is the purpose of this review briefly to evaluate their relative sensitivities and precisions, and to point out their assets and limitations. The related problems of calibratory techniques and estimation of amount of metabolizing material will also be touched upon.

METHODS OF HISTORICAL INTEREST *The biometer* Possibly inspired by the methods of Pettersson and Pettenkofer (1) (2), Tashiro, in 1913-14 (3) (4) (5) (6) (7), constructed an instrument to which he gave the name "biometer". With it he demonstrated that surviving nerve produces carbon dioxide and that the rate of production is increased by stimulation.

A nerve segment was suspended in a CO₂ free, glass respiration chamber. Known amounts of gas could be transferred to an adjoining analysis chamber containing a drop of barium hydroxide whose surface was observed with a lens. If a limiting amount, or more, of carbon dioxide was contained in the sample, visible crystals of barium carbonate formed on the drop surface. It had been determined that a "quite definite" amount of carbon dioxide had to be introduced into the test chamber to produce a just visible precipitate. "By determining the minimum volume of any given sample of gas necessary to give the first visible formation of the precipitate, its carbon dioxide content could be estimated accurately, since this volume must have contained just the known detectable amount of carbon dioxide."

Controls indicated that the method was sensitive and quantitatively reliable. For a given construction, the minimum detectable quantity of carbon dioxide was 1×10^{-7} grams. Thus the limiting sensitivity of the method calculates at 0.05 cmm.

Table 1 compares the quantity of carbon dioxide found in 1 cc. of gas with the known composition.

The technique was criticised because data on nerve respiration gave values considerably higher than those found by others Guttman (8) explained this disagreement in terms of a gush of carbon dioxide following injury to nerve (8) (9) (10) (11) (12) The order of magnitude of the discrepancy, however, seems to invalidate this explanation It is difficult to reconcile these facts with the results obtained in control calibration

The biometer, then, was a relatively sensitive instrument detecting 0.05 cmm of carbon dioxide produced in carbon dioxide free air It achieved a fairly high degree of precision When carefully sealed it was stable Thus it was well suited to the use to which it was put, the detection of a small total change over a relatively long total time

The Winkler titration The Winkler titration was adapted to biological experimentation as a method for following changes in concentration of dissolved oxygen First used by Winkler (13) (14) in a study of oxygen solubility, the method has since been frequently revised and improved Sources of error have been

TABLE 1

SAMPLE VOLUME REQUIRED TO GIVE PRECIPITATE	WEIGHT OF CO ₂ /CC IN GRAMS $\times 10^{-7}$		DIFF. (J. T.)
	Found	Taken	
cc.			per cent
1.0	1	0.92	8
0.5	2	2.3	15
0.55	1.82	1.83	0.5
1.5	0.67	0.62	8
2.25	0.45	0.45	0
Average			6.3

pointed out, and modifications of the technique have been devised to deal with them (15) (16) (17) (18) (19) (20) (21) (22) (23) For details one should consult the critical reviews of Thernault and of Thernault and McNamee, and of Allee and Oesting (17) (18) (19)

Lund, having used the method in a study of paramecium respiration (24) adapted it to micro-studies, and (25) was able to handle as little as 5-10 cc. of solution Thompson and Miller (26) designed apparatus making the micro-titration more convenient and accurate Using their technique, Snoke (27) compared the micro- and macro-Winkler titrations obtaining the results reproduced in table 2

In 1933, Kawaguti (28) developed apparatus making possible the titration of as little as 0.1 cc. of solution Control experiments yielded the results shown in table 3

Though sources of error were not determined, Kawaguti suggested that corrections could probably be worked out so that the method might be applicable to as little as 0.1 cc. of solution with accuracy

Allee and Oesting (19) have the following to say about the macro-method "It

has been our experience that with usual contents of oxygen (N B The method is less accurate with very low total quantities of oxygen) we can be sure of repeatability to about 0.03 cc per litre Hyman's error, as determined by duplicate determinations, was 0.02 cc per litre When the animals being tested consume 2.00 cc of oxygen per litre the error inherent in the method amounts to from 1.0 to 2.5 per cent When, however, small differences are recorded the inherent percentage of error mounts " Allee found (29) that a modification, requiring 14 cc of solution was about as good as the macro method Putting these data together one can conclude that for the micro method, requiring 14 cc of sample,

TABLE 2

SAMPLE NUMBER	DISSOLVED OXYGEN			
	Macro method, 250 cc. sample		Micro method, 4.9 cc. sample	
	Average of 3 determinations	Maximum deviation	Average of 3 determinations	Maximum deviation
	mgm. per liter	mgm. per liter	mgm. per liter	mgm. per liter
1	7.46	0.07	7.42	0.07
2	9.93	0.05	9.91	0.04
3	9.59	0.05	9.64	0.06

(From Snoke—Ecology 10 163, 1929)

TABLE 3

VOLUME OF TEST FLUID	CC./L.	OXYGEN (MEAN OF MORE THAN 11 TESTS) (MAXIMUM DEVIATION)
"		
0.5	4.64	0.06
0.4	4.58	0.05
0.3	4.50	0.03
0.2	4.45	0.00
0.1	4.43	0.08
2.0	4.89	0.08
macro Winkler on 200 cc sample	5.00	0.01

(From Kawaguti—J Fac Sci Imp Univ Tokyo (Zool sect) 3 183 1933)

to be good to 1 to 2.5 per cent the total change in oxygen concentration must be about 28 cmm or about 2 cmm per cc Kawaguti's datum on a 2 cc sample is also about 2 per cent off the value determined by the macro-method, but on a 0.1 cc sample the discrepancy is about 10 per cent

These data indicate that the best one can say for the micro-Winkler titration is that it is capable of detecting a change of 28 cmm or so of oxygen in a 14 cc sample of fluid with an error of 1 to 2.5 per cent Compared to other methods discussed, this is a low sensitivity In addition, the multiple sources of error and the long time required for an analysis make the method unsatisfactory It is being and will doubtless continue to be, largely replaced by the polarographic technique.

The indicator method In 1916 Haas (30) developed an indicator method for following carbon dioxide production. Since the material producing CO_2 was to be submerged in a solution of an indicator it was essential that the indicator be non-toxic and slowly penetrating. Phenolsulphonephthalein was used. By a comparator method it was possible to measure hydron concentration changes as small as 1 or 2×10^{-6} . If the determinations were made in pure distilled water, free of carbon dioxide, changes as small as 2 or 3×10^{-8} could be detected. The method was used by Moore (31) (32) (12).

Osterhout (33) modified the technique by circulating the gas, in equilibrium with the solution being studied, through a solution of indicator. Osterhout and Haas (34), and Osterhout (33) (35), and Osterhout's students (Gustafson, Irwin, etc.) modified and used the method in respiration studies.

Lund (36) combined the indicator method with the basic construction of the biometer. Material to be studied was suspended above barium hydroxide containing phenolsulphonephthalein. At given times a known amount of the barium hydroxide solution was titrated with HCl and the CO_2 , produced in the intervals, determined.

Parker suspended tissue over barium hydroxide containing the indicator, and frequently renewed the absorbing surface. He was able (9) (37) (38) to confirm the findings of Tashiro on carbon dioxide production by nerve. The sensitivity of the method was estimated to be about one-tenth that of the biometer. The error amounted to about 10 per cent.

The biometer constituted a challenge to those investigators requiring some means of following CO_2 production by submerged tissues. The development of the indicator method answered the challenge with a measure of success. The latter technique was more widely applicable, simpler to use, and could be used for following rates of gas production, which was a more tedious process with the biometer. Osterhout and Haas (22) combined the indicator method with the Winkler titration, making possible simultaneous measurement of carbon dioxide and oxygen in solution.

MORE RECENT METHODS *The optical lever micromanometer* The optical lever manometer has, for many years, been known to provide a convenient means of measuring relatively small pressure changes (39) (40). As a macro-instrument it has been chiefly applied in physiological experimentation requiring precise responses to high frequency pressure changes (41) (42).

The incorporation of the optical lever into a micromanometer for biological use was first successfully attempted quite recently (43) (44) (45). In 1939 Heatley, Berenblum and Chain described such an instrument sufficiently sensitive to measure gas volume changes of 1 cmm per hour.

A paraffin lined chamber of 40 to 80 cmm ground into a glass plate is so shaped that droplets placed in its several arms may be maintained separate. A steel ball, coated with plastic, is placed in one of the arms. With an electromagnet, this ball can be moved and used as a mixer. The vessel is constructed to allow filling with given gas mixtures. The plate which closes it carries an 18μ thick mica sheet cemented over a central hole. On either side of the

opening there is another aperture which may be made to coincide with one of the arms of the chamber. A stream of gas can then be circulated through the chamber and the latter subsequently closed by rotating the cover.

The reaction material and reagents are placed in the vessel and the top is closed. A bit of lubricant and a bracket seal and immobilize the mica-glass joint. The upper surface of the mica carries two small plane mirrors which reflect incident beams of light to an observation surface. As the mica sheet becomes depressed or bulges outward, due to absorption or production of gas within the chamber, the reflected beams are displaced. The applied pressure necessary to return the mirrors to their original positions may be manometrically measured, and attendant volume changes calculated.

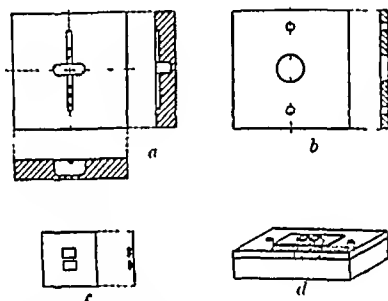


FIG 1 Components of respiration chamber a cup b plate c mica membrane with mirrors attached d complete assembly
(From Heatley Berenblum and Chalm—*Biochem J* 53, 1939)

Accuracy has been determined in several ways. The volume of carbon dioxide displaced from bicarbonate by a known amount of acid has been measured and compared with the calculated value. The results are reproduced in table 4.

Precision was also tested by measuring the amount of oxygen liberated from hydrogen peroxide by catalase. The 'known' values were obtained by permanganate titration. The results obtained with the microrespirometer and with the Warburg are reproduced in table 5. In each case approximately 1 cmm of gas was evolved in the microrespirometer.

The optical lever micromanometer does not possess the sensitivity of most of the other micromethods mentioned. Cumbersome and requiring considerable accessory equipment, it is chiefly notable for the convenient design of the cups allowing its applicability to all the types of problems to which the standard Warburg may be applied. Precision is about equivalent to that of the Warburg technique. A number (up to six for the present design) of the respirometers can be used at one time (45). Thermobarometric controls afford relatively high stability for long time measurements.

TABLE 4

VOLUME CO ₂ EVOLVED (CALC. VALUE = 0.90 cmm.)	ERROR
<i>cmm</i>	<i>per cent</i>
0 83	-8
0 85	-5 5
0 90	0
0 82	-9
0 87	-3 5
0 84	-6 5
0 87	-3 5
0 85	-5 5
0 90	0
0 96	+6 5
0 87	-3 5
0 89	-1
0 88	-2
0 89	-1
0 92	+2
Average	-2 7

(From Heatley, Berenblum and Chain—*Biochem J* 33 53, 1939)

TABLE 5

Volume oxygen per cubic centimeter of hydrogen peroxide

MICRORESPIROMETER	WARBURG	CALCULATED
204		202
208		
198		216
200		
78	78	
77	81	
77	81	
80		
81	77	
74	77	84 5
75	78	
79	79	
79	77	
85	80	82 5
79	81	
82		

(From Heatley, Berenblum and Chain—*Biochem J* 33 53 1939)

The Cartesian diver A considerable volume change occurs isothermally in systems in which certain chemical reactions take place (46) Taking advantage of this fact, Linderström Lang (47) (48) and Linderström Lang and Lanz (49) (50) adapted the falling drop method for determining specific gravity to studies in enzymatic histochemistry The technique was modified from that used by Barbour and Hamilton (51) in the estimation of specific gravity, and by Vogt and Hamilton (52) and by Fenger Eriksen, Krogh and Ussung (53) in the estimation of deuterium oxide

A floating object comes to rest in a fluid column of graded specific gravity at such a point that the specific gravities of the two are equal This fact underlies both the gradient tube technique and the cartesian diver method Though the gradient tube has been used only for the study of volume changes in liquid systems the cartesian diver has been used in microgasometry A few words about the gradient tube seem appropriate here

In a vertical glass tube, at a constant temperature, a practically linear specific gravity gradient can be produced by properly mixing kerosene and bromobenzene A droplet of a watery solution placed beneath the surface of the mixture which has been previously saturated with water at a suitable vapor pressure, will fall and find an equilibrium position where the specific gravity of medium and drop are equal If, however, reactions occur within the drop, producing a volume change, the drop will not come to a standstill but will continue to fall or begin to rise at a rate which, under certain conditions, is a measure of those processes

The gradient in the kerosene-bromobenzene column is measured by noting the positions at which test drops of known density come to rest Drop movement is followed with an ocular micrometer, and specific gravity is ascertained by comparison with the positions of standard drops The drops being small and on all sides surrounded by fluid come almost immediately to temperature equilibrium

The accuracy of the density measurements is 1 to 3 in the sixth decimal place Since 0.1 mm drops can be used, this corresponds to a volume change of about $1 \text{ to } 3 \times 10^{-7} \text{ cm}^3$ which it is claimed, can be measured within a few per cent of error Such a combination of extreme sensitivity and high precision has been demonstrated for none of the other techniques mentioned in this review

First described in terms of its usefulness in biological experimentation by Linderström Lang (54), the cartesian diver technique has been extended by Linderström Lang and co-workers and by Boell and co-workers (55) (56) (57) (58) (59) (60) (61) (62) (63)

A glass vessel (diver) of some 10 to 30 (occasionally up to several hundred) mm is stoppered with an oil droplet free to move in the neck of the vessel Submerged in a fluid medium the vessel quickly comes to equilibrium position Should the inside pressure change, the oil droplet and outside fluid respond by moving in the neck, and depending on whether total volume increases or decreases the vessel rises or falls in its external medium The pressure which

must be applied to return the diver to its original position can be measured and translated into volume change

In his original paper Linderstrom-Lang stated that "any variation of the quantity of gas in the diver may be measured with an accuracy of $\frac{10 \times 0.02}{100}$ cmm "

(54) Boell, Needham and Rogers set the sensitivity at 0.001 cmm

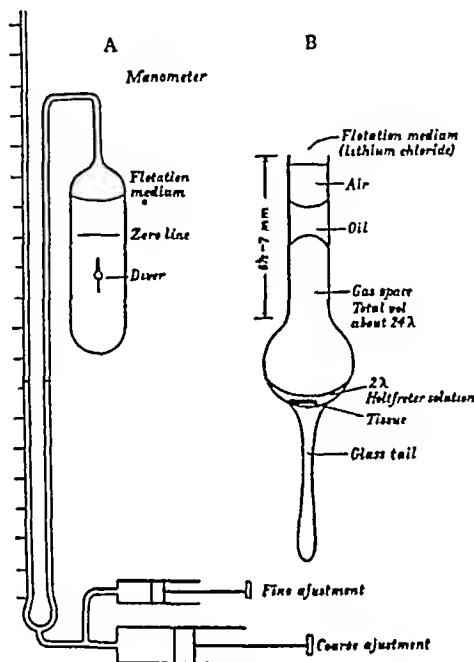


FIG 2

(From Boell, Needham and Rogers—Proc Roy Soc London B 127 322, 1939)

The equilibrium pressure is said to be reproducible within 1 to 2 mm of water (the diver can be made to stay at the mark for ten seconds or so) If v be the gas volume of the diver and p the equilibrium pressure, then

$$\frac{\Delta v}{v} = \frac{\Delta p}{p}$$

Since p and v are of the order of magnitude of 10,000 mm and 10 cmm respectively, an accuracy of pressure reading of 1 to 2 mm of water corresponds to an accuracy of volume measurement equal to 0.001 to 0.002 cmm. From this one would expect that, were the total volume change only 0.001 to 0.002 cmm, the error to be expected to its immediate measurement would be about 50 to 100 per cent.

Boell, Needham and Rogers studied cystein oxidation and compared diver measurements with Warburg results. They state that "in the case of cystein oxidation rate the average diver results were 106 per cent of the Warburg results, in the case of cystein oxidation end values they were 99 per cent, and in the case of yeast fermentation 102 per cent"

These same workers have published a graph relating oxygen uptake by cystein oxidation to time. Though only approximately, oxygen uptake can be tabulated against time as read from the points on this graph. If such an approach is not too crude one may conclude that, for gas volume changes of an average of 0.0026 cmm each reading of such a volume change may, on the average, be 70 per cent inaccurate. This conclusion would be in approximate agreement with the estimate of Linderström Lang already cited. On the other hand, when the volume change between readings is of the order of 0.04 cmm the deviation is considerably less.

The technique is thus seen to be quite sensitive (to about 0.002 cmm). The inclusion of thermobarometer divers allows an experiment to be continued over many hours with a high degree of stability. For minute to minute measurements of volume changes of the order of 0.001 cmm precision is poor. Interpolation of such volume changes from larger total changes is very accurate. It is probable that with a smaller diver than that which is commonly used, and with the exercise of extreme care in setting the diver at the reference mark, greater accuracy in the immediate estimation of very small volume changes could be attained.

The polarograph. The studies of Kucera, in 1903 (64), on the electrocapillary curve of mercury led to the development of the polarograph by Heyrovsky (65) and by Heyrovsky and Shikata (66).

The method depends on the fact that solutes (electrolytes or non-electrolytes) are reduced (or oxidized) when a current is passed through their solutions at voltages above their decomposition potentials. The current flowing at such a potential (half wave potential) depends on the rate of diffusion of the solute to the electrode, and this rate depends, in turn, upon its concentration. Current measurements give quantitative data on solute concentration.

In the usual polarographic determination the dropping mercury electrode is used. For details of the method and for the theory underlying it one should consult the work of Kolthoff and Lingane (67) (68).

The technique has been applied to the estimation of oxygen in solution and is far superior to the Winkler titration. The possibility of thus using it dates back to work of Vitek in 1933 (69). It has since been used in a number of biological studies (70) (71) (72) (73) (74).

Objection to using the method with living tissue has stemmed chiefly from the fear that metallic mercury in contact with the medium might poison the material being studied. In 1940, Kolthoff and Laitinen (75) showed that oxygen in solution can be polarographically determined using a platinum wire micro-electrode in place of the dropping mercury electrode. Papers of Laitinen and Kolthoff (76) (77) published in 1941 should be consulted for detail.

Davies and Brink (78) described a microrespirometer incorporating the platinum microelectrode. A bright platinum or platinum iridium wire (about $27\ \mu$ in diameter) is placed in circuit with a calomel half-cell by way of a glass tube containing tissue and its medium. The platinum electrode is made 0.9 volt negative with respect to the half-cell, and the current which then flows is

proportional to the oxygen concentration of the fluid. A sensitivity to 0.001 cmm volume change of oxygen was attained.

The stationary platinum electrode does not come immediately to equilibrium with the solution in which it is placed. Current intensity gradually changes for from two to ten minutes (75) (76) (77) (78). In certain instances this defect has been overcome by rotating the electrode (75) (77).

The prospect of even greater sensitivity, great speed of response if the "seeking" electrode is close enough to the source of changing oxygen concentration, relative indifference to temperature changes, high precision, and convenience of operation make this instrument one which will probably have very wide applicability in microrespirometry. The electrode has also been directly inserted into the tissue being studied (78a).

The capillary microrespirometer. The capillary microrespirometers to be discussed are all built, more or less, about the same basic design¹. Essentially there are two chambers, one of which contains the biological material, its medium and specific reagents for the absorption of certain gases. The other contains medium and reagents alone. The two chambers are connected by capillary tubing carrying a fluid index droplet. Gas volume change in the tissue chamber creates a pressure difference along the capillary lumen, in response to which the index drop moves. Droplet movement is recorded and timed, and these data are translated into volume change.

First used by Thunberg in 1905 (79) (80) (81), the capillary micromanometer was a gas analysis apparatus of the Pettersson type (1) permitting introduction of the animal or tissue into the measuring pipette. Change in volume of enclosed air indicated the difference between oxygen absorbed and carbon dioxide produced. The air was then passed over potassium hydroxide for carbon dioxide absorption. Later, Thunberg (82) (83) modified the apparatus using equal volume respiration and compensation chambers, each about 3 cc, with a capillary of 0.2 to 0.1 mm diameter. This was the first instance of the use of a compensation chamber in a respiration apparatus. The movement of a petroleum index droplet was observed by the naked eye against a millimeter scale. An upward convex capillary allowed the index to come always to the same equilibrium position. Modified by Winterstein (84), the apparatus was used in further respiration studies. The ratio of compensation to respiration chamber volume was unity. A volume change of about 1.4 cmm could be measured. Nothing was recorded concerning regularity of movement of the index. During the next few years the apparatus was used in a number of laboratories (85) (86) (87). In 1912-14 Winterstein (88) (89) (90) again modified the apparatus by incorporating a mercury manometer.

The index being set at zero the level of the mercury column was noted. When

¹ The Barcroft and Warburg manometric techniques and the variations thereof are not being considered in this discussion, because they have been so carefully and exhaustively treated by Dixon in his book on *Manometric Methods* (Cambridge University Press, 1934). A further development was described by Summerson in the *Journal of Biological Chemistry* vol. 131 (1939), p. 579.

a reading was to be taken the droplet was brought to zero position by means of a screw clamp. This simplified things considerably. It was not necessary to know chamber volumes or capillary diameter to translate to gas volume change. A somewhat later model than the one described, allowing the chambers to be filled with any given gas mixture, was used by Wolf (91).

Krogh (92) (93) (94) (95) modified the Barcroft blood gas apparatus, in 1914, to serve as a micromanometer. Chambers communicated by way of a 0.4 to 0.5 mm internal diameter U tube. The index was kerosene and the manometer itself was outside the thermostat. Only the "reinste Petroleum" was used, but nothing was said about regularity of meniscus movement for small pressure changes. Krogh stated that the Winterstein apparatus could "be made still more sensitive but (it) is not as well suited to prolonged experiments" as his own. This comment stems from the fact that the Winterstein apparatus incorporated a very short capillary, hardly a serious difficulty.

In 1920, Adam (96) combined Winterstein's mercury burette with the Krogh manometer. Paraffin oil of B.P. 160° to 190°C served as index. Volume changes of 20 cmm per hour could be measured with 2 to 3 per cent accuracy. Bass (97) introduced the horizontal microscope for following the index. Bodine and Orr (98) employed a slightly modified Krogh manometer.

In 1925 Novy, Roehm and Soule (99) made the next improvement in this type of microrespirometry. Up to that time the ratio between compensation and respiration chamber volumes had always been close to unity. Novy, however, pointed out that "Sensitivity of the closed end manometer varies directly with the volume of air in the sealed end and inversely as the square of the radius of the manometric tube". A gain in micromanometric technique, this modification was not taken advantage of until some years later when Gerard (99a) utilized the same principle in the construction of a modified Warburg apparatus.

Fenn (10) devised a capillary micromanometer which he himself then found to be (100) "essentially similar to Thunberg's original design". Though the principle of large compensation chamber opposed to smaller respiration chamber was not incorporated, the instrument has been used by many investigators. The smallest capillary was about 0.3 mm i.d. Meniscus position was read to 0.1 mm with a hand lens so that the smallest appreciable volume change was about 0.03 cmm. In 1935 Fenn wrote a detailed paper on the theory and technique of the method (100).

The differential volumeter was now used by a number of workers (101) (102) (103) (104) (105) (106) (107) (108), but none of these described any attempt to improve sensitivity. Very small movements of the index were not measured, and neither irregularities in the movement of the droplet nor deformity of the meniscus became important. Consequently no detailed study of index fluid was made.

In 1933 Schmitt (109) further developed the capillary microrespirometer to a point where it was sensitive to a 0.0005 cmm volume change. A large compensation chamber was not used though both vessels were of relatively large absolute volume. Projected experiments made it desirable to make observa-

tions on index movements over very short periods of time To locate the droplet a traveling horizontal microscope was used Considerable attention was paid to the selection of index fluid After trials with dimethyl aniline, butyric acid, valeric acid, and others, highly purified kerosene was finally used for the majority of experiments Even so there were occasional difficulties due to residual resins

It was next found that to get a smoothly moving droplet, over periods of time as short as three minutes, it became necessary to go to extremes in temperature control Finally, with a thermostat accurate to "better than 0.001°C " a smoothly moving meniscus was observed For 10 mgm of nerve (wet weight) readings were consistent to 2 to 3 per cent even if made as frequently as every two minutes Such precise thermoregulation was probably necessary because of the relatively large chambers used and by their rather wide separation in the bath

Schmitt pointed out that basal drift of the index might be due to slipping at ground joints, or to unequal evaporation of the droplet at its two surfaces Jamming the stoppers and wetting the capillary walls before closing the bridge cock, made it possible to diminish equilibration time to half an hour or less Capillary diameter was 0.4 to 0.5 mm

Thus with a 16 mm objective and a $6\times$ ocular, the apparatus was sensitive to a volume change of 0.0005 cmm Precision to 2 to 3 per cent with a total volume change of about 0.02 cmm was attained This volumeter has also been used by Hill (110)

A capillary microrespirometer of different design has been described by Stefanelli (111) (112) The chief innovations were a reduction of chamber size to 80 cmm , and the incorporation of a glass window to allow observation of tissue The instrument was sensitive to a volume change of 0.003 cmm

Howland and Bernstein, in 1931 (113), studied the respiration of a single paramecium by the capillary method It is interesting that with their comparatively crude apparatus they found the oxygen consumption of a single *Paramecium caudatum* to be about 0.0005 cmm per hour, and it was only in 1940 that Boell and Woodruff (62) with the cartesian diver technique, determined the value for the *Paramecium calkinsi* to be 0.00048 cmm per hour per organism

The chief importance of the work of Bernstein and Howland is derived from the finding that if one heats capillaries sufficiently to seal them they require many hours to cool This is, of course, also dependent upon the efficiency of the thermostat employed and the thickness of the capillary walls The point is pertinent concerning the earlier work of Kalmus who (114) (115) made respirometers by drawing tubing out to capillary dimensions at one end The material to be studied was sucked in and followed by a drop of paraffin oil The end was heat sealed The fine capillary tip was next thrust through the surface of a 10 per cent KOH solution and then into paraffin oil The interface between the alkali and oil was followed with an ocular micrometer This work must have been highly unprecise due to the effect of passing the measuring

capillary through a fluid surface with its adsorbed contaminants. The same objection can be raised to the work of Pearce and Gerard (116).

In 1934 Gerard and Hartline used both a very small respiration chamber (about 60 cmm volume) and a very large compensating chamber (117). The small respiration chamber greatly increases stability. Drop movement irregularities are due, among other things to temperature fluctuations. Thermal movement of the droplet is minimized as volume is decreased, since in this case volume change is proportional to total volume. To prevent drop movements due to changes in atmospheric pressure the manometer is closed off from the air. Instead of achieving this by balancing the respiration with an equal volume compensation chamber, these workers enclosed the entire measuring capillary in a jacket of relatively large volume. Thus sensitivity was not sacrificed for stability, and the achievement of the latter was, at the same time, simplified. The ratio of control volume to respiration chamber volume being about 1000:1 the

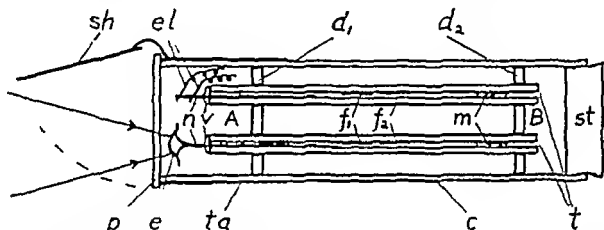


FIG. 3 f_1 and f_2 —filter papers with acid and alkali m —index droplets e —vaseline seals n —tissue st —rubber stopper

(From Gerard and Hartline—*J. Cell and Comp. Physiol.* 4: 141 1934)

volume change represented by any given droplet movement was effectively the completely undamped volume change (the correction factor being 1/1000).

Temperature control was found to be simplified much beyond the elaborate apparatus employed by Schmitt. Capillaries of 0.5 to 1.1 mm internal diameter were used with a droplet of isotonic NaOH as index. Index movement was followed by means of a horizontal microscope. Volume sensitivity achieved was about 0.0013 cmm. For minute to minute figures to be reproducible the total volume change had to be about 0.02 cmm. Reproducibility was therefore just as good with this simple technique as with the apparatus of Schmitt.

Since this work the basic design of the instrument has been used by a number of workers some of whom have modified and adapted it to special problems (118) (119) (120) (121) (122) (123) (124) (8) (116).

Recently several attempts have been made to incorporate some sort of device with the capillary micromanometer so that reagents could be mixed during on experiment.

Thimann and Commooer (125), in 1940, made a contribution toward this end. Using small capillaries (0.2 to 0.3 mm i.d.) they arranged the apparatus

to allow for the addition of substrate during an experiment. Measuring droplet movement to 0.1 mm these authors attained about the same sensitivity as previous workers. However, reading the meniscus to the nearest 0.1 mm means an average error of 10 per cent per mm of movement or 0.006 cmm for a volume change of 0.060 cmm. Thus for volume changes of 0.006 cmm (which is of the order of magnitude of sensitivity of most of the constructions discussed) the error would be about 50 per cent, on the average, and for volume changes of 0.001 cmm it would be about 400 per cent. This sort of error could easily be obviated by more accurately determining meniscus position.

Cunningham and Kirk have made an effort in the same direction (126). Side by side, in a brass block, there are placed respiration chambers which, by way

TABLE 6

VOLUME CO ₂ LIBERATED (CALCULATED)	VOLUME CO ₂ LIBERATED (MEASURED)	ERROR
<i>cmm</i>	<i>cmm</i>	<i>per cent</i>
2.60	2.37	-7
2.60	2.48	-5
3.00	2.72	-10
3.15	3.12	-3
2.98	2.85	-4
2.38	2.46	3
2.95	3.01	2
2.95	3.01	2
2.95	3.01	2
2.16	2.09	-3
2.16	1.99	-8
2.16	2.08	-4
3.42	3.60	5
2.16	2.08	-4

Average per cent error = ± 4.5

Average per cent recovery = 98.0

(From Cunningham and Kirk—*J. Gen. Physiol.* 24:135, 1940)

of hollow vertical pillars, communicate with each other through a glass capillary. Kerosene serves as index fluid. The authors state that "The symmetrical construction and the placing of the chambers inside a metal block insure a uniform temperature distribution, permit the elimination of the thermostat, and make possible a very high degree of sensitivity." Droplets are placed on the floor and roof of the chamber and are mixed by drawing a bit of glass covered metal from one to the other with an electromagnet.

Liberating known amounts of carbon dioxide within the chamber, the following calibration data were obtained.

Reproducibility was also tested by measuring paramecium oxygen consumption.

Table 6 shows the error to be 4.5 per cent when the total volume change is, on the average, 2.7 cmm. In table 7 the average of the probable errors,

referred to millimeter displacement per minute, is 8 per cent of the average displacement. This is large considering that average displacement per minute is 0.3 mm, and readings are made at 10 to 20 minute intervals. The chief reason for this lack of precision probably stems from the fact that the capillary is exposed to air currents and the gas may well be at different temperatures on the two sides of the index. Even in a constant temperature bath Schmitt found that temperature pockets could cause serious trouble (109).

TABLE 7

EXPERIMENT NUMBER	TRIAL NUMBER	OXYGEN CONSUMPTION	
		mm. displacement per minute	mm. O ₂ at N.T.P./hr
1	1	0.30*	
	2	0.26 0.26 ± 0.04	0.60 ± 0.10
	3	0.25	
	4	0.23	
2	1	0.32* 0.33 ± 0.02	0.85 ± 0.05
	2	0.35	
3	1	0.20†	
	2	0.22 0.21 ± 0.01	0.54 ± 0.02
	3	0.22	
4	1	0.30* 0.20 ± 0.01	0.74 ± 0.02
	2	0.28	
5	1	0.14* 0.14 ± 0.01	0.35 ± 0.02
	2	0.15	
6	1	0.10† 0.09 ± 0.01	0.23 ± 0.02
	2	0.08	
7	1	0.53*	
	2	0.51 0.53 ± 0.05	1.35 ± 0.13
	3	0.58	
	4	0.50	

* Measurements made at 10 minute intervals

† Measurements made at 20 minute intervals

(From Cunningham and Kirk—*J. Gen. Physiol.* 24: 135 1940.)

On the other hand the apparatus has these advantages: the sensitivity can be readily altered by substituting capillaries of varying sizes, chamber volume can be readily altered, advantageously placed outlets allow for filling the chambers with various gas mixtures, two solutions may be mixed during an experiment. In a more recent paper Barth and Kirk have described a modification of this method (126a) in the direction of considerable improvement.²

In 1941 Tyler and Berg (127) described a somewhat different capillary microrespirometer. A mercury piston was introduced to permit returning the index

²Footnote appears on page 75 at end of References

drop to its zero position for each reading. This device allows estimation of volume change from measurement of the amount of mercury introduced. It will be recalled that Winterstein, in 1912 (88) (89), and Duryee, in 1936 (119), described similar instruments.

It is stated by Tyler and Berg that their readings are not affected by overall temperature changes, but that it is essential to avoid temperature difference on the two sides of the drop. Since this latter is far more difficult to achieve than is a constant overall temperature the net advantage is slight (109). The instrument has the advantages that tissue being studied can be seen during an experiment (see also Stefaneli (111)) and substrate or other reagent can be added to the metabolizing material. The authors predict an error of 10 per cent for a volume change of 0.003 cmm, but state that this precision has not been attained. Experience indicates that such accuracy can be achieved with care in the selection of index drop fluid (109) (128).

Following the use of the katharometer by Shakespear (129) and by Shakespear and Daynes (130), Daynes (131) detailed the mathematical theory of the instrument. Slater (132) combined the katharometer with the capillary micro-respirometer. Oxygen consumption was measured volumetrically and carbon dioxide production katharometrically. The instrument could be used to measure an oxygen volume change of 1 cmm and a carbon dioxide volume change of 0.5 cmm. The technique has not been applied further in biology except in the macrometabolism studies of Ledig and Lyman (133) and Rabinowitch and Bozin (134).

Fenn (10) combined a conductivity cell with the differential volumeter. Described in detail by Fenn (10) (100) and briefly discussed by von Ledeberg (135) this method has received but little attention.

Tobias and Gerard (128) further developed the capillary respirometer so that it is now convenient to follow the respiration of as many as ten or more tissue samples at once. This number can easily be expanded if necessary. Gas volume changes of the order of 0.0005 to 0.001 cmm per minute can be followed at minute to minute intervals with individual readings varying from the mean by an average of 8 per cent. Over total times of five to ten minutes the interpolated minute values have a higher precision, probably about 2 per cent.

Each respirometer consists of a 90 mm length of 0.2 mm capillary tubing sealed, with de Khotinsky cement, into a 30 to 40 mm length of 1.2 to 1.5 mm thin walled tubing. The latter segment serves as tissue and reagent chamber. The smaller capillary carries the index drop. After inserting tissue and absorbing reagents the open end of the chamber is sealed with plasticine. A number of units is mounted around a central heavy walled capillary extending from a glass stopper. The stopper is placed in its sheath, and the whole, submerged in a water bath, is supported in such a fashion that it can be rotated about its central axis. Thus, successive capillaries and their indices can be brought into the field of a horizontal microscope.

The utilization of a very small respiration chamber (30 to 50 cmm) opposed to a large outer chamber and enclosed therein affords great stability. The chief

advantages of the technique are this stability, high precision for very small volume changes, and the convenient multiple tube arrangement. The chief disadvantages stem from the fact that the capillaries are very fragile, and thus must be measured for each experiment and discarded. This is far too time consuming. Up to this point also it had not been possible to add substrate to the tissue during an experiment nor to observe the tissue.

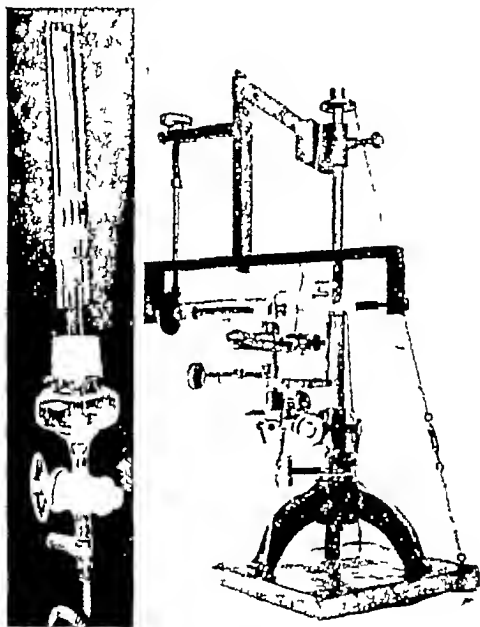


Fig. 4

In order to overcome these disadvantages the instrument has been modified. Permanent, heavy walled capillary units, expanded at one end to accommodate tissue and absorbing reagents, replace the fine capillaries. A small ground glass cap instead of plasticine closes the chamber. The units are mounted in a vertical bank inside a brass-glass box. Brass clips into which the respirometers fit are rotatable from the outside of the box by means of a metal arm connected thereto by a packed joint. Since the tissue being studied clings to the roof of the expanded end of the unit, a droplet of substrate to be added may be placed on the floor along with a small lead shot coated with celloidin and paraffin.

Rotation of a single capillary at any time then causes the mixing ball to drag the reagent around to the tissue Greasing of the cap-respirometer joint makes it transparent and thus allows visual observation of the tissue being studied

In 1942 Scholander described (138a, 138b) a volumetric respirometer sensitive to about 0.01 cmm per hour It embodies principles similar to those utilized by Duryee and by Tyler and Berg

Miscellaneous techniques From time to time micromethods have been developed for gas analyses based on the principles of selective absorption of gases by specific reagents (136) (137) (138) (139) (140) (141) (142) Perhaps the most noteworthy applications to biological problems were those of Krogh who, following the lead of Timiriazeff (143), developed the tonometric method (94) (144) (145) to a high degree of sensitivity and precision (146) (147)

The technique used by Hill (148) in a study of rubber permeability has not been otherwise applied It involved the detection of oxygen by luminous bacteria which can be seen to glow when oxygen partial pressure is as low as 0.0053 mm Hg Other such data on minimal required oxygen concentration have been obtained (149) (150)

Dubln, Boothby, Brown and Williams (151) analyzed mixtures of He, O₂ and N₂ by determining sound velocity in the mixture The method has no qualitative value No effort has been made to adapt it to micro-studies, and it is unlikely that such adaptation will ever be made because of limited sensitivity

McAlister (152) developed a spectrophotometric technique for the study of plant respiration and photosynthesis (153) (154) In 1939 Pfund (155) modified the method by the introduction of a phonic interrupter wheel and pitch detector Simple calculations show that an adaptation of the method to micro levels, of the order discussed in this paper, would involve very serious technical difficulties No effort has been made at such an adaptation

Interferometry has been applied to problems in metabolism (156) (157) (158) The great cost of the apparatus and its relative complexity have overshadowed the assets of great precision, speed and sensitivity

Utilizing the interferometer principle (159) a sensitive indicator of pressure change has recently been developed by the author To the surface of a microscope slide there is fastened, with shellac, a cover slip (about 0.1 mm thick) through which has been drilled a hole (convenient size for preliminary experiments has been about 2 mm diam) Over the hole a thin organic film is spread and is held in place by another, similarly drilled, cover slip and shellac Multiple reflections of monochromatic light in the gap between the cover slip and the microscope slide produce circular, concentric interference fringes As pressure change causes the membrane to be displaced with respect to the fixed slide the fringes are seen to shift Because of the extreme thinness of the film the instrument is very sensitive (Neither the film nor the slide need be silvered or aluminized Reflectivity is high enough to produce bright, clear fringes) The instrument responds to pressure changes of the order of 0.05 mm water (about 0.004 mm Hg)

Summary of sensitivities Recently several authors (57) (160) have published lists of so-called sensitivities for the various microgasometric methods. These have expressed sensitivities in terms of cubic millimeter volume change measured by a given shift of meniscus position, in the case of the manometric methods. Such lists assign different sensitivities to different constructions of capillary respirometers incorporating capillaries of different dimensions and utilizing different methods for reading meniscus position. Obviously these distinctions are arbitrary.

Table 8 gives the limits to which the sensitivities of the various genera of apparatus have so far been pushed. Several of them are capable of development to considerably greater sensitivity. Errors estimated are those which might reasonably be expected were the indicated volume change measured only once.

TABLE 8

INSTRUMENT	MEASURES	SMALLEST MEASURABLE VOLUME CHANGE—ESTIMATED DIRECTLY FROM TWO READINGS	INTERPOLATED FROM SERIES OF MEASUREMENTS	ERROR OF METHOD AS DESCRIBED IN TEXT
Biometer	CO ₂	2.5×10^{-3} cmm		6%
Winkler titration	Dissolved O ₂	28 cmm		1-2.5%
Indicator	Dissolved CO ₂	5×10^{-3} cmm		10%
Optical lever	CO ₂ , O ₂ , etc.	1 cmm/hour		2-3%
Gradient tube	Volume change in liquid systems	3×10^{-3} cmm		A few %
Cartesian diver	CO ₂ , O ₂ , etc.	$1-2 \times 10^{-3}$ cmm 5×10^{-3} cmm	$1-2 \times 10^{-3}$ cmm	50-100% A few % A few %
Polarograph	Dissolved O ₂	1×10^{-3} cmm		Very precise
Microcapillary	CO ₂ , O ₂ , etc.	5×10^{-4} cmm	5×10^{-4} cmm	8% A few %

Reactions suitable for the calibration of various microrespirometers Numerous reactions, proceeding at a known rate, have been utilized for the calibration of micromanometric systems of various sorts. Some of these, such as the liberation of carbon dioxide from bicarbonate by excess of acid, and the fermentative processes need no additional mention. Some other suitable reactions are noted below with references. Not all have been used for the purpose indicated.

Oxidation of cysteine

Harrison. *Biochem J* 18 1009, 1924

Boell, Needham and Rogers. *Proc Roy Soc London (B)* 127 222 1939

Kharasch, Legault, Wilder and Gerard. *J Biol Chem* 113 537, 1936

Decomposition of oxaloacetic acid

Ostern. *Hoppe Seyler's Ztschr* 218 160 1933

Boell, Needham and Rogers. *as above*

Decomposition of acetoacetic acid

Ostern, as above

Boell, Needham and Rogers, as above

Ljunggren Ber d deutsch Chem Gesell 56 2469, 1923

Ljunggren Biochem Ztschr 145 422, 1924

von Euler u Olander Ztschr anorg Chem 147 295, 1925

Burki und Schaaf Helv Chim Acta 4 418, 1921

Widmark Acta med Scand 53 393, 1920

Decomposition of alpha-alpha dimethylacetoacetic acid

Pedersen J Am Chem Soc 51 2098, 1929

Decomposition of nitramide

Bronsted und Pedersen Ztschr physik Chem 108 185, 1924

Decomposition of nitroso-triacetone-amine

Bronsted and King J Am Chem Soc 47 2523, 1925

Francis and Gliddens J Chem Soc 101 2358, 1912

Francis and Geake J Chem Soc 103 1722, 1913

Francis, Geake and Roche J Chem Soc 107 1651, 1915

Peroxi-decomposition by catalase

Heatley, Berenblum and Chain Biochem J 33 53, 1939

Cathodal reduction of oxygen

Davies and Brink Proc Am Physiol Soc 69, 1941

Estimation of amount of metabolizing material Since, for purposes of comparison, it is necessary to refer respiration intensity to the amount of respiring material present, the accurate estimation of the latter becomes an important factor in determining the significance of such data. The problem is equally difficult in macro and micro studies from the point of view of partitioning respiration intensity amongst the various cellular constituents present in a bit of tissue. As tissue homogeneity increases, this matter becomes progressively less troublesome. In micro-studies there is the more primitive problem of simply determining the total amount of material present.

The commonest method for getting at the amount of respiring material involves the determination of dry weight. The ordinary Kuhlman microbalance can be used for dry weights of 80 μ g or more (44). With smaller amounts of tissue serious error can be introduced. For weights of less than 80 μ g the Donau microbalance (44) (161) is recommended. Torsion balances sensitive to 0.002 mgm are commercially available. For weights of the order of 0.0001 mgm the quartz fiber balance should be used. In 1941 Lowry described such a balance with a sensitivity of about 0.03 γ , and with reproducibility of 0.1 γ . The maximum load capacity was about 250 γ . A modified type of quartz fiber balance has also been described by Bazzoni (169) (170).

Total nitrogen determination can be done accurately on small amounts of tissue, and nitrogen content can be used as the standard of reference. Like the

measurement of dry weight, this method does not differentiate between respiring and non respiring material. Referring respiration intensity to dry weight may also give a false picture of the actual situation since various organs and tissues and parts of organs have quite different water contents.

Nucleic acid determination may be used to differentiate cellular from non cellular material (44). After suitable extractions nucleic acid phosphorus may be determined by the method of Berenblum and Chain (162).

Recently Caspersson (163) has developed an ultraviolet absorption method for the determination of nucleic acid compounds which have a characteristic absorption curve in the ultraviolet spectrum. The curve can be gotten on microscopic sections or smears. Its shape identifies the compound, and the height of the curve can be used as a measure of the amount present in the field measured. This method has not, to date, been used in conjunction with respiration studies, though it has been used to follow the intracellular metabolism of nucleic acid (164).

Cell counts are, of course, ideally suited to the study of cell suspensions. Recently the use of counting techniques has received a certain impetus in the study of solid masses of tissue also. Glick, Holter, Linderström Lang and Seberg Ohlsen (165) developed a cell counting technique in connection with studies on enzymatic histochemistry. The method consists of cutting frozen sections from a core of tissue using alternate sections for histological and enzyme analysis. The authors point out that counting nuclei is much preferable to counting cell outlines. It may be noted that when nucleoli are present as single and constant structures they would afford a still better index of number of cells (166) (167).

For muscle, Grossman (168) has found that maceration in 5 per cent citric acid causes extrusion of nuclei. These might then be taken up, homogenized by shaking and counted in a hemocytometer chamber. Recently Pearce and Gerard (116) have macerated tissue by grinding with a small glass pestle in concentrated acetic acid. After maceration the tissue is stained, shaken in a blood pipette, and nuclei are counted in a hemocytometer chamber.

The measurement of tissue volume has also been attempted (128). Tissue is forced into a capillary of known diameter and the length of the cylinder it occupies is then measured directly. Adequate data for evaluation are not yet available.

The improvement in microgasometric techniques has gone far enough so that use of bits of tissue sufficiently small to allow direct counting of all cells present is feasible (166). Thus, in contrast to the work of Glick et al., cell counts can be made directly on the sample which has been studied metabolically. This would also allow for measurements of cell and nuclear dimensions. Such work is, at present, in progress in this laboratory.

In conclusion, it is important to emphasize that none of these methods affords a basis for the apportionment of total respiration intensity amongst the various cell types present in a given piece of tissue. The importance of knowing something of this distribution is great and the problem presents a very real challenge to workers in the field.

REFERENCES

- (1) PETERSSON, O *Ztschr f anal Chem* 25 467, 1886
- (2) TREADWELL AND HALL *Analytical chemistry* 2 John Wiley & Son, New York
- (3) TASHIRO, S *Am J Physiol* 32 137, 1913
- (4) TASHIRO, S *Am J Physiol* 32 107, 1913
- (5) TASHIRO, S *J Biol Chem* 16 485, 1913
- (6) TASHIRO, S *J Biol Chem* 18 329, 1914
- (7) TASHIRO, S *A chemical sign of life* Univ of Chicago Press, 1917
- (8) GUTTMAN, R *Biol Bull* 69 356, 1935
- (9) PARKER, G *J Gen Physiol* 8 21, 1925
- (10) FENN, W *Am J Physiol* 80 327, 1928
- (11) GERARD, R *Am J Physiol* 82 381, 1927
- (12) MOORE, A *J Gen Physiol* 1 613, 1919
- (13) WINKLER, L *Ber d deutsch Chem Gesell* 21 2843, 1888
- (14) WINKLER, L *Ber d deutsch Chem Gesell* 22 1864, 1889
- (15) HEILBRUNN, L *Science* 42 615, 1915
- (16) THERIAULT, E *US Pub Hlth Serv Bull* no 151 1, 1925
- (17) THERIAULT, E *Pub Hlth Rep'ts (Suppl)* no 90 1, 1931
- (18) THERIAULT, E AND P McNAMEE *Ind and Eng Chem (Anal Ed)* 4 59, 1932
- (19) ALLEE, W AND R OESTING *Physiol Zool* 7 509, 1934
- (20) Official and Tentative Methods of Analysis of the Association of Official Agricultural Chemists, 7th ed 511, 1935
- (21) ALSTERBERG, G *Biochem Ztschr* 170 30, 1926
- (22) OSTERHOUT, W AND A HAAS *J Biol Chem* 32 141, 1917
- (23) OESTING, R *Physiol Zool* 7 542, 1934
- (24) LUND, E *Am J Physiol* 45 351, 1918
- (25) LUND, E *Proc Soc Exper Biol Med* 19 63, 1921
- (26) THOMPSON, T AND R MILLER *Ind and Eng Chem* 20 774, 1928
- (27) SNOKE, A *Ecology* 10 163, 1929
- (28) KAWAGUTI, S *J Fac Sci Imp Univ Tok (Zool sect)* 3 183, 1933
- (29) ALLEE, W *Ecology* 10 14, 1929
- (30) HAAS, A *Science* 44 105, 1916
- (31) MOORE, A *Proc Soc Exper Biol Med* 15 18, 1917
- (32) MOORE, A *Proc Soc Exper Biol Med* 16 35, 1918
- (33) OSTERHOUT, W *J Gen Physiol* 1 17, 1918
- (34) OSTERHOUT, W AND A HAAS *J Gen Physiol* 1 1, 1918
- (35) OSTERHOUT, W *J Biol Chem* 35 237, 1918
- (36) LUND, E *Biol Bull* 36 105, 1919
- (37) PARKER, G *J Gen Physiol* 4 689, 1922
- (38) PARKER, G *J Gen Physiol* 7 641, 1925
- (39) NEWMAN, F *The production and measurement of low pressures* van Nostrand, 1925
- (40) CARVER, E *J Am Chem Soc* 45 59, 1923
- (41) WIGGERS, C *Am J Physiol* 33 382, 1914
- (42) HAMILTON, W, G BREWER AND I BROTMAN *Am J Physiol* 107 427, 1934
- (43) HEATLEY, N, I BERENBLUM AND E CHAIN *Biochem J* 33 53, 1939
- (44) BERENBLUM, I, E CHAIN AND N HEATLEY *Biochem J* 33 68, 1939
- (45) HEATLEY, N *J Sci Inst* 17 197, 1940
- (46) AMMON, R AND K BARTECHT *Biochem Ztschr* 268 331, 1934
- (47) LINDERSTRÖM-LANG, K *Nature* 139 713, 1937
- (48) LINDERSTRÖM-LANG, K *Harvey Lectures* 34 214, 1939
- (49) LINDERSTRÖM-LANG, K AND H LANZ *Compt Rend d Trav d Lab Carls* 21 315, 1938
- (50) Same paper as no 49 appears in *Mikrochim Acta* 3 210, 1938
- (51) BARBOUR, H AND W HAMILTON *J Biol Chem* 69 625, 1926

- VOGT E AND W HAMILTON *Am. J Physiol* 113: P 135 1935
 FENGER ERIKSEN K A KROGH AND H USSUNG *Biochem J* 30 1264 1936
 LINDERSTRÖM LANG, K *Nature* 140 108 1937
 LINDERSTRÖM LANG K AND D GLICK *Compt Rend d Trav d Lab Carls* 22
 300 1938
 NEEDHAM J AND E BOELL *Proc Soc Exper Biol Med* 39 287 1933
 BOELL, E J NEEDHAM AND V ROGERS *Proc Roy Soc London B* 127 323, 1939
 BOELL, E AND J NEEDHAM *Proc Roy Soc London B* 127: 356 1939
 BOELL E H KOCH AND J NEEDHAM *Proc Roy Soc London B* 127 374, 1939
 NEEDHAM J V ROGERS AND S SHEN *Proc Roy Soc London B* 127: 576, 1939
 BOELL E AND J NICHOLAS *Anat Rec (Suppl)* 73 9, 1939
 BOELL, E AND L WOODRUFF *Biol Bull* 79 352 1940
 BOELL E AND D NACHMANSOHN *Biol Bull* 79 357, 1940
 KUCERA, G *Ann Physik* 11 529 1903
 HETROVSKY J *Phil Mag* 45 303 1923
 HETROVSKY J AND M SHIKATA *Rec Trav Chim* 44 496, 1925
 KOLTHOFF I AND J LINGANE *Chem Rev* 24 1 1939
 KOLTHOFF, I AND J LINGANE *Polarography Interscience Pub Inc*, 1941
 VITEK, V *Congres d Chim Indust Compt Rend* 12 1932
 PETERING, H AND F DANIELS *J Am Chem Soc* 60 2796, 1938
 KARSTEN, K. *Am J Bot (Abstr)* 14 1933
 BAUMBERGER, J *Am J Physiol* 123 P 10 1938
 BAUMBERGER J *Cold Spring Harbor Symp Quant Biol* 7 195 1939
 MANNINO W *Ecology* 21 509 1940
 KOLTHOFF I AND H LAITINEN *Science* 92 152 1940
 LAITINEN, H AND I KOLTHOFF *J Physical Chem* 45 1061, 1941
 LAITINEN H AND I KOLTHOFF *J Physical Chem* 45 1079, 1941
 DAVIES P AND F BRINK. *Am J Physiol* 132 P 69, 1941
 DAVIES, P AND F BRINK *Am J Physiol (Proc)* 133: 256, 1941
 THUNBERG T *Zentralbl f Physiol* 18 553 1904
 THUNBERG, T *Skand Arch f Physiol* 17 74 1905
 BATELLI F AND I STERN *Handh d Biochem Arbeits (Abderhalden)* 8 458, 1910
 THUNBERG T *Zentralbl f Physiol* 19 803 1905
 THUNBERG T *Zentralbl f Physiol* 19 565 (Nicolai) 1907
 WINTERSTEIN, H *Ztschr f allg Physiol* 6: 315 1906
 TRENDLENBERG W *Arch f (Anat u) Physiol* 47 1909
 SCAFFIDI V *Biochem Ztschr* 25 24 1910
 WIDMARK, E *Skand Arch f Physiol* 24 321, 1910
 WINTERSTEIN H *Biochem Ztschr* 48: 440 1912
 WINTERSTEIN H *Ztschr f Biol Tech u Meth* 3 246, 1913
 WINTERSTEIN H *Biochem Ztschr* 61 81, 1914
 WOLF H *Pflügers Arch* 216: 322 1927
 KROGH A *Biochem Ztschr* 62 266, 1914
 KROGH A *Biochem Ztschr* 66 512 1914
 KROGH A *Handh d Biochem Arbeits (Abderhalden)* 8 1915
 KROGH A *The respiratory exchange of animals and man*
 1916 23
 ADAM N *Biochem J* 14 679 1930
 BASS E *Ztschr f Biol* 78 161 1923
 BODINE J AND P ORR *Biol Bull* 48: 1 1925
 NOVY F H ROEHM AND M SOULE *J Infect Dis* 36 109 1925
 GERARD R. *Am J Physiol* 87 P 522 1931
 FENN W *The differential volumeter for the measurement of cellular*
and other processes Amer Inst Co, 1935

- (101) BOYD, M Biol Bull 55 92, 1928
- (102) HARVEY, E J Gen Physiol 11 469, 1928
- (103) JACKSON, H, F PARKER AND E GLOVER J Exper Med 52 547, 1930
- (104) FISCHER, E Am J Physiol 96 78, 1931
- (105) MARTIN, D J Gen Physiol 15 691, 1932
- (106) DYE, J Am J Physiol 105 518, 1933
- (107) HARASHIMA, S J Cell and Comp Physiol 3 419, 1933
- (108) OBRESHKOVE, V Physiol Zool 3 271, 1930
- (109) SCHMITT, F Am J Physiol 104 303, 1933
- (110) HILL, D J Physiol 98 207, 1940
- (111) STEFANELLI, A J Exper Biol 14 171, 1937
- (112) STEFANELLI, A Arch di Fisiol 39 176, 1939
- (113) HOWLAND, R AND A BERNSTEIN J Gen Physiol 14 339, 1931
- (114) KALMUS, H Biol Zentralbl 47 595, 1927
- (115) KALMUS, H Ztschr vergl Physiol 7 304, 1928
- (116) PEARCE, J AND R GERARD Am J Physiol 136 49, 1942
- (117) GERARD, R AND K HARTLINE J Cell and Comp Physiol 4 141, 1934
- (118) VICTOR, J Am J Physiol 111 477, 1935
- (119) DURYEE, W Ztschr vergl Physiol 23 208, 1936
- (120) BRACHET, J AND H SHAPIRO J Cell and Comp Physiol 10 133, 1937
- (121) SHAPIRO, H J Cell and Comp Physiol 9 381, 1937
- (122) WADDINGTON, C, J NEEDHAM AND J BRACHET Proc Roy Soc London B120 193, 1936
- (123) BROOKENS, N, L ECTORS AND R GERARD Am J Physiol 116 16, 1936
- (124) WINTERSTEIN, H Arch Int d Physiol 48 349, 1939
- (125) THIMANN, K AND B COMMONER J Gen Physiol 23 333, 1940
- (126) CUNNINGHAM, B AND P KIRK J Gen Physiol 24 135, 1940
- (126a) BARTH, L AND P KIRK J Gen Physiol 25 663, 1942
- (127) TYLER, A AND W BERG Science 94 397, 1941
- (128) TOBIAS, J AND R GERARD Proc Soc Exper Biol Med 47 531, 1941
- (129) SHAKESPEAR, G A new permeability tester for balloon fabrics Advisory Committee of Aeronautics (Gt Bt)
- (130) SHAKESPEAR, G AND H DAYNES Further notes on the hydrogen permeameter Advisory Committee of Aeronautics (Gt Bt)
- (131) DAYNES, H Proc Roy Soc London A27 273, 286, 1920
- (132) SLATER, W J Sci Inst 3 177, 1925
- (133) LEDIG, P AND R LYMAN J Clin Investigation 4 495, 1927
- (134) RABINOWITCH, I AND E BAZIN Canadian M A J 16 638, 1926
- (135) VON LEDEBUR J Mikrochem Sond Pregl Festsch 253, 1929
- (136) BARCROFT, J AND J HALDANE J Physiol 28 232, 1902
- (137) BURK, D AND R MILNER Ind and Eng Chem (Anal Ed) 4 3, 1932
- (138) NIEDERL AND NIEDERL Micromethods of quantitative organic elementary analysis Wiley, New York, 1938
- (138a) SCHOLANDER, P Rev of Sci Inst 13 33, 1942
- (138b) SCHOLANDER, P Rev of Sci Inst 13 27, 1942
- (139) GRAHAME, D Ind and Eng Chem (Anal Ed) 11 351, 1939
- (140) PRESCOTT, C AND J MORRISON Ind and Eng Chem (Anal Ed) 11 230, 1939
- (141) WILBUR, B, G DALAND AND J COHEN J Exper Med 46 43, 1927
- (142) CLARKE, B AND H HERMANCE Ind and Eng Chem (Anal Ed) 9 597, 1937
- (143) TIMIRIAZEFF, M Ann d Sci Nat -Bot 2 99, 1885
- (144) KROGH, A Skand Arch f Physiol 20 259, 1907
- (145) KROGH, A Handb d Biolog Arbeits (Aberhalden) 4 192, 1926
- (146) KROGH, A Skand Arch f Physiol 25 188, 1911
- (147) KROGH, A Skand Arch f Physiol 29 29, 1913

- (148) HILL, S Science 67 374, 1928
- (149) HARVEY E AND T MORRISON J Gen Physiol 6:13 1923
- (150) RICHTER O Planta 2 669 1920
- (151) DUBLIN W W BOOTHBY, H BROWN AND M WILLIAMS Proc Staff Meetings Mayo Clinic 15 412 1940
- (152) McALISTER E Smithsonian Misc Collec 95 1 #24 1937
- (153) McALISTER E J Gen Physiol 22 613 1939
- (154) McALISTER E AND J MYERS Smithsonian Inst Puhl 99 #6 1940
- (155) PFUND A Science 90 327 1939
- (156) MEISSNER K Handb f Wiss Bot 76 208 1932
- (157) THOMPSON W J Gen Physiol 16 5 1932
- (158) WILLBRANDT W Pflügers Arch 240: 708 1938
- (159) TOBIAS J Rev of Sci Insts May 1942
- (160) JAHN T Protozoa in biological research Calkins, Columbia University Press 352 1941
- (161) DONAU J Mikrochim. 13 158 1933
- (162) BERENBLUM I AND E CHAIN Biochem J 32 295 1938
- (163) CASPERSSON T Skand Arch f Physiol (Suppl) 73 1 1938
- (164) CASPERSSON T Arch f exper Zellf 22 635 1939
- (165) GLICK D H HOLTER K LINDERSTRÖM LANG AND A SEBERG-OHLSEN Compt Rend d Trav d Lab Carls 20 1935
- (166) TOBIAS J D CLARK AND R GERARD Fed n Proc 1 85, 1942
- (167) AGDUHR E Anat Rec 80 191 1941
- (168) GROSSMAN G Science 85 250 1937
- (169) LOWRY, O J Biol Chem 140 183 1941
- (170) BAZZONI C J Franklin Inst 180 463 1915

*Since this review has gone to press Cunningham and Kirk (Jour Cell and Comp Physiol 20 119 1942) have published a paper describing a capillary respirometer sensitive to 5×10^{-4} cmm. The respirometer is of the open type and represents a development of the Kalmus technique. The criticisms levelled at the Kalmus method have been circumvented.

INTERRELATIONS OF CALCIUM AND ASCORBIC ACID TO CELL SURFACES AND INTERCELLULAR SUBSTANCES AND TO PHYSIOLOGICAL ACTION

MARY ELIZABETH REID

*Division of Chemotherapy, National Institute of Health, U S Public Health Service,
Bethesda, Md*

A better understanding of the physiological effects of vitamins in plants and in animals is a goal toward which a number of different lines of investigation are now being directed. Some insight has been gained concerning the mode of action of several of these substances in animals but comparatively little is known of their functions in plants. It has been demonstrated that several members of the vitamin B complex participate in respiratory processes and because of its reducing action, it has been suggested that ascorbic acid also is concerned in respiration. There is as yet, however, no considerable amount of evidence clearly indicating such a relationship in intact tissues. Ascorbic acid is known to be involved in the synthesis of collagen and reticulin, carbohydrate-containing sclero-proteins found in bones and connective tissue and in smaller amounts in other animal tissues. These frame-work proteins all presumably contain small amounts of carbohydrates and function in animals in much the same way as do the anhydrides of hexoses and pentoses in the cellulose, lignin, pentosans, etc., in plants. It has not been discovered whether ascorbic acid is concerned primarily in the activities occurring within cells or in the synthesis of essential substances outside of cell boundaries. An impressive amount of evidence has been accumulated which suggests that it is concerned in some way with determining the retention and absorption of water. Whatever its mode of action may be, there is considerable evidence that calcium is involved in its functioning.

The following review of literature and discussion represent an endeavor to correlate some of the known but hitherto widely scattered facts concerning the physiological interrelations of ascorbic acid and calcium in animals and plants and to point out suggestive similarities in their action in the two groups of organisms. The subject is discussed under the following topics

- I Relation of calcium to the boundary structure of cells
- II Ascorbic acid in relation to cytoplasm and cell surfaces, cell walls, and intercellular substances
- III Some aspects of the chemical nature of the cell wall and intercellular substances
- IV Loss of ascorbic acid in metabolic processes
- V Similarity of some physiological effects of ascorbic acid and calcium

I RELATION OF CALCIUM TO THE BOUNDARY STRUCTURE OF CELLS 1 *In animals* The protoplasmic cell surface or plasma membrane is generally considered to be a delicate but essential structure, not many molecules in thickness and containing lipid, probably associated with protein, as a major component. Microscopic studies have revealed the existence of a readily visible

cortical layer of cytoplasm, the behavior of which has been shown by Heilbrunn and co-workers (58) to be largely controlled by calcium (see also Just (67)). These investigators observed that calcium ions have a stiffening effect upon the ectoplasm of amoeba but cause a decrease in viscosity of the endoplasm. It has also been found that calcium in the surrounding medium is not essential for the formation and maintenance of the surface layer. Chambers (23, 24) reported that *Arbacia* eggs immersed in a mixture of sodium and potassium chloride in proportions of 19:1, in the concentrations found in sea water, and at a pH of 7.0 will divide for many generations, the blastomeres separating as individual cells because of lack of intercellular cement material. He concluded that an addition of surface material from the underlying cytoplasm must occur. If the surface layer is injured at some point, the cytoplasm flows out and disintegration of the surface layer spreads out over the entire cell. However, repair of an injury, which exposes the internal cytoplasm, is impossible in the absence of calcium because of inability of the protoplasm to form a new interface. In the presence of a low concentration of calcium, partial coagulation around the point of injury occurs and a new protoplasmic surface layer develops at the boundary between the healthy cytoplasm and the coagulating surface. The latter is supposed to afford a solid substrate against which surface substances may accumulate. The repair of the protoplasmic surface thus depends upon a previous formation of an extraneous coat.

As cells become older the surface may become modified by secretions of various types such as mineral matter in the formation of bone. Such surface coatings are not essential to single cells but they are necessary for multicellular organisms. This is true, for example, of the hyaline layer in developing eggs, a material which Kopac (73) considered to function as an intercellular cement. Previous observations by Galtsoff (40) and Gray (47) had suggested that the surface layer of isolated cells is homologous to the intercellular cement of multicellular organisms. Intercellular substances form the foundation of all fibrous structures such as the bone matrix, cartilage, dentin, the vascular endothelium, and of all non-epithelial cement substances. In some tissues such as cartilage and connective tissue the volume of intercellular substances may be very large in comparison to that of the cell itself. In the absence of calcium the intercellular cement breaks down to a soluble substance, thereby becoming dispersed in the medium. Many investigators have contributed to our knowledge of calcium as a stabilizer of this structure in animal tissues (117, 118, 119, 59, 79, 47, 57, 58, 98, 25, 23, 73, 152).

Zweifach (152) found that the permeability of the capillaries is determined almost entirely by the nature of the cement, and apparently also in part by an adsorbed layer of protein, rather than by the cells themselves. He observed that lack of calcium in the perfusion fluid weakens the cement substances between the endothelial cells with the result that extravasation of both fluids and blood cells occurs. When the circulating fluid is changed to one containing calcium the cement substance is reformed and the normal permeability is reestablished. Zweifach suggests that a similar cement probably exists in other epithelial membranes such as periosteum, kidney tubules and epithelium.

There is comparatively little known concerning the ratio of calcium in the interior of the cell to that in surface membranes and surrounding fluids. Scott (130) found that practically all of the calcium in the nerve fibers is located in the nerve sheath. He concludes that since only a small portion of the sheath contains aqueous channels, the local concentration may be ten to twenty times that which would be expected if the calcium were uniformly distributed in the nerve fiber. The distribution of calcium between the cells and extracellular fluids of skeletal muscles and liver in dogs was studied by Eichelberger, McLean and Catterall (32). They applied accepted methods for calculating the distribution of sodium and potassium to similar calculations for the distribution of calcium and magnesium. Their results indicate that the concentration of calcium in the cells is 80 per cent lower than that in the extracellular fluid. They considered the possibility that all the calcium in the tissues may be extracellular and concluded that unless some of it is actually within the cells, a part of it must be in a unionized combination with some extracellular substance other than the protein of the extracellular fluid, possibly the connective tissue fibers. They did not suggest, however, the possibility of a linkage of a portion of the calcium with a constituent of an intercellular cement substance to form an unready soluble compound.

There is considerable evidence which shows that the stability of intercellular substances is attained only when bases in addition to calcium are present in the surrounding medium (99). The generally accepted view is that magnesium, potassium and sodium all enter into the final equilibrium in the animal cell and that one cannot completely compensate for the absence of another (47, 48).

2 *In plants* The plasma membrane of the plant cell as in the animal is supported by a "gel" layer of cytoplasm (126) but there is still insufficient evidence to support the assumption that calcium is essential to its formation. Comparatively small amounts of substances are found between the cells in plants. The relationship of the middle lamella to the surrounding cells is clearly shown and it is distinctly a double layer deposited by the two adjoining cell surfaces (1). In a limited sense the wall of the plant cell, especially its outer older portion, is comparable to the intercellular substances in animal tissues. By special staining it can, in fact, be shown that at least in some types of tissues, the intercellular material between adjoining cells is, like the middle lamella in plant tissues, really a double layer.

Reed (109) found that nuclear division occurs in *spirogyra* in the absence of calcium but cell division often is not completed, because of lack of formation of the middle lamella, which is known to consist chiefly of calcium pectate (105, 90, 91, 52, and others). True and co-workers (140, 141) have made important contributions to our knowledge of the rôle of calcium in cell walls. Eckerson, working in co-operation with these investigators, employed microchemical methods (141) in a study of seedlings grown in solutions of potassium salts similar to those from which True and Bartlett (142) had previously found a leaching of ions. She observed "(1) that ions readily entered the cells of the roots, (2) that within twenty-four hours calcium ions began to diffuse out of the calcium pectate of the middle lamella, (3) potassium pectate was formed instead

of the calcium salt and this substance being readily soluble in water soon dissolved, (4) at this stage, sugars amino acids and salts, chiefly magnesium, diffused rapidly out of the roots." In similar tests with magnesium solutions it was found that magnesium pectate replaced calcium pectate in the cell walls. These studies showed that the action of potassium and magnesium in the surrounding solution upon the calcium pectate of the middle lamella not only changed the character of the wall but also altered greatly the permeability of the protoplasmic membrane next to it. That calcium is necessary also for the normal development and functioning of the cytoplasm is recognized (141, 136, 11). It should be emphasized, however, that the evidence presented above indicates clearly that calcium has a function in the nutrient medium aside from its uses within the cells.

In conclusion, it may be stated that calcium functions in the extraneous coats of cells in both plant and animal organisms. In its absence, these coverings are dissolved, the constituent substances becoming dispersed in the surrounding medium. There is considerable evidence also which indicates that calcium is essential for the production and maintenance of the cytoplasm. It increases the viscosity of the cytoplasm in the cortical region and decreases that in the interior of the cell.

II ASCORBIC ACID IN RELATION TO CYTOPLASM AND CELL SURFACES, CELL WALLS AND INTERCELLULAR SUBSTANCES 1 *In animals* One group of investigators hold that ascorbic acid is essential for the production of the intercellular matrix, a structure consisting of collagen or a related substance as a basic constituent whereas another group maintains that its primary influence is upon the functioning of cells. The former group (3, 151, and others) claim that if ascorbic acid is unavailable a liquid product which lacks the ability to gel is formed in the intercellular areas. In a study of scorbutic tissues Wolbach (150) observed vacuolation of the fibroblasts, usually at their extremities, and held that the intercellular liquid very probably has its source in the cytoplasmic vacuoles. He thought that the vacuoles may be considered as evidence of degeneration (cytoplasmic presumably) or the consequence of secretion of an abnormal product. He accepted the latter interpretation. Dalldorf (30) who also holds this view describes the action of ascorbic acid as follows:

Under certain conditions the type cell the fibroblast lies in an amorphous ground substance within which fibrils (reticulum) are formed which may in turn become gathered into wavy bands of collagen. In this transformation the fibrils seem to become cemented together by a translucent matrix the formation suggesting a colloid phenomenon the setting of a gel. It is precisely this phase of the formation of intercellular materials which may be completely controlled by vitamin C. Thus in guinea pigs which have been depleted of vitamin C the ground substance and fibroblasts are present as in health but fibrils or collagen are not formed. When the deficiency is satisfied translucent bundles or masses of collagenous materials reappear within eighteen hours. The formation of intercellular material of bone (osteoid tissue) and of teeth (dentin) may be similarly controlled by withholding or supplying vitamin C.

Hüjer (64) advanced the hypothesis that vitamin C (ascorbic acid) is necessary for the proper functioning of cells in general and for specialized cells in particular.

Fish and Harris (38) and Ham and Elliott (50) also accepted the view that vitamin C is somehow concerned in the metabolic processes of cells. The latter investigators held the evidence for the gelation theory to be entirely inadequate. MacLean, Sheppard and McHenry (84) also obtained no evidence in support of the gelation theory. They showed that ascorbic acid deficiency causes a failure in those special cells which are concerned in the formation of calcific tissue, as in bones and teeth and the intercellular cement. Morphological changes in the blood vessel walls have not been observed in ascorbic acid-deficient animals but presumably the intercellular cement breaks down as it does in the absence of calcium. Meyer (96) presented histological evidence of effects of lack of ascorbic acid upon the structure of the cells themselves. He observed a widely distributed depletion and destruction of the cytoplasm and cell membranes in guinea pigs kept on a scurvy-producing diet. Vacuolation was common in many organs. Most of the other workers in this field have not observed a degenerating condition of the cytoplasm and cell membranes but its occurrence should not be surprising in a disease which, in severe form, causes such general tissue breakdown. The lack of agreement as to the range of tissues which may show histological defects in scurvy is probably in part a consequence of differences in the severity of the disease in the animals examined.

In recovery from scorbutus, the collagen deposit is said by Wolbach (150) to be restricted to the near vicinity of the fibroblasts, the fibrils tending to follow the cell outlines. He described the first material with the staining properties of collagen as homogeneous, resembling lightly-stained amyloid and closely applied to the cytoplasm of the cell itself and in some instances to fibrils extending beyond the apparent outlines of the cells. He noted that it was also present about cells when no fibrils were observed. Hansen (51) and Mall (87, 88) held that collagen fibrils originate as a direct modification of the surface cytoplasm of the fibroblast and its processes. Lewis (77) presented evidence supporting this view. She observed fibrils in an early stage as slightly more refractive lines within the cytoplasm of the cell which later formed slender fibers grouped in bundles outside of the cell. Other investigators (6, 7, 8, 54) have described collagen fibrils as forming in collagen independently of the immediate proximity of cells. It is possible that certain phases of collagen synthesis occur within the boundary of the cell but that completion of the product is intercellular. Hence, although histological evidence may suggest that the action of ascorbic acid is primarily intercellular, to designate it as such without regard to the less readily observable intracellular phases seems unjustifiable.

If ascorbic acid really is concerned in extra-cellular processes its concentration at cell surfaces might be expected. There is some evidence from cytological studies, which, though inconclusive, because the reaction employed is not specific for ascorbic acid, nevertheless shows that a silver nitrate-reducing substance is present in the cytoplasm and intercellular spaces (20, 21, 147). Bourne called attention to the possibility that different lipoids may be concerned at times with the silver reaction in the adrenals.

Evidence of an effect of ascorbic acid upon surface activity of colloidal solu-

tions is shown in work reported by Keller and Künzel (69), "surface activity" being understood as the force which causes dropping fluids to assume a spherical form, the smaller the drops the higher the activity. All substances which alter the surface tension of a solution medium, such as water, are said to be surface active. The investigators found that solutions of thiamine (vitamin B₁), riboflavin (vitamin B₂) and ascorbic acid do not show surface activity in themselves, but that under certain conditions they can influence this type of behavior in lecithin-cholesterol mixtures. The greatest activity was observed in the higher dilutions and also under the closest approach to physiological conditions with respect to pH. It was pointed out that the physical effects of vitamins may be very important and that their mode of operation cannot be explained by chemical structure and affinity alone.

2 *In plants* Reid (112) made a study of some of the physical and chemical changes occurring in the growing region of the primary root of cowpea seedlings. The following regions were examined: embryonic, intermediate to embryonic

TABLE 1
Relative values per cell in cells of different ages

REGION	GREEN WEIGHT	DRY WEIGHT	WATER	NITROGEN	PHOSPHORUS	SURFACE AREA	TOTAL ASCORBIC ACID	TOTAL ASCORBIC ACID/TOTAL SURFACE AREA
Embryonic	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0
Intermediate	2.8	2.0	3.5	2.0	1.8	2.3	2.6	1.1
Elongation	13.7	4.8	16.9	4.0	4.2	7.3	7.9	1.1
Intermediate	32.0	8.0	43.2	5.8	5.3	11.8	11.8	1.0
Maturation	32.0	7.0	46.3	5.5	4.5		11.8	

and elongation, elongation, intermediate to elongation and maturation, and maturation. Continuous increases in volume, water, dry matter, nitrogen, and phosphorus per cell occurred during the transition from the embryonic to the mature condition. The results of these studies (112, 113) expressed in terms of relative values per cell (the average value for a cell in the embryonic region being taken as 1) are summarized in table 1.

It may be observed that the increase in surface of expanding cells parallels the increase in ascorbic acid and that surface area increase is the only one of the various factors studied which shows a parallel relationship with increase in ascorbic acid. Phosphorus gained relatively as rapidly as nitrogen and possibly slightly more rapidly during the time of most active expansion and it was suggested that an accumulation of a phospholipid such as lecithin or a closely related compound may be involved in this increase. Bessey, Menten and King (18) reported a close relationship between ascorbic acid and complex lipids in animal tissues. In a study of the distribution of ascorbic acid in animal tissues, Bourne (21) pointed out that cells with a high concentration of substances such as lipochrome pigments, lipoids and fats, cholesterol and its esters contain large

quantities of ascorbic acid. The increase in phosphorus during the embryonic and early growth phases of the root cells above mentioned and the decrease during maturation are presumably related chiefly to changes in the content of nucleoproteins and nucleic acids. The relatively high content of ascorbic acid per unit of dry matter in the region of expansion was an outstanding feature of the observations. The dry substance in the region of elongation contained 60 per cent more ascorbic acid than that of the embryonic region where nuclear activity is high and 30 per cent more than the region of maturation where cellulose accumulation appears to be the dominant activity. The data suggest that the increase in ascorbic acid is associated with an increase in the cytoplasm or some of its constituents.

Further investigations of similar nature with other types of plants are necessary before drawing conclusions as to the significance of the results cited above. The quantitative relations with surface area here found do suggest, however, that ascorbic acid may tend to be concentrated at and near cell surfaces in metabolically active cells and that it may consequently have important functions in connection with cell expansion, development of the wall, and absorptive and secretory processes. A discussion of suggested relations of ascorbic acid to these activities will be presented in section V. Additional support for the hypothesis that ascorbic acid functions at cell surfaces is afforded by evidence suggesting that the surfaces of plant cells contain substances with an acid reaction (102, 103). Howe (66) found that the pH values of root hairs range from 6.0 to 6.8 in the plants tested, but she did not state whether the acidity could be ascribed in part to the presence of pectic materials known to be important constituents of root hair walls (120). In investigations made with a wide variety of plant materials the writer has observed that ascorbic acid leaches out readily from most of them when coarsely comminuted in metaphosphoric acid and the mixture allowed to stand for a half-hour or longer. These observations suggest that the ascorbic acid in the tissues, with the possible exception of that in the embryonic cells, moves readily from cell to cell through or on the surfaces of the cell walls. Another type of observation which is of interest in connection with a cell-surface relation of ascorbic acid in absorption was made in tests with highly illuminated, actively growing cowpea plants (Reid, unpublished data), the roots of which were immersed in black-walled jars containing a dilute solution of indophenol (1:125,000). A reduction of the dye equivalent to a milligram of ascorbic acid per plant occurred within a period of two hours. This reducing activity was equal to about one-ninth of the total reducing activity in the minced and extracted tissues of similar plants with all organs included. In other tests, following decolorization of the solution, additional dye was added, this procedure being repeated throughout the day. The total quantity of dye then reduced in the solution was equal to approximately one-half of the calculated total indophenol-reducing activity within the plant. The substance oxidized by the dye was apparently again reduced in the tissues, as determinations of the reducing activity of plants kept in the indophenol solution showed that no appreciable diminution had occurred during the period of immersion of

the roots When plants in the bleached dye solutions were subsequently kept in darkness for several hours a partial return of color in the solution was noted, but a change to red color indicated a more acid condition of the medium A marked turbidity of the external solution signifying a leaching of substances from the roots was observed following the dyo treatment, the leaching being also noticeable after a period in darkness These tests should be repeated and other tests made with plants kept in darkness during the period of immersion of the roots in the dye Preliminary studies have shown little reducing activity It thus appears that the action of the dye on the roots occurs chiefly as a consequence of exposure of the tops to light The nature of the reaction of the dye with the root cells is not clear, but, because of its rapidity and the rather large size of the dye molecules, it may presumably be related to the existence of a readily oxidizable substance in the membrane (58, 93, see also 22) Further experiments with the dye solution adjusted at different pH values should give somewhat more definite clues as to whether or not ascorbic acid is primarily involved in the reaction

Schreiner and Sullivan (128, 129) studied the reducing action of the roots of wheat seedlings on solutions of sodium selenite and found that it was stimulated by a faintly acid reaction and by light and was most marked intracellularly in the parenchyma cells of the root tip They considered it probable that the reduction is due to the metabolic activities of the roots, the reaction involving some unstable non-enzymatic substance comparable to the oxyorganic acids, or to complex, unsaturated compounds comparable to dextrose and levulose or unsaturated fatty acids (It is now known that ascorbic acid will reduce solutions of sodium selenite) Heffter (56) concluded that a type of reduction process, apparently similar to that studied later by Schreiner and Sullivan, is caused by the labile hydrogen of the sulphhydryl group of certain proteins It should be possible by further investigation, using selenite solutions with different hydrogen ion concentrations, to determine whether the type of reduction in intact roots herein described may be concerned primarily with ascorbic acid or with sulphhydryl compounds.

III SOME ASPECTS OF THE CHEMICAL NATURE OF CELL MEMBRANES CELL WALLS AND INTERCELLULAR SUBSTANCES 1 *In animals* The physical state of intercellular materials has been studied by a number of investigators and as a result of their observations the viewpoint has developed that "cells repose in a jelly, not upon a water bed" (27, 28 17, 85, see also Editorial, *The Lancet* (74)) On the other hand there is comparatively little definite knowledge concerning the chemical nature of the intercellular substance in animal cells Gray (47) stated that in the connective tissue of young vertebrates it appears to consist of mucoid (a glyco-protein known to contain sugars and uronic acids) with fibrils of collagen and elastin Halliburton (49), Chittenden and Gies (26), and Van Lier (143), also have presented evidence of the occurrence of mucoids between the fibrils of connective tissue Data obtained by Benslev (17) in a study of the reaction of paramoecia in bullae of subcutaneous connective tissue suggested the presence in the intercellular areas of a viscid substance, possibly acid in reac

tion, digestible by pancreatin but not by pepsin, and with staining properties resembling those of mucins. The fact that this substance could be extracted with lime water also suggested that it may be mucoid. Zweifach (152) found that the intercellular cement substance of the endothelium of the blood vessels behaves as though it were a calcium salt, probably a proteinate, and that it is digestible by trypsin. The possibility of a carbohydrate linkage with the protein was not suggested. Ferry (37) studied the jelly layer of *Arenicola* eggs and concluded that it is essentially a polysaccharide.

A possible relation between the water-holding capacity of tissues and their content of certain types of carbohydrate-protein complexes is suggested in studies conducted by Heringa and Weidinger (61). They measured the amount of water taken up by the cornea and sclera after they were in equilibrium with water vapor of a certain partial pressure and found that in water vapor tension above 0.9 (90 per cent) the sclera fails to take up additional water whereas the cornea continues to swell up to about 1000 per cent of its dry material. They interpret this result as seeming to indicate that there is inserted between the connective tissue fibrils a substance, probably mucoid, which differs in cornea and sclera. Their hypothesis is based upon the fact that the cornea was found to contain 20 per cent of mucoid and the sclera 13 per cent and that after the extraction of the mucoid the cornea lost the greater part of its swelling capacity. Using the Sorensen-Haugaard adaptation of the Orcin reaction, Grassman and Schleich (46) studied the carbohydrate content of animal skin and found that it contained unimolecular proportions of glucose and galactose. From this finding they concluded that the carbohydrate was present in the form of lactose. They also attempted to determine the significance of the substance surrounding the collagen fibers in a study of collagen fibers from cow's skin. They consider that their results afford good reason for the assumption that the lactose is a constituent of collagen and not of the chemically undefined interfibrillar substance. However, their evidence that the interfibrillar substance does not also contain small amounts of carbohydrates is not entirely convincing. Schneider (127) also has shown that collagen contains a small amount of firmly bound sugar. Beek (15) found that the carbohydrates from collagen were not fermented by galactose-active yeast and concluded that neither d-glucose nor d-galactose forms a considerable part of the sugars. He expressed the opinion that the carbohydrates may be *l*-isomers of the two sugars and noted that Bell and Baldwin (16) had found *l*-galactose as a component of a polysaccharide of animal origin.

Bensley (17) suggested that the cement substance of collagenic fibers may be a modified form of the ground substance and that the chemical and physical differences between reticular and collagenic tissue may be due to this difference in the relation of the fibers to the ground substance. She says that "the difference in reactions of reticular and collagenic fibers with dilute acetic acid may be explained on the basis of this relation. Undoubtedly the ground substance is in a complex colloidal state. It is well known that weak acids increase the capacity of lyophilic colloids to absorb water. The hydration of the ground

or cement substance due to the acetic acid may render its refractive index the same as that of the fibrillae of the collagenic fiber and thereby make them both invisible. That reticular fibers do not react in this way may be explained by the fact that the ground substance enveloping them is not in the nature of a cement substance, i.e., there is not so much of it and it is not so condensed. Therefore, its hydration capacity is not increased to such a great extent and the refractive index is not appreciably changed." Observations made by Heringa and Weidinger (62) suggest that differences in chemical composition of reticulin and collagen are, in part at least, responsible for the differences in behavior. They also found that reticulin does not swell appreciably in acids and that it has a higher sulphur content than collagen. The sulphur, chiefly present as cystine, is in side chains, and by tending to diminish the side chain distances tends to prevent the intermicellar penetration of water. Thus in a very early stage of development a non-swelling substance, reticulin, is contained in skin, thereby enabling it to exist in a watery medium. Later, this substance changes to collagen which allows water to pass. It seems probable that during maturation of tissues changes may occur also in the ground substance as suggested by Bensley. Further study of this aspect of the problem appears necessary.

Northrup and Kunitz (101) accounted for the high viscosity of gelatin and its variation with pH by the existence of two forms—one form occurring as insoluble micellae and the other a soluble form distributed between the micellae and the outer solution. They do not say whether or not it may be possible that differences in solubility of fibrillar and interfibrillar substances are involved in producing these results.

Höjer (64) reported finding a collagen atrophy in the cartilage in scurvy, especially marked in the columns of the proliferating zone and in their neighborhood. He observed that sections stained with methylene blue did not differ from the normal in regard to chondroitin-sulphuric acid. It would appear from this observation that if ascorbic acid is used directly in the production of a protein-carbohydrate complex it must be in relation to some special type which presumably is used in comparatively small amounts such as in the intercellular cement of the epithelial cells of certain tissues.

2 *In plants* The chemical nature of the outer wall layer or middle lamella of young expanding cells is not known definitely. In the early stages it is generally considered to be chiefly pectic material such as protopectin or pectin which later changes into insoluble compounds mainly as the calcium salt of some pectic substance. There is lack of agreement as to the exact form of the latter though many workers have considered it to be calcium pectate, a salt of pectic acid. It is not known whether or not these substances are linked to protein or more probably to phosphoprotein molecules in the early stages of cell surface formation. After and also during the later phases of cell expansion, the pectic material is generally supposed to combine with calcium to form the insoluble compound above mentioned. Pectic acid is known to be a complex molecule composed of sugars such as glucose or galactose and in some cases pentoses, together with uronic acids, chiefly galacturonic and glycuronic. When ascorbic acid is heated

with hydrochloric acid, a carbon atom is detached and the remaining compound gives the furfural reaction characteristic of pentoses

Farr and Eckerson (36) observed that cells of higher plants (see also, Barrows (12)) are surrounded by wall-layers composed of cellulose particles embedded in an isotropic matrix, which was shown by later work (53, 35) to have some of the characteristics of pectic material. Wergin (146) studied the structure of cotton fibers and reported also that the fibrils consist of cellulose particles, considerably smaller than the units described by Farr and Eckerson. Wieler (149) investigated the cell-wall structure in a large number of plants including that of cotton fibers and he, too, observed cellulose particles not very different in size from those described by Farr and Eckerson. Concerning the nature of the cementing material surrounding the cellulose particles Farr (35) states that there seems to be no reason for considering it as anything other than a surface coating left by the cytoplasm upon each separate particle and between the successive layers of fibrils which form the wall lamellae. (Chambers (24) has pointed out that in animal cells the outer hyaline layer is formed as a secretory product left behind by the receding protoplasm.) It is to be inferred from the general trend of evidence in the studies of Farr and her associates that the cytoplasm, perhaps especially the cortical layers, contains appreciable amounts of pectic materials. Compton (29) has shown that the high hygroscopic moisture content of cotton fibers at various stages of development is due chiefly to the presence of water-soluble carbohydrates and pectic material.

There is some indication of chemical similarity in the cementing material which binds together the cellulose layers in the plant cell wall and the collagen and elastin fibrils in the intercellular matrix of animal tissues, namely, the presence of complex carbohydrates containing sugars and in many cases also of uronic acids. If present in both kinds of cells the function of these substances is likely to be somewhat similar in plants and in animals and they may play highly important rôles as hydrating and gelling agents. The results of Heringa and Weidinger (61, 62) previously mentioned strongly suggest the importance of these complexes in determining the water-binding capacity of the connective tissues in animals.

Ruskin (123) has shown that ascorbic acid combines readily with calcium and Ruskin and Jonnard (124) that it combines with protein but much more readily if calcium also is present. The possibility of a relation of ascorbic acid to the pectic-like substance which may be involved in gelation processes in plant and animal tissues brings to attention a crucial problem. Available experimental evidence thus indicates that ascorbic acid may be qualified to act as a carrier of calcium in embryonic tissues but it is possible also that it helps to prevent premature calcification, and that it may be utilized directly (though possibly only in plants) in the synthesis of some special carbohydrate fraction. The quantitative relations which have been found between ascorbic acid and surface area in expanding root tip cells suggest that it may be a constituent of the middle lamella, the primary cell wall and the cytoplasm. The indophenol-reducing activity of the ascorbic acid in the wall may be preserved during the phases of

expansion where the potassium and possibly magnesium to calcium ratio is presumably considerably higher and the phosphorus to nitrogen ratio slightly higher (112, 113) than later when maturation processes become dominant.

Allen (1) expressed the view that the middle lamella is not merely an intercellular substance of cement but that it may function as a "plastic region in the growing cell wall which is in a measure adaptable to the changing form and size of the protoplast itself, and to the firm resistant layers whose form must correspond to that of the protoplast at the time of their deposition." He also said that "the evidence seems to indicate that the pectic layer continues to increase in thickness about as long as the cambial cell is increasing in size. It is possible that the attainment by the cell of its adult size marks the limit of growth of the middle lamella. In this case we might say that pectic acid is deposited so long as the metabolic processes of the cell result in a plus which is expressed in cell growth, but that later, when a metabolic equilibrium has been established, or when the excess of food is stored instead of being used for growth, or when the protoplast degenerates, a predominance of other cell wall materials is deposited. The evidence for such a view, however, is far from complete."

The relation of ascorbic acid to growth of the cell wall was studied in the root-cell investigations previously mentioned (113). It was observed that ascorbic acid increased approximately so long as the cell continued to expand. During maturation a decrease was observed, becoming more marked as full development was attained. Ascorbic acid has also been found (Reid, unpublished data) as a constituent of young cotton fibers. Older, still growing fibers also contain it but in a lower concentration on a green weight basis. The content per cell at successive stages of development was not determined. Pectic substances have also been found in cotton fibers (53) and relatively more in young than in old fibers (148, 29).

Comparisons of differences in composition of cementing material of the walls in fungi and higher plants are of special interest with respect to possible interrelations of ascorbic acid and calcium in cell wall development. Fungi are said to contain little if any ascorbic acid and calcium is generally considered as unessential or, possibly, as essential only in very slight traces. It is known, however, that growth of some fungi, such as yeast, is much more rapid if calcium is present in the nutrient medium. It is possible also that biological tests for determining the antiscorbutic value of fungi may be difficult to conduct without danger of loss of ascorbic acid before the supplement is consumed. Hence, small amounts of the vitamin would not be easy to evaluate by this method. In the higher plants both ascorbic acid and calcium are present and doubtless both are essential. Types of higher plants lacking chlorophyll require calcium but much less than chlorophyllous types, and they also contain much less ascorbic acid than the latter plants (43). Chlorophyllous tissues such as leaves contain much higher concentrations of both ascorbic acid and calcium than the non-green parts, with the possible exception of certain regions of extremely high metabolic activity as in the growing regions of roots. The reason why calcium and ascorbic acid may be essential in appreciable amounts for non-green plants but

not for fungi is still obscure. It should be possible to determine whether or not differences in composition of the walls are chiefly involved. Pectic substances have been reported in the cell walls of cellulose-forming fungi (36) but the cement materials surrounding and binding the cellulose layers undoubtedly differ somewhat in chemical composition from those in higher plants. Presumably the pectic substances are not present as calcium salts since, as previously stated, only slight traces of calcium, if any, are essential for fungi. Calcium is found, however, in the walls of non-chlorophyllous higher plants. The general trend of evidence as to the distribution of ascorbic acid and calcium in different groups of plants definitely suggests the possibility of a mutual relationship to calcium pectate or to the calcium salt of some related pectic substance occurring in the middle lamella. Further study is necessary before drawing definite conclusions as to a direct relation of this vitamin to cell-wall development.

The materials surrounding the cells of plant and animal tissues have been herein shown to consist of solid units bound together by a cement substance. Carbohydrates or carbohydrate-containing complexes are important constituents of these binding materials, probably influencing strongly their hydrating and gelling properties. There is evidence that the cement substance in both types of tissue is a calcium salt, in the plant a salt of pectic acid, possibly linked to protein in embryonic cells and in the animal probably a proteinate, though it may be one with a carbohydrate complex.

IV LOSS OF ASCORBIC ACID IN METABOLIC PROCESSES 1 *In plants* Losses amounting to as much as 15 to 20 per cent in the absolute amount of ascorbic acid in young cowpea plants have been found to occur at night, but apparently only at temperatures which are favorable to growth (110, 111, 114, 115). Other investigators have observed the same phenomenon in other types of plants (97, 133, 71). The writer has observed similar losses also in older growing cowpea plants but, because of the larger and somewhat more variable sizes of the plants, the losses are somewhat difficult to determine quantitatively. Gains in the absolute amount of ascorbic acid during periods of darkness do occur so long as the stored food reserves in the cotyledons last. Following this period losses at night are found (114). The evidence suggests that only seedlings and possibly sprouting tubers and bulbs with special types of storage reserves have the capacity to synthesize ascorbic acid during periods of darkness. It appears that plants at other stages of growth either lack the ability to convert some of their carbohydrate reserves into ascorbic acid or synthesis occurs but is not measurable because the losses are considerably greater than the gains.

More recent work (116) affords evidence which supports the latter concept and definitely indicates an ability of plant tissues to synthesize ascorbic acid during periods of darkness. Tests were made with excised tomato roots (sixtieth explants) grown in a modified Pfeffer solution containing one per cent sucrose, thiamin (vitamin B₁), and pyridoxin (vitamin B₆) but no added ascorbic acid. A definite indophenol-reducing action of the root extracts was observed with approximately the same speed of reaction as occurs with ascorbic acid and the reaction was of such magnitude as to eliminate the possibility of transference

of the total quantity from the original explants. From these results it seems fairly definite that excised tomato roots in sterile cultures have the capacity to utilize sucrose in the synthesis of ascorbic acid. It is also probable that roots of intact plants have the ability to form ascorbic acid at night by utilizing some of the stored carbohydrates but that the newly synthesized portion is not measurable because the losses are greater than the gains. The nightly losses may thus be appreciably greater than the decreases as observed in the assays. Presumably even greater losses occur in the daytime than at night but they are difficult to determine because the rate of synthesis tends to be greater than that of loss. However, in rapidly growing plants with low carbohydrate reserves the writer has obtained indications of possible losses in the afternoon on cloudy days. The results thus suggest that ascorbic acid may play a much more important rôle in the economy of the plant than has heretofore been realized. The fate of the disappearing ascorbic acid is as yet undetermined but, as previously suggested, it may possibly be used for a constructive purpose such as in the synthesis of some special constituent of the pectic substances in the growing regions. Support for this assumption is to be found in the apparent loss in total ascorbic acid in root cells during maturation (113) and also by the fact that at favorable temperatures a very rapid growth of roots usually occurs in young cowpea plants from the eighth to the tenth days, at which time there is a lag in the general upward trend of the curve representing the absolute amount of ascorbic acid in the plant (114). Kohman and Porter (72) have recently reported that in tomato plants with roots severed the losses in ascorbic acid at night are less than in intact plants.

The structure of the ascorbic acid molecule is such that it could presumably be converted into the uronic acid of d-gulose, but a compound of this type has not been reported as occurring in plant tissues. On the other hand it is possible that the loss of ascorbic acid which occurs in darkness may be, at least in part, a result of oxidation and indirectly a consequence of a lowering of the sugar content. It has been shown in *in vitro* experiments by Munilla and Vogelzanger (100) that sugars protect ascorbic acid from oxidation. A lowering of the sugar content might thus affect not only the synthesis of ascorbic acid but also its maintenance. Results of other tests have shown that in green plants exposed to light, their ascorbic acid may be protected from oxidation by the chlorophyll (108). Possible losses of ascorbic acid by oxidation are difficult to determine, at least in some types of tissue, because of the difficulty of complete removal of the hydrogen sulfide employed in reducing the dehydro form of ascorbic acid and also because a number of substances combine with hydrogen sulfide to form compounds which react like ascorbic acid (135). Moldtmann (97) makes the unqualified statement, however, that the losses of ascorbic acid at night are not a result of oxidation. The need of further study of this problem is evident.

Mention should also be made of the fact that plants grown in solutions containing high concentrations of basic ions (Ca, Mg or K) even when the nutrient medium is maintained at a favorable pH, have definitely, though, except in the case of magnesium, not markedly, lower ascorbic acid values than plants grown

in solutions containing medium or low concentrations of these ions (104, 10, Reid, unpublished data) It is not known whether these decreases signify lessened synthesis or increased utilization If, during the growth process, the vitamin undergoes a modification with eventual combination with basic ions, the latter hypothesis is more probably the correct one

2 *In animals* Considerably less ascorbic acid is excreted than is ingested by the human body but no satisfactory answer is available as to where or how the loss occurs Smith (134) in a review and discussion of the question of human needs of ascorbic acid, summarizes as follows the daily requirement in terms of milligrams per kilogram of body weight "Infants from 3 to 8 mg, children from 6.4 to 7.5 mg, and adults from 0.7 to 1.6 mg" The data are held to suggest that ascorbic acid requirements are related both to body weight and to metabolic rate, the effect of the latter being the more pronounced None of the investigators who have studied the relation between intake and excretion of ascorbic acid have suggested the possibility of utilization of the disappearing portion for a directly constructive purpose It should be pointed out that the period of maximum requirement of calcium is coincident with the period of most rapid growth and most rapid disappearance of ascorbic acid

There is considerable evidence that the utilization of calcium by the tissues is influenced by ascorbic acid (139, 64, 125, 34, 4, 82, 83, 75, 76, 84, 131) Daniels et al (31), however, reported finding no relation between ascorbic acid ingestion of between 2.7 and 12.5 mgm per kilogram and calcium retention in children, and Henry and Kon (60) found no effect of an addition of 2 mgm daily of ascorbic acid on the retention of calcium in rats kept on a diet low in calcium Mallon and Lord (89) observed that addition daily of 5 cc of lemon juice to young growing rats supplied with a diet containing 0.166 per cent calcium caused no increase or decrease in calcium retention It seems possible, however, that ascorbic acid might influence calcium retention with a diet high in calcium Hawley, Frazier, Button and Stevens (55) studied the effect of acid and alkali upon the amount of ascorbic acid excreted in the urine of human subjects They found a pronounced decrease in excretion when the urinary pH was in the alkaline range of 7.5 to 8.1 and the effect was apparently not due to reversible oxidation Tislowitz (138) reported that the injection of large doses of ascorbic acid into dogs caused a ten per cent increase in the alkali reserve The results of other investigations suggest a partial explanation of these observations Robertson, Ropes and Bauer (121) studied the degradation of mucins and polysaccharides by ascorbic acid and hydrogen peroxide They found that the system acted on starch, pectin, flaxseed mucilage, the polysaccharides of synovial fluids and cartilage and the capsules of various types of pneumococci but caused no apparent change in ovo-mucin, agar-agar or gelatin Later work (122) by these investigators showed that the viscosity of gelatin also was reduced by this treatment The question arises as to whether the breakdown of the macromolecules may have been influenced to some extent by the removal of traces of calcium and possibly of other bases from the reacting materials Grant (45) presented evidence which shows that mucus, a glycoprotein, is an immediate

source of calcium in gastric secretions and that it constitutes an important factor in the reduction of gastric acidity. The presence of varying amounts of mucus in secretions of different types is held by this investigator to be responsible for calcium and acidity variations in gastric secretions. The work of Oden (102) suggests that the carbohydrate moiety of the mucin molecule may well be involved in these pH regulatory reactions. He obtained evidence that pectic substances may act as regulators of the H and OH ion content of circulating solutions in plant tissues in so far as these come into contact with the pectic materials. That pectic substances may exert some as yet unidentified beneficial influence in the digestive tract in addition to their action as lubricants is generally recognized (70, 144, 145). Werch et al. (145) suggest that an effect of pectan on the pH of the intestinal contents is the most probable explanation of the beneficial action of pectan in the treatment of diarrheas caused by some types of intestinal pathogens.

Losses of ascorbic acid are herein shown to occur in both plants and animals. Metabolic losses occur during growth in some, if not in all plants, and in animals, the losses are much greater during rapid growth than in the adult stage. It is suggested that ascorbic acid may be used in the synthesis of some substance essential in growing regions. There is considerable evidence that the utilization of calcium in the tissues is influenced by ascorbic acid and conversely, the utilization of ascorbic acid by the tissues presumably is influenced by calcium.

V. SIMILARITY IN SOME PHYSIOLOGICAL EFFECTS OF ASCORBIC ACID AND CALCIUM

1. *In animals*

a. *Growth* The necessity of ascorbic acid for growth of higher animals is generally recognized but direct experimental evidence of such a relationship is somewhat limited. Young animals succumb to its absence in the diet so suddenly that a retarding effect on growth is often not observable. Anderson and Smith (2) in paired feeding experiments with guinea pigs found that animals given scurvy preventing supplements and whose food consumption was iso-caloric with that of scorbutic animals attained a greater weight. A relationship of ascorbic acid to growth of cells is suggested by results reported by Glick and Biskind (44). They observed that the size and ascorbic acid content of the cells of the adrenal cortex increased regularly from the fetal to the adult stage of the animal. The necessity of calcium for growth has long been recognized. Boelter and Greenberg (19) have recently presented further proof that growth is retarded when the supply of calcium is low.

b. *Water relations* Calcium and ascorbic acid are probably jointly involved in exerting an effect upon the water content of cells and tissues. The extremely rapid losses in weight often observed in guinea pigs with severe scurvy could presumably be a consequence of an upset water balance associated with a disturbed equilibrium between the solid and liquid cytoplasmic phases resulting in lowered ability of the cells to retain water. It would be of interest to find whether or not at a stage preceding the final collapse there was not increased hydration of the cell colloids as a consequence of release of calcium from the intercellular cement. McHenry, Reedman and Sheppard (95) and Sheppard and McHenry (132) found in feeding tests with guinea pigs that lack of ascorbic

acid caused a diminished retention of water which largely accounted for the observed differences in body weight. They concluded that ascorbic acid is apparently concerned directly or indirectly with water retention. Ley (78) described a condition in very young infants, characterized by a disturbance in water metabolism and marked loss in weight which responded quickly to administration of ascorbic acid.

It is possible that the therapeutic value of ascorbic acid in fever-producing infections may be a consequence of a beneficial influence upon the water balance.¹ Balcar, Sansum and Woodyatt (9) suggested that "fevers are due to a deficit of free water resulting in an abnormal tendency on the part of the colloids of the body to bind water." They held that the poison of the disease leads to changes in the cell colloids, increasing their hydration capacities, so that they take up and bind more water. They suggested that beneficial results would follow if enough water were introduced to saturate the increased affinities of the colloids and provide excess free water. There is considerable evidence that ascorbic acid may reduce the water-binding capacity of certain types of proteins. Pozzi (107) has shown that it decreases the viscosity of gelatin solutions and McClean and Hale (94) and Madinaveitia and Quibell (86) have reported similar effects on mucin preparations from vitreous humor. The work of Robertson, Ropes and Bauer (121, 122) previously mentioned has shown that the reduction in viscosity on treatment of gelatin, synovial fluid, gastric and salivary mucins with ascorbic acid and hydrogen sulfide causes a reduction in viscosity which is irreversible, due to a breakdown of macromolecules. Honaga (65) reported that in most diseases causing fever the blood calcium is lessened at the height of the fever whereas with blood potassium the opposite occurs. During convalescence normal values are restored. He found also that induced fever in the rabbit increases the calcium content of the liver and muscles and decreases that of the skin. The increase in calcium in some tissues during fever may possibly be principally intracellular and the loss from others may be chiefly from extracellular sources. The increase in calcium content of certain tissues suggests that the calcium may be directly involved in a hydrating and gelling action upon the cell colloids. The favorable action of ascorbic acid may be a consequence of release of the bound water and removal of the excess intracellular calcium.

c *Permeability* Chambers (24) described three types of cellular membranes in multicellular organisms, in the first of which the intercellular cement is present in such an appreciable amount that the permeability of the membrane is determined by it rather than by the cells. The endothelial lining of the blood vessels is an example of this type. Permeability of the second type of membrane is determined by both the intercellular cement and the cells, the intestinal mucosa being an example of this type. In the third kind of membrane the cells fit together so closely that the cement has a negligible influence on permeability. An example of this type is to be found in the walls of the proximal tubules of the kidneys. It has been previously shown in this discussion that the intercellular

¹ This suggestion was made to the writer by the late Dr. Lillias D. Frances.

cement, at least that of certain epithelial tissues, is a calcium salt, the formation and, presumably, also the maintenance of which is dependent upon the presence of ascorbic acid. It seems probable that membranes of the first type should be affected most severely by shortage of essential cement materials. If either calcium or ascorbic acid is lacking, extravasation of both blood cells and fluids occurs especially if the tissue is subjected to extra strain or pressure. When both calcium and ascorbic acid are deficient, earlier and more pronounced histological defects would presumably be expected. Excessive intake of either ascorbic acid or calcium with an inadequate supply of the other would possibly be harmful. Because of the apparently interrelated action of calcium and ascorbic acid it might be expected also that a deficiency of either of these substances would cause some of the symptoms characteristic of lack of the other. This, in fact, does occur. The results obtained by Boelter and Greenberg (19) have shown that shortage of calcium causes retardation of growth, reduced activity, marked weakening of the muscles and paralysis of the hind legs, high basal metabolic rate, internal hemorrhages, and osteoporosis, all of which are characteristic scurvy symptoms.

d. *Detoxifying action* There is considerable evidence that ascorbic acid protects the body against the toxic effects of certain chemically unrelated substances such as lead, benzene, arsenicals, some types of amines, and barbiturates but the basis for a chemical action has not been found. It is possible that physical-chemical factors which may influence surface action may be chiefly concerned. If this is true, and if the influence of ascorbic acid is exerted principally at or near cell surfaces, as herein suggested, it becomes unnecessary to postulate specific chemical reactions with these substances to explain the detoxifying effect.² The suggestion has also been made that the detoxifying action of ascorbic acid against certain chemicals may be related to a tightening effect upon either or both the plasma membrane and the cement substances in the cell walls. Such a change in either of these structures would tend to retard the passage of large molecules.³ Undoubtedly calcium would be involved in this and in some of the other detoxifying reactions but present knowledge is insufficient to warrant making a positive statement regarding such an influence. The beneficial action of ascorbic acid in alleviating the toxic effects of lead can probably be explained as a precipitating action on the lead. It should be added here that if the detoxification of some types of substances is a surface reaction, synthesis of ascorbic acid may be a surface phenomenon also, since the two processes appear to be related according to evidence presented by Longenecker, Fricke and King (81).

e. *Muscle action* Friedman (39) studied the effect of ascorbic acid deficiency on smooth muscle responsiveness to stimulation with histamine and found a greatly reduced reaction as compared to that in normal tissues. Basu and Biswas (13) and Basu and Ray (14) studied the influence of ascorbic acid on different types of muscles and found that it augments contraction, brings about

² This suggestion was made by Mr Chas. H. Binkley

³ This suggestion was made by Dr L. E. Yocum

quicker relaxation and delays the onset of fatigue. Their experiments showed also that the effects are not due to any alterations of pH. Results also of tests reported by Gantenbein (41), Matthes (92), and Linstead and Krayner (80) indicate a stimulating effect of calcium on muscle action. Lack of calcium also affects the muscles causing loss of tone and flaccid paralysis. Basu and Biswas pointed out that the response to ascorbic acid is somewhat similar to that to calcium (Gellhorn, 42). The present concept of muscle action is said to be that "calcium is released on excitation from its combination with protein and this released calcium causes reversible gelation in the interior of the protoplasm." If calcium is added to the external fluid, the gelated condition is induced much more readily and to a greater extent than before, and consequently the response is greater. The suggestion was made that since ascorbic acid is known to cause gelation in different fluids, it is probable that it also causes gelation in muscle plasma. The suggestion could also be made that ascorbic acid aids in the recovery process and influences intracellularly the solution phase of the reaction.

The possibility of interrelated effects of ascorbic acid and calcium on other tissues in which surface activities play an outstandingly important rôle such as those of the nervous system, glandular organs and white blood corpuscles has not been investigated with this particular aspect in view.

f Effect of ascorbic acid and calcium on catheptic enzymes Additional reason for postulating an interacting relationship in the functioning of calcium and ascorbic acid is to be found in the fact that both of these substances have an activating effect on catheptic proteolytic enzymes (68, 33, 5).

2 In plants Direct proof of the growth relations of ascorbic acid in higher plants is difficult. The same is true also of a possible connection of this vitamin with other physiological functions because it is always present in metabolically active tissues. If, as some of the reported observations suggest, ascorbic acid functions in the cytoplasm and at surfaces of cells, as has been previously shown for calcium, it may presumably exert an important influence upon the intake and retention of water and also of mineral nutrients. It has been shown (137, 63) that absorption of mineral salts by roots occurs chiefly during active growth or in roots with the potentiality for active growth. It has also been demonstrated (106) that the maximum penetration of potassium nitrate into soybean roots occurs between 1 and 4 mm from the tip. The penetration of salts was found to diminish progressively toward the older region of the root and to stop almost completely at 10 mm. Osterhaut (103) observed that ammonia entered the fresh surface of Valonia cytoplasm squeezed out of cells and stated that it did so by forming a compound with an acid at the surface. The available evidence indicates that the region of active growth and absorption in roots is identical with that having the highest ascorbic acid concentration per unit area of cell surface. The general trend of evidence strongly suggests the possibility of the movement of water and mineral nutrients through the cementing material of the walls in the growing region of the root in much the same fashion as materials are transferred through the cement substance surrounding the endothelial cells of the blood vessels in animals.

SUMMARY

Calcium gives stability to cell surfaces and intercellular substances of both plant and animal tissues and there are indications that it may act in somewhat similar manner in the two groups

Ascorbic acid is necessary for the production of certain types of intercellular materials, and possibly also for the production and maintenance of cytoplasm and normal plasma membranes in animals and there is considerable suggestive evidence that it may perform a similar function in plants. Whether its primary action is to influence the functioning of cells or the production of intercellular colloids or whether it is involved in both of these types of activity has not been fully determined

Similarities are shown in the physical constitution of the cell walls of plants and the intercellular substances of animal connective tissues, namely, that they both contain solid units, different as to chemical nature, and bound together by cement substances containing units which are chemically somewhat similar. It is supposed that in plants the latter materials may aid in the maintenance of a plastic state during expansion and later, on setting firmly, impart strength to the structure. The plastic state presumably is maintained by retarding precipitation of calcium whereas the maturation phase of the process presumably allows freedom in calcium deposition. There is suggestive evidence that a somewhat similar sequence of changes in form of the intercellular substances occurs also in some types of animal tissues

Collagen, which is concerned in the gelling action of the intercellular matrix in animals, contains sugars. The mucoid like ground substance surrounding the collagen fibrils is held by some investigators to contain both sugars and uronic acids. Sugars and uronic acids are present in plant tissues as constituents of the pectic materials, complex carbohydrates with marked hydration and gelling properties. Supposedly calcium plays a rôle in the gelling action of these sugar uronic acid complexes

Ascorbic acid exhibits properties which may adapt it for functioning at cell surfaces, namely, it shows definite surface activity in lecithin and cholesterol solutions, and it combines readily with protein in the presence of calcium. Presumably it could act as a carrier of calcium in embryonic regions, it could also be involved in preventing premature calcification, and its structure is such that it could probably itself be changed to form a special component of the pectic acid molecule

The increase in surface of expanding cowpea root tips at successive stages of development approximately parallels the increase in ascorbic acid. During maturation the values become lower which is interpreted as possibly indicating a transformation of the vitamin to a non-reducing substance during maturation processes. It is suggested that ascorbic acid may be used in the formation of calcium pectate or a related substance. Further suggestion either of the utilization or the destruction of ascorbic acid in plants is supplied by the fact that under conditions suitable for growth, marked losses of the vitamin occur in plants kept in darkness and presumably also in those kept in light. There are

unaccountable losses of ascorbic acid from animals also, though the magnitude and manner of loss are difficult to determine

In addition to the parallelism between ascorbic acid and cell surface increases in growing root cells, further suggestive evidence that vitamin C may be concentrated at cell surfaces is as follows. Cell surfaces of plant tissues contain substances with an acid reaction, a rapid reduction of indophenol occurs when roots of plants with tops exposed to light are immersed in the dye solution, and in animal tissues there is considerable tendency for deposition of silver granules to occur at cell boundaries and in intercellular spaces as well as in the cytoplasm when the tissues are placed in acidified silver nitrate solution

The very low requirements or possibly unessential nature of ascorbic acid and calcium in the development of fungi and the essentiality of calcium and probable essentiality of ascorbic acid in higher green plants is pointed out as is also the fact that calcium pectate is a constituent of the walls of higher plants, even of non-chlorophyllous types, but is not necessarily present in fungi

The availability of relatively high concentrations of calcium, magnesium and potassium appears to have a favorable influence upon retention of ascorbic acid in animals as evidenced by lessened excretion. High concentrations of these elements cause lower values in plants, but it has not been determined whether the difference in content is due primarily to decreased synthesis or to increased utilization

Glycoproteins such as mucus may serve as sources of calcium in gastric secretions and there is suggestive evidence that the carbohydrate moiety of the mucin molecule may be involved in pH regulatory reactions

Similarities are shown in the physiological effects of calcium and ascorbic acid with respect to water relations, permeability and growth in plants and animals and also to their effect on muscular action and on catheptic enzymes in animals. Ascorbic acid exerts a detoxifying action in animals against a number of substances. There is as yet little more than suggestive evidence that calcium may also be involved in these reactions

If ascorbic acid and calcium function co-operatively as has been shown in maintenance of the intercellular cement in the endothelium of the blood vessels, it should be expected that there would be marked similarity, although not necessarily complete identity in symptoms when one or the other of these substances is lacking. The observed similarity in some of the deficiency symptoms of the two substances affords support for this assumption

REFERENCES

- (1) ALLEN, C E. *Bot Gaz* 32 1, 1901
- (2) ANDERSON, W E AND A H SMITH. *J Biol Chem* 61 181, 1924
- (3) ASCHOFF, L AND W KOCH. *Scorbut, Eine Pathologisch-Anatomische Studie*
Jena, Gustav Fischer, 1919
- (4) AUB, J C. *J A M A* 109 1276, 1937
- (5) BADINAND, A. *Compt rend Acad Sci Paris* 202 1714, 1936
- (6) BAITSELL, G A. *J Exper Med* 21 455, 1915
- (7) BAITSELL, G A. *Am J Anat* 28 447, 1921
- (8) BAITSELL, G A. *Quart J Micro Sci* 69 571, 1925

- (9) BALCAR, J O, W D SANBURN AND R. T WOODYATT Arch Int. Med 24: 116 1919
- (10) BALKS R AND E. POMMER Bodenku Pflanzenernähr N F 9/10 724 1938
- (11) BAMFORD R. Bull. Torrey Bot Club 58 149, 1931
- (12) BARROWS, F L. Contrib Boyce Thompson Inst. 11: 61, 1939
- (13) BASU, N M AND P BISWAS Ind J Med Res. 28: 405, 1940
- (14) BASU N M AND G K. RAY Ind J Med. Res 28: 419 1940
- (15) BECK J JR. J Am Chem Soc 63: 1483, 1941
- (16) BELL, D J AND E BALDWIN Nature (London) 146 559, 1940
- (17) BENSLBY, S H Anat Rec. 60: 93, 1934.
- (18) BESSEY O A M. L. MENTEN AND C G KING Proc. Soc. Exper Biol and Med 31: 455 1934
- (19) BOELTER M D D AND D M GREENBERG J Nutrition 21 61, 1941
- (20) BOURNE G Nature (London) 132: 859 1933
- (21) BOURNE G Austral J Exper Biol and Med Sci 13 112, 1935
- (22) BROOKS S C Symposia Quant Biol. 8: 171 1940
- (23) CHAMBERS R. Am Nat 72: 141 1938
- (24) CHAMBERS, R. Symposia Quant. Biol. 8: 144 1940
- (25) CHAMBERS R. AND M J KOFAC J Cell and Compar Physiol 9 345, 1937
- (26) CHITTENDEN, R. H AND W J GIES J Exper Med. 1 186 1896
- (27) CLARK, E R. AND E. L. CLARK. Am J Anat. 53: 273, 1933
- (28) CLARK E. R. AND E. L. CLARK. Ibid 50 253, 1937
- (29) COMPTON J Contrib Boyce Thompson Inst 11 403 1941
- (30) DALLDORF G J A M. A. 111 1376 1938.
- (31) DANIELS, A. L, G J EVERSON O E WRIGHT M F DEARDORFF AND F I SCOLLAR. J Nutrition 14: 317, 1937
- (32) EICHELBERGER, L. F C McLEAN AND A. CATTERALL. J Biol. Chem 142: 467, 1942
- (33) EULER, H v P KARRER AND F ZEHENDER Helv Chim Acta 17: 157, 1934
- (34) FAIRBANKS, B W AND H H. MITCHELL. J Nutrition 11: 551 1936
- (35) FARR, W K. Contrib Boyce Thompson Inst. 10 71, 1938
- (36) FARR, W K AND S H ECKERSON Contrib Boyce Thompson Inst. 6: 189 1934
- (37) FERRY, J D Biol Bull 77: 331 1939
- (38) FISH, E. W AND L. J HARRIS Phil Trans Roy Soc. London 223B: 489 1934
- (39) FRIEDMAN H J J Allergy 12 221 1941
- (40) GALTSOFF P S J Exper Zool 42: 183 1935
- (41) GANTENBEIN O Ztschr Biol 100 8 1940
- (42) GELLHORN, E Am J Physiol 100 447 1932.
- (43) GIROUD A. A R. RATSIMANGA AND C P LEBLOND Bull Soc. Chim. Biol 17: 232, 1935
- (44) GLICK, D AND G R. BISKIND J Biol Chem 115: 551 1936
- (45) GRANT, R Am J Physiol 135: 406 1942
- (46) GRABMAN W AND H SCHLEICH Biochem. Ztschr 277: 320 1935.
- (47) GRAY J Brit. J Exper Biol 3: 167 1926
- (48) GRAY, J A textbook of experimental cytology Cambridge, University Press 1931
- (49) HALLIBURTON W D J Path and Bact. 1 90 1893
- (50) HAM A W AND H C. ELLIOTT Am J Path 14: 323, 1938.
- (51) HANSEN F Anat. Ans 15: 417 1899
- (52) HANSTEEN B Jahr Wiss. Bot. 47: 289 1910
- (53) HARRIS S A. AND H. J THOMPSON Contrib Boyce Thompson Inst. 9: 1, 1937
- (54) HARRISON R G J Exper Zool. 41: 349 1925
- (55) HAWLEY E. E. J FRAZER, L. BUTTON AND D J STEPHENS. Proc Soc Exper Biol. and Med 34 218 1936
- (56) HEFTTER, A Med Naturwiss. Arch Berlin 1: 81 1907
- (57) HEILBRUNN, L. V Protoplasma Monographien, Berlin Bd 1, 1928.
- (58) HEILBRUNN L V Outline of general physiology Saunders, Philadelphia 1937

- (59) HERBST, C Arch f Entwicklungsmech 9 424, 1900
- (60) HENRY, K M AND S K KON Biochem J 33 1652, 1939
- (61) HERINGA, G C AND A WEIDINGER Nederl Tijdschr Geneeskunde 84 4907, 1940
- (62) HERINGA, G C AND A WEIDINGER Ibid 84 5113, 1940
- (63) HOAGLAND, D C AND T C BROYER Am J Bot 27 173, 1940
- (64) HÖJER, J A Acta Paediatr Stockholm Supp 3, 1924
- (65) HONAGA, S Japan J Exper Med 18 255, 1940
- (66) HOWE, C G Bot Gaz 72 313, 1921
- (67) JUST, E E Biology of the cell surface Blakiston, Philadelphia, 1939
- (68) KARRER, P AND F ZEHENDER Helv Chim Acta 16 701, 1933
- (69) KELLER, C J AND O KÜNZEL Ztschr Ges Exper Med 103 704, 1938
- (70) KERTESZ, Z I, M S WALKER AND C M McCAY Am J Digest Dis 8 124, 1941
- (71) KOHMAN, E F AND D R PORTER Science 92 561, 1940
- (72) KOHMAN, E F AND D R PORTER Ibid 95 608, 1942
- (73) KOPAC, M J Symposia Quant Biol 8 154, 1940
- (74) Lancet (Lond) Editorial 234 617, 1938
- (75) LANFORD, C S J Biol Chem 130 87, 1939
- (76) LANFORD, C S J Nutrition 23 293, 1942
- (77) LEWIS, M R Contrib Embryol 6 45, 1917
- (78) LEI, L Klin Wchnschr 16 1425, 1937
- (79) LILLIE, R S Am J Physiol 17 89, 1906
- (80) LINSTAE, R P AND O KRAYER Science 95 332, 1942
- (81) LONGENECKER, H E, H H FRICKE AND C G KING J Biol Chem 135 497, 1940
- (82) LUCKE, H AND E HECKMANN Arch Exper Path u Pharmakol 189 87, 1938
- (83) LUCKE, H AND J WOLF Arch Exper Path u Pharmakol 189 628, 1938
- (84) MACLEAN, D L, M SHEPPARD AND E W McHENRY Brit J Exper Path 20 451, 1939
- (85) MACMASTER, P D AND R J PARSONS Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 37 707, 1938
- (86) MADINAVEITIA, J AND T H H QUIBELL Biochem J 35 453, 1941
- (87) MALL, F Abhand d Math-phys Kl d Kgl Sächs Gesellsch d Wissensch 17 299, 1891
- (88) MALL, F Am J Anat 1 329, 1902
- (89) MALLON, M G AND D J LORD J Am Diet Assoc 18 303, 1942
- (90) MANGIN, L Paris Acad Sci Compt rend 107 144, 1888
- (91) MANGIN, L Ibid 110 295, 1890
- (92) MATTHES, S Ztschr Untersuch Lebensm 81 53, 1941
- (93) MAZIA, D Symposia Quant Biol 8 195, 1940
- (94) McCLEAN, D AND C W HALE Nature (London) 145 867, 1940
- (95) McHENRY, E W, E J REEDMAN AND M SHEPPARD Biochem J 32 1302, 1938
- (96) MEYER, A W Studies on scurvy Stanford Univ Pubs Univ Ser Med Sci, 2, 1928
- (97) MOLDTMANN, H G Planta 30 297, 1939
- (98) MOORE, A R Protoplasma 3 524, 1928
- (99) MOORE, A R J Cell Comp Physiol 2 41, 1932
- (100) MUNILLA, A AND F VOGELSINGER Arch Soc Biol Montevideo, 7 281, 1937, Chem Abst 32 4636, 1938
- (101) NORTHRUP, J H AND M KUNITZ J Gen Physiol 10 161, 1926
- (102) ODEN, S Ber Deutsch Bot Ges 34 648, 1916
- (103) OSTERHAUT, W J V Proc Nat Acad Sci 21 125, 1935
- (104) OTT, M Angew Chem 50 75, 1937
- (105) PAYEN Recueil des savants étrangers 9 148, 1846
- (106) POPESCU, St Bull Agric Rumania 4 1, 1926
- (107) Pozzi, L Biochim terap sper 22 356, 1935

- (108) RAKSHIT P C Biochem Ztschr 297: 153 1938
- (109) REED H S Ann Bot 21 501 1907
- (110) REID M L A A A S 134th Meeting Milwaukee Wis June, 1939
- (111) RLID, M F Am J Bot 27 18 S 1940
- (112) REID M F Ibid 28 45 1941
- (113) REID M E Ibid 28 410 1941
- (114) REID M E Bull Torrey Bot. Club 68 359, 1941
- (115) RLID M E Ibid 68: 519 1941
- (116) REID M E AND W J ROBBINS Science 95 632 1942
- (117) RINGER, S J Physiol 4 Proc VI-VIII 1883
- (118) RINGER S Ibid 11: 70 1890
- (119) RINGER S AND H SAINSDURY J Physiol 16 1 1894
- (120) ROBERTS E A Bot Gaz 62: 488, 1916
- (121) ROBERTSON W B M W ROPES AND W BAUER Biochem J 35 903 1941
- (122) ROBERTSON W B M W ROPES AND W BAUER. Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 49 607, 1942
- (123) RUSKIN S L Am J Digest Dis and Nutrition 5 408 1935
- (124) RUSKIN S L AND R JOYWARD Am J Digest Dis 8 678 1935
- (125) SALTB W T AND J C AUB Arch Path 11 380 1931
- (126) SCARTH G W J LEVITT AND D SIMONOVITSCH Symposia Quant. Biol 8 102, 1940
- (127) SCHNEIDER, F Collegium 3: 97 1940
- (128) SCHREINER, O AND M \ SULLIVAN Bot Gaz 51: 121 1911
- (129) SCHREINER, O AND M \ SULLIVAN Ibid 51: 273 1911
- (130) SCOTT G H Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 44: 397 1940
- (131) SHEPHERD, M L I G MACY II A HUNSCHER AND F C HUMMEL J Pediat 16 704 1940
- (132) SHEPPARD M AND E W MCHENRY Biochem J 33 655 1939
- (133) SMITH A M AND J CILLIER Biochem J 34 1312 1940
- (134) SMITH S Vitamins A symposium Am Med Assoc Chicago 377-410 1940
- (135) SMYTHIE C \ AND C G KING J Biol Chem 142 529 1942
- (136) SOROKIN II AND A L SOMMER. Am J Bot 16: 23 1929
- (137) STEWARD F C Trans Faraday Soc 33 1006 1937
- (138) TISLOWITZ R. Compt Rend Soc Biol 121: 916 1930
- (139) TOVERUD G J Biol Chem 58: 553 1923
- (140) TRUF R. II J Am Soc Agron 13 91 1921
- (141) TRUE R H Science N S 55 1 1922
- (142) TRUE R H AND H H BARTLETT U S Dept. Agric Bull B P I 231 1912.
- (143) VAN LIER E. II B Hoppe-Seyler's Ztschr 61 177, 1909
- (144) WERCH S C AND A C IVY Am J Dis Children 62 499 1941
- (145) WERCH S C R W JUNK II PLENK A \ DAY AND A C IVY Am J Dis Children 63 839 1912
- (146) WERGIN W Protoplasma 32: 116 1939
- (147) WESTERGAARD B Biochem J 28 1212 1934
- (148) WHISTLER R L A R MARTIN AND C M CONRAD J Res Nat Bur Stand Wash ington, D C 25: 305 1940
- (149) WIELER A Protoplasma 34 702 1940
- (150) WOLBACH S B Am J Path 9: 689 1933
- (151) WOLBACH S B AND P R HOWE Arch Path 1 1 1926
- (152) ZWEIFACH B W Symposia Quant Biol 8 216 1940

- (59) HERBST, C Arch f Entwicklungsmech 9 424, 1900
- (60) HENRY, K M AND S K KON Biochem J 33 1652, 1939
- (61) HERINGA, G C AND A WEIDINGER Nederl Tijdschr Geneeskunde 84 4907, 1940
- (62) HERINGA, G C AND A WEIDINGER Ibid 84 5113, 1940
- (63) HOAGLAND, D C AND T C BROYER Am J Bot 27 173, 1940
- (64) HÖJER, J A Acta Paediatr Stockholm Supp 3, 1924
- (65) HONAGA, S Japan J Exper Med 18 255, 1940
- (66) HOWE, C G Bot Gaz 72 313, 1921
- (67) JUST, E E Biology of the cell surface Blakiston, Philadelphia, 1939
- (68) KARRER, P AND F ZEHENDER Helv Chim Acta 16 701, 1933
- (69) KELLER, C J AND O KÜNZEL Ztschr Ges Exper Med 103 704, 1938
- (70) KERTESZ, Z I, M S WALKER AND C M MCCAY Am J Digest Dis 8 124, 1941
- (71) KOHMAN, E F AND D R PORTER Science 92 561, 1940
- (72) KOHMAN, E F AND D R PORTER Ibid 95 608, 1942
- (73) KOPAC, M J Symposia Quant Biol 8 154, 1940
- (74) Lancet (Lond) Editorial 234 617, 1938
- (75) LANFORD, C S J Biol Chem 190 87, 1939
- (76) LANFORD, C S J Nutrition 23 293, 1942
- (77) LEWIS, M R Contrib Embryol 6 45, 1917
- (78) LEY, L Klin Wehnschr 16 1425, 1937
- (79) LILLIE, R S Am J Physiol 17 89, 1906
- (80) LINSTAD, R P AND O KRAYER Science 95 332, 1942
- (81) LONGENECKER, H E, H H FRICKE AND C G KING J Biol Chem 135 497, 1940
- (82) LUCKE, H AND E HECKMANN Arch Exper Path u Pharmakol 189 87, 1938
- (83) LUCKE, H AND J WOLF Arch Exper Path u Pharmakol 189 628, 1938
- (84) MACLEAN, D L, M SHEPPARD AND E W MCHENRY Brit J Exper Path 20 451, 1939
- (85) MACMASTER, P D AND R J PARSONS Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 37 707, 1938
- (86) MADINAVEITIA, J AND T H H QUIBELL Biochem J 35 453, 1941
- (87) MALL, F Abhand d Math-phys Kl d Kgl Sächs Gesellsch d Wissensch 17 299, 1891
- (88) MALL, F Am J Anat 1 329, 1902
- (89) MALLON, M G AND D J LORD J Am Diet Assoc 18 303, 1942
- (90) MANGIN, L Paris Acad Sci Compt rend 107 144, 1888
- (91) MANGIN, L Ibid 110 295, 1890
- (92) MATTHES, S Ztschr Untersuch Lebensm 81 53, 1941
- (93) MAZIA, D Symposia Quant Biol 8 195, 1940
- (94) McCLEAN, D AND C W HALE Nature (London) 145 867, 1940
- (95) MCHENRY, E W, E J REEDMAN AND M SHEPPARD Biochem J 32 1302, 1938
- (96) MEYER, A W Studies on scurvy Stanford Univ Pubs Univ Ser Med Sci, 2, 1928
- (97) MOLDTMANN, H G Planta 30 297, 1939
- (98) MOORE, A R Protoplasma 3 524, 1928
- (99) MOORE, A R J Cell Comp Physiol 2 41, 1932
- (100) MUNILLA, A AND F VOGELSINGER Arch Soc Biol Montevideo, 7 281, 1937, Chem Abst 32 4636, 1938
- (101) NORTHRUP, J H AND M KUNITZ J Gen Physiol 10 161, 1926
- (102) ODEN, S Ber Deutsch Bot Ges 34 648, 1916
- (103) OSTERHAUT, W J V Proc Nat Acad Sci 21 125, 1935
- (104) OTT, M Angew Chem 50 75, 1937
- (105) PAYEN Recueil des savants étrangers 9 148, 1846
- (106) POPESCU, St Bull Agric Rumania 4 1, 1926
- (107) POZZI, L Biochim terap sper 22 356, 1935

- (108) RAKSHIT P C *Biochem Ztschr* 297 153 1938.
- (109) REED H S *Ann Bot* 21 501 1907
- (110) REID M E A A A S 134th Meeting, Milwaukee Wis June 1939
- (111) REID M E *Am. J Bot* 27 18 8 1940
- (112) REID M E *Ibid* 28 43 1941
- (113) REID M E *Ibid* 28 410 1941
- (114) REID M E *Bull Torrey Bot Club* 68 359, 1941
- (115) REID M E *Ibid* 68 519 1941
- (116) REID M E AND W J ROBBINS *Science* 95: 632 1942.
- (117) RINGER S *J Physiol* 4 Proc VI-VIII 1883
- (118) RINGER S *Ibid* 11 79 1890
- (119) RINGER S AND H SAINSBURY *J Physiol* 16 1 1894
- (120) ROBERTS E A *Bot Gaz* 62:488 1916
- (121) ROBERTSON W B, M W ROPES AND W BAUER *Biochem. J* 35: 603 1941
- (122) ROBERTSON W B M W ROPES AND W BAUER *Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med* 49: 697 1942
- (123) RUSKIN S L *Am J Digest Dis and Nutrition* 5 408, 1935.
- (124) RUSKIN S L AND R. JONNARD *Am J Digest Dis* 5 676 1938
- (125) SCALTER W T AND J C AUB *Arch Path* 11 380 1931
- (126) SARTER G W J LEVITT AND D SHIMOVITSCH *Symposia Quant Biol* 8 102 1940
- (127) SCHNIFIDER F *Colloquium* 3 97, 1940
- (128) SCHREINER O AND M V SULLIVAN *Bot Gaz* 51 121 1911
- (129) SCHREINER, O AND M V SULLIVAN *Ibid* 51 273 1911
- (130) SCOTT G H *Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med* 44 397 1940
- (131) SHEPHERD M L, I G MACY H A HUNSCHEB AND F C HUMMEL *J Pediat* 16 704 1940
- (132) SHEPPARD M AND E W McHENRY *Biochem J* 33: 655 1939
- (133) SMITH A M AND J GILLIES *Biochem J* 34 1312 1940
- (134) SMITH S *Vitamins A symposium Am Med Assoc Chicago* 377-410 1940
- (135) SMYTHIE C V AND C G KING *J Biol Chem* 142 529 1942.
- (136) SOROKIN H AND A. L SOMMER *Am J Bot* 18 23 1929
- (137) STEWARD F C *Trans Faraday Soc* 23 1006 1937
- (138) TISLOWITZ R. *Compt Rend Soc Biol* 121: 916 1936
- (139) TOFFRUD G *J Biol Chem* 58 553 1923
- (140) TRUE R H *J Am Soc Agron.* 13: 91 1921
- (141) TRUE R H *Science* N 9 55 1 1922
- (142) TRUE R H AND H H BARTLETT *U S Dept Agric Bull B P I* 231 1912
- (143) VAN LIER E H B *Hoppe-Seyler's Ztschr* 61 177 1909
- (144) WERCH S C AND A C ILY *Am J Dis Children* 62 499 1941
- (145) WERCH S C R W JUNG H PLENK A A DAY AND A C ILY *Am J Dis Children* 63 839 1942.
- (146) WEROIN W *Protoplasma* 32: 116 1939
- (147) WESTERGAARD B *Biochem J* 28 1212 1934
- (148) WHISTLER R I A R MARTIN AND C M CONRAD *J Res Nat Bur Stand Wash ington D C* 25 305 1940
- (149) WIELER A *Protoplasma* 34: 202 1940
- (150) WOLBACH S B *Ant J Luth* 9 689 1933
- (151) WOLBACH S B AND P R HOWE *Arch Path* 1 1 1926
- (152) ZWEIFACH R W *Symposia Quant Biol* 8: 216 1940

PHYSIOLOGICAL REVIEWS

Vol 23

APRIL, 1943

No 2

MALIGNANCY IN RELATION TO ORGANIZATION AND DIFFERENTIATION

N J BERRILL

Department of Zoology McGill University, Montreal, Canada

Malignancy was tentatively formulated in a succinct report by the national cancer committee (Bayne-Jones, 1937) as a universal cell potentiality, varying in degree with cell type, of the nature of a somatic mutation, and resulting in automatic proliferation independent of a continuously acting provocative agent. It was asked "have they (the malignant cells) become 'fast' to the conditions which normally control cell growth in the body or is there a break in the internal control mechanism of the cell, or is there a loss in body control of cell activity? This, the core of the problem, has been almost entirely neglected."

The apparent neglect is clearly not lack of consideration. It is due to the standards of reference also being problems as challenging as malignancy itself. Malignancy and its associated phenomena merely constitute one aspect of growth, proliferation and differentiation of cells and cell constituents. The nature of the growth controlling forces of the body, of the internal control mechanism of the cell, the relation between nuclear change and cytoplasmic and organismic expression, the determination and maintenance of cellular specializations, and the mode of reproduction of proteins, mitochondria, enzymes, genes, and viruses are as little understood and equally challenging. The problem of malignancy becomes one of synthesis involving the problems of development as a whole. Clarification at any point is likely to throw light on the whole interrelated structure.

The outstanding feature of malignancy is that tumor growth is uncontrolled in relation to the host and shows little or no organization within itself. It is remarkably like that of normal tissues cultivated outside the body which grow in the same inchoate manner, tending to form marginal metastases and exhibiting a similar apparent decrease in degree of differentiation. In the sense used by Child (1915) malignancy becomes physiological isolation.

1 Growth controlling and organizing forces. The nature of the agency controlling and organizing the growth and multiplication of cells in an organism is obscure although its existence seems to be established (Sinnott, 1939). In the organism each cell develops in conformity with the character of its surroundings. Cues are decidedly of supra-cellular origin (Weiss, 1940). The unlimited proliferation when cultured *in vitro*, the definite limits to growth of an organism under optimal nutritional conditions, the limits of growth and nature of regenerating tissues, and above all the growth rate curves characteristic of all organisms and of their constituent parts all indicate a subordination of cells within the organism to a control by the whole.

Various suggestions have been made concerning the nature of the controlling

agency but they suffer generally from vagueness and intangibility verging on the metaphysical. These, the field theories of embryology (Weiss, 1935, Waddington, 1935) have an undoubted descriptive value and are symbolic of a real quality of the organism, but the only attempts to translate the philosophic conception into chemical or physical terms, the metabolic gradient (Child, 1941) and the electro-dynamic theory (Burr and Northrop, 1935), have not met with ready acceptance. Yet it is startling to see the pattern of an organism change under the impact of a single substance, such as thyroxin upon amphibian metamorphosis. The field idea remains potent.

Field action may be considered as a tendency toward a certain equilibrium (Huxley, 1935). Even the mathematical rules governing the rate of regeneration bear a resemblance to those governing the restoration of electrical equilibrium between two regions at different potentials (Przibram, 1917). A limb bud grafted in abnormal position after the dorsoventrality is determined will undergo a gradual rotation toward a normal orientation, now that it is no longer sufficiently plastic to have the polarity of the whole imposed directly upon it (Harrison, 1921). Whether or not the controlling agency is a product of the cells it controls, cells or cell groups in an organized system acquire something distinctive of their position in the system.

It is commonly the case in regeneration from fragments for the regenerating tissue to proceed at a steadily decreasing rate until the original piece comes to occupy the same relative position in the new organism as it did in the old. In a significant number of cases there is a precision to a degree far beyond any biological need and unrelated to visible structural expression (Allen, 1921). Fragments of *Hydra*, placed more or less in contact, slide into positions so that each piece reoccupies approximately its original level in the organism (Papenfuss, 1934), while in everted *Hydras* the cells of the inner and outer layers slide between one another to regain their proper respective positions (Roudabush, 1933). Dissociated sponge tissues exhibit similar phenomena (Wilson, 1911, Brien, 1935, 1937). These examples are admittedly from lowly organisms but it is only in organisms of an order of size within range of cell dimensions that such phenomena can be expressed.

To what extent is this quality related to cell specialization? It is evident from the behavior of *Hydra* fragments and sponge dissociates that like cells and like tissues mutually adhere, and repulse unlike cells and tissues, while even homologous cells and tissues fail to cohere when taken from different species of sponge (Wilson, 1911) or *Hydra*. Specific and even racial differences in amphibians and in mammals may inhibit successful transplantation of tissues in mature animals, although embryonic tissues from different classes of vertebrates may be grafted together at least for a time. In amphibians a tissue incompatibility develops finally that significantly inhibits even autologous grafts (Harris, 1941).

It is significant that mammary tumors of mice exhibit similar compatibility phenomena, grafts within a given strain attaining almost 100 per cent success but very few to mice of another strain (Lewis and Lichtenstein, 1936). Barnes and Furth (1939) found that a mouse tumor originating in the reticulo-endo-

thelial system could be transplanted to every mouse of the ancestral leukemic stock but to no mouse of the ancestral non leukemic stock, although it would grow steadily on chick allantois. A somewhat similar situation exists for cellular constituents. While gonadotropic hormones of amphibia seem to be without specific effect, there undoubtedly exists a species specificity. The effectiveness of the hormones in a foreign species tends to vary directly with the phylogenetic proximity of donor and recipient, and the antibody nature of the sera is probably produced as an immune reaction to a foreign protein (Creaser and Gorham, 1939).

The protein basis and uniqueness underlying such phenomena probably relate in some way to the nature of the controlling agency. Yet during development the controlling system precedes cell and tissue specialization.

If malignancy is to be considered as a loss or weakening of the control of cell activity by such a system it is improbable that one cell should alone escape from the control. Multiple foci should be the rule rather than the exception. If malignancy is primarily due to a weakened control rather than an intrinsic change in the cells, transplantation of tumor cells to normal healthy hosts of the same species and race should fail to perpetuate the malignant growth. Such grafts should be incorporated or absorbed by the host system.

In frog embryos derived from overripe eggs tumor like growths develop early, overrun and kill the embryo within a few days (Witschi, 1931). This and related phenomena led to an attractive speculation by Needham (1930) that overripeness of the egg leads to an upset of sterol metabolism, in turn leading to deviation of sex hormones upsetting the sex ratio, uncontrolled liberation of the embryonic evocator resulting in monster formation and the production of chemically related carcinogens leading to epitheliomata.

More recent work confirms the observation that while multiple tumors do develop in the primary host embryos they are due to a true weakening of the embryonic individuation field and a general reduction of proliferation rate. The tumors are the products of those cells that continue to divide at the normal rate, multiplying more rapidly than adjacent tissue and so assuming the form and effect of tumors (Briggs, 1940, Briggs and Berrill, 1941). When such a tumor is grafted into equivalent embryos of the same species it grows at the same pace as the surrounding tissue, loses its papillomatous character and is slowly absorbed by the host like many other grafts of normal tissue.

Weakness of extrinsic factors in the embryo therefore leads to a real malignant behavior by some parts, but there is no intrinsic malignant quality in the tumor tissue that can be expressed in a normal system.

2 Histogenesis and tumor extracts There is considerable evidence that histodifferentiations generally develop according to location in the system. Position effects must operate so that a cell is directed along or made to select among its repertoire of potential specializations. The variety of special types varies with each kind of organism, but each kind remains distinct without grading into other types.

While the study of regenerates emphasizes the impact of position upon cell

destiny, an alternative mechanism is present in developing eggs, especially those of determinate or mosaic type

- It is generally considered that the inductors of vertebrate embryos are diffusible chemical substances. In the case of determinate eggs such substances arise precociously before significant diffusion becomes necessary, and are known as "organ-forming substances" (Conklin, 1905, 1929). Primarily they are specialized regions of the egg cytoplasm that are able to induce such rapid histogenesis that cleavage in these territories becomes inhibited and is limited to a few divisions (Conklin, 1905, Berrill, 1935). The inductors are liberated or activated at the time of rupture of the matured egg nucleus and resulting mixture of nuclear sap with the cytoplasm.

The inductor in amphibian embryos is considered by some to be a sterol (Waddington, Needham, 1936), by others to be protein (Barth and Graff, 1938), but more recently Holtfreter (1942) finds that all known agents act indirectly by causing cells to release the active substance the nature of which is completely obscure.

Sex hormones appear to act histogenetically and are known to be steroids. They are produced by gonadal tissue, even that of echinoderms (Donahue and Jennings, 1937) producing estrin as in the case of mammals and other vertebrates. Tissues in widely different parts of the body respond to these circulating secretions. According to Burns (1938) the sex inductors of amphibian larvae are identical with the sex hormones of the adult, and in these young forms they act through diffusion from cell to cell as do the inductors in the embryo. Each component of the developing ovotestis secretes its own hormone, to which it has a specific growth response. The hormone diffuses into the other component and the one that finally overrides determines the sex. Such substances are not specifically histogenetic since they arise in and affect tissues already more or less specialized. But it is significant that relatively specialized tissues secrete specific substances that promote the growth of the parent tissue. A similar case is the production of biotin by yeast, stimulating but not necessary to the growth of yeast.

The tissue response in these two instances is much like that of the circulating hormones. The immediate response in every case is an increase of proliferation in the tissue sensitive to the hormone. In most cases there is a specific differentiation. The specificities however appear to be associated with the responding tissue rather than the inducing substance. The inducing steroid is in the general circulation, reaching all tissues, but only certain related tissues are sensitive to it, while the histodifferentiation response is specific to each tissue responding. It is difficult to determine whether the specific differentiations are induced directly by the steroid or by the steroid-induced proliferation.

Hormones generally may be considered as tissue extracts, some originating in what appear to be residual tissues whose primary functions have been lost (Huxley, 1929), for example, thyroid from endostyle. Experimental support for this concept comes from Helff (1926) who found that perforation of the frog operculum enabling leg emergence is due to a hormone produced by underlying degenerating gills, and less intensely by tissues in general undergoing histolysis.

Zuckerman (1940) concludes that the idea of specific action of estrogenic hormones must be abandoned. He suggests that true Mullerian tissues respond by glandular proliferation and the epithelial metaplasia and stratification is anatomically a response of tissue in whose development estrogen-sensitive sinus epithelium has played a part.

The response is however even more general. Estrogen accelerates and intensifies the breakdown and ossification of growing cartilage, whereas the thyroid hormone increases proliferation and differentiation, with retarded ossification, of the same tissue (Silberberg, 1939). Histospecific responses appear therefore as the result of intensifications or retardations of each respective tissue cycle, as in the response of feather follicles to estrin and thyroxin (Lillie and Juhn, 1932).

Tissue cultures *in vitro* exhibit a loss of visible differentiation, related to the enhanced proliferation rate. This might be called dedifferentiation except that such tissues redifferentiate only their respective original character upon reimplantation (Strangeways, 1924). Mitotic multiplication inhibits the full expression of cell character, just as enforced differentiation inhibits cleavage (Berl, 1935, Bloom, 1937).

Something persists through successive divisions in spite of the loss of structural and secretory indices, that maintains specific character. Either irreversible changes occur in the nuclei of specialized cells even though nuclear equivalence has been demonstrated in early developmental stages, or some substance is produced in the cell during the original differentiation that is not only an associate of its particular type of specialization but can act as an inductor of that special type. It may act directly on the cytoplasm or indirectly through nuclear activity.

Tissue maintenance factors and the so-called organ forming substance of eggs may be identical and in effect be specific cytoplasmic selectors of nuclear repertoire, formed in the first place by nuclear reaction with relatively indifferent cytoplasm under the influence of a supracellular selector.

Malignant tissues frequently have been described as dedifferentiated or having reverted to an embryonic condition. In view of the real state in tissue cultures however it is clear that the high proliferation rate of tumor cells has a similar effect upon visible differentiation.

The question whether malignant cells have lost or gained something is relevant here, although it raises almost every aspect of cell function and constitution. Many instances are recorded of normal secretory functions persisting in malignant tissue. Mouse hepatoma secreted bile in primary and transplanted tumor (Strong and Smith, 1936). Fibroadenomata of rat breast secreted milk (Grauer and Robinson, 1932). Cartilage tumors produce a more or less normal ground substance (Purdy, 1938).

It is evident that malignancy in itself does not necessarily mask or destroy the basic cell character. If malignancy is the expression of something lost from the cell, the loss appears to be unrelated to the determinant of cell type.

The most striking examples of histogenetic tissue extracts come from malignant tissue itself. The reason for this is obvious. Malignancy implies unlimited growth. If to this is added a histogenetic effect, this effect will be ex-

hibited on a relatively enormous scale, although the malignancy has generally tended to overshadow this other quality. The transmission is exact, the same cell types, macroscopic features, etiological habits and degree of malignancy are induced by cell free extracts in the host as they appeared in the original tumor. The most obvious cases are those of tumors with the more striking histological character such as cartilage or bone. Cell free extracts of chondrosarcomas and osteochondrosarcomas of the fowl transmit their specific histology as well as malignancy (Rous, Murphy and Tytler, 1912, Muto, 1915, Furth and Breedis, 1937). Similar induction of malignancy together with specific histological character by cell-free tumor extracts has been demonstrated in mice (Parsons, 1936) and with less certainty in the frog (Lucke, 1938, Briggs, 1942), the former case from chemically induced primary tumors.

Malignancy in this light becomes one of the many properties of a cell induced in host cells by its noncellular extract. Similar extracts of nonmalignant cells might have similar induction properties, but without simultaneous conveyance of malignancy and consequent growth they remain undetectable.

Both components of a reacting system must be considered. Specific induction is to be correlated with a specific response. There appears to be a definite relative sensitivity of host tissues to extracts of related tissue types (cf Barnes and Furth, 1939). Specialized cells are apparently unable to undergo true dedifferentiation or to acquire the power to redifferentiate along new line. The least specialized cells are likely to proliferate most since specialization and mitotic activity seem to be competitive exercises. Otherwise the induction-response system appears to be fairly definite. In chick embryos or membranes induction by sarcoma extract occurs only when in contact with mesodermal tissue. In adult fowl connective tissue cells react to sarcoma extract to reproduce the particular type of sarcoma extracted. The response is chiefly from sites of tissue derangement such as actively functioning ovary when injected intravenously or along the path of injury when into breast muscle. Muscle from susceptible fowl absorbs Rous tumor I agent, muscle tissue from nonsusceptible and nonmesenchymatous tissues from susceptible fowl do not (Claude and Murphy, 1933). Fowl endothelioma extract acts upon endothelial cells (Begg, 1927). According to Schiller (1937), a carcinomatous center infects adjacent epithelium but not connective tissue. The mammalian reticuloendothelial system reacts to extracts of lymphosarcomas (Parsons, 1938), while in frogs extracts of kidney adenocarcinoma appear to induce similar carcinomata in growing kidney tubules of other individuals (Lucke, 1938, Briggs, 1942). Lyophilized filtrates of mouse mammary tumor taken by mouth induce mammary tumors in Ax strains (Bittner, 1941).

In general there appears to be a relative sensitivity to tumor extracts of those less specialized tissues most closely related to the tumor tissue type. To this extent there is a close parallel with the endocrine-tissue reacting systems, and the problem may be one and the same.

Induction by tumor extract has been considered to be species specific, both for birds and frogs. If the parallel between the tumor extract reaction and sex

hormones reaction is significant species specificity is to be associated with the carrier or protein component rather than the lipid element. Tissue specificities develop during the course of development (Harris, 1941). Tissues can be blended in early stages that mutually reject one another at a later period.

Rous sarcoma extract normally fails to induce any significant response in ducks, but when massive injections are made into newly hatched ducklings malignant disease is invoked. Resistance becomes complete within a day or two of hatching. The question of susceptibility and resistance to tumor extract is probably as closely associated with protein specificities as is the degree of resistance to the grafting of normal and malignant tissues. Duran Reynals (1942) reports more than an adaptation of fowl sarcoma extract to ducks. In the chick the agent induces sarcomas and lymphosarcomas especially of liver and spleen but in the duck the same agent when successfully adapted produces widespread tumors of skin and digestive tract, and also growths in the skull, ribs and muscle, that is, primarily affecting epithelial and to a lesser degree mesenchymatous tissues. Adaptation to duck results in chick incompatibility, and the same procedure is necessary to produce reactions in the chick as is necessary to overcome duck resistance in the first place. The duck modified agent now produces in the chick multiple bone tumors from periosteum and endosteum that invade the marrow cavity, also inducing nonmalignant new bone in the non-invaded parts.

The question arises whether the agent is actually a histogenetic inductor whose specific type is alterable or whether it merely stimulates various tissues, according to their constitution to proliferate and produce their respective growth types.

3 Teratomata Teratoma is among the most complex and challenging phenomena of malignancy. It may be defined as tumors exhibiting little or no organization but containing many of the specialized tissue types. The phenomenon goes to the base of the problem of histogenesis and is clearly one of a malignant tumor exhibiting in part epigenetic development. The problem is three-fold: how do the specialized tissues arise, what is the significance of the apparent absence of organization, and what is the significance of the malignant character of the growth. An adequate answer to all of these would raise embryology to the status of a classical science.

Barron (1916) described pineal teratoma as consisting of muscle fibres, goblet cells, cartilage, bone, glandular, squamous and columnar epithelia. Similar tumors are reported arising in thyroid (Putsch and Nelson, 1935) and suprarenal tissue (Geschickter, 1935), and more generally from gonadal tissue of either sex. The limited mixed types usually containing cartilage described for the palm (Simard, 1937) breast (Binkley and Stewart, 1940) and liver (Bullock and Curtis, 1925) are probably aspects of the same phenomenon.

Teratoma testis has been produced experimentally by a number of workers (Bagg, 1936; Folin, 1940) through the combined action on the testis of zinc salts and normal or injected sex hormones. According to Champy and Lavedin (1939) seminomas and embryomas may be induced by almost complete removal of the

testis A typical tumor consists of a stroma of embryonic mesenchyme which forms hyaline cartilage, often replaced by bone of endochondral origin, and muscle, glandular ducts lined with goblet cells or columnar epithelium, islands of keratinized stratified epithelium, feather follicles with feather germs, and medullated and nonmedullated neurones, with obvious areas of carcinoma and adenocarcinoma Needham (1936) compares it to the chaotic condition when an individuation field is thrown out of existence, when a "field" at some point fails to control evocator (inductor) substances Falin (1940) considers that at the site of zinc injection necrohormones, trephones, etc., are liberated during cellular disintegration that act on pluripotential testicular cells like the inductors or evocators of embryos, and that lagging or misplaced gonocytes are responsible for all teratomas He criticizes Michalowsky's (1932) suggestion that teratoma testis arises from spermatogonia and that the spermatogenic cells of the tubules approach the ovum in capacity He finds it necessary to assume parthenogenesis of spermatogonia and finds it difficult to account for teratomas elsewhere

According to Holtfreter's recent work (unpublished) the embryonic inductor responsible for neurulation is liberated from damaged cells, as imagined by Falin, but this inductor is not considered by embryologists to initiate development as such, nor is parthenogenesis conceived as applying to any cells other than fully grown ova in the throes of polar body formation Experimental or natural parthenogenesis has never been observed in oogonia or partly grown oocytes

Two kinds of cells have the capacity for complete or partial development, fully mature ova and entirely unspecialized totipotent cells These types are poles apart and their confusion is responsible for much loose terminology used in the interpretation of teratoma

Spermatozoa and mature ova are each in their own way extremely highly specialized types of cell It is part of the special nature of the fully formed egg that when properly stimulated it undergoes rapid segmentation as a consequence of its large size, and simultaneously undergoes a series of specialized form changes associated with regionally developed special cytoplasmic differentiations (cp Needham, 1933, Berrill, 1935) Together these produce the embryo with its peculiar characteristic early stages Immature ova lack both properties and have no capacity as such for development To speak of parthenogenetic development of either oogonia or of spermatogonia is in terms of embryology nonsense

There is presumably a phase, however, in the production of oogonia and spermatogonia when the cells are entirely unspecialized, before even their respective destinies to produce oocytes and spermatocytes have been determined Such unspecialized types of cells may exist in many parts of the body In lower vertebrates and most invertebrates unspecialized tissue consisting of multipotent or even totipotent cells occur throughout the organism, and are responsible for the regenerative capacities of these forms Except for the progressive specialization of tissues in higher vertebrates, there is no *a priori* reason why such unspecialized types should not persist locally and in small numbers in these as well

Under certain circumstances such cells or cell groups are capable not only of regenerative development, as in amphibians, but of total development as in tunicates. The course and conditions of development however are not the same as those of developing eggs. Physical or physiological isolation from the parental organism is essential for total development in the one case, similar isolation of the part from the whole is necessary in the other. Then if proliferating cells are able to adhere together and are continuously supplied with adequate nourishment, development of organized differentiating structure proceeds. It is necessary to emphasize that in the absence of a relatively large quantity of material to start with, as is present in even the smallest egg these cells divide because they have grown beyond the normal limit and are permitted to do so by their immediate cellular environment. The invocation of inductors or evocators is neither more nor less serviceable than it is for all malignancy. They may be necessary to account for certain kinds of histogenesis even in teratoma but only of histogenesis of cells already present or multiplying. They do not account for growth itself.

In virtually every account of teratomas the fact of malignancy is more or less taken for granted, the assumption being that parthenogenesis of mature ova in the ovary, or the mis-called parthenogenesis of oogonia and spermatogonia, account for the type of growth. Distorted development may be explained by the abnormality of the site of development, but teratology is not malignancy. Either malignancy develops in one or more tissues as development proceeds, which is conceivable, or malignancy exists from the beginning and development is its outcome.

There is little doubt that on occasion mature ova develop parthenogenetically in the ovary, for the most part forming benign teratological growths. Under abnormal developmental conditions spontaneous malignant changes might well take place in one or more tissues. The problem would be that of spontaneous tumors generally.

In the case of teratomas appearing at other sites parthenogenetic development, even if it had meaning here beyond mere proliferation, would fail to account for the growth. Totipotent or multipotent cell groups do not grow or develop unless isolated in a real though not necessarily physical sense from the rest of the organism. Otherwise they do not grow except as an orderly constituent of that organism, and when grafted elsewhere become resorbed. Growth of non-ovarian teratomas must accordingly be malignant growth from the very beginning. The problem therefore is that of the malignant change itself and of the peculiar teratoma development that follows. To a considerable extent it is a matter of emphasis.

If a malignant change occurs in a relatively unspecialized cell one of several ways may be taken. Slight specialization invisibly expressed may result in spindle cell sarcomas, as from fibroblasts, and in the case of tumors of the testis seminomas arise probably from cells already too specialized to be multipotent. Cells entirely unspecialized may become actual rather than potential spermatogonia by virtue of their location. If such cells become malignant they may conceivably merely proliferate without other change of character, appearing as

seminoma types or even as so-called chorionepithelioma. On the other hand it is clear that malignancy so affects any cell that it behaves as if isolated from the organism. If multipotency or totipotency is innate in such a cell, and if all nutritive requirements for unlimited growth are met, as they are, the conditions for the expression of any independent developmental capacity are fulfilled.

It is important to emphasize once more the dissociability of fundamental developmental phenomena, histogenesis, cell multiplication and growth, and morphogenesis (Needham, 1933). Histogenesis may be considered by itself. One of the major mysteries of development is the mechanism by which an indifferent cell gives rise to a progeny of diversely differentiated types. More is known of the induction of neurones from such cells and all that is certain here is that the inductor can be liberated from damaged or necrotic cells by an unrelated variety of agents. But the products of necrosis do call forth neurogenesis.

In a growing mass of indifferent cells, among which many must be degenerating and dying, necrotic by-products must be plentiful and healthy cells of indifferent type may be induced to undergo initial segregations into a few simple types. These may in turn interact or follow through their own respective destinies of further segregation. In any case the histogenetic situation is comparable to that of embryos and the problem of tissue segregation one and the same. Obviously the malignant quality does not inhibit the formation or existence of the various cell types.

At the same time it is impossible to ignore the existence of certain rudiments of organization, and while organization itself requires explanation, even rudimentary organization may account for histogenetic segregation without calling on necrotic hormones.

In advanced teratoma testis of the fowl feather follicles and glandular ducts are definitely organized structures, and it is evident that certain types of cells are able to cohere and undergo unitary development associated with their respective type. An experimental analysis of the general relationship between histodifferentiation and malignancy in teratomas is greatly needed. All that can be said is that the most specialized tissues proliferate slowest and are therefore the least malignant. But the non-transplantability of teratomas needs further investigation. It is possible that in the course of tissue segregation certain types are able to inhibit whatever underlies the malignant quality, and when proliferation is almost or entirely suppressed all the latent capacity for organization and differentiation within that mass of cells is expressed, the nature of the expression being determined by the degree of segregation previously attained.

The other evidence of organization is found in the earliest stages of teratomal growth and in its essentials is amazingly similar in renal (Masson, 1938) testis and some ovarian tumors (Peyron, 1939). Masson has given clear account of the development of nephrogenic tumors, while Peyron's descriptions, as distinct from his interpretations, demonstrate the essential similarity of testis teratoma development. According to Masson blastematous cords of the kidney give rise to minute vesicles which he considers to be the sole and earliest tissue of origin.

of the nephrogenic tumors. Each vesicle buds off other vesicles or cell masses which give rise progressively to a group of teratomatous tissues, including neurons, striated muscle and nephrons. He concludes boldly that the origin of the blastomatous cords from the neuroepithellum of the embryo accounts for all the cell types encountered except muscle and nephron and that therefore in the embryo certain muscle and nephrogenic tissue must come from the mesectoderm of the neural crest and not from the mesentoderm, thus reversing the trend of interpretation from embryology to tumors! It is implied that consequent on malignancy certain cells of neural crest origin progressively segregate into their prospective histological types. Their fate had already been somewhat determined so that multipotency persists, rather than the tipotency of prospective spermatogonia.

The formation of vesicles that in turn bud off other vesicles and cell masses is common to both testis and kidney teratomas and must represent organization of a kind. Peyron considers those of testis to be blastocysts budding as in polyembryony and giving rise to chorioplacental masses, embryomas, and much malignant chorionoma stages and tissues plausibly named only if an origin from true parthenogenetic ova is valid. This cannot be established.

In those forms, e.g., ascidians, where a comparison can be made, there is a profound difference between the development of an egg and that of a group of totipotent indifferent cells (Berrill, 1941). The egg cleaves to form a blastula, gastrula, tadpole larva, etc., before transforming finally into a miniature adult. The somatic cell group in contrast multiplies and forms a small vesicle which by extensions, foldings and subsequent histodifferentiation develops directly into a similar miniature adult without passing through any of the so-called historical phases of development.

Blastocysts, embryonic discs, fetal membranes belong to "historical" aspects of egg development, however essential they may actually be for normal development. There is no more reason to expect development from unspecialized cells in a mammal or bird to yield the early stages of egg development than in the lower chordates. It is more reasonable to compare the primary vesicles of teratomas with the primary vesicle of asexual ascidian development. Totipotent cells of higher vertebrate if able to develop at all might be expected to exhibit features comparable to the primary phases of bud development than to those of any developing egg.

The repeated vesicular budding and final disintegrations may well be the result of malignancy. The following description of teratoma may accordingly be made.

The malignant quality acquired by one or a group of indifferent totipotent cells of probable epithelial pedigree acts as an isolating factor in relation to the rest of the organism, enabling it to exhibit whatever developmental potency it may possess. Proliferation begins, uncontrolled by the parent organism as in the case of malignant growth generally. Morphogenesis begins with the formation of a small vesicle. Either by virtue of its tissue environment or more likely because of the innate new quality of its component cells the system breaks down first by segregating daughter vesicles and cell masses and then by complete dis-

integration The various cell strains initiated by this effort express the primary malignancy in various degrees, the least structurally specialized cells retaining the highest multiplication rate and therefore becoming the most malignant, such as epithelioma

The original malignant agent induces development and at the same time is responsible for its subsequent breakdown

Tumor induction One of the most confusing aspects of malignancy is the diversity of the agents capable of inducing it, radium, x-ray, ultra-violet, polycyclic hydrocarbons, sex hormones, tumor extracts, butter yellow, arsenic and viruses We are faced with two alternatives Either each kind of agent produces its own peculiar change in the cell and a large variety of qualitatively different changes enable cells to behave as though isolated from the parent organism, or, directly or indirectly, every such agent induces finally the same basic change in a cell, that is, a variety of stimuli call forth one and the same reaction It is relevant to recall that many chemically and physically unrelated agents similarly evoke one and the same organizer response in amphibian embryos, all acting probably through the liberation of necrotic by-products

Both views are plausible A variety of agents may in various ways induce the same qualitative change in a cell, uncontrolled growth being the result of the change in quality, or a variety of qualitative alterations produced by the various agents may call forth the same reaction if they exceed a certain magnitude

The malignant response and the proliferative response of normal cells to a disturbance of the condition of equilibrium as in regeneration and tissue culture must be considered together Malignancy cannot be understood until much more is known concerning both cell division and its inhibition in tissues Actual division of a cell is the climax of a complex process of growth and duplication of a multitude of cell components, while the inhibition of the process *in vivo* is clearly not due to lack of nutritive substances or to any deficiency on the part of the cell

Such evidence as there is suggests that normal cells refrain from or are prohibited from continuing division by surface conditions, by their relationship to one another In a tissue they are under the control of the external agency to which they themselves probably contribute Normal proliferation ceases when a condition of equilibrium is reached

There may be much more than an analogy between the induction of malignant behavior by chemical agents in tissue cells and the induction of divisions in eggs by parthenogenetic chemicals

Eggs admittedly are relatively giant cells and anything that restores to them the metabolism of normal tissue cells may be expected to start a series of divisions tending to restore typical somatic cell dimensions (Whittaker, 1933, Berrill, 1935) But apart from this there are the significant facts that the most effective parthenogenetic agents are surface active compounds such as oxybutyric acid, that profound physical or physico-chemical changes occur immediately in the egg cortex, and that division asters are apparently induced *de novo* within the endoplasm

Since there appears to be a lower size limit to any given type of cell, all such cells must necessarily keep growing in order to continue to divide, whether under the impact of the regenerative stimulus or of a carcinogen. The question arises whether the cells are induced to continue growing and consequently keep dividing to maintain optimum dimensions or whether they are induced to divide and must grow to maintain the same surface-volume ratios.

Tumor cells are generally described as being somewhat larger than their normal counterparts with large nucleoli (Lewis, 1938). It may be significant that similar features characterize tissues preparing for or in process of regeneration (Sayles 1931). Nuclei become vesiculate, nucleoli large and multiple, and cell size markedly increased, almost as though an overdrive is established.

Lipoids, mitochondria, sex hormones, steroid carcinogens, avian tumor agents, and parthenogenetic chemicals are all surface active compounds and may be expected to affect primarily cortical or surface conditions of a cell. Any permanent abnormality in cortical regions may well so affect the intercellular relationships of a cell that it may be impossible to attain a state of equilibrium. Cortical cytoplasm and cortical relationships may be affected directly by external agents or indirectly by factors operating through their effect on nuclear constitution.

Of the various tumor inducing agents, radium and x ray almost certainly primarily affect the nucleus. According to the dosage these produce either cell and nuclear destruction, permanent inhibition of mitotic division, or chromosome mutation. Induction of malignancy in somatic tissues occurs with much the same order of incidence and dosage as in the case of germ cell mutation. There is in this fact considerable support for Boveri's theory which so far has neither been proven nor disproven.

Obvious chromosomal irregularity is probably incompatible with survival beyond a few cell generations, but slight irregularity compatible with continuing bipolar mitotic divisions is at least conceivable and yet such cells may be so changed that malignant behavior results. The more recent concept of somatic gene mutation does not differ basically from Boveri's chromosome theory. All that is required in either case is that some intra- or inter-chromosomal change occurs that permits continuation of normal division processes and at the same time so changes a cell that it behaves as a physiologically isolated unit. It may be entirely a matter of chance whether any alteration of this type induced by x ray, radium or ultra violet leaves the division mechanism unimpaired and is of a kind expressing itself as malignancy.

Colchicine apparently affects nuclear division in a non-differential manner, retarding or temporarily inhibiting the process during a critical phase. Since x rays seem absorbed and produce their dislocation effects during the more condensed chromosome phases, a combined use of colchicine and x ray should produce a much higher tumor incidence than the same x ray dosage alone. The negative result reported by Bruce, Marble and Jackson (1940) does not appear to be conclusive.

The chromosome aberration hypothesis, whether in the form of chromosome

dislocations or of gene mutations, raises the general question of the dependence of cell character on the persisting integrity of the whole nuclear constitution. Much depends upon the interpretation of the amitosis phenomena. Until amitosis is demonstrable in living cells it is difficult to accept its existence as fully established. At the same time a pattern tends to emerge from the incidence of its reported occurrences. In all cases where it is established as a probability the cell types appear to be structurally relatively simple but highly specialized in chemical function. It is typical of proliferation in decidua and embryonic envelopes of vertebrates, the periblast of meroblastic ova, follicle cells in the ovary, endosperm, etc., of flowering plants (Belar, 1928). It is described as the typical method of multiplication of bone cells (Bast, 1921), urodele erythrocytes (Charipper and Dawson, 1928), frog erythrocytes (Ferrari, 1931) and of mature mammalian cartilage (Elliot, 1936). It is suggested by Child (1907) and Elliot that it replaces mitosis when the demand for certain requisite metabolites such as oxygen exceeds the supply.

Unless amitotic division masks unsuspected examples of endomixis and intranuclear bipolar segregation, it must result in qualitatively unequal division, and since typical cell character is maintained it follows that only a partial representation of full nuclear constitution is necessary for the continued amitotic division and special functioning of certain kinds of tissue. This is in contrast to the need for normal nuclear constitution for development and histogenesis and raises the whole question of the origin of cell differentiations and specializations and their maintenance. Obviously greater effort should be made to establish or disestablish amitosis as a fact, or to determine its true nature. If it is what it seems to be, and if chromosome aberration can lead to malignancy, tumors should frequently arise in the above mentioned tissues. They do not as a rule, though Butterworth (1937) suspects x-ray induced granulosa-cell tumors of mice to arise from nests of follicle cells after degeneration of ova.

On the other hand there is considerable indirect support for the chromosome aberration hypothesis, which in any case is by no means an exclusive theory.

According to Ishibasi and Harada (1933) the chromosome numbers in a series of human and animal tumors are in accord with the idea of chromosome disharmony being related to tumor development, though the question always recurs whether the relationship is a causal one or whether tumor formation and chromosome aberration are both products of some deeper disturbance.

Carcinogenic cysticercus cysts induce irregular division and chromosome abnormalities almost immediately upon application and long before any other indication of malignancy can be detected (Mendelsohn, 1935). Mitoses were found to be bipolar in spite of a much greater variability of chromosome number than in normal tissues.

According to Huskins and Hearne (1936), the relatively high chiasmata frequency of the gonads of cancer-susceptible mice strains indicates a greater susceptibility in these strains to mitotic disturbance generally, that the processes of chromosome "splitting", spindle formation and cytokinesis are near the borderline of lack of correlation. From the study of maize, Jones (1940) con-

cludes that chromosome reallocations genes removed from some cells and replicated in others result in permanent alterations involving growth, color, size, shape and composition, that it is 'now evident why external agents such as physical radiations, carcinogenic chemicals, hormones viruses, parasitic organisms and what next can produce the same result as inherited tendencies, either by increasing the frequency of chromosome breaks and relocations or by altering the growth regulating regions in the chromosomes "

Associated with chromosome aberrations is the widespread occurrence of multipolar mitoses in tumors. As they are not invariably present in tumor tissue their presence has been considered by many to be a result of abnormal conditions and degeneration within the tumors, and that cells exhibiting such mitoses are not the malignant cells *per se* and have but a short life ahead of them. This of course could be true without necessarily excluding multipolar mitosis as a causal factor.

There are two distinct problems: does the phenomenon precede malignancy or only follow it, and how is it to be interpreted in itself. Only in the case of experimentally induced tumors is there much likelihood of determining whether multipolar mitosis precedes malignancy. The evidence must inevitably remain ambiguous in the case of spontaneous tumors.

The general effect of steroid carcinogens on growth of the whole animal appears to be retardative (Haddow and Robinson 1939) and the immediate effect on certain tissues at least is the induction of frequent multipolar mitoses. Since there is on an average a latent period of several months between application and first detectable signs of tumor it is virtually impossible to consider such mitoses the product of malignancy. Similarly a high incidence of multipolar mitoses was found to be a more or less immediate response to the presence of the Crocker oystercercus cysts, although here again there is a long latent period between cyst infection and tumor origin (Mendelsohn 1934).

There appears to be little doubt that in two outstanding types of tumor in ductors the tumors arise from tissues in which cell proliferation has continued for a relatively long period with varying degrees of abnormality. Boveri's hypothesis is definitely supported by the facts and it is impossible to dismiss these abnormal mitotic phenomena as mere by products of established malignancy.

It does not follow that tumors arise from the progeny of cells that have undergone multipolar mitosis although it is possible. Multipolar mitosis may be an extreme case and other cells may react in other and less obvious ways. Thus according to Hearne Creech (1939) in fibroblast cultures exposed to carcinogenic hydrocarbons chromosomes showed a precocious splitting in prophase, recalling the correlation between chiasmata frequency and mammary tumor susceptibility (Huskins and Hearne 1936).

In general carcinogenic hydrocarbons are growth inhibitors, non-carcinogenic hydrocarbons are not (Haddow and Robinson, 1939). Similarly there is a growth retardation and degeneration and lack of stimulation when mouse and rat fibroblast cultures are exposed to methylcholanthrene (Earle and Voegtlin 1938). Accordingly there is a probability that multipolar mitoses are more

likely to arise through the suppression of a cytoplasmic cleavage than from a precocious doubling of the centrosome, that they arise through differential retardation

Boveri's suggestion of lagging chromosomes with consequent deficiencies or reduplications in daughter cells lies somewhere between the multipolar condition and chiasmata formation. In the case of multipolar mitosis chromosome distribution to daughter cells is likely to be too abnormal for prolonged survival, and the two milder types of aberrant chromosome behavior are more likely to be compatible with the survival of proliferating cells. Bipolar mitosis is probably a requisite. The range of variability of chromosome number in tumors (Ishibashi and Harada, 1933) suggests lagging chromosomes and is hard to correlate with the types of segregation that would probably follow the multipolar condition.

The fact that multipolar mitoses are so commonly a feature of malignant tissues has naturally led to the suggestion that malignancy is basically a disturbance of the centrosomal mechanism (Lewis, 1938). In our present state of abysmal ignorance concerning the nature of the centrosomal force it is impossible to accept or to dismiss this hypothesis. Fogg and Warren (1940) found shortly after exposure of Walker rat tumor to x-ray that centrioles per cell increased to 4, 6 and 8 in up to 60 per cent of the cells, suggesting the predominance of one or more incomplete divisions, binucleate cells and multipolar mitoses being frequent. If there is a real disturbance of the centrosomal mechanism, it apparently relates to their activity in cytokinesis rather than their rate of reproduction.

At the same time there may be a significant parallel between the induction of multipolar mitoses by carcinogenic hydrocarbons and the action of surface-active chemicals (cp Tyler, 1941) as inductors of accessory centrosomes in the eggs of various marine invertebrates.

Orderly progressive division of nuclear constituents however is possible without spindle, plate, or breakdown of nuclear membrane, i e., endomixis (Painter and Reindrop, 1939) and may be followed by simultaneous division restoring the diploid condition (Berger, 1938). There may also be an equivalent division of the centrosomes (Pollister, 1939).

As in the case of the vertebrate "organizer", the attractive hypothesis of chemical inductors of specific structural type has slowly yielded to a non-specific conception. The cyclopentane ring and C20 methyl group typical of steroids and bile acids are shown to be unconnected with their carcinogenicity (Fieser, 1936). According to Morton, Branch and Clapp (1936) one and only one structural similarity is evident, all have at least four benzene rings. Either four rings, or a single ring modified by its neighbors, must be present, for benzene as such has never been shown to produce cancer. Structure apparently cannot be the common factor relating the carcinogenicity of the various types of hydrocarbon, and maybe there is no common denominator. Fieser (1938) while more attracted to the idea of a definite chemical reaction states that there is no *a priori* reason for supposing that hydrocarbon carcinogenicity is not entirely

physical Studies on the interaction of polycyclic hydrocarbons and steroids in surface films (Clowes, Davis and Krah, 1939) indicate that interfacial forces may be strong enough to permit the hydrocarbons when present in animal tissues, to influence the physiological function of cholesterol and other sterols

In view of this, the fact that tumor cells have generally a higher lipid content than most other types (Yasuda and Bloom, 1932) becomes highly significant, especially in view of the importance of lipoids as components of the surface layers and structural features of cells as well as in cell metabolism Lipoids are a major constituent of mitochondria and, according to Graffi (1939), carcinogenic hydrocarbons have a selective affinity for these bodies

Accordingly these hydrocarbons conceivably may act as malignant agents in two ways By so altering, qualitatively or quantitatively, the general steroid metabolism of the cell the processes of mitotic division may be differentially affected resulting in aberrant chromosome distribution in some degree, or by altering in some manner the steroid complex so that surface relationships are permanently changed

It may be relevant that steroids themselves, as estrogen, can induce malignancy in estrogen-sensitive tissue It is possible, perhaps probable, that the induction is indirect, that overstimulation of the tissues results in an occasional chromosome mutation or reduplication of a type producing malignant behavior There is however evidence to the contrary According to Gardiner (1936) male mice receiving small amounts of estrogen possess mammary glands resembling those of normal virgin females and develop very few mammary tumors, while those receiving larger doses show abnormal growth from the beginning and develop many mammary tumors There is an implication that malignancy is the climax of growth abnormality Loeh and his co-workers (1936) emphasize this view in connection with malignancy of the reproductive tract In vagina and cervix, with increasing age, there is a lateral extension of surface epithelium leading to folds presumably under the influence of estrogens Injection of estrogen intensifies and accelerates this process The growth is not localized but is wide and of multiple areas Step by step it passes to a precancerous (sic) condition and to beginning cancer Very similar phenomena are reported for guinea pig peritoneum following estrogen injections (Lipschütz, 1942) We have then this view, widely held by pathologists, that malignancy does not arise from a simple cell focus but is usually preceded by definite though vaguely described changes over a relatively wide area of tissue, and final malignancy may arise in multiple foci This is supported by the effect of injections of cell free extract of lymphosarcoma in mice (Parsons, 1938) which produced mass changes in the lymphatic system

Self-synthesizing proteins of an alien type, as in the case of the infective papillomata virus of the wild rabbit, may stimulate growth locally The majority of virus infections, while exhibiting a significant organ specificity, have no such effect and it may be that the particular protein type associated with rabbit papillomata affects surface relationships directly or indirectly whereas others do not The heavy protein in this case stimulates infected epidermal

cells to abnormal growth and extracts of these induce similar growths in domestic rabbits (Kidd, 1938). Extracts of these in turn are innocuous, and while inducing antibodies do not possess heavy protein in detectable quantity. It seems likely that in the domestic form the virus protein introduced in the extract is able to induce a proliferative response but is itself unable to reproduce in the domestic rabbit tissue. The pathogenicity of the wild type extract is destroyed by ultra-violet but not its ability to bind complement, indicating interference with its reproductive capacity. The occasional invasive malignancy of the papillomata may be properly compared with the induction of malignancy by estrogen. In both cases malignancy may be either the culmination of a progressive abnormality of growth, or it may be a distinct and more or less spontaneous malignant mutation in a favorably proliferating tissue.

Nature of malignancy factor Whatever the inductive agent may be it is probable that the final change in the cell directly responsible for malignant behavior is of a fairly specific kind. Cell proliferation is itself primarily a response to changing surface relationships and to place the onus of continuing division directly on a derangement of components of the mitotic mechanism such as the centrosome or to accuse genes regulating the normality of mitosis of misbehavior is to ignore the significance of size and growth.

Cell multiplication implies protoplasmic growth except in the case of most eggs, enormous cells, with abnormal surface conditions, capable of subdivision into smaller and smaller cells until cortical and metabolic conditions are returned to normal. Tumor cells are no smaller and at the most are but little larger than their normal counterparts. Cell division must therefore occur when the cell size exceeds a certain critical value, else tumor cells should get progressively smaller and disappear. A cell divides primarily to retain certain volume-surface ratios of the whole and of its parts, and average cell size can be regarded as a form of equilibrium between essential surface activities and the mass of material. This applies not only to the cell as a whole but to all levels of its protoplasmic constitution. An alteration of surface conditions could affect the equilibrium so that it is reached at a different value and a larger or smaller average cell size might be established. According to Dodge (1937) methylcholanthrene has such an effect upon yeast cells.

The factor for malignancy must accordingly satisfy the following requirements. It must either, directly or indirectly, so affect cellular interrelationships that cells are constantly endeavoring to attain a condition of tissue equilibrium that cannot be reached in the normal tissue environment with their new cortical constitution, or certain cellular components, if not all, continue to grow indefinitely and continued cell division is an inevitable response to increasing cell size. And it must be intimately associated, if not identical, with the agent determining the type of cell differentiation.

Claude (1940) in an analysis of high speed centrifuge extracts of both avian tumor tissue and normal embryo finds particulate components of an average size of 70 millimicrons and of the general constitution of a phospholipid-ribonucleoprotein, therefore unlikely to be nuclear fragments. In the case of the chicken

sarcoma amounts of this sedimented material as small as 10^{-8} grams induce typical sarcomas upon injection. It has been stated that chicken tumors induced by carcinogenic hydrocarbons could not be transmitted by cell free extracts (Mellanby, 1938) although non infective extracts injected into rabbits produce sera which neutralized filtrates of Rous sarcoma I (Fould, 1937). Experiments on a somewhat limited scale however show that there is no fundamental difference between the so-called chicken virus tumors and chemically induced tumors (Amies, Carr and Purdy 1939). Dibenzanthracene added to hanging drop cultures of chick embryo fibroblasts and then infinitely diluted produced a culture that produced tumors upon injection, the particulate deposit from cell free extracts transmitting the tumor type readily. Similarly mouse sarcomas induced by dibenzanthracene and grafted for many generations have yielded cell free filtrates capable of transmitting the respective tumor types in an impressive number of cases (Parsons, 1936, 1938).

Claude's suggestion that mitochondria are involved in the malignant change is plausible. They are closely associated with structural differentiation of cells, are actively related to surface structure and properties, are intimately concerned with many aspects of cell metabolism, and are independent self perpetuating units. What little evidence there is suggests that they are concerned in the initial determination of cell character (Conklin, 1905, 1929). They are disposed in a cell so as to supply a maximum surface so that the mitochondrial-cytoplasmic interface must be a significant architectural feature.

The general rôle of cell division and multiplication relative to malignancy may have been overemphasized. In a limited sense it may be and probably is, basically important since the malignant cell appears to be radically and permanently different from its normal counterpart, and changes of all kinds are more apt to occur during the delicate and intricate procedure of division. Yet all the various peculiarities of cell multiplication and differentiation associated with malignancy may well be the consequences and not the cause of continuing protoplasmic growth. In a developing organism growing tissues may be undergoing rapid cell multiplication, slow multiplication or no cell division at all, and yet the rate of growth is the same whatever the degree of cellulation and follows the same curve to end in a "steady state" applying to the whole (Berrill, 1941). The fundamental problem is the nature of the agency creating such an end point and the course of growth leading to it. It is not a matter of nutrition. Malignant tissue grows no faster than normal tissue can when explanted (Schrek, 1936; Hoffmann, Tenebaum and Doljanski, 1939), and it is the failure to reach stability that is the crux of the problem. Whether continuing growth, autocatalytic or otherwise of a single component such as mitochondria involves growth of protoplasm as a whole is not known. Tumor metabolism is significantly different from that of normal tissues. According to Druckrey (1935) and Fleischmann (1936) it is the metabolism of injured tissues, while Dean Burk (1937) defines a tumor as a growing glycolyzing tissue with a deficient respiration. The problem seems to be infinitely complex and appears to be the nature of protein synthesis and reproduction its relationships to cell surface

qualities and general metabolism, and the susceptibility of the whole to the inhibitory control of organization, whatever the basis of this may be

REFERENCES

- ALLEN, E J Regeneration and reproduction in the syllid *Procerastea* Phil Trans Roy Soc B 211 131-177, 1921
- AMIES, C R, J R CARR AND W J PURDY Experiments on the des Ligniers fowl sarcoma Am J Cancer 35 72, 1939
- BAGG, H J Experimental production of teratoma testis in fowl Am J Cancer 26 69, 1936
- BAST, T H Various types of amitosis in bone cells Am J Anat 20 321, 1921
- BARNES, W A AND J FURTH A transmissible malignant neoplasm of mice originating in reticular or endothelial cells Rep Int Cancer Res Found, p 98, 1939
- BARRON, M Teratoma of the brain J Cancer Research 1 311, 1916
- BARTH, L G AND S GRAFF The chemical nature of the amphibian organizer Cold Spring Harbor Symp Quant Biol 6 1938
- BAYNE-JONES, S Fundamental Cancer Research US Public Health Repts 53 2121, 1937
- BEGG, A M A filtrable endothelioma of fowl Lancet 1 912, 1927
- BÊLÂR, K Die cytologischen Grundlagen der Verebung Handb d Vereb schaft 1 86, 1928
- BERGER, C A Cytology of metamorphosis in the Culicinae Nature 142 117, 1938
- BERRILL, N J Cell division and differentiation in asexual and sexual development J Morphology 57 353, 1935
- Spatial and temporal growth patterns in colonial organisms Third Growth Symposium Growth 5 89, 1941
- BINKLEY, J S AND F W STEWART Morphogenesis of extraskeletal osteogenic sarcoma and pseudo osteosarcoma Arch Path 29 42, 1940
- BITTNER, J J The preservation by freezing and drying in vacuo of milk influence for development of breast cancer in mice Science 93 527, 1941
- BLOOM, W Cellular differentiation and tissue culture Physiol Rev 17 589, 1937
- BRIEN, P Considerations à propos de la reproduction asexuée chez les animaux C R 12th Congrès international de Zoologie, Lisbon, 109, 1935
- La réorganisation de l'Eponge après dissociation par filtration et phénomènes d'involution chez Ephydata fluviatilis Arch de Biol 48 185, 1937
- BRIGGS, R W The development of abnormal growths in *Rana pipiens* embryos following delayed fertilization Anat Rec 81 121, 1941
- BRIGGS, R W AND N J BERRILL Transplantation experiments with an ectodermal growth of frog embryos Growth 5 273, 1941
- Transplantation of kidney carcinoma from adult frogs to tadpoles Cancer Res 2 309, 1942
- BRUES, A M, B B MARBLE AND E B JACKSON Effects of colchicine and radiation on growth of normal tissues and tumors Am J Cancer 38 159, 1940
- BULLOCK, F D AND M R CURTIS Types of cysticercus tumors J Cancer Res 9 425, 1925
- BURK, D On the biochemical significance of the Pasteur reaction and Meyerhof cycle in intermediate carbohydrate metabolism Science 85 Suppl 121, 1937
- BURNS, R K Hormonal control of sex differentiation Am Nat 72 207, 1938
- BURR, H S AND F S C NORTHROP The electro-dynamic theory of life Quart Rev Biol 10 322, 1935
- CHAMPY, C AND J P LAVEDAN Seminomes par regeneration testiculaires chez les oiseaux Bull Assoc franc p l'Etude du Cancer 28 503, 1939

- CHARIPPER, H. A. AND A. B. DAWSON. Direct division of erythrocytes and the occurrence of erythroplastids in the circulating blood of *Necturus*. *Anat. Rec.* 39: 301 1928
- CHILD, C. M. Studies on the relation between amitosis and mitosis. *Biol. Bull. Woods Hole Mass.* 12: 89 1907
Senescence and rejuvenescence. Chicago 1915
Problems of pattern and development. Chicago 1941
- CLAUDE, A. AND J. B. MURPHY. Transmissible tumors of fowl. *Physiol. Rev.* 13: 246, 1933
- CLAUDE, A. Particulate components of normal and tumor cells. *Science* 91: 77 1940
- CLOWES, G. H. A. W. W. DAVIES AND M. E. KRAHL. The possible biological significance of interactions between polycyclic hydrocarbons and sterols in surface films. *Am. J. Cancer* 37: 453 1939
- CONKLIN, E. G. The development of centrifuged eggs of ascidians. *J. Exper. Zool.* 60: 1 1931
- CREASER, C. W. AND A. GORHAM. Species specificity of the gonadotropic factors in vertebrates. *Quart. Rev. Biol.* 14: 311 1939
- CREECH, E. M. Carcinogenic and related non-carcinogenic hydrocarbons in tissue culture. *Am. J. Cancer* 35: 190 1939
- DODGE, W. C. AND B. S. DONGE. Some effects of methylcholanthrene on the morphology and growth of yeasts. *Ann. Mo. Bot. Garden* 24: 583 1937
- DONAHUE, J. K. AND E. D. JENNINGS. The occurrence of estrogenic substances in the ovaries of echinoderms. *Endocrinology* 21: 600 1937
- DRUCKREY, H. Der Stoffwechsel des geschädigten Gewebes. *Naturwiss.* 23: 706 1935
- DURAN REYNALS, F. Reciprocal infection of ducks and chickens with tumor inducing viruses. *Cancer Res.* 2: 343 1942
- EARLE, W. R. AND C. VOEGTLIN. Mode of action of methylcholanthrene on cultures of normal tissues. *Am. J. Cancer* 34: 373, 1938
- ELLIOTT, H. C. Studies on articular cartilage. I. Growth mechanisms. *Am. J. Anat.* 58: 127 1936
- EWING, J. The public and the cancer problem. *Science* 87: 2262 399 1938
- FALIN, L. I. Experimental teratoma in fowl. *Am. J. Cancer* 38: 199 1940
- FERRARI, R. Sulla divisione diretta degli eritrociti circolanti della Rana. *Bull. d. Soc. Ital. di Biol. Sper.* 5: 11 1930
- FIESER, L. F. Chemical aspects of the cancer work and indications from chemical structures regarding the relationship between carcinogenic action and the sex hormones. *Science* 85: Supplement 51 1937
Carcinogenic activity: structure and chemical reactivity of polynuclear aromatic hydrocarbons. *Am. J. Cancer* 34: 37 1938
- FLEISCHMANN, W. Der Stoffwechsel des geschädigten Gewebes. *Naturwiss.* 24: 15 1936
- FOULDS, L. Observation on non-infiltrable fowl tumors: production of neutralizing sera against filtrates of Rous sarcoma by non-infective extracts of sarcoma induced by 1,2,5,6-dibenzanthracene. *Am. J. Cancer* 31: 404 1938
The histological analysis of tumors: critical review. *Am. J. Cancer* 39: 1 1940
- FURTH, J. AND C. BREZDIS. Attempts at cultivation of viruses producing leukosis in fowls. *Arch. Path.* 24: 281 1937
- GARDINER, W. U. Influence of estrogenic hormones on abnormal growths. *Science* 85: Supplement 67 1937
- GESCHICKTER, C. F. Suprarenal tumors. *Am. J. Cancer* 23: 104 1935
- GRAFFI, A. Zelluläre Speicherung Cancerogener Kohlenwasserstoffe. *Ztschr. f. Krebsforsch.* 49: 477, 1939
- GRAUER, R. C. AND G. H. ROBINSON. Lactation in transplantable benign mammary adenomas of rats. *Am. J. Cancer* 15: 101, 1932

- HADDOW, A AND A M ROBINSON The association of carcinogenicity and growth-inhibiting power in the polycyclic hydrocarbons and other substances Proc Roy Soc London Ser B 127 277, 1939
- HARRIS, M The establishment of tissue specificity in tadpoles of *Hyla regilla* J Exper Zool 88 373, 1941
- HARRISON, W G On relations of symmetry in transplanted limbs J Exper Zool 32 1, 1921
- HELFF, O M Studies on amphibian metamorphosis J Exper Zool 45 1, 1926
- HOFFMAN, R S, E TENENBAUM AND L DOLJANSKI Growth stimulating effects of extracts of normal and adult tissues and tumours Nature 114 1092, 1939
- HOLTFRETER, J Unpublished results (personal communication), 1942
- HUSKINS, C L AND E M HEARNE Spermatocyte chiasma frequency in strains of mice differing in susceptibility or resistance to the spontaneous occurrence of malignant tumors Canadian J Research D 14 39, 1936
- HUXLEY, J S Chemical regulation and the hormone concept Biol Rev 10 427, 1935
The field concept in biology Trans Dynamics of development 10 269, 1935
- ISHIBASHI, M AND Y HARADA Zur Frage der Geschwulstentstehung und Chromosomenveränderung in den Geschwulstzellen Trans Japan Path Soc 23 621, 1933
- JONES, D F Growth changes resulting from chromosome rearrangement Science 91 423, 1940
- KIDD, J G Immunological reactions with a virus causing papillomas in rabbits J Exper Med 68 703, 1938
- LEWIS, M R AND E G LICHTENSTEIN Further studies on the breaking down of resistance of mice of one strain to the transplantation of tumors from mice of another strain Am J Cancer 28 746, 1936
- LEWIS, M R Some cultural and cytological characteristics of normal and malignant cells *in vitro* Arch f Exper Zellforsch, 1938
- LILLIE, F R AND M JUHN Physiology of development of feathers I Growth-rate and pattern in the individual feather Physiol Zool 5 124, 1932
- LIPSCHÜTZ, A, R THIBAUT AND L VARGAS The fibromatogenic action of specific urinary estrogens (metahormones) in the guinea pig Cancer Research 2 45, 1942
- LOEB, L, E L BURNS, V SUNTZEFF AND M MOSKOP Internal secretion as a factor in the origin of cancer Canad M A J 35 117, 1936
- LUCKÉ, B A neoplastic disease of the kidney of the frog, *Rana pipiens* Am J Cancer 20 352, 1934
Carcinoma in the leopard frog its probable causation by a virus J Exper Med 68 457, 1938
Characteristics of frog carcinoma in tissue culture J Exper Med 70 269, 1939
- MASSON, P The role of neural crests in the embryonal adenocarcinomas of the kidney Am J Cancer 33 1, 1938
- MENDELSON, W The malignant cells of two crocker cysticercus sarcomata Am J Cancer 21 571, 1934
- MICHALOWSKI, I Virchow's Arch f path anat 267 27, 1932
- MORTON, A A, C F BRANCH AND D B CLAPP The production of cancer by hydrocarbons other than those of the phenanthrene type Am J Cancer 26 754, 1936
- MUTO, M Über das transplantable osteochondrosarkom eines Huhns Verh jap path Gesellsch 127, 1915
- NEEDHAM, J On the dissociability of the fundamental processes in ontogenesis Biol Rev 8 1933
New advances in chemistry and biology of organized growth Proc Roy Soc Med 29 1577, 1936
- PAINTER, T S AND E C REINDROP Chromosome divisions in the nurse cells of the ovary of *Drosophila melanogaster* Anat Rec 75 Supplement p 90, 1939
- PAPENFUSS, E J Reunion of pieces in *Hydra*, with special reference to the rôle of the three layers, and to the fate of the differentiated parts Biol Bull 68 223, 1934

- PARSONS, L. D. Blood changes in mice bearing experimental sarcomas (A) Sarcomas induced by a derivative of 1 2 5 6-dibenzanthracene, (B) Sarcomas produced by cell free filtrates of Mal sarcoma I J Path and Bact 43 1 1936
Changes in the lymph glands of tumor bearing mice J Path and Bact 47 501 1939
- PEYRON, A. Faits nouveaux relatifs à l'origine et à l'histogénèse des embryomes Bull Assoc frane p l'étude du cancer 28: 653 1939
- PEYRON, A. PATEL PRUNEAU DELILLE ET GRELAND A propos de deux cas d'embryome du testicule Bull Assoc frane p l'étude du cancer 28: 648 1939
- POLLISTER A W AND P F POLLISTER. Relation between centriole and chromosome numbers in atypical spermatogenesis of *viriparus malleatus* Reeve Anat Rec 75 Supplement p 89 1939
- PREIBRAM H Arch Entwick Org 43 1 1917
- PURDY, W J Tumor structure and tumor problems J Roy Micr Soc 58: 171 1938
- PUTSCH L C AND C M NELSON Congenital teratoma of the thyroid gland Am J Cancer 23 791, 1935
- ROUDABUSH R. L. Phenomenon of regeneration in everted Hydra Biol Bull 64: 253 1933
- ROUS P J B MURPHY AND W H TYTLER A filterable agent the cause of a second chicken tumor, an osteochondrosarcoma J A M A 59: 1793 1912
- SAYLES, A S Double nucleoli and mitosis in the cells of the alimentary tract of Lumbriculus following dilution of the body fluids J Exper Zool 58 487, 1931
- SCHILLER, W Changes and modifications in the conception of carcinoma Science 85: Supplement 246 1937
- SCHREK R. Comparison of growth curves of malignant and normal tissues of the rat Am J Path 12 525 1936
- SILBERBERG M AND R SILBERBERG Abstract Report Inter Can Res Found, p 74, 1939
- SIMARD L C Primary chorionepithelioma of the ovary, report of two cases Am J Cancer 30 298, 1937
- SINNOTT E W The cell and the problem of organization Science 89 41, 1939
- STRANDEWAYS, T S P Tissue culture in relation to growth and differentiation Cambridge, 1934
- STRONG, L C AND G M SMITH Successful transplantation of hepatoma in mice Am J Cancer 28: 112 1936
- SUNTZEFF V, E L BURNS, M MOSKOP AND L LOEB On the proliferative changes which take place in the epithelium of vagina and cervix of mice with advancing age and under the influence of experimentally administered estrogenic hormones Am J Cancer 32 256, 1938
- TYLER A Artificial parthenogenesis Biol Rev 16 291 1941
- WADINGTON C H Cancer and the theory of organizers Nature 135: 606, 1935
- WADINGTON C H, J NEEDHAM ET AL Further experiments on the chemistry of the evocator Proc Roy Soc London B 120: 173, 1936
- WEISS P The so-called organizer and the problem of organization in amphibian development Physiol Rev 15: 639, 1935
The problem of cell individuality in development Am Nat 74 34 1940
- WHITAKER D M On the rate of oxygen consumption by fertilized and unfertilized egg V Comparisons and interpretations J Gen Physiol 16 497 1933
- WILSON H V On some phenomena of coalescence and regeneration in sponges J Exper Zool 5: 1907
- WITSCH F Experimentally produced neoplasms in the frog Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 27 475 1930
- YASUO M AND W BLOOM J Clin Investigation 11 677, 1932
- ZUCKERMAN, S The histogenesis of tissues sensitive to oestrogens Biol Rev 15 231 1940

PATHWAYS OF GLYCOLYSIS

ALBERT DORFMAN

The Chemical Laboratory of the Walter G. Zoller Memorial Dental Clinic, University of Chicago

The last decade has witnessed tremendous progress in the understanding of the processes of carbohydrate metabolism. The combined efforts of many laboratories have resulted in the formulation of a fairly complete picture of the pathway of glycolysis in muscle extract and fermentation in yeast extract. Additional studies on many types of cells have suggested that there exists a common pathway widely distributed in nature for the formation of pyruvic acid from polysaccharides and hexoses. The pyruvic acid thus formed may be reduced to lactic acid, decarboxylated, or oxidized by a great variety of reactions which are only partially understood at the present time.

The frequent occurrence of these reactions, leading to the formation of pyruvic acid, in nature raises the question as to whether this scheme represents the sole pathway for the formation of the key intermediate pyruvic acid. From time to time various workers have suggested that other pathways, particularly of a non-phosphorylating nature, are responsible for glycolysis in various tissues, especially tumor, brain and embryo.

It is with these questions that this review will principally concern itself. Part one will consider the evidence for alternate pathways of glycolysis in animal tissues, and the question of the presence or absence of phosphorylation in such tissues. Relevant observations on the metabolism of other types of cells will be touched upon in part two.

As a framework for the discussion, the Meyerhof-Embden-Parnas-Corn-Warburg cycle is presented in figure 1. This series of reactions, for purposes of brevity, will be referred to solely as the Meyerhof cycle throughout this review. The reactions in figure 1 will not be discussed in detail since several recent reviews have covered this material (15, 16, 50).

Students of cellular metabolism are constantly faced with the fundamental difficulty of attempting to achieve understanding of *in vivo* reactions by the use of *in vitro* methods. Brei and tissue slice techniques have frequently been used to simulate physiological conditions. Such techniques have been employed to a very large extent in studies on alternate pathways of glycolysis. The use of breis and tissue slices, although possibly being more physiological than the use of extracts, introduces other complications. Thus such preparations do not allow free diffusion of added substrates, making quantitative or qualitative changes in the suspending medium difficult to interpret. In addition, the simultaneous occurrence of large numbers of reactions makes elucidation of pathways almost impossible. The alternative procedure has been to use tissue extracts and to attempt to study individual reactions by separating the components of such extracts. Such studies, when accompanied by adequate rate studies and tissue analyses, can at best give information as to which reactions can occur in intact tissue. The best understanding is obtained only by a comparison of the results

of both methods especially with respect to rates intermediate compounds and effects of inhibitors

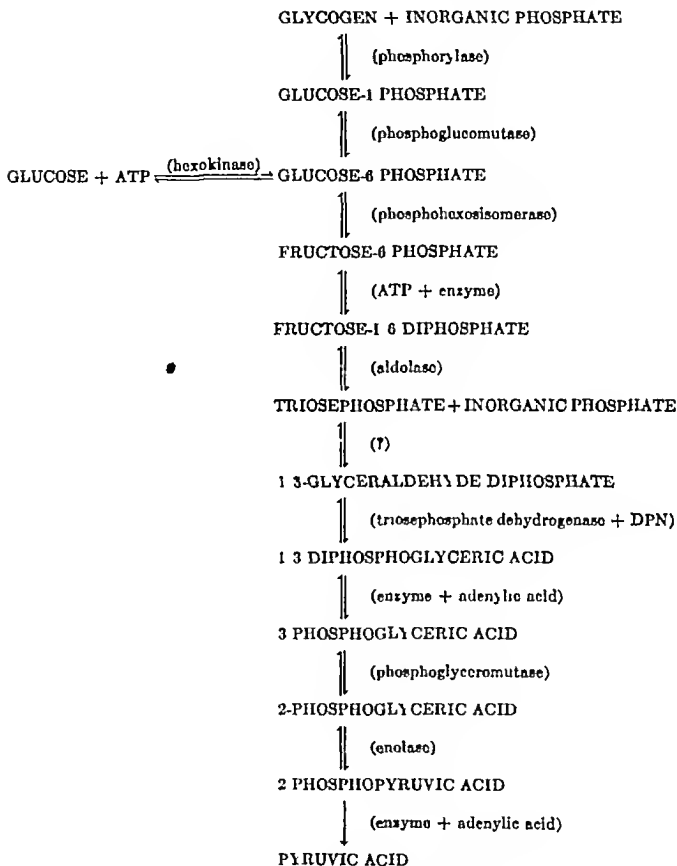


Fig. 1 Meyerhof Embden Parnas-Cori Warburg cycle

Since certain types of experiments have been repeatedly performed to prove or disprove the occurrence of alternate pathways of metabolism, it seems wise to

analyze the literature in terms of types of evidence, rather than types of tissues. Each group of experiments will be analyzed according to the following criteria:

- 1 Does the evidence prove the existence of the Meyerhof cycle?
- 2 If not, is it consistent with the Meyerhof cycle?
- 3 If not consistent with the Meyerhof cycle, does it disprove the existence of any type of phosphorylating cycle?
- 4 If a non-phosphorylating pathway is indicated, does the evidence indicate the nature of this pathway?

Selectivity of substrates The difference in the relative rates of glycolysis of various substrates by different tissues has attracted the attention of a number of investigators. Such observations have been partially responsible for the postulation of different pathways of metabolism.

Needham and Nowinski (56) found that intact five day old chick embryos produced lactic acid rapidly from glucose and mannose but were usually unable to produce lactic acid from glucose-6-phosphate, hexosediphosphate, or glycogen. This work has been criticized by Macfarlane (40) on the basis that the results were due to the fact that the phosphorylated sugars and glycogen were unable to diffuse into the cells. Needham and Lehmann (58) have partially answered these objections by showing that the added hexosediphosphate is broken down to triosephosphate, and that this change occurs within the cells since the suspending medium does not contain aldolase although extracts of embryo are rich in this enzyme.

Meyerhof and Perdigon (51, 52) have recently been able to prepare extracts of both rat and chick embryos which are able to bring about the production of lactic acid from hexosediphosphate plus pyruvic acid in the presence of fluoride, the proper coenzymes, and a phosphorus acceptor. This finding leaves no doubt that embryo tissue contains the essential triosephosphate dehydrogenase for the production of lactic acid from hexosediphosphate.

Needham *et al.* (57), however, have been able to prepare breis which will bring about the dismutation of hexosediphosphate and pyruvic acid only when adenylic triphosphate (ATP), and diphosphopyridine nucleotide (DPN), are added, but will actively glycolyze glucose without these additions. It would seem as if this difference may be due to a lack of adequate phosphate acceptors in Needham's preparations. Thus when hexosediphosphate is glycolyzed, the addition of ATP results in its hydrolysis by ATP phosphatase to adenylic acid which can then act as a phosphate acceptor and permit the necessary dephosphorylation of phosphopyruvic acid. When glucose is being used, no added phosphate acceptor is necessary since glucose itself acts as a phosphate acceptor. It would be of interest to determine whether any phosphate acceptor could replace ATP in the experiments of Needham.

The failure of intact embryo to glycolyze glycogen is hardly significant since this observation may be due either to lack of penetration into the cells, or absence of the necessary phosphorylase for the breakdown of glycogen.

The lack of rapid utilization of the phosphorylated hexoses and of glycogen by brain presents a situation analogous to that in embryo. Thus the earlier

work by Ashford and Holmes (2) was done with brain brei, and is open to the criticism of permeability. Recently it has been possible to prepare extracts of brain (22, 23, 64), which can utilize the phosphorylated hexoses as well as glucose. Geiger (22, 23) showed that concentrated extracts of brain contain an inhibitor which prevents glycolysis, but on dilution such extracts readily convert glucose to lactic acid. Geiger's work indicated that small amounts of hexosediphosphate increase the rate of formation of lactic acid from glucose and that phosphite is esterified during the course of glucose utilization. Peculiarly enough, he found that no lactic acid formation occurred from the intermediate phosphorylated compounds of the Meyerhof cycle, although phosphate was required for lactic acid formation from glucose. Ochoa (64), however, was able to prepare extracts from brain which utilized the phosphorylated compounds and glucose at about the same rate. The difference between the results of Ochoa and of Geiger may be due to the lack of phosphate acceptors in Geiger's preparations, since Ochoa showed that addition of phosphate acceptors increased the rate of glycolysis of hexosediphosphate as well as the rate of dismutation between hexosediphosphate and pyruvic acid.

Tzusiaki (79), Matsuzaki (42), and Harrison and Mellanby (28) have all claimed that tumor tissue is unable to utilize phosphorylated hexoses at a rate comparable to glycolysis of glucose. In contrast, Boyland and Boyland (12) have been able to show rapid glycolysis of phosphorylated intermediates by tumor extract.

In summary it must be concluded from this group of experiments that tumor, brain, and embryo tissue contain the requisite enzymes for utilizing the phosphorylated hexoses which are intermediates of the Meyerhof cycle. These experiments then indicate that the Meyerhof cycle can occur in these tissues and furnish no evidence to indicate that an alternate non-phosphorylating pathway is instead operative.

Summation. Summation experiments have frequently been employed in determining whether two substrates are metabolized via the same pathway. If two substrates are glycolyzed by the same enzyme system, then the total lactic acid production in the presence of optimal amounts of both substrates should not exceed that obtained from the compound used most rapidly. However, if there is a difference in glycolytic pathways the lactic acid production in the presence of both substrates should be the sum of that obtained in the presence of each substrate separately. It should be noted, however, that a difference in just one step in glycolysis of the two substrates is all that is necessary to produce evidence of summation, providing that step is the slowest in the chain of reactions. Thus, summation between glucose and glycogen does not indicate alternate pathways of glycolysis if one assumes the conversion of glycogen to glucose-6-phosphate (via Cori ester) or the phosphorylation of glucose to glucose-6-phosphate is the slowest step in glycolysis in any particular tissue.

Ashford (3), using rabbit brain brei, found summation of lactic acid production from glucose and glucose monophosphate and from glucose and hexosediphosphate, while he found no summation from glucose and mannose. On the basis

of these experiments he concluded that glucose and mannose are glycolyzed by the same set of enzymes while glucose and the phosphorylated hexoses are not converted to lactic acid through the same pathway. In these experiments glucose was used more rapidly than hexosediphosphate. The fact that the addition of hexosediphosphate, to a preparation glycolyzing glucose at a maximum rate, increases the lactic acid production, can readily be explained on the assumption that under these conditions the phosphorylation of glucose is the slowest of the series of reactions necessary for lactic acid production. The increase in rate of lactic acid production from hexosediphosphate, above that obtained from glucose alone, by the addition of glucose cannot be explained on the same basis. However, the glucose may speed up the formation of lactic acid from hexosediphosphate by acting as a phosphate acceptor. As has been previously stated, Ochoa (64) and Meyerhof (51) have shown that the rate of dismutation of hexosediphosphate and pyruvic acid is increased by the addition of suitable phosphate acceptors necessary for the dephosphorylation of phosphopyruvic acid. Summation of lactic acid formation from glucose and hexosemonophosphate can be explained on the same basis if one assumes that the conversion of hexosemonophosphate to the diphosphate is a relatively slow reaction compared to the initial phosphorylation of glucose. An indication of the possible validity of such an explanation is that Ashford (3) obtained partial summation with hexosemonophosphate and hexosediphosphate. Thus it is possible that the results of Ashford can be accounted for within the framework of the Meyerhof cycle.

Geiger (23) found no summation of lactic acid production from glucose and glycogen by diluted brain extract.

B. E. Holmes (30) observed summation with glucose and hexosediphosphate using tumor brei, while Boyland, Boyland, and Greville (11) found no evidence of summation with glucose and hexosediphosphate using a tumor extract. The results of Holmes are similar to those of Ashford, the possible explanation of which has already been discussed. It is of interest to note that Boyland *et al.* added adenylic acid, which is able to act as a phosphate acceptor. Holmes points out that the addition of ATP increases the rate of lactic acid production from hexosediphosphate but not from glucose. These observations are consistent with the interpretation that the glycolysis of hexosediphosphate requires the presence of a phosphate acceptor.

Bumm and Fehrenbach (9, 10) claimed that a difference in glycolytic pathway exists between skeletal muscle and diaphragm. These workers, using a brei of skeletal muscle, observed no summation with glycogen and glucose plus hexokinase. However, with rat diaphragm glycolyzing the same substrates, summation was observed. They concluded that diaphragm, in contrast to skeletal muscle (red), has two different pathways for dealing with glucose and glycogen. The results of these workers can be explained within the framework of the Meyerhof cycle if one assumes that the initial phosphorylations are the slowest steps in the process. The difference obtained between diaphragm and skeletal muscle may reflect a greater concentration of phosphorylase in the skeletal muscle.

Although experiments on summation using brei do not provide positive evi-

dence for the exclusive operation of the Meyerhof cycle, they do not negate this possibility, and furnish no evidence for non phosphorylating glycolysis. Experiments on extracts of brain and tumor support the interpretation that glycolysis of glucose proceeds through the same pathways as does glycolysis of the phosphorylated hexoses.

Glyceraldehyde Much of the evidence in support of non phosphorylating glycolysis rests on conclusions drawn from the use of glyceraldehyde as an inhibitor. Mendel (46) showed that *dl* glyceraldehyde at a concentration of $10^{-3} M$ inhibits almost completely lactic acid formation by tumor, but has little effect on respiration of tumor or normal tissue (liver, kidney, and brain). Mendel, Bauch and Strelitz (47) found that the inhibition by $10^{-3} M$ glyceraldehyde is completely reversed by $10^{-3} M$ pyruvate and partially reversed by as little as $2.5 \times 10^{-4} M$ pyruvate. Ashford (4) found that *dl*-glyceraldehyde also inhibited glycolysis. In the same year E. G. Holmes (32) confirmed the work of Ashford, and also showed that the production of lactic acid by muscle from either starch or glucose plus hexokinase is not inhibited by this compound. Needham and Lehmann (60) found that *dl* glyceraldehyde inhibited glycolysis and mannolysis of chick embryo about 90 per cent, and that this inhibition was reversed by pyruvic acid.

On the basis of these results Needham (35), Ashford (4), and Trusuku (79) have concluded that *dl* glyceraldehyde is a specific inhibitor for non phosphorylating glycolysis. This view has been contested by Adler and co-workers (1), Boyland and Boyland (12), Macfarlane (40), Söllmann (77), and more recently by Stickland (74).

The interpretation of much of the data on glyceraldehyde inhibitions is difficult. Thus Boyland and Boyland (12), Söllmann (76), and Adler (1) claim that *dl* glyceraldehyde inhibits the glycolysis of glycogen, starch and glucose plus hexokinase by various tissues, while Needham and Lehmann (35-60), B. E. Holmes (30) and Baker (7) found no such inhibitions. The following factors are possibly responsible for these discrepancies: 1. Different concentrations of glyceraldehyde have been used by different workers. 2. Lehmann and Needham (35) have shown that when *dl* glyceraldehyde is dissolved a dimeric form exists in solution. This dimer inhibits the conversion of glycogen to Cori ester. On standing, however, a dissociation to the monomeric form apparently occurs, and the solution no longer inhibits the phosphorylation of glycogen but inhibits glycolysis by chick embryo. This finding introduces a difficulty in assessing papers published before 1938 when this factor was recognized. 3. Stickland (74) has recently shown that the degree of inhibition of muscle extract, glycolyzing glucose with the aid of yeast hexokinase is dependent upon the concentration of hexokinase. He also found that the critical concentration of hexokinase varies with different extracts.

Considering the factors listed above, certain general conclusions can be reached. Glycolysis of brain, tumor and embryo preparations is inhibited by low concentrations of *dl* glyceraldehyde (below $0.01M$). The inhibition of glycolysis by muscle extract in the presence of yeast hexokinase is dependent on the concentra-

tion of hexokinase Inhibitions of glycogen and starch glycolysis require much larger concentrations of *dl*-glyceraldehyde and are probably due to the dimeric form

If lactic acid formation in embryo, brain and tumor tissues proceeds along the same pathway as does glycolysis in muscle, what underlies this marked difference in sensitivity toward glyceraldehyde? Meyerhof *et al* (49) showed that the aldolase of muscle extract will bring about the irreversible condensation of *d* or *l*-glyceraldehyde with dihydroxyacetonephosphate to form *l*-fructose or *l*-sorbose phosphates respectively These esters do not give rise to the equilibrium mixtures of hexose-6-phosphates Macfarlane (40) suggests that in muscle and yeast the amount of dihydroxyacetonephosphate available for combination with glyceraldehyde is large, while in tumor, brain and embryo it is small Thus, in muscle, the glyceraldehyde is readily removed and is unable to bring about inhibition, irrespective of mechanism of the action of glyceraldehyde This view has been contested by Süllmann (77) and Stickland (74) The former found that the rate of removal of glyceraldehyde from muscle extract glycolyzing glycogen is insufficient to account for lack of inhibition Stickland pointed out that if Macfarlane's explanation were correct, then the more rapidly glycolysis proceeds, the greater should be the glyceraldehyde disappearance, with ultimate lifting of the inhibition The opposite was found to be the case, i e., in muscle glucolysis proceeded at a much more rapid rate than starch glycolysis, nevertheless, the inhibition of glucolysis was much greater than the inhibition of lactic acid production from starch A second objection raised by Stickland is that if the glyceraldehyde were being removed as glycolysis proceeds in the muscle extract, the inhibition should decrease with time, while in fact he found an increase with time

The work of Stickland (74), Süllmann (76, 77) and Adler (1) suggests that *dl*-glyceraldehyde inhibits the phosphorylation of glucose Their observations also indicate an alternative explanation for the variation in tissue susceptibility to glyceraldehyde, for inhibition of glycolysis by glyceraldehyde is most striking in those tissues in which glucose is the principal substrate for glycolysis This suggestion is attractive in that it provides a rather simple explanation for the observed differences between the two groups of tissues The findings of Mendel (46) and Baker (7) present a possible objection to this interpretation Both workers found that concentrations of glyceraldehyde which inhibited anaerobic glycolysis by tumor tissue did not affect the rate of oxidation of glucose by these tissues It has generally been assumed that the oxidation of glucose by animal tissues is dependent upon preliminary phosphorylation If glyceraldehyde inhibits this initial phosphorylation, inhibition of respiration should parallel inhibition of glycolysis Three possible explanations of this discrepancy suggest themselves The first is that aerobic phosphorylation of glucose may occur through a different mechanism than does anaerobic phosphorylation It is interesting to note that Loebel (38) and Dickens and Greville (17, 18) found that fructose could be rapidly oxidized by brain brei, but is not glycolyzed anaerobically Gerard and Meyerhof (25) made a similar observation on nerve A second

possibility is that glyceraldehyde inhibits the phosphorylation of glucose-6-phosphate to hexosediphosphate rather than the initial phosphorylation of glucose. The latter suggestion is made less likely by the fact that Stickland (74) obtained reversal by a hexokinase preparation, which presumably esterifies glucose to glucose-6-phosphate. Another objection to this interpretation is that Sällmann (77) found no inhibition of lactic acid formation from glucose monophosphate. A third possibility is that under aerobic conditions a reaction occurs which results in the removal of *dl*-glyceraldehyde.

Any explanation of the mechanism of glyceraldehyde inhibition must explain reversal by pyruvic acid. Mendel *et al* (47), using tumor hrei, found that pyruvic acid reversed glyceraldehyde inhibition of glycolysis. Holmes (32) observed no pyruvic acid reversal with brain slices. Baker (7) confirmed the results of Mendel with tumor tissue, observing partial reversal of glyceraldehyde inhibition when the glyceraldehyde inhibition was complete, and more complete reversal at lower glyceraldehyde concentrations. She found as did Holmes, no reversal of the inhibition of brain glycolysis. Needham *et al* (60) noted that the glyceraldehyde inhibition of embryo glycolysis could be partially reversed by pyruvic acid.

The mechanism by which pyruvic acid reverses glyceraldehyde inhibition has received no adequate explanation. It is known that glyceraldehyde in large concentrations reacts with pyruvic acid (through the mediation of the appropriate enzyme and coenzyme), in the same manner as does glyceraldehydophosphate. This reaction can remove glyceraldehyde, irrespective of the mechanism of glyceraldehyde inhibition. Sällmann (77) found that the inhibition of glycogen glycolysis by muscle extract by 0.1 *M* glyceraldehyde could be reversed by 0.022 *M* pyruvate, with lactic acid production. This is consistent with the above explanation. However, Stickland (74) was unable to find any evidence of reaction between glyceraldehyde and pyruvic acid, when both reactants were present in a concentration of 0.003 *M*.

Another possible explanation for the reversal by pyruvic acid depends on the interpretation that glyceraldehyde inhibits metabolism by inhibiting phosphorylation. It is possible that the phosphorylation in tumor and embryo is linked with the reoxidation of reduced diphosphopyridine nucleotide. In such a case the presence of pyruvic acid might serve to reoxidize the reduced diphosphopyridine nucleotide and directly or indirectly to overcome the inhibition. It is of interest to note that Baker (7) found that aerobic glycolysis is more resistant to glyceraldehyde inhibition than is anaerobic glycolysis. The lack of reversal in brain, observed by both Baker and E. G. Holmes, may be due to a difference in mechanism of phosphorylation in brain.

By the use of partially resolved glyceraldehyde, Needham and Lehmann (60) showed that the *l*-glyceraldehyde is responsible for inhibition of embryo glycolysis. This observation has been confirmed by Mendel, Strehitz and Mundell (48) working with tumor tissue. Sällmann (77), working with lens extracts, found the *d* and *l* forms equally active. Ho worked, however, with much larger concentrations of glyceraldehyde.

Needham and Lehmann (60) also showed that the *d*-form is changed non-enzymatically to methylglyoxal, which is converted to lactic acid by methylglyoxalase. This observation is of interest in view of the fact that most workers have reported that glyceraldehyde inhibition is not complete even at high concentrations. Such results are probably due to the formation of lactic acid from the glyceraldehyde. Baker (7) observed a stimulation of glycolysis in liver and kidney which may also be due to lactic acid production from *d*-glyceraldehyde. Stickland (74) noted a similar increased CO_2 liberation from liver in the presence of glyceraldehyde, but found that only a small part of this was actually due to lactic acid, determined chemically. He attributed the manometric results to the formation of glyceric acid by the aldehyde mutase in liver.

The literature of glyceraldehyde inhibition has been reviewed in considerable detail since many workers have regarded such evidence as of paramount importance in proving that glycolysis in certain tissues does not proceed through the pathway demonstrated for muscle extract. At this time it is not possible to conclude that the work on glyceraldehyde inhibition provides positive evidence for the existence of the Meyerhof cycle in the tissues under discussion, but such experiments do not necessitate the postulation of alternate pathways. It is obvious that, aside from certain minor discrepancies, the inhibition of glycolysis by glyceraldehyde is consistent with lactic acid production through phosphorylated intermediates. In no case is it possible to conclude that the work on glyceraldehyde provides positive evidence for the existence of a non-phosphorylating pathway.

Fluoride Sodium fluoride has been frequently used in studies on the mechanism of glycolysis and fermentation. The earlier literature on fluoride inhibition has been reviewed by Gemmill (24). The mechanism of fluoride inhibition has recently been elucidated by the studies of Warburg and Christian (81). These workers have separated enolase (80), the enzyme responsible for the conversion of 2-phosphoglyceric acid to 2-phosphopyruvic acid, and found that its active form exists either as the zinc, manganese or magnesium salt. The zinc enolase is inhibited by hydrocyanic acid, while the magnesium enolase is very sensitive to fluoride. The zinc and manganese salts are also inhibited by fluoride, but at considerably higher concentrations. The degree of inhibition of the magnesium enzyme was found to be dependent on the relative concentrations of magnesium, phosphate, and fluoride.

Differences in sensitivity to fluoride have been used by some workers as evidence to prove the existence of either non-phosphorylating glycolysis, or at least the existence of alternate pathways of glycolysis. Thus Ashford and Holmes (2) found that formation of lactic acid from glycogen and from glucose by brain brei differ in sensitivity to fluoride. They also found that fluoride did not inhibit the appearance of free phosphate to the extent expected when glucose was used as substrate. A possible explanation of these effects is that fluoride indirectly inhibits the phosphorylation of glucose by brain as a consequence of its effect on enolase. Thus, if the enolase reaction is stopped, phosphopyruvic acid is not formed and ATP cannot be resynthesized, resulting in the inhibition of

glucose esterification This interpretation is supported by the work of Ostern, Baranowski and Terszakowicz (65), who found that sodium fluoride inhibited the formation of adenosine triphosphate in yeast extract from adenosine and phosphoglyceric acid

Scharles, Baker and Salter (72) found that 0.05 *M* fluoride did not affect lactic acid formation from hexosemonophosphate by tumor extracts Since much lower concentrations of fluoride (0.001–0.005 *M*) generally inhibit glycolysis by muscle extract these workers consider this observation as indicative of a different pathway of metabolism In view of the finding of Warburg and Christian that the sensitivity of enolase is dependent on the magnesium and phosphate concentration, it is difficult to rule out the validity of the Meyerhof cycle in tumor tissue on the basis of differences in fluoride sensitivity

Scharles *et al* (72) also found that their tumor extracts were able to convert hexosephosphates to lactic acid, with no sensitivity to fluoride at 52° It is likely, however, that in this case the results were due to non-enzymic conversion of triosephosphate to methylglyoxal which was in turn converted to lactic acid by methylglyoxalase It is doubtful whether such a pathway is of any physiological significance

Kerly and Bourne (34), using retinal extracts, found that smaller concentrations of fluoride are required for the inhibition of glycolysis than are required for lactic acid formation from hexosediphosphate The explanation of the results of Ashford and Holmes would seem to apply equally well to those of Kerly and Bourne

Needham *et al* (57) failed to observe the expected accumulation of phosphate esters during the glycolysis of embryos poisoned with fluoride, although an increase in the hexosediphosphate fraction is evident in some of their data Somewhat similar observations were made by B. E. Holmes (31), who noted that 0.001 *M* fluoride inhibited the formation of lactic acid from glucose, but that no esterification of phosphate occurred These results again are consistent with the Meyerhof cycle if one considers the possibility of indirect inhibition of phosphorylation by fluoride

Needham *et al* (57) have claimed that with a chick embryo preparation inhibition of glycolysis did not occur until a concentration of fluoride of *M*/50 was reached, while with the same preparation *M*/200 fluoride completely inhibited the enolase reaction (phosphoglyceric→phosphopyruvic) Macfarlane (40) has suggested that this finding may be due to accessibility of the enolase at the cut surface to both the phosphoglycerate and the fluoride However, when glucose is used as substrate, the cells must be penetrated by fluoride for inhibition The validity of such an interpretation lacks experimental support The observation of Needham is unusual in that other workers have usually found glycolysis to be more sensitive to fluoride than the glycolysis of phosphorylated intermediates (Ashford and Holmes (2), B. E. Holmes (31), Kerly and Bourne (34))

Werkman and co-workers (83, 86) have shown that *Propionibacterium pentosaceum* can be grown on a medium containing large concentrations of sodium fluoride, and retain the ability to ferment glucose while becoming insensitive to

fluoride Such organisms are unable to ferment phosphoglyceric acid The parent strain is able to ferment both glucose and phosphoglyceric acid and both fermentations are inhibited by fluoride This work suggests that the "trained organisms" are able to ferment glucose through mechanisms not involving phosphoglyceric acid Similar results have been reported by Stone *et al* (75) for *Aerobacter aerogenes*

On the whole, the work on fluoride gives little reason to doubt the existence of the Meyerhof cycle in mammalian tissues The observations of Needham, which cannot be obviously explained within the framework of the accepted cycle lack confirmation The observations in any case do not prove the existence of a non-phosphorylating pathway

The work of Werkman and co-workers indicates that, in micro-organisms, alternate pathways do exist, but again, there is no evidence in support of a non-phosphorylating pathway No such claim has been made by the authors

Ashford and Holmes (2), studying the effect on glycolysis of removing free phosphate by adding an excess of calcium chloride to rabbit brain brei, found that such treatment inhibited the glycolysis of glycogen but not that of glucose It is hardly likely that complete removal of phosphate could be achieved by such treatment, but a decrease in phosphate concentration did occur Addition of phosphate restored acid production from the glycogen A possible explanation of these results without contradiction of the Meyerhof cycle depends upon the fact that the phosphorylation of glycogen is dependent upon the concentration of inorganic phosphate (14), while the phosphorylation of glucose is accomplished with phosphate derived from ATP Thus a decrease in the concentration of inorganic phosphate would affect glycolysis of glycogen to a much more marked extent than that of glucose

Needham (59), performing similar experiments on embryo brei, found that excess calcium chloride had no effect on glucolysis The formation of lactic acid from glycogen was not studied No analytical evidence for the complete removal of phosphate is given Macfarlane (40) and Macfarlane and Weil-Malherbe (41) have recently pointed out the extremely small quantities of phosphate that are required for glycolysis in both intact yeast and brain slices The phosphate is continually regenerated and thus acts in catalytic quantities They have also shown the extreme difficulty involved in the complete removal of phosphate The literature to date contains no conclusive demonstration of mammalian glycolysis in the absence of phosphate

Several workers have attempted to prove the absence of the Meyerhof cycle by studies of the ability of the various tissues to bring about the successive steps of the cycle Many older studies are of little value since they do not consider recent modifications of the cycle

The most detailed study along these lines has been that of Needham and Lehmann (58) on chick embryo They found that embryo possessed all of the necessary enzymes with the exception of the triosephosphate dehydrogenase Similar claims have been made by Tsuzuki (79) concerning tumor tissue However, Meyerhof and Perdigon (51, 52) have recently been able to demonstrate the

presence of this enzyme in adequate amounts in extracts of both chick and rat embryos. Similarly the presence of the necessary enzymes has been demonstrated in brain (64), tumor (11, 12) and retina (34).

From these observations it would seem that, whether or not the principal pathway of glycolysis in these tissues is through the known phosphorylated intermediates, the necessary enzymes for this pathway can be extracted from these tissues. Thus the Meyerhof cycle cannot be ruled out in the tissues under discussion on the basis of lack of the necessary enzymes.

The possibility of oxidation of carbohydrate without previous phosphorylation is suggested by the work of Harrison (27) and of Hawthorne and Harrison (29) on the glucose dehydrogenase of liver. This author has been able to extract an enzyme from beef liver which brings about the oxidation of glucose to gluconic acid. It apparently is able to function with either di- or triphosphopyridine nucleotide as coenzyme. From the work of Harrison and of Rice and Dorfman (67), this enzyme does not appear to be identical with the hexosemonophosphate dehydrogenase of Warburg. The importance of this enzyme in carbohydrate metabolism remains to be determined.

Much has been written of the effect of the structural organization of the cell upon the pathway of metabolic reactions, but as yet little experimental evidence is available along these lines. This subject has been discussed in a recent review by Commoner (13). Of particular interest is the observation of Gaddie and Stewart (20) on intact heart muscle. These workers found that, on repeated contraction, the carbohydrate stores could be depleted. The addition of certain substrates restored contraction. Among these was found methylglyoxal. This observation is of interest in that methylglyoxal can be both produced (21) and used by muscle (20, 39) and suggests that this compound may be capable of furnishing energy for contraction.

The question as to whether the Meyerhof cycle is operative in normal muscular contraction has been considered by Sacks (68, 69), and has been reviewed by Sacks (70), Meyerhof (50, 53) and Corn (15, 16).

As in the case of mammalian tissues there has been disagreement as to the mechanism of fermentation in microorganisms. The fact that a phosphorylating mechanism does exist in many microorganisms has been amply demonstrated by a number of observers, particularly Werkman and co-workers (82). However, certain observations have raised doubts as to the general application of the Meyerhof cycle in all microorganisms.

Fisher (19) stated in 1895 that fermentation of disaccharides or polysaccharides always involves preliminary hydrolysis. Willstätter and Oppenheimer (85) and Willstätter and Steibelt (84) challenged this view when they found that certain yeasts were able to ferment lactose and maltose more rapidly than the constituent monosaccharides. They furthermore observed that the fermentation of the disaccharides is not correlated with the content of the appropriate hydrolytic enzymes of the particular yeast. Similar results were obtained by Sobotka and Holzman (73). Wright (87, 88, 89) has more recently observed similar phenomena with respect to the fermentation of sucrose and lactose by

Streptococcus thermophilus, while O'Connor and Nord and Engel (63, 62) have suggested that *Fusarium lini* Bolley ferments trehalose directly Leibovitz and Hestrin (36) have investigated this problem by comparing the rate at which maltose and methyl- α -glucoside are fermented by yeast and have come to the conclusion that maltose is fermented directly

The mechanism of this phenomenon has not been satisfactorily explained No phosphorylated forms of the disaccharides mentioned above have been isolated It would seem, however, that a possible explanation of these data would be the direct conversion of the disaccharides to two molecules of hexosemonophosphate, in a manner analogous to the phosphorolysis of glycogen by phosphorylase The hexosemonophosphate could then be broken down by the usual series of reactions A reinvestigation of this problem from such a point of view should merit consideration This would be in accord with the findings of Baba (5, 6) that phosphoglyceric acid is an intermediate in the fermentation of maltose by yeast

The presence of enzymes in moulds capable of metabolizing carbohydrates without phosphorylation seems likely Examples can be found in the work of Müller (54, 55) on glucose oxidase of *Aspergillus niger*, the formation of citric acid by *Aspergillus niger* (33), and the production of kojic acid by *Aspergillus tamaris* Kita (26)

Additional information on mould metabolism has been covered in the reviews by Tamiya (78), Raistrick (66), and Benhauer (8)

An attempt has been made critically to evaluate the evidence for the existence, particularly in animal tissues, of pathways of carbohydrate metabolism other than the Meyerhof cycle The Meyerhof cycle is the result of numerous studies on extracts of muscle and yeast The analysis of the reactions of the cell has necessarily been approached by a study of the presence and properties of enzymes that can be obtained from the disrupted cell This has been done in most cases with a full realization of the limitations of such studies

Studies of energy relationships, the action of inhibitors, rates of reactions, and the extractable enzyme components of tissues present a picture of possible reactions within the cell, but lead to only probable conclusions as to the course of these reactions within the cell Since, however, a tremendous weight of evidence has accumulated favoring the existence of the Meyerhof cycle, the likelihood of its component reactions playing some important part in the degradation of carbohydrates within the cell seems very great Therefore it becomes essential to determine whether any evidence is available to indicate that this series of reactions is not of primary importance within the cell On the basis of the analysis presented in this paper there is at the present time little evidence pertinent to animal tissues which requires the assumption of a radically different scheme of glycolysis The evidence for non-phosphorylating glycolysis is even less convincing

In the case of microorganisms, suggestions of alternate pathways of glycolysis have a somewhat greater experimental basis

The explanations offered in the review have for the most part depended on the

recent work of Meyerhof and Ochoa on the necessity of phosphate acceptors, the work of Cori and co-workers on mechanisms of phosphorylation, the work of Warburg and Christian on enolase and fluoride inhibition, and the work of Stuckland on glyceraldehyde. It should be remembered that such explanations are suggested to indicate that the evidence does not require the acceptance of a new series of reactions to explain glycolysis in tumor, brain, and embryo. In many cases considerably more experimental data are required to prove the validity of such interpretations.

Thus the evidence at present does not rule out the possibility of the existence in animal tissues of glycolytic pathways other than the Meyerhof cycle, but the postulation of such alternate pathways is at present unnecessary to explain the facts.

REFERENCES

- (1) ADLER, E, F CALVET AND G GÜNTHER. *Ztschr physiol Chem* 249:40 1937
- (2) ASHFORD, C A AND E G HOLMES. *Biochem J* 23:748, 1929
- (3) ASHFORD, C A. *Ibid* 27:903, 1933
- (4) ASHFORD, C A. *Ibid* 28:2229, 1934
- (5) BABA, T. *Biochem Ztschr* 267:452 1933
- (6) BABA, T. *Ibid* 273 207 1934
- (7) BAKER, Z. *Biochem J* 31:332 1937
- (8) BENHAUER, K. *Ergebn Enzymforsch* 3:185, 1934
- (9) BUMM, E AND K. FEHRENBACH. *Ztschr physiol Chem* 193:238, 1930
- (10) BUMM, E AND K. FEHRENBACH. *Ibid* 195:101 1931
- (11) BOYLAND, E M E BOYLAND AND G D GREVILLE. *Biochem J* 31 461, 1937
- (12) BOYLAND, E AND M E BOYLAND. *Ibid* 32:321, 1938
- (13) COMMONER, B. *Quart Rev Biol* 17:46 1942
- (14) CORI, G T AND C F CORI. *J Biol Chem* 135:733 1940
- (15) CORI, C F AND G T CORI. *Ann Rev Biochem* 10 151 1941
- (16) CORI, C F. Symposium on respiratory enzymes. University of Wisconsin Press, Madison p 175 1942
- (17) DICKENS, F AND G D GREVILLE. *Biochem J* 26 1251 1932
- (18) DICKENS, F AND G D GREVILLE. *Ibid* 27:832 1933
- (19) FISCHER, E AND P LINDNER. *Ber* 28:984 1895
- (20) GADDIE, R. AND C P STEWART. *J Physiol* 80 457 1934
- (21) GADOIS, R AND C P STEWART. *Biochem J* 29 2101 1935
- (22) GEIGER, A. *Biochem J* 33 877, 1939
- (23) GEIGER, A. *Ibid* 34 465 1940
- (24) GEMMILL, C A. Cold Spring Harbor Symp Quant Biol 7:216 1939
- (25) GERARD, R W AND O MEYERHOF. *Biochem Ztschr* 191:125 1927
- (26) GOULD, B S. *Biochem J* 32:707 1938
- (27) HARRISON, D C. *Biochem J* 26 1205 1933
- (28) HARRISON, S T AND E MELLANBY. *Biochem J* 24 141 1930
- (29) HAWTHORNE, J R AND D C HARRISON. *Biochem J* 33:1573 1939
- (30) HOLMES, B E. *Biochem J* 31:1730 1937
- (31) HOLMES, B E. *Ibid* 34:926 1940
- (32) HOLMES, E G. *Ann Rev Biochem* 3:331 1934
- (33) JOHNSON, E M E C KNIGHT AND T K WALKER. *Biochem J* 31:903 1937
- (34) KERLY, M AND M C BOURNE. *Biochem J* 34 563 1940
- (35) LEHMANN, H AND J NEEDHAM. *Enzymologia* 5:95, 1938
- (36) LEIBOVITZ, J AND S HESTIN. *Enzymologia* 6:16, 1939
- (37) LENTI, C. *Arch sci biol (Italy)* 25: 455 1939

- (38) LOEBEL, R O *Biochem Ztschr* 161 219, 1925
- (39) LOHMANN, K *Biochem Ztschr* 254 332, 1932
- (40) MACFARLANE, M G *Biochem J* 33 565, 1939
- (41) MACFARLANE, M G AND H WEIL-MALHERBE *Ibid* 35 1, 1941
- (42) MATSUZAKI, H *J Biochem (Japan)* 17 457, 1933
- (43) MAWSON, C A *Biochem J* 30 1592, 1936
- (44) MAZZA, F P AND C MALAGUZZI-VALERI *Archiv sci biol (Italy)* 21 443, 1935
- (45) MAZZA, F P AND C LENTI *Ibid* 25 447, 1939
- (46) MENDEL, B *Klin Wehnschr* 8 169, 1929
- (47) MENDEL, B, M BAUCH AND F STRELITZ *Ibid* 10 118, 1931
- (48) MENDEL, B, F STRELITZ AND D MUNDELL *Nature* 141 288, 1938
- (49) MEYERHOF, O, K LOHMANN AND P SCHUSTER *Biochem Ztschr* 286 319, 1936
- (50) MEYERHOF, O *Ergebn Physiol, biol Chem exper Pharmacol* 39 10, 1937
- (51) MEYERHOF, O AND E PERDIGON *Enzymologia* 8 353, 1940
- (52) MEYERHOF, O AND E PERDIGON *Compt rend soc biol* 132 186, 1940
- (53) MEYERHOF, O *Biol Symposia* 5 141, 1941
- (54) MÜLLER, D *Biochem Ztschr* 199 136, 1928
- (55) MÜLLER, D *Ergebn Enzymforsch* 5 259, 1936
- (56) NEEDHAM, J AND W W NOWIŃSKI *Biochem J* 31 1165, 1937
- (57) NEEDHAM, J, W W NOWIŃSKI, K C DIXON AND R P COOK *Ibid* 31 1199, 1937
- (58) NEEDHAM, J AND H LEHMANN *Ibid* 31 1210, 1937
- (59) NEEDHAM, J AND H LEHMANN *Ibid* 31 1227, 1937
- (60) NEEDHAM, J AND H LEHMANN *Ibid* 31 1913, 1937
- (61) NEEDHAM, J, H LEHMANN AND W W NOWIŃSKI *Compt rend soc biol* 133 6, 1940
- (62) NORD, F F AND W ENGEL *Biochem Ztschr* 296 153, 1938
- (63) O'CONNOR, R *Biochem J* 34 1008, 1940
- (64) OCHOA, S *J Biol Chem* 141 245, 1941
- (65) OSTERN, P, T BARANOWSKI AND J TERZAKOWEĆ *Ztschr physiol Chem* 251 258, 1938
- (66) RAISTRICK, H *Ergebn Enzymforsch* 7 316, 1938
- (67) RICE, L AND A DORFMAN *Unpublished results*
- (68) SACKS, J *Am J Physiol* 126 388, 1939
- (69) SACKS, J *Ibid* 129 227, 1940
- (70) SACKS, J *Physiol Rev* 21 217, 1941
- (71) SCHARLES, F H, M D BAKER AND W T SALTER *Am J Cancer* 25 122, 1935
- (72) SCHARLES, F H, M D BAKER AND W T SALTER *Biochem J* 29 1927, 1935
- (73) SOBOTKA, H AND M HOLZMAN *Biochem J* 28 734, 1934
- (74) STICKLAND, L H *Biochem J* 35 859, 1941
- (75) STONE, R W, M N MICKELSON AND C H WERKMAN *Iowa State Coll J Sci* 14 253, 1940
- (76) SÜLLMAN, H O *Klin Wehnschr* 16 1583, 1937
- (77) SÜLLMAN, H O *Enzymologia* 5 372, 1939
- (78) TAMIYA, H *Advances in Enzymology* 2 183, 1942
- (79) TSUZUKI, K *J Biochem (Japan)* 23 421, 1936
- (80) WARBURG, O AND W CHRISTIAN *Naturwissen* 29 590, 1941
- (81) WARBURG, O AND W CHRISTIAN *Ibid* 29 589, 1941
- (82) WERKMAN, C H *Bact Rev* 3 187, 1939
- (83) WERKMAN, C H, R W STONE AND H G WOOD *Enzymologia* 4 24, 1937
- (84) WILLSTÄTTER, R AND W STEIBELT *Ztschr physiol Chem* 115 211, 1921
- (85) WILLSTÄTTER, R AND G OPPENHEIMER *Ibid* 118 168, 1922
- (86) WIGGERT, W P AND C H WERKMAN *Biochem J* 33 1061, 1939
- (87) WRIGHT, H D *J Path and Bact* 43 487, 1936
- (88) WRIGHT, H D *Ibid* 45 117, 1937
- (89) WRIGHT, H D *Ibid* 46 261, 1938

INFLUENCE OF ESTROGENS AND ANDROGENS ON THE SKELETAL SYSTEM

W U GARDNER AND CARROLL A PFEIFFER

Department of Anatomy Yale University School of Medicine, New Haven Conn

Sexual differences in the extent and form of osseous growth have been noted in many species, and in some species cyclic changes in the gross and microscopic structure of at least parts of the bones have been found to be associated with reproductive phenomena. This review will deal with the nature and extent of the influence of gonadal hormones on skeletal development and the studies pertaining to the mechanisms governing these changes. In connection with the latter studies it will also be necessary to consider the influence of sex hormones on the metabolism of bone salts. The great difference in the responsiveness of animals of different species has made it desirable to present this review more or less in phylogenetic arrangement.

INFLUENCE OF SEX HORMONES ON CALCIUM AND PHOSPHORUS METABOLISM
The changes in the levels of blood calcium and phosphorus which accompany egg laying and estrogen production have recently been reviewed (1). However, since many of these changes also affect the skeletal system they will be reviewed here to the extent to which they bear a relationship to, or afford an explanation of, the mechanism governing those osseous changes which are under the influence of the sex hormones.

Calcium metabolism—fish and amphibia Hess et al (2) showed that during the period when the eggs develop and mature in females of the cod and puffer fishes, the blood calcium level rises to 29 mgm per cent as compared to 9 to 12.5 mgm per cent in males. In the viviparous dogfish shark, on the other hand, no change in calcium is associated with the reproductive state. Again, in the toad *Xenopus* (3) the level of calcium in females is higher during the egg laying season than during the non breeding season and at all times is higher than in males. Castration effectively lowers the calcium values in females and, after a prolonged period, in males. Ovarian extracts cause a rise in the blood calcium level in castrated or hypophysectomized females. Unfortunately the skeleton has not been studied. It was thought that the hormone-like action on calcium is exerted by some principle other than the sex hormones (3, 4). However, more recent investigation on other species has indicated that estrogen is the responsible hormone.

Aves The most significant observations on calcium metabolism have been made on birds, as would be expected, since enormous amounts of calcium are excreted in the egg shell (5.5 grams of calcium carbonate in 16 hrs or 40 mgm. of calcium per min during certain periods while the shell is being laid down) (5). The pigeon is an excellent animal on which to study the correlation between increased serum calcium levels and egg laying (6) since the nature of its laying habits makes it possible to predict with accuracy the stage of development of the ovum at any given time. Two egg yolks are ovulated and then the ovary enters

upon a prolonged inactive period. During the period of rapid growth and ovulation of the two ova the serum calcium increases from 9.3 mgm per cent, the value for sexually inactive females, to 19.9 mgm per cent. Since the calcium level begins to rise 123 hours before the secretion of the first egg shell, it is obvious that the increase in serum calcium is not caused or explained by shell secretion. The rise is correlated only with the development of the two ova. Similar differences also occur between the serum calcium levels of non-laying and laying hens (7, 8) and are correlated with ovum size (9, 10, 11). Attempts have been made to show that the fluctuations which occur in the laying hens are due to a mobilization of calcium in the blood stream when an egg is not in the shell gland and a lowering of the serum calcium level when the egg is in the shell gland (5, 12), but the variations found were too small and inconsistent in trend to be very significant (13, 14). However, evidence, acquired by determining the ratio of CaO to P_2O_5 stored and excreted, indicates that calcium can be deposited in bone and from this reservoir be mobilized for formation of the egg shell (15, 16, 17). The amount that can be mobilized has been variously estimated as from 10 per cent (18) to 25 per cent (17) of the total calcium stores of the body. Mobilization of calcium from the skeleton is rapid but not as rapid as is the transference of ingested calcium carbonate to the oviducts (17). Therefore, if sufficient amounts of calcium carbonate are ingested, the shell gland is supplied from this source (19, 20), but if the calcium carbonate intake is low, calcium is withdrawn from the bones (15, 17). In the pigeon, however, it has been shown by careful histological study (21) that there is some destruction of medullary bone at the time of egg shell formation even though sufficient amounts of calcium are available in the diet.

In the non-laying hen the mesenteric vein contains the same level of serum calcium as does the mesenteric artery, but in laying hens the calcium in the vein is appreciably greater than in the artery (19). This increase in the amount of calcium transferred from the gut to the blood stream is evidently controlled by estrogen since it occurs only during the period of ovarian growth and egg laying. If calcium is withheld from the diet of the laying hen, egg laying ceases after about 12 days and the amount of calcium in the egg shells decreases to less than one-fourth the normal amount, indicating that only a limited amount of calcium can be withdrawn from the body stores (bones) for the production of shells (13). It has already been shown that the calcium brought by the blood to the oviduct is in a form which is different from that deposited in the egg shell (22). The extreme fluctuations in the serum calcium level which take place in the bird can be tolerated because the diffusible calcium remains constant, and only bound or non-diffusible calcium increases (23, 24, 25, 26). This hypercalcemia bears no relationship to the hypercalcemia observed in mammals which results from hyperparathyroidism or administration of parathyroid extract (27). Parathyroid extract does not cause a rise in blood calcium or a depletion of body calcium in non-laying hens, moulting hens, immature pullets, or cockerels (28, 29).

Influence of different estrogenic chemicals Theelin, theelol, estradiol and estradiol benzoate increase the serum calcium level in pigeons (27, 30, 31), and

theelin, estradiol, estradiol benzoate and diethylstilbestrol are effective in this respect in chickens (32, 33, 34, 35). Likewise estradiol benzoate is effective in the duck (36) and the sparrow (37). Only Marlow and Koch (38) and Marlow and Ruchert (39) have reported negative results from the injection of estrogenic compounds into chickens, but it seems probable that they were using inadequate amounts of estrogen, since the doses they employed are too low to induce complete development of the oviducts.

Phosphorus metabolism A great rise in blood lipid phosphorus levels occurs in apparently all oviparous vertebrates during the breeding season or following estrogen injection. This rise is presumably associated with the formation of the egg yolk. There is also a phosphoprotein (serum vitellin) which comprises an important part of the increased total phosphorus in breeding females of birds (40, 41, 42, 43), reptiles and fishes (40), but is found only in traces, if at all, in males and non breeding females of these species. Unfortunately amphibians were not tested. Serum inorganic phosphorus, the only phosphorus compound associated with the metabolism of bone, has been followed rather incidentally to the studies on calcium and bone changes. It seems to be relatively less affected by the reproductive state of the animal or by sex hormones than are the lipid and protein phosphorus compounds. However, the intimate relationship of the serum inorganic phosphorus to the latter compounds makes interpretation difficult.

Amphibia In the lower vertebrates inorganic phosphorus has been studied only in the toad *Xenopus* where, in contrast to calcium, it is decreased during the breeding season, and after injection of progesterone and estradiol benzoate (44, 45). However, the same author (44) reports that gonadectomy has no effect on plasma inorganic phosphorus.

Aves In connection with the studies on the relation of calcium metabolism to egg shell formation in chickens it was noted that more P_2O_5 was excreted than ingested, indicating that calcium salts were being removed from bone for egg shell formation (15), and that the associated phosphorus was being released into the blood stream and excreted. This condition is similar to that found in hyperparathyroidism, but it is doubtful whether such a calcium phosphorus relationship is also the explanation of the increase in serum inorganic phosphorus which occurs during the time bone is being deposited under the influence of injected estrogen. Small, probably inadequate, doses of estrogenic extracts have been reported to be ineffective in altering the serum inorganic phosphorus of chickens (38), but larger doses of estrogens raise the inorganic phosphorus in chickens (32), in ducks (36) and in pigeons (27).

Phosphatase activity The serum phosphatase value in chickens (46) increases from 88.7 Bodansky units at one day of age to 114.0 at 10 or 12 days. It then gradually falls without showing any sex differences until the approach of the adult condition. In pullets the serum phosphatase value is 3.5 Bodansky units while in older non-laying hens it is 13.1 and in laying hens 17.1. In the mature cock the serum phosphatase value remains at 4.7. The relation of serum phosphatase to injected steroid hormones has not been studied.

INFLUENCE OF SEX HORMONES ON SKELETAL STRUCTURE IN BIRDS *Pigeons*
During the course of investigations on bone marrow Kyes and Potter (47) discovered that at certain times the marrow cavities of female pigeons became so filled with spicules of bone that it was no longer possible to obtain marrow from them, but this phenomenon was never encountered in male pigeons. These authors further observed that the condition of the bones in the females was correlated with the size of the ovarian follicles. When the follicles were 2 mm in diameter, or less, the femurs contained large marrow spaces. Osseous tissue partially invaded the marrow when the follicles were more than 4.5 mm in diameter, and the marrow cavities were filled with bony spicules when the follicles were 10.0 mm in diameter, or larger. Shortly afterwards Riddle and Dotti (30) demonstrated for the first time that injected estrogens cause a rise in serum calcium such as occurs normally at the time the ovary contains large ova. It was then but a short step to show that both hyperossification and the increase in blood serum calcium in pigeons can be produced by injected estrogen (31). It was found that with daily injections of 33.3 μ g of estradiol benzoate hyperossification began within two weeks after treatment was started and reached a maximum within five weeks, but it did not exceed that found in the normal female pigeon just after ovulation. Bloom, Bloom and McLean (21) made a careful study of the histology of the bone changes which occur during the normal egg laying cycle of the pigeon and found a very close correlation between the size of the ovarian follicles and medullary bone formation. An intense production of medullary bone occurs during the time of development and maturation of the follicle in the ovary and is followed by a period of intense destruction of medullary bone which coincides with the time the shell of the first egg is being formed, and continues for a few hours after the first egg is laid. Bone formation then begins once more and continues until shortly after the second egg reaches the shell gland. Again bone is resorbed while the second egg is in the shell gland and resorption continues at a diminished rate after the second egg is laid until all of the medullary bone disappears (about 10 days after the second egg is laid). The pigeon lays only 2 eggs in a clutch. During the bone formation phases, the reticular cells of the marrow become osteoblasts and these in turn become osteocytes. During the destruction phases the osteoblasts and freed osteocytes become osteoclasts, which, during the period of bone formation occurring between the laying of the two eggs, may again become osteoblasts. During the final postovulation period both osteoblasts and osteoclasts become reticular cells once more. With an adequate intake of calcium and phosphorus, formation of the organic bone matrix and calcification occur simultaneously, and during the periods of rapid bone destruction both are removed simultaneously. The bone formation associated with follicular development takes place in the granulocytopoietic portions of the marrow. Blood vessels are not encroached upon, and erythropoiesis is not appreciably affected. However, myelocytopoiesis practically disappears from the marrow at this time.

It was fortunate that Pfeiffer and Gardner (31) used sexually active male pigeons in their experiments on the relation of estrogen to hyperossification, since

Bloom, McLean and Bloom (27) discovered that doses of estradiol sufficient to induce medullary bone formation in male pigeons during the breeding season are ineffective in castrates or in males with inactive testes. However, the simultaneous administration of testosterone propionate and estradiol caused the formation of medullary bone with as little as 5 μ g of estradiol per day. The maximum effect of testosterone propionate in the combined treatment was reached with 1.0 mgm. daily. This synergism between male hormone and estrogen suggests a possible function for the appreciable amounts of male hormone produced by the ovaries of birds, studied particularly in the sparrow (48). The initial "endosteal reaction" may follow estrogen injection alone and consists of the deposition of a few lamellae of endosteal bone. Apparently androgen must also be present to bring about the accelerated endosteal proliferation with rapid formation of medullary bone which occurs in the normal osseous cycle. However, the administration of estrogen and androgen in any combination yet tried has not proved as effective in bringing about hyperossification as is the pigeon's own ovary. Hyperossification takes place at a much slower rate when experimentally produced than when occurring during the sexual cycle. Medullary bone formation may occur with an amount of estrogen which is relatively ineffective in raising the serum calcium level, especially when androgen is administered simultaneously, and androgen does not augment the calcium values found with a low dose of estrogen. Therefore, hyperossification and serum calcium level are not necessarily physiologically interdependent. The intramuscular injection of parathyroid extracts into birds in which medullary bone formation had been induced results in some resorption of bone accompanied by osteoclastic activity. Resorption does not, however, reach the proportions observed in the laying pigeon. It seems probable that the mechanism responsible for bone formation in the normal female pigeon has not been completely elucidated (27).

Chickens Sexual dimorphism, while not evident in pigeons, is marked in fowl. This dimorphism is quite definite in the skeleton. Hutt (49) showed that a statistically significant sex dimorphism occurs in the mean absolute length of all bones of the appendicular skeleton of the chicken, the longer bones having a 13.4 per cent greater length in males than in females. The increase in length is not constant in all long bones but varies from 6.8 per cent to 16.5 per cent. Some evidence has been advanced that capons have slightly larger bones than do normal males (49), but very carefully controlled experiments indicate that castration of male chicks at hatching does not produce any changes in absolute or relative length of bones of the extremities in either normal or creper fowl (50). That large doses of estrogen dwarf the bones of fowl is evident from the findings of Zondek (51) to be discussed later. Asmundson et al. (52) have also reported that excessive production of endogenous estrogen in young pullets following administration of pregnant mare serum dwarfs the tibiae and tarsals. However, studies on gynadromorphism in the fowl (53-54) indicate that the size differences in the skeletons of male and female birds is genetically, rather than hormonally controlled, since in the gynandromorph the skeleton may be of the male size on

one side and of the female size on the other, yet the hormone action should be the same on both sides. Other skeletal features, such as the width between the pubic bones, are distinctly different in the two sexes and are presumably affected by estrogen (52, 55), although accurate measurements seem to be lacking. Even the most accurate measurements failed to show a correlation between skeletal size and egg laying capacity within the limits of any one breed of chickens (56).

In connection with the stunting of growth which follows injections of large doses of estrogen (1,600,000 m u, or approximately 533.3 mgm of dimenformon in 16 weeks) Zondek (51, 57) observed that in x-ray plates of dwarf cocks produced by this treatment the opacity of the medullary cavity was the same as that of the bone surrounding it. With injections of 50,000 m u (approximately 16.66 mgm) of dimenformon, the first indication of the induction of bone changes could be observed after 4 weeks, if treatment was started at the age of 6 weeks. When the bones were split longitudinally the medullae were found to be filled with spongy bone. The femur showed a reduction of 18.9 per cent in length and of 40.6 per cent in weight, while the tibia was reduced 30.8 per cent in length and 30.0 per cent in weight. However, Landauer et al (35) showed by means of estrogen injections into sexually mature cocks, where no stunting resulted, that the hyperossification was not a result of the stunting but, as in the pigeon, occurred in response to the presence of the estrogen. Three weeks of treatment with a total of 1.19 mgm of estradiol benzoate resulted in the deposition of a thin layer of new bone on the endosteal surface of the femur and tibia. This is an appreciably lower dose of estrogen than used by Zondek, especially when considered in terms of the body weights of the birds, but is much greater than that required for hyperossification in the pigeon. Higher doses of estrogen resulted in more extensive hyperossification. The effects of simultaneous administration of estrogen and androgen have not been tested. Therefore, it is not known whether androgen augments the formation of medullary bone in the chicken. Histological studies of the bone changes in the chicken have not been published, but it is assumed that they are quite similar to those taking place in the pigeon.

Other birds Bone changes similar to those occurring in pigeons have been observed in ducks (36) and sparrows (37) following administration of estrogen. Large doses of estradiol benzoate are required to bring about these effects in the sparrow. In fact, the first attempt to obtain hyperossification in the sparrow was unsuccessful in spite of the fact that osseous changes occur in the normal female sparrow during the sexual cycle just as readily as in the laying pigeon (58). This failure has been attributed to the small doses used. Unfortunately all males tested were juvenals so that any effect an active testis might have was not observed. Evidence that androgen neither enhanced nor inhibited the degree of osseous change resulting from the administration of estrogen has been advanced by Pfeiffer et al (37). However, these findings should be reinvestigated in the light of the observation that androgen augments the formation of medullary bone in pigeons (27).

The extent of new bone formation differs greatly in the two breeds of ducks which have been tested. Administration of relatively large doses of estradiol

benzoate (2 mgm. daily) to Mallard drakes, a low egg laying breed, resulted in the production of only a limited amount of medullary bone, while the same amount of estrogen administered to Pekin drakes, a relatively high egg laying breed, produced extreme bone changes. However, this material is too limited to give more than an indication that the differences in egg laying capacities influence the response to estrogen (36).

EVIDENCE INDICATING THE EFFECTS OF INTRINSIC SEX HORMONES ON THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE MAMMALIAN SKELETON *Influence on general skeletal development* The obvious differences in the sizes of the skeletons of males and females of many mammalian species have been undoubtedly associated with the influences of the gonads for many years. In addition specific sexual dimorphisms of parts of the skeleton such as the pelvis show special sexual characteristics which may be in part genetically and in part hormonally conditioned. Although studies on sexual dimorphism and on the influence of gonadectomy upon the skeleton have infrequently been sufficiently extensive to prove the extent of humoral gonadal control of skeletal morphogenesis, such observations have contributed significantly to our information. Certain aspects of these investigations, especially of those pertaining to man, have not been covered completely in this review, but only sufficiently to indicate the trend and some conclusions of this investigational work. A few studies have been given more space than they may merit, but reference frequently is made to them in spite of the very limited material upon which conclusions were based.

Influence of castration in man The Scopecs have afforded material for the study of the effects of castration on skeletal growth (59, 60). Among the Scopecs some individuals castrated before the age of puberty had abnormally longer appendicular skeletons and smaller calvaria than other individuals of similar heights from the same racial groups. Individuals castrated after puberty tended to resemble in stature the intact males of their racial group (61, 62).

A very detailed study was made on 31 eunuchs from North China (63). Nine eunuchs were castrated when less than 15 years of age. These eunuchs attained heights ranging from 163 to 182 cm and averaging 172 cm. The heights of the individuals castrated when over 15 years of age ranged from 154 to 168 cm and averaged 163 cm at the time they were measured. The average heights to the tops of the symphyses pubes were 92 and 84 cm for the early and late castrate groups respectively. The greater part of the difference in height therefore could be accounted for by differences in length of limbs. The eunuchs were also taller than other individuals from the same region.

Time of appearance and union of ossification centers in man Pryor (64-67) reported that centers of ossification in females appeared at earlier ages than in males. His studies convinced him that the ossification of the skeleton of the female was always in advance of the male from the earliest appearance of centers of ossification, at first days, then weeks, months and years in advance. Detailed studies were made on the ossification centers of the hand (66, 68). Other investigators did not find the striking sex differences in skeletal maturation described by Pryor (69-72). Recently complete studies have been made on the

sequences of osseous development of the hand (70, 71, 72) Although Todd (72) observed a somewhat more rapid skeletal maturation in females he considered it closely related to the progress of sexual maturation, only negligible at the ninth year and not striking until the thirteenth year and from then on until the later teens The stage of development of the skeleton of boys was associated more closely with evidences of sexual development than with the chronological age (73)

Some evidence exists for the early cessation of growth in cases of pathologically precocious hypergonadism, although growth may be accentuated, at least, for a while (74, 75, 76) Later, mention will be made of retarded growth (77, 78) and delayed union of epiphyses in hypogonadal patients

Dogs The skeletal development of an ovariectomized dog was compared with that of an intact littermate (79) The operation was performed at the age of 3 months and the animals were killed 12 months later The ovariectomized dog was larger throughout the experiment, the bones of the extremities were longer, some of the epiphyses had not united and the pelvis was smaller than in the control Significant differences existed between the males and females in the various indices and measurements of the heads of several breeds of dogs (80) The material, however, did not prove that these differences were attributed to the intrinsic gonadal hormones

Sheep At birth the skeletal development of male and female lambs was comparable (81) At the end of 5 months the bones of males were larger than those of castrate males, or of females The bones of the head, neck and pectoral girdles of males were disproportionately large when compared with the females or castrates Although the bones of the male pelvis increased more in weight the relative increase was greater in the female

Cattle The measurements obtained by Tandler and Keller (82) showed that the skeletons of bulls and cows differed greatly and that the skeletons of castrated males and females were similar and of an intermediate type

Mice The formation of centers of ossification and the fusion of the epiphyses have been reported in mice but reference was not made to sex differences The changes of the bones during the late developmental period were apparently similar in the two sexes Histological studies were made on the distal ends of the femurs and proximal ends of the tibiae of mice of seven different strains and from 1 to 30 months old (84) The epiphyseal cartilages of the multiparous females became very thin and the resorptive phase began at an earlier age than in males or virgin females The rapidity of changes with ageing lagged in males, during the first year of life being 2 to 3 weeks behind the females, but when resorptive processes became accentuated during the second year of life they progressed rapidly and soon the bones showed more resorption than those of the females The differences in the rate of the ageing process in bones of mice of different inbred strains were apparently much greater than between the two sexes within the same strain

"Breaking strength" and chemical composition The "strengths" of the bones of male and female inbred C₃H strain and of hybrid mice at progressive ages did not entirely corroborate the above observations (85) The bones were strongest

in mice from 100 to 300 days old and thereafter decreased progressively. The femurs of the females were stronger than those of the males in almost all groups. Virgin females had stronger bones than the multiparous animals. The strength of the bones was associated directly with the density of the bone as determined by their radio opacity. The per cent of ash and the calcium phosphorus ratio were higher in the femurs of females than of males (86).

Rats—Appearance of ossification centers The centers of ossification of the limbs of rats appeared at an earlier age in females than in males. The cleared limbs from large series of rats from 62 different litters were stained with alizarine and the number and size of the centers of ossification recorded (87). Littermate brothers and sisters were compared because the stage of ossification differed considerably between different litters of presumably the same age. Difficulties in the determination of chronological age or differences in environment were assumed to be responsible for the variations among different litters. X ray examination of intact male rats and male rats castrated at one day of age revealed no effect of castration on the age of appearance or fusion of ossification centers other than the ischial epiphysis and os priapi which were delayed in the castrated animals (88).

Gonadectomy on skeletal growth Castrate and intact male rats from the same litters attained similar weights (89) although ovariectomized females were 3.4 per cent longer and 23.5 per cent heavier than their unoperated sisters (90). Male rats castrated when 21 days of age attained adult weights 24 per cent less and had bodies 7.9 per cent shorter than those of the unoperated controls. The tails of the castrated rats were only 3.1 per cent shorter than those of the controls (91). Male rats castrated when 21 to 23 days old had shorter bodies and femurs than those of their intact controls when 88 to 105 days of age. The lengths of the tails and humeri of control and castrated groups were similar (92). Male rats castrated when 22 days of age and killed at 80 days of age were 10.9 mm shorter nose-anal length and 26 grams lighter than their intact controls (93). Rats castrated at weaning and killed after one year had significantly shorter femurs, tibias, humeri, radii and ulnas than unoperated controls (94).

Spayed rats had longer bodies than hysterectomized controls (95). Although castrated female rats were 19 per cent heavier than their intact controls their body lengths and the lengths of their femurs were similar at 184 days of age (96). Rats castrated when 26 days of age had significantly longer femurs, humeri, bodies, and tails when 70 to 90 days of age but not when 184 days old (97, 98). The rats ovariectomized when young grew more rapidly for a few months but within six months were again no larger than the controls. X ray examination of the skeleton revealed "longer bony structures" in castrated females than in intact controls (99). Female rats castrated when 40 days of age weighed more when from 80 to 290 days old than virgin females or females on normal or "forced breeding" schedules. The lengths of the tibias of the castrates also were greater during the first few months after castration but were eventually shorter than those of females from which the young were removed at birth. The virgin females were smaller and had shorter tibias than any of the other groups (100).

Sex differences on chemical composition The per cent of calcium in the bodies

of female rats from 15 to 243 days of age was greater than in the males. The difference became definitely significant in animals over 30 days of age and was greatest in sexually mature animals. The absolute amount of calcium was greater in the males because of their larger size (101). Femurs of female rats from 23 to 150 days old had a higher ash content than did those of littermate males (102). The per cent of calcium and phosphorus was also higher in the bones of the females (103). The greatest relative change in the per cent of ash content per unit of age occurred in females at ages ranging from 20 to 30 days and at about 36 to 40 days in the males. These periods of rapid increment of ash were associated with phases of gonadal development (104).

Guinea pigs. Castration on length of bones. Male and female guinea pigs gonadectomized when 15 to 30 days of age and killed when 360 days old had body weights similar to those of the controls. Although both the gonadectomized males and females had shorter bodies, the long bones of the legs were nearly equal to or longer than those of the controls (105). These experiments in part confirmed earlier work by Boun and Ancel (106) who found that the femurs and tibias were longer in prepuberally castrated guinea pigs. On the other hand castrated females bearing testicular grafts attained the size of normal males (107).

The tibias, ribs and joints of young gonadectomized male and female guinea pigs were obtained at weekly intervals and were studied histologically and compared with sections from the bones of intact controls (108). The ratio of hypertrophic to proliferating columnar cartilage cells was 4 or 5, 10 or 11 for the male and female controls, 5, 16 or 20 for the castrated males and 5 or 6, 17 or 18 for the castrated females after five weeks. The epiphyseal cartilage thus increased in thickness in both groups of castrated animals. With degeneration of hypertrophic cartilage cells some calcification of the bars of matrix followed and ossification occurred. The cartilages of the joints also hypertrophied, tending to parallel the changes occurring in the epiphyses. The increased proliferation of cartilage occurring during the first months after ovariectomy eventually ceased and sclerosis and ossification progressed although both at a slower rate than in intact females (109). Gigantism did not occur, although maturation of the osseous system was delayed.

Influence on the dimorphism of the pelvis. The shapes of the pelvis in man differ in different individuals—especially the shapes of the pelvic outlet. The pelvis of children of under 11 years of age were almost all of the anthropoid or dolichopelvic type as determined by the roentgenological method of Thoms (110). The pelvis of the males and females began to assume their specific sexual characteristics in children approaching fifteen years of age. The observation on 59 female and 16 male children from 5 to 15 years of age thus "suggested that both males and females start out life with pelvis which are identical in type and that the major differences observed in adult male and female pelvis do not appear until after puberty and are therefore due to the influence of sex hormones" (111). Similar observations had been made by Odidsch (112), who also noted that chronic disease modified the pubertal metamorphosis of the pelvis.

The types of pelvis of both males and females ranged widely from dolichopelvic

to platypellic but the pelves of males showed 1, more prominent and heavier ischial spines, 2, narrower pubic angles, and 3, narrower greater sciatic notches than those of females. The pelves of the "more masculine" or "more feminine" individuals did not necessarily show the most accentuated characteristics of the respective sexes. In fact two hypogonadal males had typically masculine types of pelves. The morphological characteristics of the pelves were not necessarily a reliable indication of the degree of maleness or femaleness of the individuals possessing them (113, 114).

During pregnancy the pelves enlarged slightly by a loosening of the sacroiliac ligaments and the pubic symphyses. A joint like space was frequently encountered in the symphyses of females (115, 116, 117). The pelvic loosening may be of sufficient magnitude to impair locomotion because of lack of pelvic rigidity. Pelvic mobility, when once it has appeared, may recur with each subsequent pregnancy. Repair may occur following delivery (118, 119).

Sheep The pelves of newborn lambs showed no sexual dimorphism. In the adult male the pelvis was larger than in the female, composed of heavier bones but longer and narrower than in the female. The pelves of castrated males and females were smaller than those of the females but were similar in shape. True pelvic sexual dimorphism existed and was determined, apparently, by the sex hormones. The castrate type, however, more closely resembled the pelvis of the female (120).

Guinea pig The bony pelvis has been associated more frequently with reproductive function than have other parts of the skeleton. The guinea pig's pelvis apparently attracted the attention of investigators because of the large size of the young at birth. The separation of the pubic bones of the guinea pig before parturition has been described repeatedly (121, 122, 123).

Virgin guinea pigs had distinct pubic symphyses (124). A chondrofibrous junction of the pubes appears in young virgin female guinea pigs, the amount of fibrous tissue increasing at the expense of the cartilage forming a syndesmosis (125). Some cyclic separation of the pubes may recur with the repeated estrous cycles (126). The fibro-cartilaginous interpubic unions of male guinea pigs were replaced by bone in old animals so that the symphyses were partially destroyed.

During pregnancy the amount of fibrous interpubic tissue increased greatly, especially after the first five weeks (125). Subsequently some bone resorption of the symphyseal face of the pubes occurred. The marrow spaces were exposed and the fibrous tissue of the symphysis showed increased vascularization. The proliferation of connective tissue cells was especially rapid during the last two weeks of pregnancy and the pubes became widely separated just before parturition. The interpubic ligaments were shortened directly after delivery but were never completely lost.

Pocket gopher Two types of pelves have been described in each of several species of Rodentia and Insectivora but the author did not associate them with sex (127). The female type of pelvis of pocket gophers was associated with the presence of functional ovaries—the pelvic skeleton was a secondary sexual character (128). The dimorphism first became apparent at puberty and pro-

gressed with the complete removal of the medial part of the pubes Orchidectomy did not alter the development of the usual male type of pelvis Ovariectomy usually prevented the formation of the female type of pelvis

Mouse The pubes of male mice were united firmly by fibrous and cartilaginous tissue throughout life and the amount of interpubic cartilage decreased with advancing age (129) The pubes were less firmly united in adult virgin females, but the cartilaginous symphyseal faces were closely approximated by ventral and dorsal ligaments which enclosed a joint-like space During pregnancy the medial parts of the pubes were absorbed and interpubic ligaments formed After one pregnancy the ligaments were about 2 to 5 mm in length and became longer in mice having several litters Following delivery the pelvic architecture never returned to the condition of that of the virgin female The greater part of the interpubic ligaments formed during the latter 8 days in intact pregnant mice, in pregnant animals from which the fetuses had been removed but the placentas retained (130) and in hypophysectomized pregnant mice (131, 132)

INFLUENCE OF INJECTED SEX HORMONES UPON SKELETAL DEVELOPMENT *Rats*—*effect of estrogens* Several investigators have noted that the injection of estrogens inhibited or reduced the rate of increases in body weight Fewer observations have been made on osseous or skeletal growth but there is general agreement that large doses of estrogens inhibit or stunt growth when injected over prolonged periods

The skulls and long bones of estrogen-treated male and female rats were smaller (133) Twice weekly 500 I U of estradiol benzoate were injected into rats 4 to 6 weeks old and the growth of the treated rats was compared with the controls After 3 to 4 weeks the growth increments of the treated rats decreased and ceased after 3 to 4 months Body length was also greatly reduced (51) Later it was shown that these "eunuchoid dwarf" rats had skeletons more opaque to x-rays than the controls The medullary areas were invaded by bone The lengths of the bones were reduced (57, 134) Zondek assumed that estrogens inhibited not only the gonadotropic function of the pituitary but also the growth-stimulating function (134)

Theelin when injected into young rats at the rate of 20 μ g per day had no effect upon body length during experiments extending over 5 to 10 days, although body weight was reduced and the tails of the estrogen-treated rats were shorter than those of the controls (135) Rats receiving 20 μ g of estrone daily from the 21st to the 99th day weighed less, were shorter, and had shorter tails and femurs than the controls (136) The simultaneous injection of testosterone propionate (1 mgm per day) prevented the decreased rate of gain in weight and length observed in estrogen-treated rats (137)

The daily injection of 12.5 μ g of estradiol to male and female rats from 1 to 7 or 9 days of age "causes a significant advance in skeletal age of females but not of males" Treated females had 32 per cent more centers of ossification in their appendicular skeletons than did the males (138)

The oral administration of 50 to 250 μ g of stilbestrol daily greatly reduced the rate of growth of young rats (139)

The daily injection of 0.2 to 1 mgm of estrone inhibited the longitudinal growth

of the skeleton of young rats and decreased the thickness of the epiphyseal discs. The daily injections of 200 μ g of stilbestrol were more effective in stopping osseous growth. The injection of hypophyseal growth-stimulating hormone prevented the inhibiting action of estrone on the proliferation of cartilage and bone (140, 141). Since the epiphyseal changes of the hypophysectomized and estrogen treated rats were not similar it was assumed that the estrogens did not act by opposing the production of growth hormone but acted directly upon the growth zone of the epiphyseal cartilage (141). Growth hormone did not completely prevent the inhibition of skeletal growth in animals given large amounts of stilbestrol (142).

Histological changes Several factors have been considered in microscopic studies on growing bones, namely, the proliferation of cartilage at the epiphyseal junction, the sclerosis of cartilaginous matrix and the proliferation of the osteogenic tissues at different sites within or about the bone.

Young rats given large doses of estrogens for periods of 17 to 26 days had slightly thinner epiphyseal cartilages and an increased number of osseous spicules in the proximal metaphyses of their tibias. The amounts of osseous tissue were greater in the females than in the males. Untreated control rats "pair fed" at the levels consumed by the estrogen treated rats, had thinner epiphyseal cartilages than the ad libitum fed controls but the cartilages were not as thin as in the estrogen treated rats. The tibias of adult estrogen treated rats showed similar but less extensive changes (143).

The bones of rats which had received weekly injections of 33 μ g to 83 μ g of estradiol benzoate from weaning age up to 17 months were studied by the Silberbergs (144). After treatment for 4 months the epiphyseal cartilages were thin and partially sclerosed. The cartilages were sometimes absent in rats treated for 9 or 10 months. The latter condition was observed in some untreated rats 17 months old. The sub-epiphyseal marrow-containing areas of the tibias of rats treated for 4 months were relatively fibrous, contained numerous osteoblasts surrounding an increased number of newly formed osseous trabeculae, some of which surrounded sclerosed spicules of cartilage. The apposition of bone had been excessive during this period. By the 9th month resorption of the osseous spicules had occurred so that the metaphyses of the bones resembled those of the controls.

A well illustrated report of the osseous changes in rats given 10 mgm pellets of estradiol dipropionate weekly for periods up to 6 weeks has reaffirmed and extended a part of the above observations (145). After one week the epiphyseal cartilages of young estrogen treated rats were thin and the number of osseous trabeculae reduced, "the cartilage histology resembles that of an animal that had been almost starved," a probability since appetite was reduced. After 3 weeks the cartilage had partially recovered but was again reduced after 6 weeks. During the first 3 weeks many small spicules formed and later fewer coarse trabeculae of bone occupied the greater part of the proximal medullae of the tibias. The increased rate of ossification did not occur in estrogen treated hypophysectomized rats (146).

The injection of estrogens was considered to induce localized osteofibrotic

lesions in young rats (147) This fibrosis occurred chiefly subperiosteally near the metaphysis and was assumed to be responsible for the absence of "clubbing" of the bones or for the maintenance of their normal shape during longitudinal growth (148)

On composition The calcium-phosphorus ratio of the bones of estrogen-treated rats was higher (2.39) than that of controls (2.10) This change in composition was attributed to a decrease of phosphate and an increase of carbonate in the bone salts since the total calcium was not increased (149)

Body weight was slightly lower but the weights and ash contents of the bones of very young rats which had received 50 to 250 μ g estradiol benzoate during 7 to 50 days were similar to those of the controls (150)

The femurs of young or young adult rats which had received estrogens for 44 days or more contained a significantly higher per cent of ash than those of their controls when they were fed an adequate diet (143) The femurs of estrogen-treated old rats showed no increase in ash during experiments extending over 37 days In none of the experiments was the total ash increased significantly in the estrogen-treated animals because of the decreased growth of these rats Estrogen-treated rats ate less than their ad libitum fed controls "Pair fed" controls gained more weight than the injected rats but their femurs contained less ash and also a lower per cent of ash The decreased food intake could account for neither all of the decreased gain in body weight nor the increased per cent of bone ash Bone phosphatase increased significantly in rats treated for 17 days

Repair of fracture Callus formation occurred somewhat sooner about fractures of femurs of castrated rats given estrogen than in the untreated controls (151) Although the effects upon the fractures were slight the authors "gained the impression that injections of estrogenic substances stimulated the production of endosteal osteoid tissue," although the fractures in the different treated and control rats were at different and overlapping stages of repair (152)

Androgens—Size of bones Androgens, especially testosterone and its esters, have been reported to either stimulate or inhibit body growth or growth of the skeleton Factors such as the dose of hormone given, the duration of treatment, and whether or not the animals were castrated may influence the results These factors will not account for all of the opposing results that have been reported Daily doses of testosterone of 200 μ g did not alter growth in young rats treated for 1 or 2 months (153) Doses of 1400 μ g of testosterone propionate reduced the weight-increment in another group of young rats while smaller doses (167 μ g) stimulated growth (154) Young rats given 35 mgm of testosterone propionate during 40 days gained much less weight and had shorter bodies, tails, femurs and tibias than oil-injected or untreated controls (155) The epiphyseal cartilages were thin and atrophic Testosterone propionate (1 mgm per day) increased the rate of gain in weight and length of young rats and prevented the growth-inhibiting effect of estrone (137)

Male rats given 1 mgm of testosterone propionate daily for 80 days weighed less and were shorter than untreated controls Differences in weight and length were not apparent at the 26th day of injections but the controls were 6.5 mm

longer at the 80th day (156) Castrated rats were on the average 11 mm shorter than intact untreated controls and castrated rats given 1 mgm of testosterone propionate daily were 13.5 mm shorter. Again the differences were not apparent until at the 26th day (157) Castrated and intact rats given small doses of testosterone propionate ($50 \mu\text{g}$) 6 times weekly increased in weight more rapidly than the controls (158) Although no measurements were taken the weight changes of young rats, some injected from the first day of life and given from 1 mgm of testosterone propionate 3 times weekly to 5 mgm daily, did not differ greatly from those of the oil treated controls (159) Some of the experiments were continued for 25 weeks

The os priapi and ischial epiphyses appeared much earlier in male rats given 0.25 mgm of testosterone propionate daily or every other day but after 87 days there was no significant difference between the treated and control group (88) A systematic x ray examination for the time of appearance and fusion of many other centers of ossification showed no difference between controls and treated rats. Doses of this size or larger (1 or 2 mgm daily) did not alter body weight or skeletal maturation even when started at birth and continued from 16 to 135 days

Upon os priapi Many studies have been undertaken recently on the influence of sex hormones on intrauterine or newborn rodents. None have shown effects of hormones upon the skeletons of the young. Estrogens will apparently partially inhibit the development of the os priapi in fetal males (160) Castration immediately after birth did not prevent the development of the os priapi in the male but the os failed to develop in the masculinized clitoris of rats given small doses of androgen after birth (161) Large doses of androgen injected into the pregnant mother induced well developed os priapi in the intersex female young born under such conditions (162)

Mouse. Effect of steroid hormones on gross changes Although the pubic bones were partially resorbed in estrogen treated mice the density of the other bones of the skeleton was increased (129) The medullae of the long bones of mice which had received 3.3 to 33.3 μg of estradiol benzoate or 0.1 mgm of equilin benzoate weekly for prolonged periods contained either excessive numbers of fine or coarse osseous trabeculae or, after more prolonged treatment, compact bone (163) The progression of changes depended upon the amount of hormone used and duration of treatment. Similar gross skeletal changes were induced by injections of estrone, equilin, triphenylethylene, and stilbestrol (165) The bones of mice of some strains responded more rapidly than others

The simultaneous administration of 0.625 to 2.5 mgm. of testosterone propionate completely prevented the excessive accumulation of medullary osseous tissue in the long bones of estrogen treated animals (164, 166)

"Breaking strengths" and composition The bones of estrogen treated mice had a higher ash content (69 per cent) than those of control males (59 per cent) or females (64 per cent) and a higher calcium phosphorus ratio (86) The ash content of the femurs of mice receiving testosterone propionate or estrogen plus testosterone propionate was 60 per cent hence approached that of the normal

males The new endosteal (medullary) bone apparently had a slightly higher calcium-phosphorus ratio than the bone of the diaphyseal shaft

The structure of the bones of estrogen-treated mice differed from those of the controls as determined by x-ray diffractograms The bone in the former medullary region was entirely unoriented and the diffractograms differed from those obtained from cortical bone or bones of untreated mice (167)

The femurs of estrogen-treated hybrid mice had "breaking strengths" of 1599 to 3542 grams (average 2499 grams), whereas femurs of controls of the same age groups had "breaking strengths" of 1244 to 2101 grams (average, 1655 grams) The average "strength" of the femurs was thus 844 grams greater in the mice which had received weekly subcutaneous injections of 16.6 to 50 μ g of estradiol benzoate (168) Similar observations have been made on a larger series of mice (85) The "breaking strengths" of the femurs of estrogen-treated males were greater than those of the estrogen-treated females The differences in "breaking strengths" of femurs between the estrogen-treated and control groups tended to increase with advancing age The estrogen tended to prevent the thinning of the diaphyseal walls associated with advancing age The bones of the mice given testosterone propionate had very low "breaking strengths"

Histological changes The bones of estrogen-treated mice became almost solid, or the medullae were filled with spicules greatly reducing the marrow The apposition of bone was entirely endosteal—no evidence of excessive periosteal growth was observed (163–166)

A roentgenographic and histological study of the femurs of mice of two strains which had received weekly doses of 150 to 1000 r u of estradiol benzoate showed sclerosis of the cartilage and "osteoblastic activity" leading to generalized osteosclerosis The long bones were first and most extensively affected but the vertebrae and calvaria also showed excessive osteogeneses and delayed resorptive processes (169)

Detailed and comparative histological studies have been made on the bones and articular cartilages of young and old estrogen-treated mice from several inbred strains (170, 171) The mice received different levels of hormone for different periods of time Within 1 to 2 weeks after the injection of estrogens was started the epiphyseal cartilages were reduced in thickness and the number of layers of hypertrophic and columnar cartilage cells was reduced The cartilaginous ground substance became hyalinized and sclerosed The reduction of the width of the cartilage and extent of hyalinization and sclerosis of cartilage matrix increased in mice treated for longer periods (3–6 weeks) With more prolonged treatment calcified matrix or bone separated the epiphyseal cartilage from the marrow and in some areas the cartilage was completely eroded, exposing the marrow of the epiphysis and diaphysis

The vascular marrow of the metaphysis became less vascular and increasingly fibrous (170) "Epithelioid" cells appeared in the fibrous marrow after treatment for 2 weeks These cells then increased in number and "became converted" into osteocytes New bone matrix was formed by these osteocytes forming first small and then larger spicules and finally a dense bony meshwork Resorptive processes were largely inhibited during this time After 2 or 4

months "osteoclastic resorption" set in and the bone was gradually resorbed until, at 9 months, few metaphyseal trabeculae remained. The diaphyseal walls were thickened during the first 4 to 6 months of treatment and thereafter reduced gradually in thickness.

The extent of the bone changes was greater in the males than in the females. The bones of mice of some strains were affected to a much greater extent than those of other strains.

When the injections of estrogens (100 to 200 r.u. weekly of estradiol benzoate) were started in adult (6 to 11 months old) or in aged mice (12 to 18 months), there was less or no increase in the thickness of the metaphyseal spicules or diaphyseal walls occurred. The age changes in the epiphyseal cartilages were accentuated and the resorptive phases stimulated precociously rather than inhibited. Proliferative arthropathic lesions occurred less frequently than in untreated controls. Estrogenic treatment accentuated rather than inhibited the usual resorptive phases of the ageing process when the injections were started in old animals.

The proliferation of cartilage and resorption of bone were also inhibited in young mice given 0.25 to 0.85 mgm. of testosterone propionate weekly for 4 weeks or more (172). The changes were similar to those occurring in estrogen-treated mice but much less striking.

Guinea pigs Guinea pigs which received 50 to 100 I.U. of estradiol benzoate daily for 27 to 38 days had thinner epiphyseal cartilages than the controls. The layer of hypertrophic cartilage was especially reduced (173). The intramuscular injection of estrogens decreased the rate of gain in weight and longitudinal growth of the tibias of young guinea pigs (174).

The daily injection of 20 r.u. or biweekly injection of 250 r.u. of estradiol benzoate into male and female guinea pigs weighing 140 to 190 grams increased the rate of hyalinization of the cartilaginous ground substance of the epiphyseal discs (175). The amount of the hypertrophic cartilage first decreased and then increased while the proliferative cartilage showed an inverse relationship. Calcification and sclerosis of the cartilage were increased. Metaplasia of the columnar and hypertrophic cartilage cells to osteocytes was described. In the metaphysis "epithelioid" cells replaced the vascular marrow and osteocytes appeared. They formed spicules of bone and abundant osteogenic tissue. Because resorption was reduced an increased amount of bone appeared in the metaphysis. The diaphyseal shaft was thickened and became denser during the first few months but later became thinner and more porous as resorptive processes became accentuated. Animals of both sexes responded similarly. The doses were large enough to prevent growth although the estrogen-treated animals grew faster than the controls (174, 175).

Estrogen-treated guinea pigs, one week old, when given 50 to 100 r.u. of estradiol benzoate weekly showed first a decrease in the thickness of the epiphyseal cartilage and then an increase (175). The layers of both the proliferative and hypertrophic cartilage increased in thickness and the tendency for sclerosis of cartilage and osteoblastic proliferation and ossification was reduced appreciably.

Progesterone increased the proliferation of columnar and of hypertrophic

cartilage and inhibited sclerosis and retrogressive changes in cartilage when injected in the amounts of 0.65 to 1 mgm 6 times weekly (176) Bone formation was relatively reduced "thus counteracting the aging of bones"

Dogs Two young dogs treated with estrogen (Menformon) showed precocious union of the epiphyses (177) Puppies given 1.66 to 3.33 mgm of estradiol benzoate weekly for 5 to 7½ months, weighed less and were shorter than untreated dogs The epiphyses were united precociously The pubic bones were not altered and in the males the growth of the os priapi was inhibited (178)

Man—Estrogens Very few studies have been undertaken in man on the effects of administered estrogens on osseous growth or on bone salt retention The daily injection of 2,000 I U of estrone to young girls for 6 to 18 days resulted in a depression of the calcium retention The amount of hormone injected was adequate to cause mammary swelling and a vaginal discharge (179)

Albright and his associates have associated post-menopausal osteoporosis with a deficient production of estrogenic hormone The post-menopausal osteoporosis most frequently involved the vertebra and the pelvis, the long bones were rarely involved (180, 181) The injection of estrogen into such patients resulted in a positive calcium retention and marked subjective improvement Nitrogen retention was also increased

Androgens The occasional occurrence of hypogonadism and retarded growth or of retarded genital and somatic growth probably indicate the desirability of the following investigations Children showing retarded sexual development, sub-normal growth and a sub-normal bone age showed accelerated growth when gonadotropic hormones were injected (182, 183) Although the rate of growth was much in excess of that expected from standard growth charts the bone-age changes were not proportionally accelerated (184, 185, 186) The secondary sexual characters also usually developed indicating gonadal stimulation

The possibility that the accelerated growth resulted from the androgenic activity of the stimulated testis was investigated by direct injection of androgens into similar patients One 21 year old eunuchoid individual gained 4 cm during the 6 months of treatment with testosterone propionate (10–30 mgm daily) (187) The injection of testosterone propionate or implantation of pellets of the hormone lowered the age of epiphysial appearance in 1 young patient but did not greatly accelerate rate of union of epiphyses in adult hypogonadal individuals (188) Spurts of growth were observed in adolescent hypogonadal individuals given testosterone propionate but the rates of epiphysial closure were not sufficiently altered to be detected by x-ray examination (189) Accelerated increase in height has been reported in a eunuchoid patient given testosterone (190) Either testosterone propionate or methyl testosterone increased the rate of growth of hypogonadal individuals beyond that expected Skeletal age, as determined by epiphysial union advanced more rapidly than might be expected from changes in chronological age (191, 192) The frequent occurrence of growth rates in excess of those expected from comparison with charts of normal growth was noted in hypogonadal boys given either gonadotropic hormones or testosterone Bone-age was usually not altered greatly (193)

Patients showing post-menopausal osteoporosis showed increased retention of calcium and phosphorus when androgen was administered in combination with estrogens (182)

Influence of injected hormones on the pelves of guinea pigs Hisaw (194) apparently first attempted experimentally to induce a separation of the pubes of virgin guinea pigs similar to that occurring at parturition. The pubes of some female guinea pigs became separated by an interpubic ligament when the blood sera of pregnant rabbits, dogs, and other animals were injected. The animals which responded were at or near estrus when the injections were made. Later the relaxation inducing substance (relaxin) was found in the placentas and corpora lutea of certain animals (195) and was effective only in guinea pigs which recently had been under the influence of estrogens, either intrinsic or injected.

Several other investigators noted that estrogens would induce some ligamentous proliferation at the symphysis as determined by mobility of the pelvis and x ray examination (196-199). Progesterin was not effective by itself or when given with estrogens (196), although a non-estrus producing "extrait mobilisant" could be obtained from corpora lutea. Other investigators have observed an extensive separation of the pubes of young, intact or ovariectomized guinea pigs which received estrogens (estrone or estrinol) for prolonged periods. Short periods of treatment with estrogens alone or with progesterone resulted in slight pelvic changes (200, 201). More recently estrogen and progesterone when administered simultaneously induced extensive pubic separation and the identity of "relaxin" as a specific hormone was questioned (202).

Although the chemical identity of 'relaxin' has not been determined and some investigators have doubted its specificity of function, blood of pregnant laboratory animals and of women apparently contains a substance capable of inducing a rapid pelvic relaxation in estrous guinea pigs. Hisaw first detected the substance in the blood of pregnant rabbits, but not in women. Other investigators found that 3 to 6 cc of blood sera from women during the first half of pregnancy would induce pelvic relaxation in approximately 75 per cent of estrous or adequately treated guinea pigs and that larger amounts were more effective (203, 204).¹

The experiments on the relaxation of the pelvis of the guinea pig are not in agreement. Few investigators have claimed as rapid and/or extensive a pubic separation as occurs during pregnancy from any treatment with estrogens and progesterone. The presence in blood of pregnant animals, early pregnancy in man, and in aqueous extracts of corpora lutea of a relaxation inducing substance (relaxin) has been observed repeatedly. These experiments indicate

¹ Recently Hisaw and his associates have added further evidence for the specificity of "relaxin". Although the pelvic ligaments of castrated guinea pigs would relax when large doses of estrogen and progesterone were given such changes would not occur in hysterectomized castrated guinea pigs. Relaxin on the other hand was effective in hysterectomized estrogen treated animals. Estrogenic or progestational activity could not be detected in animals given large doses of relaxin. References—Hisaw F L et al., Anat. Rec. 84 7 abstr 1913. A. A. Abramowitz et al. Anat. Rec. 84 6 abstr 1913.

that the active material occurs commonly in pregnant animals and is not one of the known steroid hormones

Mouse Almost simultaneously two investigators reported that estrogen-treated mice showed a ligamentous separation of the pubes (205, 206) The interpubic ligaments were readily discerned upon x-ray examination of the carcasses or upon gross examination The ligaments varied in length up to 7 or 8 mm Estrone, estriol, estradiol, equilin and equilinen induced similar changes The injection of estrogens thus resulted in a transformation of the pubic symphyses of males or virgin females to the type of interpubic connection found in multiparous females

The interpubic ligaments were formed by a proliferation of the fibrous connective tissues of the ventral and dorsal fibrous ligaments and periosteum Resorption of the medial parts of the pubic and ischial bones also occurred When the injections were started in very young animals the pubes were sometimes largely resorbed The injection of testosterone inhibited the pelvic changes when administered with estrogenic hormone (164) It likewise largely prevented the pelvic changes occurring during the latter part of pregnancy in primiparous mice (207)

Although quantitative studies on the sacro-iliac ligaments have not been made, the impression was that mobility was increased at this point The parts of the innominate bones not resorbed showed a slight increased ash content as did the femurs (86) The shapes of the innominate bones of male and female mice differ from one another, the ischial angle being greater in the female The injection of estrogens did not alter the male type of ischial angle, even when the injections were started in young animals (129)

INFLUENCE OF SEX AND OF STEROID HORMONES UPON SERUM CALCIUM LEVELS
Rats Parathyroidectomized or castrated rats showed no change in serum calcium levels subsequent to injections of 600 m u of theelin (209) On the other hand, the serum calcium levels of intact, hypophysectomized or gonadectomized rats were increased uniformly after the injection of several different estrogenic chemicals (30) Marked elevations of the levels of serum calcium were observed in estrogen-treated rats in another laboratory and in addition the amount of ingested calcium retained was increased during the first few days of observation and later decreased (210) The serum calcium levels of young rats after 6 to 12 daily injections of 100 I U of theelin were slightly elevated (211) The levels of serum calcium were slightly but significantly increased in rats which had received estrogens and in some groups the serum phosphatase was decreased (143) Other investigators have reported a slight increase in the phosphatase content of femurs of rats receiving estrogens and androgens (212)

The serum calcium levels of estrogen-treated rats usually increased above pretreatment levels This increase may be slight but statistically significant (143, 211) or of greater magnitude (30, 210)

Rabbits Adult rabbits injected with crude ovarian extracts presumably containing some active material, showed a slightly lower serum calcium within 24 hours (213) A rapid and rather marked decrease in serum calcium occurred

within a few hours after the injection of large amounts of estrone into spayed rabbits (214). Other investigators observed no significant changes in serum calcium in rabbits given extracts of ovaries (210, 215) or in rabbits which had received 100 μ g of estrone daily for 15 to 31 days (212).

Although high serum calcium levels have been observed in castrated rabbits (214) this observation has not been observed consistently (210).

Dogs Dogs showed a slow but marked rise in serum calcium after ovariectomy (216). Slight seasonal variations in the levels of serum calcium were noted in female dogs. The higher levels were associated with the seasons during which estrus occurred (217). Two dogs which had received 300 ru of estrone daily for 7 days showed an elevation of 2 mgm per cent of serum calcium (30). The total and diffusible serum calcium levels of other estrogen treated dogs increased about 2 mgm per cent and again returned to normal levels after the cessation of treatment (218).

During proestrus or estrus tetany developed in thyroparathyroidectomized dogs sometimes without appreciable changes in the amount of serum calcium (219, 220, 221).

Parathyroidectomized dogs given estrone or theelin showed a decrease in serum calcium and mild or severe tetany. Intact dogs showed no serum calcium changes after estrogenic treatment (222, 223). Tetany occurred during the onset of spontaneous estrus in parathyroidectomized dogs maintained on minimal amounts of vitamin D and calcium. The blood calcium levels of rachitic dogs decreased when theelin was injected (224).

Cattle The serum calcium levels of male and female cattle at different ages and following castration were determined by Frei and Emmerson (225). Slight differences between the different groups were noted. During estrus the serum calcium level rose in some animals. The injection of small amounts of estrogen was followed by a decrease in serum calcium. Following the injection of large amounts (200 to 1200 mgm) of estradiol benzoate the serum calcium levels of lactating cows were lowered and the serum phosphatase and inorganic phosphorus tended to rise (226).

It is difficult to generalize on the action of estrogens on levels of serum calcium in mammals. The observations even within individual species are not consistent, and are more variable when different species are compared. Most of the studies have been deficient in that certain factors such as food intake and dietary regime were not followed. However since the alterations in serum calcium in the mammalian species are so slight it is probable that, if anything, they merely reflect changes occurring in the osseous or other tissues concerned with the utilization, storage, absorption or excretion of calcium. There is as far as the reviewers know, no evidence that estrogens influence calcium metabolism in the same manner as do the parathyroids or the "vitamin D" compounds.

RÉSUMÉ

Oviparous animals which have oviducts that secrete or deposit calcified shells around their ova have an obvious need for some mechanism to co-ordinate certain

aspects of calcium metabolism with reproductive function. Since the bones act as storehouses for the calcium reserves of the body, these tissues might also be associated with reproductive functions. The drain upon the maternal calcium stores in mammals imposed by embryonic skeletal development or by lactation might indicate a need for some mechanism of interrelationship between reproductive function and calcium metabolism in mammals.

The injection of estrogenic hormones into birds increased the levels of serum calcium and accelerated the formation of endosteal bone. However, the rapid proliferation and ossification of osteogenic tissue could occur in estrogen-treated birds in the absence of marked changes in the levels of serum calcium especially when small amounts of androgen were also injected. The steroid hormones therefore may influence both bone proliferation and the mechanism regulating calcium levels, but these two phenomena are not necessarily related. In some laboratory rodents the sclerosis of cartilaginous matrix, proliferation and ossification of medullary osteogenic tissues were augmented in estrogen-treated animals, but the levels of serum calcium were unchanged or only slightly altered. Androgens prevented the excessive osseous growth when administered to mammals given estrogens.

At this time the reviewers believe that the augmented medullary proliferation of bone may be most satisfactorily explained by assuming that estrogens stimulate osteoblasts or the differentiation of osteoblasts from undifferentiated elements of the marrow. The apparent differences in the response of the osteogenic tissues of birds and mammals to androgens when injected simultaneously with estrogens may be due to some fundamental differences in the changes induced in the cells of the marrow.

The gonads or the steroid sex hormones regulate to some extent the morphogenesis of the skeleton and may control in part the extent of skeletal growth. Large amounts, especially of estrogens, inhibit the growth of cartilage and hence longitudinal osseous growth. The function of the pituitary gland is probably also altered in such animals and may be directly responsible for the ensuing "dwarfism." Small amounts of hormones, especially of androgen, may augment the rate of longitudinal growth of the skeleton.

The steroid hormones may find a practical application in the prevention or alleviation of symptoms of senile osteoporosis, in the acceleration of the healing of fractures or in the augmentation of the rate of somatic growth in certain hypogonadal individuals.

REFERENCES

- (1) RIDDLE, O. *Endocrinology* **31** 498, 1942
- (2) HESS, A. F., C. E. BILLS, M. WEINSTOCK AND H. RIVKIN. *Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med* **25** 349, 1928
- (3) SHAPIRO, H. A. AND H. ZWARENSTEIN. *J Exper Biol* **10** 186, 1933
- (4) SHAPIRO, H. A. AND H. ZWARENSTEIN. *J Exper Biol* **11** 267, 1934
- (5) CHARLES, E. AND L. HOGGEN. *Quart J Exper Physiol* **23** 343, 1933
- (6) RIDDLE, O. AND W. H. REINHART. *Am J Physiol* **76** 660, 1926
- (7) PARRON, C. *Compt rend Soc de Biol* **95** 785, 1926

- (8) HUGHES J S R W TITUS AND B L SMITH *Science* 65: 264, 1927
- (9) RUSSELL W C C H HOWARD AND A F HESS *Science* 72 506 1930
- (10) SUN T P AND M MACOWAN *J Physiol* 70 iv, 1930
- (11) MACOWAN M M *Quart J Exper Physiol* 21: 383 1932
- (12) KNOWLES H R E B HART AND J G HALPIN *Poultry Sci* 14 83, 1935
- (13) DEOBALD H J E J LEASE E B HART AND J G HALPIN *Poultry Sci* 15 179, 1936
- (14) FEINBERG J G J S HUGHES AND H M SCOTT *Poultry Sci* 16 132 1937
- (15) COMMON R H *J Agric Sci* 23:555 1933
- (16) COMMON R H *J Agric Sci* 26:85, 1936
- (17) COMMON R H *J Agric Sci* 28:347 1933
- (18) DEOBALD H J E J LEASE E B HART AND J G HALPIN *Poultry Sci* 15 170, 1936
- (19) BUCKNER G D J H MARTIN AND F E HULL *Am J Physiol* 93 86 1930
- (20) MCGOWEN J P *Biochem Ztschr* 272:9 1934
- (21) BLODM W M A BLOOM AND F C McLEAN *Anat Rec* 81: 443 1941
- (22) BUCKNER G D J H MARTIN AND A M PETER. *Am J Physiol* 71 349 1925
- (23) CORRELL, J T AND J S HUGHES *J Biol Chem* 103 511 1933
- (24) BENJAMIN H R AND A F HESS *J Biol Chem* 103 629 1933
- (25) TAYLOR M W AND W C RUSSELL *J Agric Res* 51 663 1935
- (26) LASKOWSKI M *Biochem Ztschr* 250 230 1933
- (27) BLOOM M A F C McLEAN AND W BLOOM *Anat Rec* 83 90 1942
- (28) AVERY T B H M SCOTT AND R M CONRAD *Poultry Sci* 19:321 1940
- (29) AVERY T B H M SCOTT AND R M CONRAD *Poultry Sci* 19:324 1940
- (30) RIDDLE O AND L B DOTI *Science* 84 557 1936
- (31) PFEIFFER C A AND W U GARDNER *Endocrinology* 23 485, 1938
- (32) AVERY T B H M SCOTT AND R M CONRAD *Endocrinology* 27: 83, 1940
- (33) ALTMAN, M AND F B HUTT *Endocrinology* 23 793 1938
- (34) ZONDEK B AND L MARX *Nature* 143 378 1939
- (35) LANDAUER, W C A PFEIFFER W U GARDNER AND E B MAN *Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med* 41: 80 1939
- (36) LANDAUER W C A PFEIFFER W U GARDNER AND J C SHAW *Endocrinology* 28 453 1941
- (37) PFEIFFER C A A KIRSCHBAUM AND W U GARDNER *Yale J Biol and Med* 13 270 1940
- (38) MARLOW H W AND F C KOCH *Endocrinology* 21 72 1937
- (39) MARLOW, H W AND D RICHERT *Endocrinology* 27 274 1940
- (40) LASKOWSKI, M *Biochem Ztschr* 284 318 1936
- (41) ROEPKE R R AND J S HUGHES *J Biol Chem* 108 79 1935
- (42) LASKOWSKI M *Biochem Ztschr* 276 293 1935
- (43) LASKOWSKI M *Biochem Ztschr* 276 345 1935
- (44) SCHRIER V *South Africa J Med Sc* 7:1 1942
- (45) SCHRIER V *South Africa J Med Sc* 7: 8 1942
- (46) COMMON R H *J Agric Sci* 26 492 1936
- (47) KYES P AND T S POTTER *Anat Rec* 60 377 1934
- (48) PFEIFFER C A AND A KIRSCHBAUM *Yale J Biol and Med* 13:315 1941
- (49) HUTT F B *Poultry Sci* 8:202 1929
- (50) LANDAUER W *Anat Rec* 69:247 1937
- (51) ZONDEK B *Lancet* 2 842 1936
- (52) ASMUNDSON, V S C A GUNNS AND A A KLOSE *Poultry Sci* 16 194 1937
- (53) HUTT F B *Poultry Sci* 16 354 1937
- (54) CREW F A E AND S S MUNRO *Proc Rny Soc Edinburgh* 68 114 1938
- (55) DATES R W E L LAHR AND O RIDDLE *Am J Physiol* 111 361 1935
- (56) JULL M A, J P QUINN AND A B GODFREY *Poultry Sci* 12 153 1933

- (57) ZONDEK, B Folia Clin Orient 1 1, 1937
- (58) KIRSCHBAUM, A , C A PFEIFFER, J D VAN HEUVERSWYN AND W U GARDNER Anat Rec 76 249, 1939
- (59) TANDLER, J AND S GROSZ Wien Klin Wchnschr 21 277, 1908
- (60) TANDLER, J AND S GROSZ Arch f Entwicklungs, 2 Theil 30 236, 1910
- (61) KOCH, W Veroffent d Kriegs-u Konstitutionspathologie 7 1, 1921
- (62) PITTARD, E La castration chez l'hormone et les modifications morphologiques qu'elle entraine Masson et Cie , editors, Paris, 1934
- (63) WAGENSEIL, F Ztschr f Morph u Anthropol 32 415, 1933
- (64) PRYOR, J W Anat Rec 25 257, 1923
- (65) PRYOR, J W Am J Roentgenol and Rad Therap 29 798, 1933
- (66) PRYOR, J W Am J Physical Anthropol 8 401, 1925
- (67) PRYOR, J W Am J Anat 59 409, 1936
- (68) FLECKER, H Am J Roentgenol 47 97, 1942
- (69) STEVENSON, P H Am J Physical Anthropol 7 53, 1924
- (70) FLORY, C D Monog Soc Rec in Child Develop 1 141, 1936
- (71) TODD, T W Child Development 2 49, 1931
- (72) TODD, T W Atlas of skeletal maturation (Hand) C V Mosby Co , St Louis, 1937
- (73) GREULICH, W W AND J R GALLAGHER To be published
- (74) ENGELBACH, W AND A McMAHAN Endocrinology 8 1, 1924
- (75) GROSS, R E Am J Dis Child 59 679, 1940
- (76) WERNER, A A , H I SPECTOR, A E VITT, W L ROSS AND W A D ANDERSON J Clin Endocrinology 2 527, 1942
- (77) ALBRIGHT, F , P H SMITH AND R FRASER Am J Med Sci 204 625, 1942
- (78) VARNEY, R F , A T KENYON AND F S KOCH J Clin Endocrinology 2 137, 1942
- (79) SELLHEIM, H Beitr f Geburt and Gynäk 2 236, 1899
- (80) STOCKARD, C R The genetic and endocrine basis for differences in form and behavior Wistar Inst Press, Philadelphia, 1941
- (81) HAMMOND, J The growth and development of mutton qualities in the sheep Oliver and Boyd, London, 1932
- (82) TANDLER, J AND K KELLER Arch f Entwicklungs 31 289, 1910
- (83) GREEN, C V AND E FEKETE J Exper Zool 66 351, 1933
- (84) SILBERBERG, M AND R SILBERBERG Am J Anat 68 69, 1941
- (85) GARDNER, W U Endocrinology 32 149, 1943
- (86) WENTWORTH, J H , P K SMITH AND W U GARDNER Endocrinology 26 61, 1941
- (87) SPARK, C AND A B DAWSON Am J Anat 41 411, 1928
- (88) TURNER, H H , E LACHMANN AND A A HELLBAUM Endocrinology 29 425, 1941
- (89) STOTSSENBURG, J M Anat Rec 3 233, 1909
- (90) STOTSSENBURG, J M Anat Rec 7 183, 1913
- (91) VAN WAGENEN, G Am J Physiol 84 461, 1928
- (92) LAWLESS, J J Anat Rec 66 455, 1936
- (93) RUBENSTEIN, H S , A R ABARBANEL AND A A KURLAND Endocrinology 25 397, 1939
- (94) POMERAT, G R AND R C COE Endocrinology 29 1015, 1941
- (95) SLONAKER, J R Am J Physiol 93 307, 1930
- (96) FREUDENBERGER, C B AND O A BILLITER Endocrinology 19 347, 1935
- (97) FREUDENBERGER, C B AND E I HASHIMOTO Am J Anat 62 93, 1938
- (98) FREUDENBERGER, C B AND E I HASHIMOTO Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 41 530, 1939
- (99) HOLT, H , R W KEETON AND B VENNESLAND Am J Physiol 114 515, 1938
- (100) BOGART, R , G SPERLING, L L BARNES AND S A ASDELL Am J Physiol 128 355, 1939-40
- (101) SHERMAN, H C AND F L MACLEOD J Biol Chem 64 429, 1925

- (102) HAMMETT F S J Biol Chem 64 407 1925
- (103) HAMMETT, F S J Biol Chem 64:635 1925
- (104) HAMMETT F S Biol Bull 50 61 1926
- (105) MOORE C R Biol Bull 43 285 1922
- (106) BOUIN P AND P ANCEL C R Acad Sci 142 232 1906
- (107) STEINACH, E Arch f Entwicklunqs 42 307 1918
- (108) SILBERBERG M AND R SILBERBERG Am J Path 15 55 1930
- (109) SILBERBERG M AND R SILBERBERG Am J Path 16:491 1940
- (110) THOM H Am J Obstet and Gynec 42 957 1941
- (111) MORTON D G AND C T HAYDEN Am J Obstet and Gynec 41:485, 1941
- (112) OOIOTECU R A Virchow's Arch f path Anat 304:163 1939
- (113) GREULICH W W AND H THOMAS Anat Rec 75 289 1930
- (114) GREULICH W W AND H. THOMAS J A M A 112:485 1939
- (115) EYMER H AND F J LANO Arch f Gynäk 187:866 1939
- (116) LANO F J AND L HASLHOFER Arch Surg 35:870 1932
- (117) HASLHOFER L Arch f Gynäk 147 167 1931
- (118) THOM H J A M A 106 1364 1930
- (119) ARRAMSON S S M ROBERTS AND P D WILSON Surg, Gynec and Obstet 58 595 1934
- (120) FRANK K Biet Geburt u Gynäk 13 12 1886
- (121) CHAMPNEYS F H Brit M J 2 1136 1911
- (122) BLAND-BUTTON J Brit M J 2 976 1911
- (123) KAWATA S Folia Anat Japan 2 370 1924
- (124) TODD T W Am J Anat 31 345 1925
- (125) RUTH E B Anat Rec 67:409 1937
- (126) POMMERENKE W T Anat Rec 57 361 1930
- (127) CHAPMAN R N Am J Anat 25 185 1919
- (128) HISAW F L J Exper Zool 42:411 1925
- (129) GARDNER W U Am J Anat 59 459 1936
- (130) NEWTON W H AND F J LITS Anat Rec 72:333 1938
- (131) NEWTON W H AND N BECK J Endocrinology 1:65 1939
- (132) GARDNER W U AND E ALLEN Anat Rec 83 75 1942
- (133) SPENCER, J F E D AMOUR AND R G GUSTAVSON Am J Anat 50 129 1932
- (134) ZONDEK B Genital functions and their hormonal regulation Williams & Wilkins Baltimore 1941
- (135) FREUDENBERGER C B AND F W CLAUSEN Anat Rec 69 171 1937
- (136) FREUDENBERGER C B AND F W CLAUSEN Anat Rec 68 133 1937
- (137) CLAUSEN F W AND C B FREUDENBERGER Endocrinology 25 585 1939
- (138) TALBOT N B Endocrinology 25 325 1939
- (139) MATHEWS C S E L SCHWAB AND F E EMERY Growth 6:7 1942
- (140) LIEVE L H Skeletgroesien interne secretie Van Gorcom and Camp N V — Assen 1939
- (141) GAARENSTROOM J H AND L H LIEVE J Endocrinology 1 420 1939
- (142) GRIFFITH M AND F G YOUNG J Endocrinology 3 96 1942
- (143) DAY H G AND R H FOLLIS Endocrinology 23:83 1941
- (144) SILBERBERG M AND R SILBERBERG Am J Anat 59 295 1941
- (145) SIMPSON M E E A KIBRICK H BECK AND H M EVANS Endocrinology 31 236 1942
- (146) KIBRICK E A M E SIMPSON H BECK AND H M EVANS Endocrinology 31:93, 1942
- (147) BREMER J L Arch Path 32:200 1941
- (148) BREMER J L J Bone and Joint Surg 24 32 1942
- (149) MACOLA B A Rev Soc Argent de Biol 13:105 1937
- (150) ELY J O AND R C PHILLIPS Endocrinology 27 661 1940

- (151) POLLOCK, G A *Proc Mayo Clinic* 15 209, 1940
- (152) POLLOCK, G A AND R K GHORMLEY *J Bone and Joint Surg* 23 273, 1941
- (153) McEuen, C S, H SELYE AND J B COLLIP *Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med* 36 390, 1937
- (154) KORENCHENSKY, V, M DENNISON AND M ELDRIDGE *Biochem J* 31 475, 1937
- (155) SAINTON, P, H SIMONNET AND J PETRESCU *C R Soc d biol* 128 698, 1938
- (156) RUBENSTEIN, H S, A A KURLAND AND M GOODWIN *Endocrinology* 25 724, 1939
- (157) RUBINSTEIN, H S AND M L SOLOMON *Endocrinology* 28 112, 1941
- (158) RUBINSTEIN, H S AND M L SOLOMON *Endocrinology* 28 229, 1941
- (159) SHAY, H, J GERSHON-COHEN, K PASEHKIS AND S S FELS *Endocrinology* 28 877, 1941
- (160) GREEN, R R, M W BURRILL AND A C IVY *Am J Anat* 67 305, 1940
- (161) WIESNER, B P *J Obst and Gynec British Empire* 42 8, 1935
- (162) GREEN, R R, M W BURRILL AND A C IVY *Am J Anat* 65 415, 1939
- (163) GARDNER, W U AND C A PFEIFFER *Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med* 37 678, 1937
- (164) GARDNER, W U AND C A PFEIFFER *Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med* 38 599, 1938
- (165) GARDNER, W U *Anat Rec* 76 22 (Suppl), 1940
- (166) GARDNER, W U AND C A PFEIFFER *Anat Rec* 73 21 (Suppl), 1939
- (167) REED, C I, B P REED AND W U GARDNER To be published
- (168) GARDNER, W U *Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med* 45 230, 1940
- (169) SUTRO, C J *Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med* 44 151, 1940
- (170) SILBERBERG, M AND R SILBERBERG *Anat Rec* 80 347, 1941
- (171) SILBERBERG, M AND R SILBERBERG *Endocrinology* 29 475, 1941
- (172) SILBERBERG, M AND R SILBERBERG *Arch Path* 32 85, 1941
- (173) PARHON, C I AND C PARHON-STEFANESCU *C R Soc d biol* 114 327, 1932
- (174) SILBERBERG, M AND R SILBERBERG *Anat Rec* 78 549, 1941
- (175) SILBERBERG, M AND R SILBERBERG *Arch Path* 28 340, 1939
- (176) SILBERBERG, M AND R SILBERBERG *Arch Path* 31 85, 1941
- (177) TAUSK, M AND P DE FREMERY *Acta Brevia Neerl* 5 19, 1935
- (178) SUTRO, C J AND L PAMERANTZ *Arch Path* 33 305, 1942
- (179) JOHNSTON, J A *Am J Dis Child* 62 708, 1941
- (180) ALBRIGHT, F, E BLOOMBERG AND P H SMITH *Trans Am Assn Phys* 55 298, 1940
- (181) ALBRIGHT, F, P H SMITH AND A RICHARDSON *J A M A* 116 2465, 1941
- (182) DORFF, G B *Am J Dis Child* 50 1429, 1935
- (183) DORFF, G B *Endocrinology* 27 403, 1940
- (184) DORFF, G B *J Clin Endocrinology* 1 940, 1941
- (185) DORFF, G B *Am J Dis Child* 64 661, 1942
- (186) LURIE, L A AND J HERTZMAN *J Clin Endocrinology* 1 717, 1941
- (187) WILLARET, M, L JUSTIN-BESONCAN AND A RUBENS-DUVAL *C R Soc d biol* 127 599, 1938
- (188) HOWARD, J E AND S A VEST *Am J Med Sci* 198 823, 1939
- (189) WEBSTER, B F *J Pediat* 13 847, 1938
- (190) RAPFOGEL, I *Endocrinology* 27 179, 1940
- (191) McCULLAUGH, E P AND F MCGURL *J Endocrinology* 26 377, 1940
- (192) McCULLAUGH, E P AND H R ROSSMILLER *J Clin Endocrinology* 1 507, 1941
- (193) FINKLER, R S, N J FURST AND G M COHN *J Clin Endocrinology* 2 603, 1942
- (194) HISAW, F L *Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med* 23 661, 1926
- (195) HISAW, F L *Physiol Zool* 2 59, 1929
- (196) BROUHA, L *C R Soc d Biol* 113 406, 1933
- (197) BROUHA, L AND H SIMONNET *C R Soc d Biol* 99 1769, 1928
- (198) BROUHA, L AND L DESCLIN *Arch Int d Pharm et d. therap* 48 147, 1934
- (199) DE FREMERY, P, S KOBER AND M TAUSK *Acta Brevia Neerl* 1 146, 1931
- (200) DESSAU, F *Acta Brevia Neerl* 5 133, 1935

- (201) TAPPER, S AND L. HASLHOFER. Arch f Gynäk 159 313 1935
- (202) HATERIUS H O AND W FUGO Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 42 135 1939
- (203) POMMERENKE W T Am J Obstet and Gynec 27 708 1934
- (204) ABRAMSON D F HURWITT AND G LESNICK. Surg Gynec and Obstet 65 335 1937
- (205) BURROWS H J Physiol 85 159 1935
- (206) GARDNER, W U Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 33 104 1935
- (207) GARDNER, W U AND J VAN HEETERSWYN Endocrinology 25 833, 1940
- (208) GOMEL E T C W TURNER W U GARDNER AND R. T HILL. Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 35 257 1937
- (209) DIXON T F Biochem J 27 410 1933
- (210) BACH E Klin Wchnschr 16 230 1937
- (211) LEVIN L AND P E SMITH Endocrinology 22 315 1935
- (212) WILLIAMS H L AND G M WATSON Endocrinology 29 258 1941
- (213) MERVISH L AND L. P BOSMAN Quart J Exper Physiol 18:11 1928
- (214) STORTZBECKER, T P Acta Path Microbiol Scand Suppl. 41 1 1939
- (215) MARLOW H W AND F C KOCH Endocrinology 21 72, 1937
- (216) LEITES S Biochem Ztschr 180 183 1924
- (217) CHEYMAL, J AND T QUINGARD C R Soc d Biol. 125 320 1937
- (218) SAVIANO M Atti d R Accad Lincei Mem 6 163 1935 1937
- (219) LUCKHARDT A B AND J BLUMENSTOCK. Science 56 257 1922.
- (220) DRAGSTEDT L. R., A C SUDAN AND K. PHILLIPS Am J Physiol 69 477 1924
- (221) EVANS E. I S SZUREK AND R. KEEN Am J Physiol 117:405 1936
- (222) MATHIEU F C R. Soc. d Biol 114 164 1933
- (223) MATHIEU F AND B O BARNES Am. J Physiol 103 172 1933
- (224) KOTELKA F L AND H. J TATUM Am. J Physiol 119 356 1937
- (225) FRIE W AND M. A. EMMERSON Biochem Ztschr 228 355 1935
- (226) FOLLEY S J Biochem J 30 2262 1936

CHRONIC MOUNTAIN SICKNESS

CARLOS MONGE

*National Institute of Andean Biology, University of San Marcos, School of
Medicine, Lima, Peru*

The ecological milieu of the high plateaus of the Andes (2 to 5 km altitude) must be emphasized as a fundamental factor when considering the biology of races acclimatized there since prehistoric times (Bingham) "Habitable" (Monge, 1928) places, in which life is naturally possible, must be differentiated from the higher "inhabited" ones, as for example the mines, in which conditions for living must be provided. Such a distinction has not yet been made. When studying acclimatization, much confusion would be avoided if the aim of the investigation were the physiological fitness of the autochthonous man in his ecological surroundings. The sufferances and tolerance of the living body to reach the highlands or to live at an extreme altitude should be considered as correlated subjects but ones of different significance. In no case should one use the words "acclimatized" or "acclimatization" when referring to an organism suffering from climatic anoxic injury during the adaptative stage (mountain sickness).

Congenital acclimatization to the Andean high plateaus (2 to 5 km altitude), where live some twelve million individuals, has produced a climatophysiological variety of human being whose biological characteristics are somewhat different from those of the sea level man. Infertility of men and animals brought from the lowlands, as sometimes occurs (Monge), means the elimination of the unfit through a process of natural selection.

When a man goes to the highlands, he has first to adapt himself to a condition of permanent anoxia, calling forth his emergency adjustments and then building up a new set of biological devices to reach the balanced state of the altitude man homeostasis. Consequently, adaptation, itself, is a malady—mountain sickness, either inapparent, acute, subacute or chronic. When adaptation is over, after months or years, no one knows how long, acquired acclimatization supervenes. Then mountain sickness has been cured (Monge, 1928). Acclimatization can also be lost as a shift from the Andean man homeostasis, the patients developing subacute or chronic mountain sickness. If they are brought to a lower land or to sea level, chronic mountain sickness is also cured. In those facts one can find the strict foundation of a climatopathological variety of human disease (Monge, 1, a-h). Animals are subject to the same pathology and possibly plants, although no investigation has been conducted with them. Some men find it impossible to live even at an altitude of 1.5 km—usually such men change their habitat and the observation ends. One could speculate about the condition of a man losing his acclimatization at sea level oxygen pressure.

To understand the physiopathological deviations during the adaptative period toward acclimatization, namely, mountain sickness, one must briefly consider the established characteristics of the autochthonous man. The emphasis will be laid upon the facts concerned with chronic mountain sickness which appears as

the basic cause of the problem. Since for some persons, apparently acclimatized, infertility may occur the physiology of reproduction in high altitude will be treated.

Chronic mountain sickness as has already been said, is a disease due to unfitness of the individual to become acclimatized at a high altitude or to a loss of acclimatization. Barcroft's work really dealt with sub-acute mountain sickness. (2) I first used (1925) the name of Erythremia of high altitude when I had found an erythremic clinical syndrome similar to Vaquez' Erythremia or Osler's Polycythemia vera. This denotes a clinical entity and not a hematological pattern, as some have erroneously interpreted it. In using 'erythremic symptoms,' I refer to a clinical manifestation and not to a high count of red cells. In this review no attempt will be made to study acute mountain sickness. Since I referred to the chronic condition as chronic anoxia I called the disease chronic mountain sickness (1928) (1c d, e). Later, this disease was studied by Monge, Encinas and associates, and Rondon (3). Talbot and Dill (4) found a case of it in Chile. Hurtado described some forms of the disease as related to fibrosis of the lungs (1930 5a), and some to an erythremic syndrome (1942, 5b c, d). Monge (1f) and Arrellano (6) have described neurological forms. Psychiatric forms have been described by Monge (1g).

In natives it may occur at any age and has an impressive familial character (Monge, Rondon). In individuals from the lowlands the onset may come from two to three years after acquired acclimatization and generally appears in the fourth and fifth decades of life. Both sexes are equally predisposed. Certainly it is much more frequent in men of European descent. It may start insidiously or may come suddenly after violent physical exercise or after some respiratory ailment. Repeated attacks of acute mountain sickness predispose as do probably pneumoconiosis, pneumonia and syphilis of the lungs.

I shall first describe the sub-acute forms which when cured lead to altitude fitness. Then I shall consider the chronic stages of the disease.

SUB-ACUTE MOUNTAIN SICKNESS AND THE ANNEAN MAN. The anoxic injury acting on the organism causes an illness which even in its mildest expression, leads to a lessened physical and mental capacity. To avoid confusion I characterized (1925-1928) this as *acute, sub-acute and chronic Soroche*. This word in the *Quechua* language means mountain sickness.

Subacute mountain sickness is not always preceded by a preliminary attack of acute mountain sickness. In the most benign forms the patient goes on with his daily work but he realizes that he is unable to maintain the life he was accustomed to at sea level. Even minor ailments provoke a run down condition never encountered at sea level. Diseases are poorly resisted and convalescence is pro-

¹ This is fully treated in Haldane J S and J G Priestley. *Respiration* New Haven, Yale University Press 1935. Barcroft J. *The respiratory function of the blood* Cambridge University Press 1935. Loewy A. *Physiologie des Höhenklimas* Springer Berlin 1932. *The pathology of high altitude climate*. Oxford Medical Publications 1937. Dill D B. *Life heat and altitude* Cambridge Harvard University Press 1938. Van Liere E. J. *Anoxia its effects on the body*. The University of Chicago Press 1942.

longed Toxic symptoms accompany pregnancy, delivery is dangerous, miscarriages are frequent Infertility is common In the more marked cases the symptoms appear insidiously and one or another predominates as, presumably, some particular organ suffers most damage from the prolonged oxygen want General fatigue, cyanosis after exercise, diminished capacity for physical and mental work, fullness of the head, cephalalgia, dizziness, congestion of the mucous membranes, respiratory distress, poor appetite, slow digestion, constipation or diarrhea, loss of weight, insomnia, matutinal tiredness, relieved in the course of the day as in neurasthenia, are the most frequent complaints Sometimes the patient may temporarily overcome his condition After several weeks, months or years, the length of time is not yet established, there comes a marked improvement, sometimes abruptly Very frequently the subject is unaware of his alleviation and finds himself fitted to carry on a normal life He has become acclimatized On the other hand, if the illness is more pronounced, fatigue comes sooner, cyanosis is permanent and nausea as well as vomiting may appear Hoarseness and dyspnea are the rule Torpor, cephalalgia, dizziness, vertigo, nervousness, insomnia, varied algeries and paresthesias appear The patient, unfit for acclimatization, is suffering from chronic mountain sickness

Circulation In normal individuals, the second heart sound is duplicated very frequently Rotta, by means of phonocardiography, has established the proper significance of this third sound as auricular The heart rate tends to be markedly slowed (Monge, Cervelli) The pulse rate is 40-50 in 13 per cent, 52-60 in 41 per cent, 62-71 in 32 per cent, and 72-84 in 14 per cent (1927) This has been confirmed by Talbot and Dill (4), Aste (7), Cervelli (8), Torres (9), Arnaez (10) and Capdehourat and associates (11) (1937) The linear relation between work (700 *kgmts*) and heart rate is only found in 30 per cent of the cases, with an even slower frequency than at sea level, 70 per cent show a kind of athletic response After double the amount of work (1,400 *kgmts*) the heart rate is slower than after a basic work of 700 *kgmts* A paradoxical bradycardia occurs in 50 per cent of all cases after moderate work, then the pulse accelerates to reach the normal level (Monge, Encinas) Rondon found it to occur at an altitude of 5.8 km Bradycardia sometimes comes suddenly In 80 per cent of the cases tachycardia starts suddenly without any clinical disturbance At any time the rate may return to bradycardia Efficiency tests during the tachycardia do not interfere with the initial acceleration (Monge and associates 1h, 12) The electrocardiogram in two hundred observations shows, in general, normal values (Monge, Saenz, 13) There is a marked sinus arrhythmia, the mean difference between two systolic intervals may rise to 0.44 After moderate exercise (700 *kgmts*), I have found exaggerated sinus arrhythmia, shift of the pacemaker, deformity of P, inverted P wave, shortness of PR, premature auricular and ventricular beats, voltage changes of T, reversal of T, and ST displacements Some of these changes are similar to those found by Greene and Gilbert in acute experimental anoxia (1925) The subjects showed no signs of fatigue during the effort tests, notwithstanding the slow heart rates Sometimes I have seen a regularly recurring arrhythmia, prolonged (auriculoventricular) conduction, occasional nodal or high

bundle premature beats. In one case the intraventricular conduction was altered. First degree block has been found. There is often right axis deviation. In one hundred cases Saens found 40 per cent right axis deviation, Rotta found 37 per cent. The venous pressure is increased (Rotta, Capdehourat). There is a universal dilatation of blood vessels, rather pronounced in sub-acute mountain sickness. The arterial pressure in men is reported by Torres, on the basis of 100 observations, to be slightly lower than at sea level. Rotta's work (14) on circulation can be summarized as follows: *a* Systolic output is approximately equal to that at sea level, *b* The cardiac index, of greater importance (Cantoni), reaches 2.3 liters per minute, 12 per cent higher than the value at sea level.

The work of the heart in reference to surface area is increased. The volume (in men) and the weight (in dogs) of the heart is greater than at sea level. In sub-acute mountain sickness, tachycardia is the rule but the appearance of unexpected basal bradycardic rhythms (Monge, Cervelli) and paradoxical bradycardias after moderate exercise are common (Monge, Encinas). In such cases dyspnea is accentuated. At rest, the appearance of a third sound is easily noted. The second pulmonary sound is accentuated. Capillaries are dilated and lose their tortuosity. The arterial pressure is slightly increased with a lower diastolic value (Torres, 9). Pulsation of the head, as in aortic insufficiency, has been observed (Monge, 1928). The capacity for work is enormously reduced. Heart efficiency tests show retardation. Athletes, at high altitude, never maintain their sea level records for very long, as they are in the same situation as are untrained men at sea level. It must be emphasized that outside of the ecological milieu even at the same altitude, the physiopathological deviations are more accentuated; therefore, in the future, it will be necessary to indicate clearly the places where research in chronic mountain sickness is being carried out.

Respiration. In the Andeans the chest is enlarged (Charvin, Barcroft (2), Hurtado (5c)) and vital capacity is 10 per cent greater than in Europeans (Barcroft). Lynch (15) found in fifty Andeans that the respiratory rate is slightly increased above the sea level value. After moderate exercise, in 14 per cent, bradypneic rates started either following a short polypneic stage or at the beginning. Sometimes polypneic rates appeared without returning to normal values. In no case did the individual show a particular fatigue. The bradypneic stage is interpreted by Lynch as an effort to increase the time of oxygenation. Arnaez (10) has pointed out, in addition to the well known periodic breath, apneic phases (25 per cent) at rest, deep sudden respiration (20 per cent), and staircase breathing as if the first breath were frustrated. This last finding is rather improved after moderate exercise. He suggests that the vagal hypertonia plays a more important rôle than at sea level.

These findings are the rule in sub-acute mountain sickness and of course, are much more pronounced. Clinical observation shows that periodic deep breathing accompanying periodic work, is the mechanism best suited to altitudes. Andeans can carry a load of a hundred pounds—they run, stop, take a few deep breaths, and run again. In subacute anoxia, it is possible to ameliorate the symptoms reproducing the periodic hyperventilation of the Andeans. *Respira*

tory training is important. The respiratory adaptation to anoxemia has been studied by Forbes, Barcroft, Monge, Hurtado and Leon. Vital capacity is considerably increased (Hurtado and Leon). The most important work has been carried out by Hurtado and Rotta (16), from whom I quote a summarized report

	ABSOLUTE VALUES		RELATIVE VALUES (TOTAL CAPACITY 100%)	
	3 7 km altitude	Sea level	3 7 km	Sea level
	<i>liters</i>	<i>liters</i>		
Resp air	2 11	1 50	33 2	26 1
Mean capacity	3 58	2 89	56 4	50 3
Vital capacity	4 18	4 30	66 8	73 8
Total capacity	6 28	5 85		

According to them, the higher total capacity and the absolute and relative increase of residual air suggest a functional compensatory emphysema, as Hurtado pointed out (1928). This condition disappears at sea level, so it is not a truly acquired but an easily reversible characteristic. During subacute mountain sickness, the vital capacity is decreased, to rise progressively with amelioration. The respiratory form and rate acquire the modalities of Andeans after exercise, with the appearance of signs of dyspnea and asphyxia. Hyperventilation may lead to tetanus. One can observe the anarchy of the respiratory control: shallow respiration followed by deep breathing, periodic and Cheyne-Stokes breathing, sudden deep inspiration, apneic phases with sensations of impending asphyxia rather pronounced at night. The last may awake the patient and disturbs sleep (Arnaez, Lynch).

Mori-Chavez (17a) has pointed out, in acclimatized guinea pigs, a hyperplasia of the capillary bed and diminished arteriolar structure which permit an increase of the O₂ diffusion surface, facts which must be related to the common observation (Orbigny) of a greater lung size. In the Andean, the chest x-ray has a characteristic appearance. The lung transparency is greater than at sea level, the hilus shadow is noticeably enlarged, and the pulmonary trunks are considerably emphasized, according to Garcia Rossell (18), and Saye and Monge. In sub-acute mountain sickness, this condition is more accentuated. In some cases pulsation of the hilus shadows appears on fluoroscopy. In chronic cases, the vessels' dilatation gives the aspect of pulmonary passive congestion. In some advanced cases, the x-ray films have the appearance of pneumoconiosis, which has led to erroneous diagnosis, as Jimenez has stated.

BASAL METABOLISM AND NERVOUS SYSTEM While the basal metabolism of Andeans is normal according to Hurtado (5f), I have pointed out that, in moderate cases of subacute mountain sickness, there are often lower values which approach or reach normal metabolic rates with acclimatization. There is hyper-

tonia of the vegetative system, as proven by the oculo-cardiac reflex test (Monge, 11 Pesce, 35a, Aste, 7), during which the Andeans do not feel any distress at all, despite a fall of 50 to 60 in pulse rate. In contrast, cases with moderate symptoms of subacute mountain sickness frequently collapse. In normal Andeans Pesce and I were able to give intravenously 3.5 mgm. of atropine without clinical symptoms. The increased vagal tonus seems to cause bradycardia after exercise. The parallel activity of the sympathetic-adrenal system (Monge) may explain the tachycardias of sinus origin. The hypertonus of the vagal and sympathetic nerves must have some connection with the stability of the vaso-motor center and reflex nervous system. Gellhorn's findings on man in experimental anoxia can give an interpretation to the vertigo and the collapsing form of subacute mountain sickness. In spite of Hurtado's finding of a decreased gastric acidity, observation shows a hunger sensation after moderate exercise. Stomach ulcers are aggravated at high altitudes. Indigestion and diarrhea are common. Certainly some digestive disturbances may be due to the sensitization of the sympathetics by an increase of pH, as Van Liere (19) has suggested. Indeed a good deal more investigation of this type is needed (Van Liere).

Clinical observations show that changes in the psychological behavior at high altitudes are very frequent (Barcroft, Encinas), and several psychiatric conditions may result (Monge). McFarland (20) has carried out the most important research on the members of the International Expedition to the Andes. By means of psychological tests involving complex mental functions, he found reliable differences from performance at sea level. These manifestations are in harmony with the effects observed by the same author in flying or in pneumatic chambers.

On the basis of his experiments, Hahn (21) (of the National Institute of Andean Biology) states that it is a mistake to generalize, since some subjects are not affected by altitude. All psychological activities are slowed and it is difficult to maintain attention (Ziehen's method). Even a very complicated task, involving eye and hand co-ordination (mirror drawing of Giese), could be carried on in the mildest forms of subacute mountain sickness but more time was required. Mental training and automatization seem not to be affected. He emphasizes that in color naming (McFarland's method), if the verbal expression is substituted with a wordless procedure (Hahn's), the rate of errors is not affected by altitude. Regarding Andeans, there are no marked differences in visual reaction time, but lower motor speed values (tapping of Whipple) are found. As regards attention, he found clearly lower values than at sea level (Toulouse, Pieron's method—unpublished work).

Blood acid-base balance Reported changes of acid base equilibrium produced by hyperventilation, based on hydrogen ion concentration observations, are not in agreement because researches have been carried out with subjects whose acclimatization had not been entirely determined. Some of them evidently suffered with subacute mountain sickness. Monge pointed out (1928) that adapted people have a higher serum pH value than acclimatized people. Dill, Christian

sen and Edwards (22) found in adapted men a tendency for a slight increase in pH, progressive with altitude to about 4 6 km Above this level the pH diminished but was higher than that of acclimatized residents

Aste reported the same facts in chronic mountain sickness at 3 2 km altitude In general, the blood pH value is found within normal limits with a marked tendency to be on the alkaline side Aste, as will be seen later, found a greater difference of pH between arterial and venous blood in Andeans than the normal value at sea level in his studies on chronic mountain sickness However, Dill, Talbot and Consolazio (23) found normal values at a higher altitude Dill, Talbot and Consolazio showed that in habitable places, both CO_2 and alkaline reserve diminished, but never in sub-acute mountain sickness did the fall reach the lowest values of the residents, according to them, months will be required to reach these values With very crude methods, V Villa-Garcia (1935) and I (1) arrived at the same conclusion, measuring the increase during adaptation Since 1928, I have emphasized the fact that, in spite of a minimal p CO_2 and CO_2 content, the blood of Andeans has a higher buffer capacity than that of individuals with sub-acute mountain sickness At least this capacity is equal to that of the sea level man who has a much greater p CO_2 and CO_2 content Probably, there must be a readjustment of buffers, the nature of it being unknown, thus the buffer system must be compensated The increased hemoglobin might account for some of the difference according to Dill, Talbot and Consolazio (23) They state that there is a deficit of 2 milli-equivalents in the balance of electrolytes, at 5 3 km altitude However, the problem is not yet solved Certainly the organism as a whole must find some new regulatory mechanism to stabilize the internal respiration as a balanced mirror of the external environment The different steps described by Y Henderson, as a consequence of decreased oxygen pressure, have been outlined in sub-acute mountain sickness by Monge (1928) who established the reciprocal relation between the blood alkaline tide due to diminished CO_2 and the elimination of the bases through the urine as measured by pH ammonia, and titratable acidity A reversible process is found on returning to sea level (Monge, 1b) I have observed in Andeans (1928-1935) that the shift of pH after moderate exercise is equal to or less than that attained at sea level In sub-acute mountain sickness it is considerably greater and diminishes with acclimatization, as has been proved by standard exercise performances (Monge, 37)

Andeans show a high capacity for work "Every few minutes one would appear (Cerro de Pasco, 14,700 ft altitude) carrying a weight on his back of a hundred pounds brought up from 250 feet lower down" (Barcroft) The reviewer insists upon these facts because the literature of this subject is full of erroneous statements since the time of Jourdanet and Barcroft The Andean is constructed like an athlete This means that sub-acute mountain sickness is a disease of temporary or permanent disability, a fatigue disease As in athletics, acclimatization means fitness for continuous anoxia Mountain sickness suddenly changes the endurance of a trained individual into an unfit, unable to reach a high pulse rate as at sea level, or to hyperventilate adequately to permit suitable

work of the heart (Christensen, 36) Certainly the transport of CO_2 , the enzymatic activity of the internal milieu in fixing O_2 , and a greater cardiac output, must play a most important rôle in the altitude homeostasis, as Dill suggested (24)

Blood Barcroft (2), Heraud (1k), Hurtado (5a-g), Hurtado and Guzman Barron (5h), Talbot (25), Capdehourat (11) and Aste (unpublished work) have confirmed the high altitude polycythemia found by Vault and have studied the blood morphology and hemoglobin, which do not differ from the situation at sea level (Hall, 26) I have summarized the most recent observations in table 1

It can be seen that the red cell count, hemoglobin and hematocrit are higher than at sea level Hurtado has calculated the several blood variables He pictures the erythrocyte as a cell of greater size with less hemoglobin and oxygen saturation to facilitate the gaseous interchange. In general, the results need to be revised in relation to ecological surroundings In sub-acute mountain sickness, Monge has found a higher count of erythrocytes than the normal value at

TABLE 1

CONDITION	AUTHOR	ALTITUDE	R.B.C.	HEMOGLOBIN	HEMATOCRIT	M.C.V.	M.C.Hb	M.C.Hb CONCENT
		meters	millions	grams per cent	per cent	in microns	g	per cent
Acclimatized	Hurtado	4 500	6 66	15 93	71 1	96 20	24 4	24 9
	Aste	3 200	5 85	17 69	47 9	82 60	30 5	36 9
Subacute mountain sickness	Talbot	3 600	5 54	17 23	49 6	89 50	31 1	34 7
	Talbot	4 710	5 84	17 90	53 4	91 40	30 6	30 6
Chronic mountain sickness	Aste	3,200	6 54	20 92	50 2	86 46	32 2	37 2
	Hurtado	4-5,000	8 26	24 70	77 5	94 1	30 3	32 2

the same altitude (3 7 km.) This may be deduced also from Talbot's data at 2 8 km in the Andes. Talbot's observations show a progressive increase of the count up to about 5 km altitude but it never attained the level of residents Higher up, at 6 1 km, the count was lower In general, when the adaptive stage reaches an upper limit and acclimatization does not come, the number is enormously increased The hemoglobin follows a parallel curve Talbot suggests that to reach a maximum of hemoglobin months or years may be required Hurtado found in Andeans a blood viscosity of 8 6 ($\pm 0 14$), a coagulation time of 6 5 ($\pm 0 12$), a serum bilirubin of 0 7 mgm per cent Urteaga (unpublished work) has found in 6 cases a bilirubinemia average of 13 7 per cent direct Van der Bergh 4 per cent, indirect 9 7 per cent. He considers this increased threshold of bilirubinemia as normal since the excretion bilirubin test gives normal curves, if referred to this higher threshold He suggests it might be a device to save the pyrrholic nuclei needed in hematopoiesis (Urteaga, 27) Palti (28), at 3 2 km in one hundred native Andeans, has found a calcium value of 11 62 ($\pm 0 05$) mgm, slightly above that of 11 06 ($\pm 0 06$) at sea level The

active Ca was higher at the high altitude. In sub-acute mountain sickness, hypercalcemia, returning gradually to normal, was noted in severe cases. Salas (29), in fifty natives at 3.2 km, has found higher blood protein values than at sea level. In sub-acute mountain sickness the proteinemia was still higher. Perhaps his observations did not last long enough to encounter a reverse change. San Martín (30) has confirmed in seven individuals the slight blood sugar increase found first by Forbes (31) in sub-acute mountain sickness, and in addition has noted higher values of blood corpuscle sugar compared with sea level values. He found 0.71 mgm per cent, instead of 0.59 mgm, in hematocrit value, 0.97 mgm instead of 0.46 per cent. Probably with acclimatization blood sugar may come back to lower levels, as was found by Forbes. There are not enough data to make definite conclusions. I have found the white cell count normal in Andeans but slightly increased in sub-acute mountain sickness. Most impressive are the increased number of reticulocytes and the presence of an enormous number of histiocytes in mild forms of altitude disease. Even in normal men they have been present (Hurtado, Barcroft, Monge, Talbot).

Barcroft's work regarding arterial blood O_2 saturation established that the Andeans had a lower value (80-82) than newcomers (90-92). Hurtado confirmed this, as did different members of the Chilean International Expedition. The most extensive work has been done by Hurtado, who has established particular levels of arterial blood O_2 for different altitudes. Aste, at 3.2 km, has found saturations more like those at sea level (93.5). Dill, Christensen and Edwards (22) have confirmed Barcroft's view that diffusion alone accounts for the transfer of gases in the alveolar epithelium. Keys, Hall and Guzmán Barrón (32), working at several progressive altitudes, have stated that the "physiological" deviation curves tend to shift to the left of sea level values until about 4.5 km altitude and to the right at higher stations. "This may or may not be related with the fact that somewhere around this altitude there is not a relationship between O_2 arterial saturation and the well-being of the subjects." On the contrary, the natives have the lower saturation. So, in order to explain the inability of the body to fix oxygen in mountain sickness, Guzmán Barrón, Dill, Edwards and Hurtado (33) suggested a disturbance of the oxidation-reduction system. Edwards (34) argued that the problem is one of utilization rather than of transportation and suggested that myoglobin plays an important rôle. In fact, Hurtado, Rotta, Merino and Pons (35) proved this to be true as regards the myoglobin. Since Campbell's research, particular attention has been paid to the oxygen capillary pressure. In discussing acclimatization, I reported higher venous O_2 saturation and pressure in cases of sub-acute mountain sickness as compared to Andeans, as if the tissues had not taken oxygen from the blood (1928) (1a). Aste (unpublished work), comparing the arterial and venous O_2 saturation of normal and chronic mountain sickness individuals, has found facts in agreement with my previous investigations. Thus he points out in acclimatized men an arterial-venous O_2 difference of 60.5, as compared with only 39.8 in patients. In spite of the fact that there are other factors which can influence the uptake of O_2 from the blood, it is interesting to point out that a characteristic of

mountain sickness is that the O_2 flows by without being taken up by the tissues. The same holds true for patients suffering with sub-acute mountain sickness who, on being brought to sea level during the recuperative period, show a diminished O_2 intake. These facts were so impressive that the reviewer could suggest (1928) that "altitude changes the capacity of the tissues to fix O_2 . We can suggest that there are unknown substances which bring about acclimatization" (1a). This opinion still is in harmony with the modern concept of biochemistry (38).

Chronic mountain sickness. The clinical picture resembles fully advanced cases of Polycythemia vera. The patient, at rest, has either an erythrose color, which turns blue on the least effort, or a dark cyanotic color more conspicuous in the face and hands. There is a generalized dilatation of the blood vessels. The sclerae are intensely colored by distended capillaries, the eyes being hidden behind edematous and bluish eyelids. The nasal and oral mucosae are wine red. The skin of the body is dry, while the forehead and hands are usually covered with sweat. The hands show clubbing of the fingers. The nails appear to be inserted like watch crystals. Epistaxis is frequent. Hoarseness and aphonia are often noted. The thorax is enlarged—of the emphysematous type. The patient feels extremely weak, has a tendency to sleep and is frequently found in a state of drowsiness. Sometimes he falls into coma for two or three hours. Spells of dizziness and faintness occur. On occasions there are crises of vomiting. Constipation alternates with diarrhea. Dyspnea is permanent, bronchitis is frequent. There are recurring congestive processes of the lungs with hemoptysis and low fever, which disappear when the patient goes down to sea level. Cardiac disorders are not found for a long time, but right heart insufficiency supervenes with the progress of the disease. Cardiac pains of anginal distribution appear in some cases. In one case, simultaneous with angor, the vision grew cloudy and the patient became unconscious and fell. Hyperthermia very rarely occurs. Temporary blindness (Dammert) and temporary deafness are not infrequent. The liver is moderately enlarged. Enlargement of the spleen has been found in 12 per cent of the cases.

Algeas and paresthesias are a common complaint. Excruciating pains in the extremities and pain in the lumbar region or in the joints particularly in the tendon attachments at joint cavities, are present. The pain sometimes immobilizes the patient during several days or weeks, only to disappear spontaneously or when descending to a lower altitude. Bleeding improves this condition. Some of these symptoms which I described (1928) are similar to those found by Armstrong in aviators. There may be violent cephalalgia, subsiding after lumbar puncture. Paresthesias are varied in type and localization. Unpleasant sensations of heat in the face or of hot water being poured on the back. One patient had the sensation of the loss of one hand. Formication in the feet and the sensation of being pricked by pins are frequent.

In cases of severe involvement it is possible to find marked disturbance in the behavior and memory of the patients—the entire psychic personality appearing altered. Nervous exhaustion is very common. The patients complain of sexual frigidity.

active Ca was higher at the high altitude. In sub-acute mountain sickness, hypercalcemia, returning gradually to normal, was noted in severe cases. Salas (29), in fifty natives at 3.2 km, has found higher blood protein values than at sea level. In sub-acute mountain sickness the proteinemia was still higher. Perhaps his observations did not last long enough to encounter a reverse change. San Martín (30) has confirmed in seven individuals the slight blood sugar increase found first by Forbes (31) in sub-acute mountain sickness, and in addition has noted higher values of blood corpuscle sugar compared with sea level values. He found 0.71 mgm per cent, instead of 0.59 mgm, in hematocrit value, 0.97 mgm instead of 0.46 per cent. Probably with acclimatization blood sugar may come back to lower levels, as was found by Forbes. There are not enough data to make definite conclusions. I have found the white cell count normal in Andeans but slightly increased in sub-acute mountain sickness. Most impressive are the increased number of reticulocytes and the presence of an enormous number of histiocytes in mild forms of altitude disease. Even in normal men they have been present (Hurtado, Barcroft, Monge, Talbot).

Barcroft's work regarding arterial blood O_2 saturation established that the Andeans had a lower value (80-82) than newcomers (90-92). Hurtado confirmed this, as did different members of the Chilean International Expedition. The most extensive work has been done by Hurtado, who has established particular levels of arterial blood O_2 for different altitudes. Aste, at 3.2 km, has found saturations more like those at sea level (93.5). Dill, Christensen and Edwards (22) have confirmed Barcroft's view that diffusion alone accounts for the transfer of gases in the alveolar epithelium. Keys, Hall and Guzman Barron (32), working at several progressive altitudes, have stated that the "physiological" deviation curves tend to shift to the left of sea level values until about 4.5 km altitude and to the right at higher stations. "This may or may not be related with the fact that somewhere around this altitude there is not a relationship between O_2 arterial saturation and the well-being of the subjects." On the contrary, the natives have the lower saturation. So, in order to explain the inability of the body to fix oxygen in mountain sickness, Guzman Barron, Dill, Edwards and Hurtado (33) suggested a disturbance of the oxidation-reduction system. Edwards (34) argued that the problem is one of utilization rather than of transportation and suggested that myoglobin plays an important rôle. In fact, Hurtado, Rotta, Merino and Pons (35) proved this to be true as regards the myoglobin. Since Campbell's research, particular attention has been paid to the oxygen capillary pressure. In discussing acclimatization, I reported higher venous O_2 saturation and pressure in cases of sub-acute mountain sickness as compared to Andeans, as if the tissues had not taken oxygen from the blood (1928) (1a). Aste (unpublished work), comparing the arterial and venous O_2 saturation of normal and chronic mountain sickness individuals, has found facts in agreement with my previous investigations. Thus he points out in acclimatized men an arterial-venous O_2 difference of 60.5, as compared with only 39.8 in patients. In spite of the fact that there are other factors which can influence the uptake of O_2 from the blood, it is interesting to point out that a characteristic of

an eosinophilia. Certainly there is established at high altitude a new equilibrium between the increased hematopoiesis and the increased destruction of red cells.

The characteristic feature that gives this disease its personality is the fact that all troubles and ills disappear when the patient is brought to a lower altitude or, of course, to sea level. This undoubtedly is due to a single cause: anoxemia. Usually after a stay at sea level, the patient can return to the altitude and live there for some time without great discomfort. As time goes on, however, the sea level cure fades and asphyxial disorders conducive to immediate death in coma and acidosis may occur as soon as the patient reaches high altitude. Most of the patients become acclimatized temporarily at a lower altitude, but at times they have to go down to sea level.

I have described several varieties of chronic mountain sickness, according to the predominance of oxygen want in certain tissues or organs. I shall enumerate them briefly. In the congested cerebral form (1f) appear (1936) spasms of painful headache, fullness of the head, photophobia, capillary ocular injection, blur-

TABLE 2

BLOOD	CONDITION	R.B.C.	HEMO- GLOBIN	HEMA- TOCRIT R.B.C.	M.C.V	M.C.Hb	M.C.Hb CONCENT
		millions	grams per cent	per cent	cc. microns	g	per cent
Venous	Acclimatized	5.85	17.60	47.9	82.6	80.5	36.9
	Unacclimatized (chronic mountain sickness)	6.54	20.92	56.2	86.4	82.2	37.2
Arterial	Acclimatized	6.14	17.50	47.3	77.5	28.7	36.9
	Unacclimatized (chronic mountain sickness)	6.21	20.21	57.4	92.5	32.7	35.3

ring of vision or deafness, scotoma, lacrimation, vertigo, dizziness, general sweating and vomiting, intense cyanosis, bradycardia, drowsiness and unconsciousness. The spinal fluid pressure is enormously increased. Arellano (6) has established that repeated lumbar punctures relieve the patient. Frequently spontaneous epistaxis ends the crisis. Neurological forms, with monoplegia or hemiplegia, sometimes appear. In one case, after several months of moderate erythremic symptoms, the patient suddenly developed a modest degree of palsy of the right arm and aphasia lasting several minutes. Every morning for eight days the trouble returned. On coming down to sea level the symptoms disappeared. Two months later the patient returned to high altitude but after a stay of three weeks the troubles reappeared and he was obliged to give up his work. Now he is entirely normal after two years at sea level. Collapsing forms are frequent and usually are associated with a syndrome of hyperventilation and tetany. In one case of moderate erythremia at 40 km, two attacks of tetany occurred at an interval of several years, provoked by a light bronchial inflamma-

tion The condition was so severe that the patient, in status tetania, was transferred to a lower altitude (28 km) and the symptoms disappeared during the trip

Cardiac, digestive and pulmonary emphysematous forms are frequent I have observed one case of erythremia with crises of intense cephalalgia (once relieved by lumbar puncture) accompanied by albuminuria, all of which disappeared when the patient came to sea level The symptoms and the albuminuria recurred again at the high altitude At sea level during seven years the patient remained normal Recently he returned to high altitude and developed a syndrome of high arterial pressure, without renal insufficiency, which was cured on returning to sea level

Mental forms are common (Monge, 1g) In a recent case a change of the personality was surprising The patient found himself unable to work, he saw everything wrong, he was afraid to meet his employees Sometimes he got up at night and pretended to work He realized that there was nothing to do but he went just the same Finally he conceived the idea of committing suicide He was immediately relieved on being brought to sea level The mental disturbances came back when he returned to the high altitude At sea level he now enjoys a permanent cure

When one considers the clinical syndromes which lead to polycythemia, a clear division into two groups may be established To the first group belong the lung and cardio-arterial processes which act mechanically on the permeability of the respiratory epithelium Its symptomatology, besides polycythemia and changes of the acid-base equilibrium, is distinctly pulmonary In the second group there is polycythemia and a definite clinical syndrome—the so-called erythremic syndrome (Vaquez, Osler, Monge) with its ubiquitous pathology never found in the first group These two diseases of equal nosographic symptomatology, polycythemia vera and chronic mountain sickness, have different pathogenesis the cause of the second is clear—anoxemia No one knows the cause of polycythemia vera After my first paper (1935), I was inclined to accept the identity of both because there is a gradient of frequency of cases from the high altitude “inhabited” places to the lower “habitable” places and finally to sea level Thus I do not see any reason to discard the possibility of the loss of acclimatization at sea level It would remain to be demonstrated that oxygen therapy relieves selected cases of Vaquez disease at sea level Unfortunately the therapy done in compressed chambers is not conclusive Several months, at least, are needed to have a steady amelioration at sea level Hypertension and enlarged spleen may be found in chronic mountain sickness

As a hypothesis of pathogenesis I suggested (1928) that impermeability of the lungs is due to a low diffusion coefficient of O_2 , as can be deduced from Harrop's work (39) However no proof has been given Hurtado (5d) in his last paper stresses the importance of lung fibro-sclerotic changes due to anoxemia, increased arterial pulmonary pressure and high viscosity He thinks that morphology has been unduly neglected Structural changes of the lung alone, as in

pulmonary sclerosis, would not explain the universal cellular pathology which occurs in chronic mountain sickness. So it may be a primary chemical dysfunction. If the hypothesis of Guzman Barron, Dill, Edwards and Hurtado concerning the alteration of the oxidation reduction systems due to low O_2 pressure, which is supported by the findings of Monge (1928) and Aste (1940) regarding O_2 not taken by the tissues, is accepted it must hold for lung tissue metabolism. Certainly the lining of the respiratory cells which regulates O_2 passage from the alveolar air to the blood must be included in the same enzymatic dysfunction. Besides, this hypothesis must be extended to the mechanism which regulates the transport and elimination of CO_2 for carbonic anhydrase according to Meldrum and Roughton plays a decisive rôle in the output of CO_2 from bicarbonate in the lungs. Dysfunction would mean disturbance of CO_2 elimination which always occurs as soon as mountain sickness begins. There is not any fact suggesting a deficiency of mineral traces. Normal enzymatic equilibrium explains the whole process of the acclimatized organism integrated by hormonal and nervous devices. Its failure would mean chronic mountain sickness either ubiquitous or elective as it happens to be, in the case of lesions of the germinal cells.

The lasting treatment is the cure at sea level. I have tried x ray therapy to shorten the time of recuperation.

Inapparent chronic mountain sickness and the physiology of reproduction at the high plateaus. It is a very well known fact in South America that high altitude exercises a deleterious influence on fertility. Clinical observations prove it in man and in animals (Monge 40f). I have described cases of fertile couples at sea level who were infertile at high altitude. In one case the infertility of the male was demonstrated. Carvallo (personal communication) found two cases of sea level men coming from high altitude in which no spermatozoa could be found. It is a common fact that adapted pregnant women often come down to the coast to be delivered because miscarriages and sometimes sudden death of the new born happen at the heights. In animal breeding I have pointed out (1940) some interesting facts. Eggs from sea level do not hatch at high altitude (Humboldt, Agazzoti). A couple of dogs brought to Lassa (Thibet) never reproduced according to Cutting (41). Sterility in rabbits, horses, cattle and cats has also been found.

It is interesting to recall Father Calancha's observation (1639) that the Spanish conquerors at 14,000 feet (Potosi Bolivia) did not have offspring until fifty-eight years after the city was founded. In 1535, the capital of Peru was transferred from Jauja (11,500 ft) to Lima (sea level) because the horses, fowl and pigs did not reproduce, as is stated in the act of foundation of Lima. Father Cobo (1605) established Mendelian anticipations in saying "The Indians are stronger and multiply enormously while the majority of the children of Spanish parents born in such climates do not live. the climate's influence is visible in the half breed and quarter breed, the more Indian blood, the better they grow (40a)." On the other hand, the birth rate of the Andeans is equal to that

of the sea level people I quote from the last census of Peru, the following figures through the courtesy of Dr Arca Parro

	ALTITUDE		
	0-2 km.	2-3 km	3-4 4 kgm
Population	2,251,718	1,596,004	1,742,229
Birth rate %	28	26	26

Thus the physiology of reproduction in the high plateaus is normal in regard to the birth rate of the Andeans

Research in the physiology of reproduction related to subacute, chronic, and particularly inapparent chronic mountain sickness has been conducted by Monge and associates (40b) Monge and Mori-Chavez (40e), on examining cats sent to 4 4 km altitude, found that the testes were devoid of the germinal epithelium, Sertoli cells replacing spermatogonia Even basal spermatogonia had disappeared The Leydig cells showed a noticeable increase In some rabbits they found that the majority of the seminiferous tubules had only the basal line of spermatogonia and Sertoli cells In others, there was a second row of spermatocytes but neither spermatocides nor spermatozoa In some rabbits the process of recovering was visible

The research in sheep planned by Monge (40c) and conducted by San Martín (42) is very promising Sheep acclimatized at high altitude since the seventeenth century have 100 per cent fertility The fertility comes down to 30 per cent when pure-blooded imported rams, from sea level, are used for cross breeding With progressive adaptation, fertility can be raised to 60 per cent to 70 per cent But in order to attain this result 4 to 7 rams per hundred are used instead of the one or two at sea level So there is in general a very high percentage (40-50 per cent) of infertility which, according to current opinion, is due to the ewes being infertile ("machorras") This percentage, in my opinion, could be the statistical result of ewes mated with rams of unproven fertility Actually when the rams are brought to a lower altitude they recover their fertility From the research now in progress, two facts deserve special mention In a group of 67 supposedly selected acclimatized rams, the variation of semen pH was 5.6 to 8.5, which indicates that the pH regulatory system fails at high altitude The motility was diminished and the sperm was not suited for insemination Only in 23 was the pH within normal range 6.2 to 6.8 Recently, with the aid of San Martín, a study has been made of 2 rams selected as sires in Chile (sea level altitude) and brought to Huancayo (3.2 km altitude) Their food was selected, both suffered from mountain sickness during the first week Then they were apparently normal One, after eight months, does not have spermatozoa but has an exaggerated sexual desire The other, after an initial stage of reduced spermatogenesis (twelve million germinal cells instead of a thousand million), high pH (8.5), and absence of motility, has recovered However, he has very low sexual desire Easily, on the other hand (unpublished

work), tested a group of rams recently brought to an altitude of 4 km. and found 40 per cent of them fertile

By selecting normal semen and artificial insemination, it was possible to get 86.4 per cent pregnancy in the supposedly infertile ewes ("machorras") (San Martín). Thus was proved the infertility of the males and the fertility of the females ("machorras") (1941). The emphasis given to this point is explainable because it concerns eleven million sheep in Peru alone.² In a field experiment at the altitude of 4 km. with only one selected ram, seven hundred ewes were mated with a resulting pregnancy of 68.8 per cent. The control group, seven hundred ewes mated with 49 rams as usual in the high plateaus and under natural conditions, gave only 60 per cent pregnancy. So animal races can be created through scientific discrimination.

Here I enter on particularly interesting ground—race pathology, as a function of inapparent clinical disturbances. Chronic mountain sickness cannot be judged only by a general appearance or by an outstanding clinical symptomatology. Its influence may be extended electively to the germinal cells. In high altitudes men, both physically and mentally, might seem to be at their best but at times they are sterile. In animals the same thing occurs. Even though the sexual desire is manifest, the observer may be misled. It is not an exaggeration to stress the gravity of these findings in regard to the problem of population and the possibilities of human and animal races not suited for acclimatization. One is obliged to accept the fact that the autochthonous Andean man belongs to a climatophysiological variety of human race which has adequate power of reproduction in an atmosphere of permanent anoxia. This may help to explain the attachment which that man has for his altitude environment, the ailments suffered by him in the traumatic climate of the lowlands (lowland sickness) and the urge to return home that has made of him a nomad, and finally the old Inca mandate that permitted mass population displacements only to similar climates—a factor still active in the annual work migrations. Certainly, the Incas knew more about the influence of the high plateaus upon the individuals and the behavior of the autochthonous societies of America than do men of today (Monge). Acclimatization has a biological determinism on the individual, the race, the societies and the history of South America (Monge, 40d). The unfit are eliminated through a process of natural selection (chronic mountain sickness), either visible or inapparent.

REFERENCES

- (1) MONGE C. Sobre un caso de Enfermedad de Vaquez. Síndrome eritremico de altura. Com. Acad. Med. Lima. Imprenta Sanmartí, Lima, 1925. 1 (a) MONGE, C. E. FARCINAS, C. HERAUD, A. HUERTADO, M. CERVELLI, T. ESCAJADILLO, D. FOS ALBA, J. LOPEZ, A. MOREY, NUÑEZ, E. RONDON, E. ROSA-MEDINA. Estudios fisiológicos sobre el hombre de los Andes. Anal. Fac. Med. Lima 11: 1, 1928. 1 (b) MONGE, C. La Enfermedad de los Andes. Síndromes eritremicos. Ibid. 11: 76, 1928. EKTIVAS, E. Sorocho y Eritremia discreta. Ibid. 11: 200,

² I am very much indebted to Prof. Fred McKenne of the Utah State Agriculture College Logan, Utah, who kindly came to Peru to aid in this research.

- 1928 1 (c) MONGE, C Les Erythremies de l'altitude Masson, Paris, 1929
 Climatopathologie des Hauts Plateaux Traité Climat Biol Med Masson,
 Paris, 1934 1 (d) La Malattia delle Ande Il Policlinico, Vol 36 (Sezione
 Medica), 1929 1 (e) High altitude disease Arch Int Med 59 32, 1937
 Life in the Andes and chronic mountain sickness Science 95 79, 1942 1 (f)
 Sobre algunas manifestaciones congestivas de orden cerebral en las eritemias
 de la altura Anal Fac Med Lima 19 83, 1936 1 (g) Perturbaciones psiqui-
 cas en la Enfermedad de la Altura Rev Neuro-psiq, Lima 2 536, 1939 1 (h)
 Climatophysiologie des Hauts Plateaux Traité Climat Biol Med, Masson,
 Paris, 1934 1 (i) El sistema nervioso vegetativo del hombre de los Andes
 J Neuro-psiq Panam 11 56, 1939 1 (j) MONGE, C AND V VILLAGARCÍA
 La Carbocidosis en la Altura Anal Fac Med Lima 18 182, 1935 1 (k)
 HERAUD, C Estados hematológicos Ibid 11 261, 1928
- (2) BARCROFT, J The respiratory function of the blood Lessons from high altitude
 Cambridge University Press, 1925
- (3) RONDÓN Entremias de la altura Anal Fac Med Lima 11 183, 1928
- (4) TALBOT, J H AND D B DILL Clinical observations at high altitude Am J Med
 Sc 192 626, 1936
- (5) HURTADO, A Estudios fisiológicos sobre el hombre de los Andes Anal Fac Med
 Lima 11 23, 1928 5 (a) Sobre la patología de la altura Publ Fac Med
 Lima, 1930 5 (b) Sobre un posible caso de eritemia de la altura Actas
 Acad Cienc Exact Fis Nat, Lima 2 71, 1939 5 (c) Aspectos fisiológicos y
 patológicos de la vida en la altura Imprenta Rimac, Lima, 1937 5 (d) Chronic
 mountain sickness (to be published) 5 (e) Respiratory adaptation to the
 anoxemia Am J Physiol 109 626, 1934 Respiratory adaptation in the
 Indian natives of the Peruvian Andes Am J Physiol Anthropol 17 137, 1932
 Volumen del torax, capacidad vital y metabolismo básico en la altura Anal
 Fac Med Lima 11 266, 1928 5 (f) El metabolismo básico del soldado peru-
 ano Rev Sanidad Militar, Lima 2 9, 1929 Observaciones sobre el metabo-
 lismo básico en la altura Anal Fac Med Lima 15 289, 1928 5 (g) Blood ob-
 servations on the Indian natives of the Peruvian Andes Am J Physiol 3 487,
 1932 5 (h) HURTADO, A AND A GUZMAN-BARRON Estudios sobre el indio
 peruano Publ Fac Med Lima, 1930
- (6) ARELLANO, A El líquido céfalo-raquídeo en la altura Verificación de un caso de
 Enfermedad de Monge Rev Neuro-psiq, Lima 2 247, 1939
- (7) ASTE-SALAZAR, H Exploración funcional del sistema nervioso extracardiaco del
 andino Anal Fac Med Lima 19 226, 1936
- (8) CERVELLI, M La respuesta cardio-vascular al esfuerzo Tesis de Lima, 1929
- (9) TORRES, H La presión arterial en las altiplanicies andinas Anal Fac Med Lima
 20 349, 1937
- (10) ARNAEZ, E Forma de la respiración en la altura Ibid 25 2, 1942
- (11) CAPDEHOURAT, E L Biología del hombre de la altitud Imprenta Ministerio Jus-
 ticia, Buenos Aires, 1937
- (12) MONGE, C, E ENCINAS, C HERAUD AND A HURTADO Estudios fisiológicos sobre
 el hombre de los Andes Anal Fac Med Lima 11 14, 1928
- (13) SAENZ, R Electrocardiograma en la altura Ibid 22 237, 1939
- (14) ROTTA, A La Circulación en las grandes alturas Tesis de doctor Imprenta Gil,
 Lima, 1938
- (15) LINCH, A Ritmo de la respiración en la altura Anal Fac Med Lima 25 116, 1942
- (16) HURTADO, A AND A ROTTA La capacidad pulmonar en la altura Rev Soc Biol
 Lima 1 7, 1939
- (17) MORI-CHAVEZ, P Contribución al estudio del Soroche Anal Fac Med Lima 1
 126, 1935 17 (a) Manifestaciones pulmonares del conejo del llano transportado
 a la altura Ibid 19 137, 1936

- (18) GARCIA ROSELL O Datos sobre Tuberculosis on los Andes Tesis de doctor Lima 1936
- (19) VAN LIERE E J The effect of anoxia on the alimentary tract *Physiol Rev* 21 307 1941 Anoxia its effects in the body The University of Chicago Press 1942 VAN LIERE E J G CHIALER AND I A VILES The effect of anoxemia on the digestive movements of the stomach *Am J Physiol* 102: 629 1932
- (20) McFARLAND R A Psycho-physiological studies at high altitude in the Andes The effects of rapid ascents by aeroplane and train *J Comp Psychol* 23: 191 1937 Sensory and motor responses during acclimatization *Ibid* 23 227 1937 Mental and psycho somatic responses during acclimatization *Ibid* 24: 147 1937 Sensory and circulatory responses of the Andean resident at 17,500 feet *Ibid* 24 189 1937
- (21) HAHN H Tiempo de reacción visual y sus variaciones por el factor altura *Anal Fac Med Lima* 25 101 1942
- (22) DILL D B E H CHRISTENSEN AND H T EDWARDS *Am J Physiol* 115: 530 1936
- (23) DILL D B J H TALBOT AND W V CONSOLAZIO Blood as a physico-chemical system Man at high altitude *J Biol Chem* 118 640 1937
- (24) DILL D B Life heat and altitude Cambridge Harvard University Press, 1938
- (25) TALBOT J H Studies at high altitude Morphology and oxygen combining capacity of the blood *Folia haemat* 55 23 1936
- (26) HALL F C The effect of altitude on the affinity of hemoglobin for oxygen *J Biol Chem* 115 485 1936
- (27) URTEAGA O AND G BOISSET Sobre la hematología y la excreción de bilirrubina en la Enfermedad de Monge (soroche Cronico) *Anal Fac Med Lima* 25 67, 1942 URTEAGA O Discusión sobre la patogenia de la ictericia con referencia a la Enfermedad de Monge *Ibid* 25 89 1942
- (28) PALT V Calcemia y sistema nervioso vegetativo en los altiplanos andinos *Ibid* 22 75 1939
- (29) SALAS A Proteinemia en el hombre de los Andes *Ibid* 22 109 1939
- (30) SAN MARTIN M Glucosa sanguínea y su variación con los cambios de altitud *Ibid* 23 312 1940
- (31) FORBES W H Blood sugar glucose tolerance at high altitude *Am J Physiol* 118: 309 1936
- (32) KEYS A F G HALL AND E S GUZMAN BARRON The position of the oxygen dissociation curve of human blood at high altitude *Ibid* 115 292 1936
- (33) GUZMAN BARRON E S D B DILL, H T EDWARDS AND A HURTADO Acute mountain sickness *J Clin Investigation* 16 541 1937
- (34) EDWARDS H T Lactic acid in rest and work at high altitude *Am J Physiol* 116 367 1936
- (35) HURTADO A A ROTA C MERINO AND J PONA Studies of myohemoglobin at high altitude *Am J Med Sc* 194: 708 1937
- (35) (a) MONTE C E ENCINAS M CERVELLI H PRECE AND V VILLANARCTA. Fisiología Andina *Anal Fac Med Lima* 17 1 1935
- (36) CHRISTENSEN E H Sauerstoffaufnahme and respiratorische Funktionen in grossen Höhen *Skand Arch Phys* 76: 1936 E H CHRISTENSEN AND W H FORBES Der Kreislauf in grossen Höhen. *Ibid* 76 1937
- (37) MONGE C Posibles mecanismos bioquímicos adaptativos a la vida en las alturas *Actas Acad Cienc Exac Fis Nat Lima* 2: 11, 1939
- (38) MONTE C J MEJIA V BALTI AND A SALAS Sobre algunos puntos de la bioquímica de la sangre en las alturas *Anal Fac Med Lima* 21: 237 1938
- (39) HARROP G A. Polycythemia *Medicine* 7 291 1928
- (40) (a) MONTE C Política Sanitaria Indiana y Colonial en el Tahuantinsuyo *Anal Fac Med Lima* 17: 233, 1935 40 (b) Fisiología de la reproducción en la altura *Ibid* 25 10 1942 40 (c) MONTE C AND M MARTIN Nota sobre azoospermia

de carneros llegados a la altura Ibid 25 58, 1942 40 (d) MONGE, C Influencia biológica del Altiplano en el individuo, la raza, las sociedades y la historia de América Editorial Minerva Publ Univ San Marcos, Lima, 1940 40 (e) C MONGE, AND P MORI-CHAVEZ La espermatogénesis en la altura Anal Fac Med Lima 25 34, 1942 40 (f) MONGE, C Unanue y Cosmopatología Reforma Med , Lima 168 278, 1933

(41) CUTTING C S In Lhassa, the forbidden J Nat Hist 37 103, 1936

(42) SAN MARTIN, M AND J ATKINS Estudios sobre la fertilidad del ganado lanar en la altura Anal Fac Med Lima 25 41, 1942

THE RÔLE OF THE LIPIDS IN ATHEROSCLEROSIS

EDWIN F. HIRSCH AND SIDNEY WEINHOUSE¹

The Henry Baird Favill Laboratory of St. Luke's Hospital and the Department of Pathology of the University of Chicago Chicago Illinois

Atherosclerosis of the aorta and its branches, by far the commonest vascular disease, ranks high among the causes of natural death in man. Although the records and observations of atherosclerosis in man and animals have great antiquity, no generally acceptable cause for the lesions has been established. The tissue changes of atherosclerosis are regarded by some as part of an ageing process of the vessels, but according to the opinion of others the lesions are caused by lipid infiltrations of the intima and result from disorders of lipid metabolism.

Deposits of lipids, the formation of fibrous plaques and atheromas, and the deposition of calcium in the intima of the aorta and its branches are the dominant changes of atherosclerosis. The initial gross manifestations of the disorder are fatty streaks or small nodules in the root, arch and posterior wall of the aorta, especially about the ostiums of the intercostal arteries and other branches. Growths of fibrous tissue in these fatty deposits form larger discrete and confluent lesions. Later, with necrosis, the centers soften and become masses of soft lipid material and tissue debris, the atheromas. When the lining edge of the atheroma breaks, the lesion becomes an atheromatous ulcer. Simultaneously calcification may occur, and later even bone tissues may form. Injury of the lining of the blood vessels opposite these lesions favors thrombosis which increases the gravity of the atherosclerotic lesions. Complete descriptions of the gross and microscopic changes in aortic and arterial tissues with atherosclerosis have been published by Marchand (44), Duff (18), Leary (39, 40), Aschoff (4, 5) and Frey (21).

Many pathologists, among them Virchow (68), Sanders (58), Beitzke (9) and Wells (74) have stated that the development of atherosclerosis depends upon focal injuries or retrogressive changes of the media, commonly attributed to an aging process, the intima lesions, accordingly, being of secondary significance. Another view favored by Marchand (44), Lubarsch (9), Aschoff (4, 5), Anitschkow (2, 3), Leary (39, 40) and others has emphasized the importance of the lipid infiltrations into the intima. The lipid deposits, thus, are primary, initiate the other changes of the vessel walls, and atherosclerosis is a specific disease in which aging of the tissues is only a contributing factor.

Morphologic studies and chemical analyses of human and animal aortas have attempted to establish the significance of the lipids in atherosclerosis. The morphologic approach has demonstrated the presence of lipids, especially cholesterol, in the tissue lesions. Chemical analyses have revealed the composi-

¹ The Seymour Coman Fellow in the Department of Pathology of the University of Chicago.

tion of these lipid deposits and have provided data for comparisons with the composition of lipids in other tissues of the body. The results of these chemical analyses also set apart the changes of atherosclerosis from those developing with senescence of tissues. Our review is limited to these chemical phases of atherosclerosis.

CHANGES IN THE CHEMICAL COMPOSITION OF THE AORTA WITH AGE Atherosclerosis of the aorta and arteries is associated with an increased lipid content of the tissues. The chemical analyses demonstrating this increase are summarized by Wells (74). Because these analyses of entire aortas included both the normal and the atherosclerotic tissues, no distinction was made between the chemical changes occurring with the disease and those due to senescence. Weinhouse and Hirsch (71), in a study of these problems, quantitatively analyzed human aortas with and without atherosclerosis. To avoid the possibility of including pathologic tissues, only media, carefully dissected from the intima and adventitia, was used. The absence of retrogressive changes in the media was verified by microscopic examination.

TABLE 1
Variation in composition of media by age groups

AGE GROUP	MOISTURE*	LIPID EXTRACT†	CHOLESTEROL†			PHOSPHATIDE†			GALACTOSIDE†	CALCIUM†
			Free	Total	Ester	Ether soluble	Ether insoluble	Total†		
0-40	68.4	6.42	1.05	1.78	1.24	2.13	0.22	2.21	0.59	0.33
41-60	71.8	8.31	1.36	2.23	1.44	1.25	1.53	2.70	1.09	1.10
61-84	70.3	10.57	1.87	3.84	3.30	1.29	1.59	2.91	0.95	2.57

* The average content is given as percentage of wet tissue

† The average content is given as percentage of dry tissue

Lipids A progressive increase in all lipid constituents of the media with age was observed (table 1). The free cholesterol in the highest age group was almost double the average value for the lowest age group. The cholesterol combined as ester in the highest age group almost tripled the amount in the lowest age group. The phospholipids as a whole increased only slightly with age. Within this class, however, there were relatively great changes. In the aortas of youths, ether-soluble phospholipids (lecithin and cephalin) preponderated, in the older aortas, ether-insoluble phospholipids (sphingomyelin) constituted the major portion of the phospholipid. The increase in the sphingomyelin fraction of the aorta from the lowest to the highest age group was great, from 0.22 to 1.6 per cent of the dry tissue. An increase with advancing age was observed also in the galactoside content, an observation in agreement with analyses by Kimmelsiel (32).

Calcium The calcium content increased greatly with age from a low value of 0.33 per cent to 2.57 per cent in the highest age-group. The increase, occurring without evidence of tissue degeneration apparently is a normal process without causal relation to pathological calcification of the intima. This is

demonstrated clearly by a comparison of the calcium content of the media with the corresponding intima. In the middle age-group, for example, six medias contained approximately equal quantities of calcium. Two had no intimal changes, three had moderate atherosclerosis and the other had marked atherosclerosis and calcification. The lack of correlation between intimal and medial calcification was more obvious in the highest age-group. Of the two aortas in which the media contained the lowest calcium content, the intima was markedly calcified. In one aorta, where the media had the highest calcium content, the intima had the slightest atherosclerosis, without calcification. A similar increase of cholesterol and of calcium with advancing age has been reported by Bürger (11) not only in the aortas of man, but also of horses and cattle.

Moisture Dehydration of the tissue colloids in the media has been proposed as an important factor of atherosclerosis. This opinion is based upon the observations by Bürger and Schlomka (12) that tissues such as costal cartilage, cornea and lens lose water progressively with age. The loss in water, accordingly, decreases the capacity of the tissues to hold substances in solution, whereby the least soluble constituents, namely, cholesterol and calcium precipitate. However, table 1 revealed no significant change in the moisture content of the media with increase in age. This agrees with the results reported by Bürger (11).

Summarizing the chemical changes of the media with age there is a significant increase in the free and total cholesterol, phospholipids, galactosides and glycerides as the tissues become older. There is a marked increase in the calcium but no change in the moisture content. All of these changes have no obvious relationship to the severity of the intimal lesions. Chemical evidence therefore, does not support the opinion that atherosclerosis occurs as a result of changes in the media.

Macroscopically and microscopically normal intima tissue is relatively rare, consequently too few analyses were carried out for conclusions regarding the effect of age on chemical changes in the intima. Tissues from five normal intimas were analyzed. In general they had a higher lipid content and lower calcium content than the corresponding media tissue. The average values for intimal constituents calculated as per cent of dry tissue were: free cholesterol 2.26 per cent, total cholesterol, 5.92, phospholipids 2.65, galactosides, 0.98, total lipids, 14.4, and calcium 0.23.

CHANGES IN THE CHEMICAL COMPOSITION OF THE AORTA WITH ATHEROSCLEROSIS
Cholesterol The first quantitative determinations of cholesterol in atherosclerotic aortas were reported by Windaus (77). He found in two normal aortas 0.119 and 0.107 per cent free cholesterol, and 0.032 and 0.047 per cent esterified cholesterol. In two atheromatous aortas, the values were 0.741 and 0.673 for the free cholesterol and 1.043 and 0.792 for ester cholesterol. Thus, the atheromatous tissues contained six to seven times as much free cholesterol and about twenty times as much esterified cholesterol as normal tissues.

The next significant contribution to the chemistry of atherosclerosis was by Schönheimer (59, 60) who made a systematic study of the effect of age and

atherosclerosis on the cholesterol content of the aorta. In the normal aortas of youths, he found only small quantities of lipids, with increasing age and increasing atherosclerosis there was a marked rise in the lipid content. In a series of these aortas the lipid content ranged from 0.2 to 1.8 grams. The proportion of cholesterol in the extract was relatively constant, varying only from 23 to 32 per cent of the total lipids despite the great variation in the amount of total lipids. The esterified cholesterol, however, increased with the rise in total lipids, amounting to 57 per cent of the total lipids in the atherosclerotic aortas. On the basis of these results, Schönheimer concluded that the original lipids of the aorta are augmented, in the development of atherosclerosis, by a lipid mixture containing a constant proportion of free and total cholesterol. Thus analytical evidence corroborated the view that the lipids of the blood infiltrate and are deposited in the intima.

Quantitative analyses of human aortas by Kimmelstiel (32) demonstrated a proportional increase of cholesterol, phosphatides and galactosides until atheromas formed. The relations then changed and cholesterol increased rapidly in comparison with the other lipids. Atherosclerotic aortas of non-diabetics according to Lehnher (41) contained increased amounts of cholesterol, phospholipids and fatty acids, a greater proportion of total cholesterol in the lipid fraction, and larger quantities of calcium and phosphorus with a diminished Ca/P ratio. The lipid deposits in the atherosclerotic aortas of diabetics were greater, but the quantitative relations of the fractions were similar. The analyses of the "fat" content in 500 aortas by Rosenthal (57) confirmed those of previous reports disclosing a larger total lipid content in the tissues of aortas with atherosclerosis. He made no determinations of the individual lipids.

These analyses of entire aortas gave valuable information but did not differentiate between the chemical changes which occur with advancing age and those due to the disease. This was emphasized by Meeker and Jobling (45) who obtained a better understanding of the chemical changes occurring with the atherosclerosis of the aorta by analyzing the individual lesions, separated from the other tissue, and by comparing the values with those of the normal tissues.

In the normal tissues, 40 per cent of the lipids was cholesterol, of which 28.4 per cent was esterified and 12.6 per cent free, 16 per cent was phospholipids and about 20 per cent was unidentified. As the lesions increased in severity, the proportion of cholesterol increased greatly, the increase being due almost entirely to free cholesterol. The ratio of free to bound cholesterol increased from 0.43 in the normal tissue to 1.04 in the most advanced lesions. A later study, by Zeek (78), substantiated these results.

As a part of a chemical study of atherosclerosis in the human aorta, Weinhouse and Hirsch (71) separated atherosclerotic lesions of the intima from the surrounding tissues, determined the calcium, lipid and moisture content, and compared these values with those of the normal intima tissue. The atherosclerotic lesions were separated carefully from the media and surrounding intima. They were classified as fatty plaques, fibrous plaques, calcified plaques, and atheromatous ulcers. The first was the nodular or streaked yellow lesion in

which the lipid material was mainly intra-cellular, and the intima thickened slightly but not scarred appreciably. The second form was the raised nodule or diffuse plaque of tough fibrous tissue with a pearly luster, necrosis, and confluence of lipids. The third form consisted of brittle calcified plaques with soft necrotic centers. The atheromas were ruptured or about to rupture and contained, in addition to soft lipid material, blood clots and calcium deposits. The results of these analyses are summarized for comparison with those of normal intima in table 2.

They demonstrated a progressive increase in the lipid content of the diseased tissues. The relatively low lipid content of the calcified lesions was due to the great density of the calcium salts contained therein.

Cholesterol. As the lesions progressed, the proportion of the cholesterol in the lipid extract rose from 14.2 per cent in the normal intima to 27 per cent in the late stages. The proportion of cholesterol esters increased less rapidly and in

TABLE 2
Average values of constituents of animal lesions

TYPE OF LESION	MOLE TUNE	LIPID EX- TRACT†	CHOLESTEROL‡		PHOSPHATIDE‡			FATTY ACIDS‡		
			Free	Ester	Ether soluble	Ether insol- uble	Total	Galac- toide	Neutral fat, etc.	Cal- cium‡
Normal intima	71.6	14.4	14.2	33.6	13.7	6.4	20.1	8.0	19.1	0.23
Early fatty plaques	67.5	25.0	16.2	38.5	10.8	8.2	19.0	5.8	20.5	0.86
Fibrous plaques	66.5	27.2	18.1	47.5	5.9	9.0	14.9	4.5	15.0	3.04
Calcified tissues	33.6	12.8	21.0	47.2	3.0	9.3	13.2	4.6	13.1	24.3
Atheromatous ulcers	60.8	36.0	27.2	42.1	5.8	10.2	16.0	4.3	10.4	10.1

The content is given as percentage of wet tissue

† The content is given as percentage of dry tissue

‡ The content is given as percentage of total lipid

the lesions with the most extensive necrosis their amount was lower than in the intermediate stages. In agreement with Meeker and Jobling (45), the ratio of combined to free cholesterol declined in the advanced lesions of atherosclerosis, despite an increase in both substances.

Phospholipids. There was a slight decrease in the total phospholipids from about 20 per cent in the normal intima to about 13 per cent in the calcified lesions. The constitution of this fraction, however, changed greatly with advancing severity of the atherosclerosis. In the normal intima, there was approximately twice as much of the ether soluble phospholipids (lecithin and cephalin) as ether insoluble phospholipids. In the severely diseased tissues, the proportions were reversed.

Other lipids. Free and combined cholesterol and phospholipids together comprised from 60 to 80 per cent of the total lipids in atheromatous lesions. The remainder consisted of glycerides, fatty acids, and small, though measurable quantities of a reducing lipid substance, presumably galactoside.

Calcium The normal intima contained much smaller amounts of calcium than the media. In five samples of such tissues, the calcium content averaged 0.23 per cent. An increase was observed even in the early plaques, and as the lesion developed, deposition of calcium proceeded rapidly even before visible hardening had occurred. In the grossly calcified lesions the calcium content varied from 17 to 37 per cent, indicating that almost complete replacement of the normal tissue structure by lipids and mineral matter had occurred.

FACTORS IN THE DEPOSITION OF LIPIDS *Origin of the lipids* Determinations of the composition of the lipids in the intima and in atherosclerotic lesions have added considerable support to the infiltration theory. If the deposits in atherosclerosis of the aorta arise by infiltration of the plasma lipids, the lipid composition of the fatty deposits, with little or no necrosis, should approximate the composition of the lipids in the blood plasma. The most comprehensive study of the lipid composition of human plasma is by Page, Kirk, Lewis, Thompson and Van Slyke (50). They determined free and total cholesterol and phospholipid in blood plasma of normal men of ages from 20 to 101 years. The analyses,

TABLE 3
*Comparison of lipid composition of blood plasma and arterial tissues**

	BLOOD PLASMA	INTIMA	EARLY PLAQUES	MEDIA
Free cholesterol	14.1	14.2	16.2	17.3
Cholesterol esters	38.3	38.6	38.5	16.7
Phospholipids	22.8	20.1	19.0	34.1
Neutral fat, etc	23.3	27.1	26.3	31.9

* The values are given as percentage of total lipid

made according to the gasometric methods of Van Slyke and co-workers, are the best figures available at present. As cerebroside were not determined by these authors, this fraction has been included in the neutral fat fraction of the figures reported by Weinhouse and Hirsch (71) to provide a better basis of comparison between the two sets of values. Table 3 demonstrates a striking agreement between these analyses, despite the differences in procedures.

The close agreement in composition between lipid extracts from the plasma and the normal intima and the wide differences between the lipid extracts from the latter and the media indicate that the lipids of the intima originate in the plasma rather than in the protoplasm of the cells. The comparison also supports the validity of Anitschkow's opinion that the intima is freely permeable to the lipids of the plasma and that the intima has no selective action on these lipids. The close agreement between the composition of the extracts from the normal intima and that of the early fatty deposits suggests further that these deposits arise through non-specific deposition of the plasma lipids. The changes in lipid composition which occur in the late stages of the lesions may result from several processes. These are phagocytosis and other reactions against a foreign sub-

stance, necrosis resulting from altered nutrition, or chemical changes of the lipid substance deposited in the tissues. These processes, however, are secondary to the initial deposition of the lipids.

The lipids of the human blood Page, Kirk, Lewis, Thompson and Van Slyke (50) observed no regular important changes in any lipid fraction of the blood from youth to old age. Their statistical analyses indicated no greater difference between age classes than would be expected from the variability with individuals of similar age. When the total lipids in the plasma increased, the free and ester cholesterol, the phosphatids and the neutral fats participated in this increase, but not to the same extent. Free cholesterol changed the least and neutral fat the most.

The concentration of cholesterol in the serum of normal human beings of both sexes averages about 200 mgm. with a range of from 100 to 400 mgm. per 100 cc. (70). Except for a pronounced rise during childhood, the cholesterol level remains constant. According to the reports of many investigators, during adult life the cholesterol level of the blood tends to remain constant and is not influenced by environmental conditions or living habits. Long periods of starvation or cholesterol deprivation on the one hand, or overfeeding with cholesterol on the other hand, produce little if any changes in the blood cholesterol. When great changes have been observed in normal individuals the amounts of cholesterol administered have been so large as to be unphysiologic. The changes in the blood lipids in alimentary lipemia are almost solely in the glyceride fraction which may vary widely under normal circumstances. Apparently in man, hypercholesteremia does not develop from the ingestion of moderate quantities of cholesterol.

The blood lipids in human atherosclerosis The relationship between hyperlipemia and atherosclerosis in man is obscure. The influence of the amount and distribution of the blood lipids has been studied extensively, but the results are controversial. Since atherosclerosis develops without definite symptoms, determination of its presence and extent is difficult by physical examination. Therefore the relationship of blood lipid levels to this disease can be inferred only in studies of the blood lipids of patients with hypertension, angina pectoris and other diseases closely associated with atherosclerosis.

Mjassnikow (46) observed elevated levels of the blood cholesterol in angina pectoris, the values ranging from 190 to 440 mgm. per cent compared with 120 to 170 mgm. per cent for normal subjects. Davis, Stern and Lesnick (15) likewise reported blood lipid levels frequently elevated in patients with angina pectoris. About 60 per cent had total blood cholesterol levels over 250 mgm. per cent, whereas only 20 per cent of normal subjects had values this high. Values higher than normal for the blood phospholipids and fatty acids also were observed. In seventy-three patients with arteriosclerosis obliterans, unassociated with diabetes or hypothyroidism, Barker (7) found the mean value for blood cholesterol to be 263 mgm. per cent, compared with 218 mgm. for normal subjects. Poindexter and Brugger (51) observed average values of 250 mgm.

per cent for the blood cholesterol in twenty-four patients with arteriosclerosis and in nineteen with hypertension and arteriosclerosis, as compared with 195 mgm per cent in a normal group

Other investigators, however, have reported normal levels of the blood cholesterol in clinical diseases associated with arteriosclerosis. Andes, Kampmeier and Adams (1) observed no difference in the cholesterol level of the blood in normal and arteriosclerotic negroes. Page, Kirk and Van Slyke (51), in sixteen patients with hypertension uncomplicated by nephritis, found normal blood lipid levels. In no instance were the free and total cholesterol, phospholipids and total lipids outside the range of normal values, nor were the mean and standard deviations for these lipids different from those in normal subjects. Elliot and Nuzum (20) found no significant elevation of blood cholesterol in fifty-three patients with hypertension and concluded that there was no correlation between the severity of clinical arteriosclerosis and the level of the blood cholesterol.

Probably the best study is by Landé and Sperry (37). Recognizing the difficulties in measuring the extent of arteriosclerosis by clinical methods, they determined the blood cholesterol, postmortem, of persons dying suddenly from violence. After comparing these values with the degree of atherosclerosis, and eliminating those complicated by infection or organic disease, they concluded that no relationship existed between the blood cholesterol level and the severity of atherosclerosis.

Apparently, many if not most cases of atherosclerosis are unaccompanied by hypercholesteremia. Although the influence of the blood lipids in the development of this disease has not been disclosed, there seems to be no doubt that the disease may develop without obvious abnormality of the blood lipids.

In addition to the results of experimental atherosclerosis in rabbits to be discussed later, clinical evidence indicates that hyperlipemia is a factor in atherosclerosis. The close association between high blood cholesterol levels and atherosclerosis in diabetes has been discussed by Gibbs, Buckner and Bloor (22), White (76), Dragstedt, Clark, Julian and Vermeulen (17), and Rabinowitsch (55). The high incidence of atherosclerosis in systemic xanthomatosis, associated with hypercholesterolemia, has been reported by Thannhauser (63), Montgomery and Osterberg (47), and Müller (48). The atherosclerotic tendency among diabetics, according to Duff (18), may be due not necessarily to hypercholesteremia, but to other profound metabolic disturbances in this disease. This opinion receives support from the recent discovery of a pancreatic hormone, lipocain, the absence of which causes the deposition of lipids in the liver (16, 17). Perhaps the deposition of lipids in atherosclerosis also may be the result of a hormonal deficiency, although experimental investigation of this possibility has yielded contradictory results. Thus, Huber, Brown and Casey (30) reported that lipocain prevented the rise in the blood cholesterol and the development of atherosclerosis which otherwise occurred regularly in rabbits fed cholesterol. Dragstedt and his co-workers (66), however, were unable to confirm this. Data are also conflicting with regard to the influence of the lipotropic factor, choline, in experimental atherosclerosis. Himsworth (25) and Baumann and Rusch (8)

observed no effect, but Steiner (62) found that choline inhibited the formation of atherosclerotic lesions and hastened their removal. The presence or absence of such lipotropic factors may explain why the basic diet is important in the development of experimental cholesterol atherosclerosis.

Physical distribution of the lipids in the blood Although particles of lipid from 0.5 to 1 micron diameter in the blood plasma, according to Bloor (10), are lipid in transport, the factors concerned with this physical distribution of the lipids in the blood plasma have not been considered in atherosclerosis. Much of the lipid absorbed from the intestine reaches the blood in this form and is removed and stored as fat. When the lipid particles accumulate in the blood, lipemia results. Ludlum, Taft and Nugent (42) believed from their studies of the tiny particles of lipid in the blood that the particles are stabilized by a protein film because the first zone of aggregation of the particles occurred at a pH range of 4.7 to 5.3, approximately the iso-electric points of albumin and globulin, and the droplets coalesced when the acidity was sufficient to precipitate the protein and destroy the film. The membrane about globules of fat in milk, according to Palmer and Wiese (52), is a mixture of protein and phospholipid. Churning of the milk removed the membrane. Hirsch and Weinhouse (29) injected emulsified cholesterol oleate intravenously into rabbits to determine, if possible, its localization in the tissues. The particles of emulsified cholesterol oleate ranged in size to considerably less than the diameter of erythrocytes. Although large amounts of the oleate were injected, the free and ester cholesterol content of the serum within a few minutes after an injection was not changed appreciably. The injected cholesterol oleate, apparently, was removed rapidly from the blood. Histological examination demonstrated large amounts of particulate lipid material in the tissue phagocytes. The fat depots of a rabbit injected repeatedly with emulsified cholesterol oleate stained with scarlet red were colored with the dye and the tissue phagocytes were laden with large quantities of the stained cholesterol oleate. These experiments demonstrated that particles of lipid material are removed from the blood by tissue phagocytes like other particulate substances. Hirsch and Weinhouse (29) noted that where the fine emulsion of the cholesterol oleate had broken and larger masses of the lipid had lodged in the tissues, phagocytosis was supplemented by growths of foreign body granulation tissues. The degree of dispersion of the lipid material, accordingly, seemed important in determining how the tissues utilized or disposed of the lipid material, a principle harmonious with tissue reactions toward particulate material of other chemical composition.

Site of the lipid deposits in the aorta Opinions differ as to whether the lipid deposits of the intima are intracellular, primarily, and later extracellular with necrosis of the cells, or are extracellular at first, and then intracellular. Klotz (36) believed that the lipid material of the small fatty deposits in the intima of the aortas of the young at first is chiefly in large phagocytes. Later, the lipid droplets appeared outside of the cells, especially along the inner elastic fibers. Although Klotz considered the fat droplets free in the tissues as having been derived from disintegrated phagocytes, Wells (72) postulated that the fat drop-

lets, at first, may be free in the injured tissues and secondarily are phagocytized by the cells. Duguid (19), he stated, believed the latter more probable. Leary (40), thought the lipophages developed from the free mononuclear cells of the blood that migrated selectively into the intima. According to Wells (74), and others, the lipid deposits in the intima may be temporary and do not lead to atherosclerosis. McMeans and Klotz (43) observed a disappearance of lipid deposits in the aorta of rabbits with experimental atherosclerosis when the feeding of cholesterol was discontinued after the aortic lesions had developed. In animals and apparently in man (Wells) lipid deposits may cause local fibrous thickenings of the intima.

If we recognize that the lipids of the blood are transported in the form of small particles and that the normal intima and the simple lipid deposits of atherosclerosis have a lipid content corresponding in composition to the lipids of the blood, much of the reason for this controversy disappears. Lipids may be considered to be in particulate dispersion in the blood and interspaces of the intima tissues. Chemical analysis demonstrates this lipid material in the intima although no lipid is found by morphologic examination. An increase in the particle size of the lipids brings them into the range where phagocytosis occurs. This may be considered to be the initial stage of atherosclerosis.

TISSUE REACTIONS CAUSED BY LIPIDS The chemical analyses which demonstrated a close agreement in composition of the lipids of the blood, the normal intima, and the fatty plaques in atherosclerosis of the aorta indicate that a non-specific infiltration of the intima by the plasma lipids occurs. Each lipid has a specific effect when deposited in tissues. The effects which the individual lipids, free and ester cholesterol, phosphatides, galactosides, fats, and their hydrolysis products, notably the fatty acids, cause in tissues must receive consideration in evaluating the significance of the fatty deposits in the subsequent changes of the intima. Cholesterol and cholesteryl oleate (28) deposited in the tissues stimulate a foreign body reaction, cerebroside causes a pseudoxanthoma cell response, and lecithin, a polyblastic tissue reaction. With mixtures of the lipids, a differentiation on the basis of tissue reactions is impossible. This loss of characteristic tissue reactions with lipid mixtures led Kimmelstiel and Laas (33) to believe that the chemical character of lipid alone was not responsible for the tissue reactions. The fibroblastic tissue reaction with giant cells, they stated, was the response toward an insoluble substance. This reaction did not occur when cholesterol was mixed with lecithin and was highly dispersed. The types of xanthoma cell produced experimentally by such a mixture, they stated, depended upon the colloidal dispersion of the lipid and not on its chemical character.

The effect of lipid mixtures on arterial tissues was investigated in dogs by Christianson (13). The technical difficulties encountered in these experiments were considerable, and the lipid mixtures injected lodged usually in the media and not in the intima. The lipids, however, produced fibrous scars depending upon their composition. Those composed of glycerides and fatty acids caused marked inflammatory reactions and finally a scar, those composed of glycerides mixed with calcium soaps caused a chronic inflammation which also resulted in

a scar. Fibrous plaques formed in the intima over these lesions. Hagerty (23) reported that oleic acid introduced into the tissues of rabbits and dogs caused a severe necrosis and a marked growth of scar tissues. According to Hirsch (27) some of the factors involved in reactions of tissues about glycerides are the acidity developed in the surrounding tissues by their hydrolysis, the physical state of the fatty acid, whether solid or liquid, the solubility of the soaps formed and their chemical structure. Many of the fatty acids in tissues are non specific irritants, stimulating mainly fibroblastic, monocyte, and epitheloid cells. Soaps of these fatty acids, relatively insoluble in the tissues, stimulated foreign body granulation tissues.

There is also much evidence in the many reports on the various forms of lipid pneumonias (53) and on the lesions of traumatic fat necrosis (26) that lipids cause marked inflammatory reactions and growths of fibrous scars in human tissues. Some of these tissue reactions develop rapidly, others evolve slowly.

According to the evidence presented, lipids deposited in tissues stimulate inflammatory reactions which eventually are reduced to fibrous plaques. The different lipids in these deposits contribute variably to the sum total of the tissue reactions and among them, the fatty acids seem to have the greatest irritative properties. The factors concerned with the stabilization of the lipid particles in the tissues, also are important.

THE RELATION OF THE LIPIDS TO CALCIFICATION The absence of observed abnormalities in the calcium content of the blood suggests that local tissue factors are responsible for the calcification in atherosclerosis of the vessels. The frequent occurrence of calcification with atherosclerosis and with certain forms of fatty changes led to the opinion that calcium deposition in some way was connected with the presence of lipids. This hypothesis was emphasized by Klotz (34, 35) who claimed to have observed the presence of calcium salts of fatty acids in degenerating tissues, and to have observed infiltration of calcium into fats or fatty acids imbedded in tissues of the body. These conclusions were based on microscopic observations alone, and though often quoted, this theory has not been confirmed. Aschoff (4) suggested that the formation of calcium soaps preceding calcification occurs through splitting of cholesterol esters, whereby the fatty acids liberated combine with calcium ions to form calcium soaps and the fatty acid is replaced gradually by phosphate and carbonate ions. If Aschoff's theory were correct, the ratio of cholesterol esters to cholesterol should decrease with gradual evolution of the atherosclerotic lesions. In an investigation of this Schönheimer (61) observed no change in the ratio and concluded therefore that Aschoff's theory was incorrect. Subsequently however, Weinhouse and Hirsch (71) and Meeker and Jobling (45) observed a lowered cholesterol-ester to cholesterol ratio in calcified atherosclerotic lesions.

As Hirsch (26, 27) has pointed out, chemical combination between positive ions in an aqueous phase and negative ions in the lipid phase may account for the occurrence of chemical reactions between the two systems. In support of this view are the observations of Langmuir and Schaefer (38), who found that fatty acids in the form of monomolecular films floating on solutions of calcium

and barium salts, were converted to the corresponding soaps to varying extents, depending upon the pH of the aqueous medium. Similar results were reported by Hartsuch (24), who found that magnesium ions were lost from a dilute aqueous solution of magnesium phosphate when shaken with oleic acid. The transfer of magnesium ions was appreciable at a pH of 7. There is, however, much other evidence refuting Aschoff's hypothesis, mainly obtained by Wells (74) and discussed by him at length. Briefly summarized, the evidence against the idea that calcification takes place through intermediate reaction with lipids is as follows: 1, calcium soaps have never been isolated from calcified aortas or from any other calcified pathological process. This fact has been demonstrated by Baldauf (6), Wells (73), and in unpublished experiments by Weinhouse and Hirsch, 2, even if calcium soaps were present in the body, calcification may not occur, for Wells (75) has introduced calcium soaps into living tissues and when removed they had not been converted into inorganic salts, and 3, the composition of the calcified portion of atherosclerotic aortas closely resembles that of bone. Accordingly, the mechanism of calcification with atherosclerosis is similar to that with bone formation. The analyses, reviewed by Wells (74), agree that the calcium in the lesions of atherosclerosis is mainly in the form of calcium phosphate, and small, variable amounts of carbonate and magnesium salts. The analogy to bone formation is emphasized by the development of bone tissues in old lesions. The similarity of calcified intimal lesions to true bone was demonstrated by Mr. Raymond Pepinsky of the Physics Department of the University of Chicago, who at our request investigated the x-ray diffraction patterns of several calcified atheromatous lesions. These patterns were identical with those given by minerals of the apatite group and were identical with the diffraction patterns of bone observed by Taylor and Sheard (64). According to these authors the inorganic portion of bone is composed of the apatite, $3\text{Ca}_3(\text{PO}_4)_2 \cdot \text{CaCO}_3$.

Chemical and physical evidence favor the opinion that calcification with atherosclerosis is a secondary process similar to the calcification in other tissues in the body where necrosis has occurred.

THE COMPOSITION OF THE BLOOD AND TISSUE LIPIDS IN EXPERIMENTAL ATHEROSCLEROSIS The lesions of the aorta and other tissues in the experimental form of atherosclerosis produced in animals by diets containing added amounts of cholesterol have been described fully by Anitschkow (3), Duff (18) and Leary (39, 40). The similarity between the human and experimental forms of atherosclerosis has been emphasized regardless of certain obvious differences. Atherosclerosis develops in rabbits only after a significant hypercholesteremia has been present. Hypercholesteremia has not been observed usually in human atherosclerosis. The deposition of the lipids in the wall of the aorta and arteries in the experimental form of atherosclerosis is part of a systemic lipid infiltration of the tissues.

Blood A daily intake of cholesterol of less than one per cent of the diet in rabbits produces a significant hypercholesteremia in a week or less, and in several months the blood cholesterol may reach high levels. Values over 2500 mgm

per 100 cc of serum have been observed frequently. The first observations of hypercholesteremia were recorded by Wacker and Hueck (69), who reported a twenty fold increase in both free and total cholesterol of the blood after several months of the cholesterol diet. These observations were confirmed by Versé (67), who noted that the cholesterol levels of the blood increased more rapidly and with smaller daily feedings when the cholesterol was given dissolved in oil. The most extensive studies of the blood lipid changes in experimental atherosclerosis were reported by Page and Bernhard (49) and Weinhouse and Hirsch (71). These studies established that in addition to the cholesterol, there is a marked increase in the other lipids, notably the phospholipids and the glycerides. A comparison of the results of both analyses is in table 4.

At the height of lipemia there was an average increase of twenty five to thirty-fold in the free and total cholesterol. Contrary to earlier reports there was no significant increase in the proportion of cholesterol esters. Despite the marked increase in total cholesterol the average ratio of free to total cholesterol, 0.28

TABLE 4
Blood lipid levels at height of lipemia

INVESTIGATOR†	FREE CHOLESTEROL	TOTAL	ESTERS	PHOSPHOLIPID	GLYCERIDES	TOTAL LIPIDS
Page and Bernhard*	356	1435	1823	520	270	2002
Weinhouse and Hirsch†	452	1652	2010	706	718	3660

* Cholesterol administered as a solution in oil 0.2 gram per day. Determinations made on heparinized plasma.

† Cholesterol administered without added fat 1.0 gram per day. Determinations made on serum.

‡ Dauber and Katz (14) recently reported similar results with experimental atherosclerosis in chickens.

at the height of lipemia, was the same as in the normal rabbits. Phospholipids increased to seven times the normal value whereas glycerides increased to five times normal. The total lipids were on the average, eleven times the normal value. The increase in the blood lipids began in a few days, reached a maximum usually between fifty and one-hundred days on the cholesterol diet, and thereafter the amount declined. In animals surviving more than one hundred and fifty days under the conditions of the experiment, the blood lipids approached normal values. This decrease does not indicate development of a tolerance for cholesterol in these animals, because at this stage they lost weight rapidly and exhibited all the signs of starvation as though the normal absorption of food across the intestinal wall was interrupted. The tissues of the stomach and bowel of these rabbits had marked intracellular infiltrations of lipids.

The effect of added fats to the diet in facilitating the absorption of cholesterol and in increasing the lipemia is illustrated also in table 4. At the height of lipemia, both studies exhibit about the same lipid levels, although Page and Bernhard fed their rabbits only one fifth the quantity of cholesterol. They adminis-

tered it dissolved in oil. These analyses of the lipids of the blood in experimental atherosclerosis demonstrated clearly that not only is the cholesterol content increased to high levels, but also all of the other lipids. In studies of the physical state of the blood lipids in experimental hyperlipemia in rabbits, Remesow (56) suggested that the increase in the lipids other than cholesterol may be due to a destruction or binding of the serum "lipases" by the excess cholesterol, thus causing the accumulation of lipids. This opinion is based on the inhibition of lipases by alcohols in general. However, the effect of excess cholesterol in causing increases in other blood lipids may not be due to any chemical effect of this sterol, but to its effect on the physical state of the blood lipids. The increase in hydrophobic components of the blood lipids, such as cholesterol and its esters, presumably could decrease the stability of the lipid complex, leading to a decrease in the dispersion of the colloid. Agglomeration into larger particles would follow and a marked decrease in the surface area exposed to enzyme activity would result.

Tissues Weinhouse and Hirsch (72) found, in rabbits fed cholesterol, marked increases in the lipids of the viscera as well as of the aorta. The greatest changes were in the aorta, liver, and suprarenal glands. The lungs, kidneys, and spleen occasionally had lipid infiltration and correspondingly high cholesterol or cholesterol ester values, but usually there were only minimal changes in lipid content. The atherosclerotic aortas had a marked increase in free and total cholesterol as well as a significant though variable increase in the phospholipids and glycerides. The total lipids were, in general, increased two or three times above the level of those in the normal aortas. The livers of all rabbits fed cholesterol contained quantities of lipids substantially above the levels in control rabbits, the increase being greatest in the cholesterol ester fractions and least in the glycerides. The cholesterol content of the suprarenal glands was markedly increased. The free cholesterol was increased from two or three times above the content of normal tissues, and the cholesterol esters, which in the control analyses averaged 14 per cent, were doubled in the cholesterol-fed rabbits. These analyses of the suprarenal gland agree with those of Kay and Whitehead (31).

The significance of the hyperlipemia in experimental atherosclerosis The relationship between hypercholesterolemia and atherosclerosis in the rabbit seems to be definite. The lesions of experimental atherosclerosis in rabbits, which closely resemble those of the human form, have not been produced in any other way. Despite variations in diet and superimposed types of mechanical and chemical injury, an excess of cholesterol in the blood appears to be necessary in the formation of the lipid plaques of the aorta and arteries. The evidence implicating cholesterol as a primary agent in the development of atherosclerosis has been presented forcefully by Leary (39). According to his views, the differences between human and experimental atherosclerosis may be attributed to differences in reaction of youthful and aged tissues to the presence of cholesterol and not to any fundamental difference in etiology.

In the experiments of Weinhouse and Hirsch (72), though hypercholesterolemia always preceded deposition of cholesterol, there was no close relationship between

the height or duration of the hypercholesteremia and the severity of the atherosclerosis. For example, of two rabbits fed the same daily amounts of cholesterol for the same period of time, the serum cholesterol of one reached a maximum of 2200 mgm per cent, the other, 1500 mgm per cent. The severity of atherosclerosis as determined by gross examination, and the amount of lipids deposited, were about the same. In two other rabbits with the same degree of hypercholesterolemia, one had severe, and the other had only a mild atherosclerosis. These results logically suggest that tissue factors play an important part in the development of experimental atherosclerosis.

TISSUE FACTORS IN ATHEROSCLEROSIS The results of these chemical analyses indicate that tissue factors are important in the development of atherosclerosis in man and experimentally in rabbits. Weinhouse and Hirsch (72) did not find a close correlation between the height and duration of lipemia and the severity of the experimental atherosclerosis. These individual variations were found also in different viscera of the same rabbit, some visceral tissues being markedly infiltrated by lipids and others relatively unchanged.

The importance of tissue factors in the development of experimental atherosclerosis is indicated also by studies on the effects of iodine and thyroid hormone. According to Page and Bernhard (49), and Turner and Bidwell (65) the addition of iodine or thyroid extract to the diet prevents or inhibits the development of atherosclerosis in rabbits fed cholesterol, although these substances did not prevent or delay the hyperlipemia.

Since the atherosclerotic lesions are not distributed diffusely through the vessel wall but are sharply localized, certain places in the arteries are more susceptible to lipid infiltration than others. The lesions tend to be more numerous in tissues subject to unusual mechanical strain or at sites with variations in tissue structure as, for example, along the posterior wall of the descending aorta at the ostiums of arterial branches and at the bifurcation of the iliac branches. This suggests that conditions increasing the mechanical stress, such as hypertension, contribute to the development of atherosclerosis. As the cause and effect relationships are not clear, probably a large variety of conditions are concerned with this localization of the lesions. If hypercholesteremia alone played an important rôle in human atherosclerosis there should be a closer relationship between the disease and the blood lipids than has been demonstrated. Although hyperlipemia may favor the development of atherosclerosis factors in the tissues are concerned with the actual lipid deposition.

MECHANISM OF LIPID DEPOSITION The significance of the lipid deposits in the intima with atherosclerosis is disputed. Opinions differ as to whether the lipids at first are intracellular and with destruction of the cells become extracellular or at first are extracellular and secondly become intracellular.

Chemical analyses by Weinhouse and Hirsch (71), revealing a close agreement in the composition of the blood plasma lipids and that of the normal intima tissue, suggest that the intercellular spaces of the intima are filled with blood plasma. Accordingly, reactions which take place in the blood would be expected to occur also in the intima. The blood lipids of the plasma exist as colloidal complexes, ordinarily too small to be seen microscopically. In hyperlipemia,

however, the lipid complex agglomerates into larger particles, which are visible under the microscope and which give to such serums an opalescence. It is reasonable to conclude, therefore, that the phagocytic reactions observed in the intima occur as a response to the presence of coarsely dispersed lipids in varying stages of agglomeration. The primary cause of the precipitation of lipid in cholesterol-fed rabbits is probably the hyperlipemia, in human atherosclerosis it is mainly a tissue factor increased under conditions of hyperlipemia. Regardless of the cause of the precipitation of lipids, however, all the subsequent chemical processes and tissue reactions may be regarded as sequential to the initial separation of lipid in grossly dispersed particulate form.

SUMMARY

Chemical, physical and morphologic changes occur in arteries with age. These changes seem to be independent of atherosclerosis which is primarily a disease of the intima. The simple fatty deposits with atherosclerosis have the same lipid composition as the blood plasma and the normal intima. The identical composition of these tissue lipids strongly supports the view that the lipid deposits in atherosclerosis result from a non-selective deposition of the plasma lipids. Although cholesterolemia may favor the development of atherosclerosis, the lesions of this vascular disorder develop in adult life without an appreciable elevation of the blood cholesterol or obvious abnormality of the blood lipids. This suggests that factors in the tissues of the blood vessels leading to the deposition of lipids in the intima are important in the causation of the disease. The tissue factors concerned with the localization of the lipid deposits in the intima are not known. However, after the lipids are deposited and remain in the tissues in coarse particulate form, the subsequent stages of atherosclerosis follow. The evolution of the lesions from the simple fatty deposits to calcified atheromatous ulcers occurs because of several processes, among which are phagocytosis, physical or chemical effects on the tissues by the lipids or their decomposition products, disturbances in nutrition of the tissues, admixtures of blood, and reactions of the tissues against the lipids deposited. The calcification which occurs late in the evolution of the lesions probably is the same as that which develops in any necrotic or devitalized tissue of the body. The evidence presented in this review favors the conclusion that atherosclerosis develops from disturbances in the metabolism of lipids infiltrated into the tissues of the intima. The elucidation of the nature of the disturbances, however, depends upon further fundamental studies on the interactions and interconversions of the lipids in the blood and tissues.

REFERENCES

- (1) ANDES, J. E., R. H. KAMPMEIER AND C. C. ADAMS. *J. Lab. and Clin. Med.* 21: 340, 1936.
- (2) ANITSCHKOW, N. *Virchow's Arch.* 249: 73, 1924.
- (3) ANITSCHKOW, N. In E. V. COWDRY. *Arteriosclerosis*. The Macmillan Company, New York, 1933.
- (4) ASCHOFF, L. *Beihfte z. Mediz. Klinik* 4: 1, 1908; 10: 1, 1914.

- (5) ASCHOFF L In E V COWDRY Arteriosclerosis The Macmillan Company, New York 1933
- (6) BALDAUF, L K J Med Research 15 355 1906
- (7) BARKER, N W Ann Int Med 13: 685, 1939
- (8) BAUMANN, C A AND H P RUSCH Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 38 647, 1938
- (9) BEITKE H Virchow's Arch 275 532 1929-30
- (10) BLOOR W R. Physiol Rev 19 557 1939
- (11) BÜRGER M Ztschr f d ges Neurol 167: 273 1939
- (12) BÜRGER M AND G SCHLONKA Ztschr f d ges exper Med 55 287 1927
- (13) CHRISTIANSON O O Arch Path 21 1011 1939
- (14) DAUBER D V AND L N KATZ Arch Path 34: 937 1942
- (15) DAVIS D B STERN AND G LESNICK Ann Int Med 11 354 1937
- (16) DRAGSTEDT L R J A M A 114: 29, 1940
- (17) DRAGSTEDT L R, D E. CLARK O C JULIAN, C VERNUELEN AND W C GOODPASTURE Surgery 8 353 1940
- (18) DUFF G L Arch Path 20: 81 259 1935 22 161 1936
- (19) DUDUIT J B J Path and Bact 29: 371 1926
- (20) ELLIOT A H AND P R NUZUM Arch Int Med 57: 63 1936
- (21) FREY W Ztschr f d ges Neurol u Psychiat 167: 237 1939
- (22) GIBBS C B F E BUCKNER AND W R BLOOR. New England J Med 209: 384, 1933
- (23) HADERTY C Arch Path 25 24 1938
- (24) HARTSUCH, P J Arch Path 25 17 1938
- (25) HINSWORTH H P Acta med Scandicav Suppl 90: 153 1938
- (26) HIRSCH E F Arch Path 21 765 1936
- (27) HIRSCH E F Arch Path 25: 35 1938
- (28) HIRSCH E F Arch Path 31 516 1941
- (29) HIRSCH E F AND S WEINHOUSE Arch Path 30: 1079 1940
- (30) HUBER, M J, G O BROWN AND A E CASEY Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 37: 441 1937
- (31) KAT W W AND R WHITEHEAD J Path and Bact 41 203 1935
- (32) KIMMELSTIEL, P Virchow's Arch 282 402 1931
- (33) KIMMELSTIEL, P AND E LAAS Beltr's path Anat. u z allg Path 93 417, 1934
- (34) KLOTZ O J Exper Med 7 633 1904
- (35) KLOTZ O J Exper Med 8 322 1906
- (36) KLOTZ O J Med Research 32: 27 1915
- (37) LANDÉ K E AND W M SPERRY Arch Path. 22: 301, 1936
- (38) LANDMUIR, I AND V J SCHAEFER J Am. Chem Soc 55 284 1936
- (39) LEARY T Arch Path 17: 453 1934
- (40) LEARY T Arch Path 32: 507 1941
- (41) LEINHERR, E R. New England J Med 208: 1307 1933
- (42) LUDLUM S D A E TAFT AND R L. NOBENT Colloid Symposium Annual 7: 233 1930
- (43) McMEANS J W AND O KLOTZ J Med Research 34 41 1910
- (44) MARCHAND F Verhandl d 21 Kong f inn Med p 23, 1904
- (45) MEEKER D R. AND J W JOBLIND Arch Path 18: 252 1934
- (46) MJASSNIKOW A L Ztschr f klin Med 102: 65 1925 103 767, 1926
- (47) MONTGOMERY H AND A E OSTERBERG Arch Derm and Syph 37: 373 1933
- (48) MÜLLER C Arch Int Med 64: 675 1939
- (49) PADE I H AND W G BERNHARD Arch Path 19 530 1935
- (50) PADE, I H E KIRK W H LEWIS W R THOMPSON AND D D VAN SLYKE J Biol Chem 111: 613 1935
- (51) PADE, I H E KIRK AND D D VAN SLYKE J Clin Investigation 15 101, 1936
- (52) PALMER L S AND H F WIESE J Dairy Science 16: 41 1933

- (53) PINKERTON, H Arch Path 5 380, 1928
- (54) POINDEXTER, C A AND M BRUGER Arch Int Med 61 714, 1938
- (55) RABINOWITSCH, I M Ann Int Med 8 1436, 1935
- (56) REMESOW, I Pflüger's Arch 221 534, 1929
- (57) ROSENTHAL, S R Arch Path 18 473, 660, 1934
- (58) SANDERS, W E Am J Med Sc 142 727, 1911
- (59) SCHÖNHEIMER, R Ztschr f physiol Chem 160 61, 1926
- (60) SCHÖNHEIMER, R Ztschr f physiol Chem 177 143, 1928
- (61) SCHÖNHEIMER, R Ztschr f physiol Chem 211 65, 1932
- (62) STEINER, A Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 39 411, 1938
- (63) TANNHAUSER, S J Lipidoses N Y Oxford Univ Press, 1940
- (64) TAYLOR, N W AND C SHEARD J Biol Chem 81 479, 1929
- (65) TURNER, K B AND E H BIDWELL J Exper Med 62 721, 1935
- (66) VERMEULEN, C, L R DRAGSTEDT, D E CLARK, O C JULIAN, AND J G ALLEN
Arch Surg 44 260, 1942
- (67) VERSÉ, M Beitr z path Anat u z allg Path 80 235, 1928
- (68) VIRCHOW, R Wien med Wchnschr 6 809, 825, 1856
- (69) WACKER, L AND W HUECK Arch f exper Path u Pharmacol 74 416, 1933
- (70) WEINHOUSE, S Arch Path In press
- (71) WEINHOUSE, S AND E F HIRSCH Arch Path 29 31, 1940
- (72) WEINHOUSE, S AND E F HIRSCH Arch Path 30 856, 1940
- (73) WELLS, H G J Med Research 14 491, 1906
- (74) WELLS, H G In E V COWDRY Arteriosclerosis The Macmillan Company, New
York, 1933
- (75) WELLS, H G Arch Int Med 7 721, 1911
- (76) WHITE, P Bull N Y Acad Med 10 347, 1934
- (77) WINDAUS, A Ztschr f physiol Chem 67 174, 1910
- (78) ZEEK, P M Am J Path 12 115, 1936

THE NATURE OF THE FORCES BETWEEN ANTIGEN AND ANTIBODY AND OF THE PRECIPITATION REACTION

LINUS PAULING DAN H CAMPBELL AND DAVID PRESSMAN

Contribution no 825 from the Gates and Crellin Laboratories of Chemistry California Institute of Technology, Pasadena

In one of his lectures on immunochemistry at the University of California in the summer of 1904 Svante Arrhenius said (1) that Ehrlich and other investigators, because of incomplete knowledge of the phenomenon of chemical equilibrium had been led to invent artificial hypotheses in order to explain their observations in the field of immunology. Since that time, and especially during the last few years, workers in this field have made greater and greater use of the concepts and methods of physical chemistry, and in consequence many previously puzzling observations have been reasonably interpreted.

Another branch of chemistry which is of importance to immunology is modern structural chemistry, which deals with the detailed structure of molecules and with the nature of interatomic and intermolecular interactions (2). Our present knowledge of this subject, in large part won during the past dozen years, is now so firmly founded and so extensive that it can be confidently used as the basis for a more penetrating interpretation of immunological observations than would be provided by the observations alone.

In this paper we present, after a brief historical introduction, a discussion of the nature of the specific forces between antigen and antibody and of the precipitation reaction from the point of view of modern chemistry. Only the simpler aspects of the phenomena are discussed, such complicating factors as the rôles of complement, lipids, etc., in the reactions are disregarded in our discussion.

The history of the precipitation reaction began in 1897, when Rudolf Kraus (3) reported the results of his work with anticholera and antityphoid sera. His observations were soon verified and extended by Nicolle, Tchistovich, Bordet, Myers and other workers, who prepared precipitating antisera against a great number of antigens of varied nature. We shall not review this early work here nor the later studies of the methods of preparing antisera and carrying out the precipitation reaction, since these topics and others dealing with special phases of the reaction have been very well covered in earlier reviews (4, 5, 6).

Two most important advances in the attack on the problem of the nature of immunological reactions were the discovery that the specific precipitate contains both antigen and antibody (7) and the discovery that antibodies which give antisera their characteristic properties, are proteins. The verification of these facts was provided by the work of many investigators over a score of years. This work, which is summarized in Marrack's monograph (6, chap II), culminated in the preparation of purified antibody by Felton and Bailey (8), Heidelberger and collaborators (9), and others and the determination of its properties including amino-acid composition and molecular weight, which show that it is very closely related to normal serum globulin (6, chap II).

The work of Landsteiner (10) and other investigators on artificial conjugated antigens provided a great body of qualitative information on the specificity of antibodies, which, together with the experimental results for natural antigens, led to the independent proposal by Breinl and Haurowitz (11), Alexander (12), and Mudd (13) in 1930-32 of the theory of structural complementarity of antigen and specific antibody. The framework theory of precipitation was then developed by Marrack (6) and Heidelberger (14). These and other theories are discussed in some detail in the following sections of this paper.

A new period in the study of the precipitation reaction was initiated by the careful quantitative studies of Heidelberger and his collaborators (15) who determined the amounts of antibody and antigen in precipitates, and the similar work of Haurowitz (16) and others. Very recently, in order to test certain aspects of his detailed theory of the structure of antibodies (17), Pauling and his collaborators have carried out many quantitative experiments on the precipitation of antisera by polyhaptenic simple substances (18, 19, 20), a phenomenon first observed by Landsteiner and Van der Scheer (21).

THE NATURE OF THE SPECIFIC FORCES BETWEEN ANTIGEN MOLECULES AND ANTIBODY MOLECULES The detailed information which has been gathered in recent years regarding the nature of the chemical bonds which hold atoms together into stable molecules has been summarized in monographs (2, 22). Instead of interacting strongly with one another, with interaction energy of 20 kilocalories per mole or more, to produce a chemical bond, two atoms may interact more weakly. The nature of these weak interactions is now well understood, and a brief discussion of it is given in the following paragraphs. The properties of antigen-antibody systems, especially the reversibility of complex formation, are such as to indicate that the antigen-antibody attraction is due to these weaker interactions and not to the formation of ordinary chemical bonds.

The weak interactions between two molecules may be classified as electronic van der Waals attraction, Coulomb attraction, attraction of electric dipoles or multipoles, hydrogen-bond formation, etc. The forces increase rapidly in magnitude as the molecules approach one another more and more closely, and the attraction between the molecules reaches its maximum when the molecules are as close together as they can come. The molecular property which determines the distance of closest approach of two molecules is the electronic spatial extension of the atoms in the molecules. It is possible to assign to each atom a *van der Waals radius*, which describes its effective size with respect to intermolecular interactions. These radii vary in value from 1.2 Å for hydrogen through 1.4-1.6 Å for light atoms (fluorine, oxygen, nitrogen, carbon) to 1.8-2.2 Å for heavy atoms (chlorine, sulfur, bromine, iodine, etc.). The shape of a molecule can be predicted by locating the atoms within the molecule with use of bond distances and bond angles and then circumscribing about each atom a spherical surface corresponding to its van der Waals radius. This shape determines the ways in which the molecule can be packed together with other molecules (2, sec. 24).

The most general force of intermolecular attraction, which operates between

every pair of molecules, is *electronic van der Waals attraction*. This type of electronic interaction between molecules was first recognized by London (23). A molecule (of methane, for example) which has no permanent average electric dipole moment may have an instantaneous electric dipole moment, as the center of charge of the electrons in their rapid motion in the molecule, swings to one side or the other of the center of charge of the nuclei. This instantaneous dipole moment produces an instantaneous electric field, by which any other molecule in the neighborhood would be polarized, the electrons of the second molecule would move relative to its nuclei in such a way as to give rise to a force of attraction toward the first molecule.

This electronic van der Waals attraction operates between every atom in a molecule and every atom in other molecules in the near neighborhood. The force increases very rapidly with decreasing interatomic distance, being inversely proportional to the seventh power of the interatomic distance. Hence the electronic van der Waals attraction between two molecules in contact is due practically entirely to interactions of pairs of atoms (in the two molecules) which are themselves in contact, and the magnitude of the attraction is determined by the number of pairs of atoms which can be brought into contact. In consequence, two molecules which can bring large portions of their surfaces into close-fitting juxtaposition will in general show much stronger mutual attraction than two molecules with less extensive complementarity of surface topography.

Other types of molecular interactions result from the possession of a permanent electric charge, electric dipole moment, or electric moment of higher order by one or both of the interacting molecules. The effects of these charges and moments have been classified in various ways, as ion-ion forces, dipole-dipole forces, forces of electronic polarization of one molecule in the dipole field of another, etc. All electrostatic interactions are very much smaller in water than in a medium of low dielectric constant, and it can be shown by calculation, making use of known values of the effective dielectric constant of water for charges at a given distance apart (24), that in general these electric forces are of minor importance, except when an isolated or essentially isolated electric charge is involved. The electrostatic attraction of a positive group such as a substituted ammonium ion and a negative group such as a carboxyl ion becomes significantly strong, with bond energy 5 kilocalories per mole or more, if the structure of the molecules containing the groups is such that they can come into juxtaposition.

A type of intermolecular attractive force which ranks in importance with the electronic van der Waals attraction and the attraction of oppositely charged groups is that associated with the structural feature called the *hydrogen bond*. The importance and generality of occurrence of the hydrogen bond were first pointed out in 1920 by Latimer and Rodebush (25) and summaries of the properties of the bond are given in the monographs quoted above. A hydrogen bond results from the attraction of a hydrogen atom attached to one electronegative atom for an unshared electron pair of another electronegative atom. The strength of a hydrogen bond depends on the electronegativity of the two atoms which are bonded together by hydrogen, fluorine, oxygen, and nitrogen. The

most electronegative of all atoms, are the atoms which form the strongest hydrogen bonds. The energy of a hydrogen bond between two of these atoms is of the order of magnitude of 5 kcal per mole. This is so large as to have a very important effect on the intermolecular interactions of molecules capable of forming hydrogen bonds and on the properties of the substances consisting of these molecules.

In synthesizing our knowledge of intermolecular forces and of immunological phenomena into a definite picture of the antigen-antibody bond the immunological property of greatest significance is the specificity of the combining power of antibody for the immunizing antigen.

The forces of van der Waals attraction, hydrogen-bond formation, and interaction of electrically charged groups are in themselves not specific, each atom of a molecule attracts every other atom of another molecule by van der Waals attraction, each hydrogen atom attached to an electronegative atom attracts every other electronegative atom with an unshared electron pair which comes near it, and each electrically charged group attracts every other oppositely charged group in its neighborhood. The van der Waals repulsive forces which determine the van der Waals radii of atoms also are not specific, each atom in a molecule repels every other atom of another molecule, holding it at a distance corresponding to the sum of the pertinent van der Waals radii. We see, however, that specificity can arise in the interaction of large molecules as a result of the shapes of the molecules. Two large molecules may have such spatial configurations that the surface of one cannot be brought into contact with the surface of the other except at a few isolated points. In such a case the total electronic van der Waals attraction between the two molecules would be small, because only the pairs of atoms near these few isolated points of contact would contribute appreciably to this interaction, and, moreover, the distribution of hydrogen-bond forming groups and of positively and negatively charged groups of two molecules might be such that only a small fraction of these groups could be brought into effective interaction with one another for any position and orientation of one molecule with respect to the other, the energy of attraction of these two molecules would then be small. If, on the other hand, the two molecules possessed such mutually complementary configurations that the surface of one conformed closely to the surface of the other, if, moreover, the electrically charged groups of one molecule and those of the other were so located that oppositely charged groups were brought close together as the molecules came into conformation with one another, and if the hydrogen-bond forming groups were also so placed as to form the maximum number of hydrogen bonds, the total energy of interaction would be very great, and the two molecules would attract one another very strongly. We see that this strong attraction might be highly specific in the case of large molecules which could bring large areas of their surfaces into close contact. A molecule would hence show strong attraction for another molecule which possessed complete complementarity in surface configuration and distribution of active electrically charged and hydrogen-bond forming groups, somewhat weaker attraction for those molecules

with approximate but not complete complementarity to it, and only very weak attraction for all other molecules

This specificity through complementarity of structure of the two interacting molecules would be more or less complete, depending on the greater or smaller surface area of the two molecules involved in the interaction. It may be emphasized that this explanation of specificity as due to a complementarity in structure which permits non-specific intermolecular forces to come into fuller operation than would be possible for non-complementary structures is the only explanation which the present knowledge of molecular structure and intermolecular forces provides.

This theory of structural complementarity of antigen and antibody was first suggested in less detailed form than above, by Breinl and Haurowitz (11), Alexander (12), and Mudd (13). A detailed discussion of the structure of antibodies and of a postulated method of their formation has been presented by Pauling (17), who has also reviewed the evidence supporting the theory of complementarity.

It was suggested by Breinl and Haurowitz and by Mudd that the effect of an antigen in determining the structure of an antibody might involve the ordering of the amino-acid residues in the polypeptide chains in a way different from that in the normal globulin. Rothen and Landsteiner (26) then pointed out that the possibility of different ways of folding the same polypeptide chain is worth considering, and this postulate was amplified by Pauling (17), who assumed that all antibody molecules contain the same polypeptide chains as normal globulin, and differ from normal globulin only in the configuration of the chains. This assumption was made because it permits the formulation of a simple proposed mechanism of manufacture of specific antibodies. An antibody molecule capable of existing in any one of a great number of configurations with nearly the same energy is synthesized, except for the final folding step, in the same way as normal globulin. If no foreign substance is present, the chain then folds into a stable configuration, characteristic of normal globulin, but if an antigen molecule is present, the chain folds into a configuration stable in the presence of the antigen, that is into a configuration complementary to that of a portion of the surface of the antigen molecule. This explanation of the ability of an animal to form antibodies with considerable specificity for an apparently unlimited number of different antigens (27), as shown especially by the work of Landsteiner (10), is compatible with the principles of structural chemistry and thermodynamics as well as with the immunological evidence.

To illustrate the way in which the complementarity theory accounts for many reported observations we shall mention only one point, taken from the great body of results on azoproteins obtained by Landsteiner. He observed a pronounced cross reaction between an azoprotein made from *m*-aminobenzoic acid and an antiserum to an azoprotein made from 4-chloro-3-aminobenzoic acid and a different protein but no reaction with the haptenic groups reversed. The explanation of this is that the antibody to the 3-azo-4-chlorobenzoic acid group conforms closely to this haptenic group, allowing either this group or the

3-azobenzoic acid group, which differs in the replacement of the chlorine atom by a smaller atom, hydrogen, to fit into the complementary cavity in the antibody, but the 3-azo-4-chlorobenzoic acid group cannot fit into a cavity designed for the smaller haptenic group, and so the reverse cross reaction does not occur. In a quantitative extension of Landsteiner's work on hapten inhibition of precipitation reactions of simple polyhaptenic substances (10), Pauling and collaborators (28) have recently reported a great deal of evidence in support of the complementarity theory. They interpreted their results on the inhibition of the precipitation reaction between dyes containing *p*-azophenylarsonic acid groups and antisera to hapten-homologous azoproteins to obtain numerical values of the strength of the bonds formed by these antibodies with over twenty-five different haptens. The observed correlation between the bond strengths and the structure of the haptens is that which would be expected from the complementarity theory.

This theory is not greatly different from some earlier proposals, such as Ehrlich's lock-and-key analogy (29), but it differs greatly from others. For example, Buchner (30) considered that antigen molecules are split up and incorporated into the antibody molecules, thus imparting specificity to them. This theory or a closely related theory has been supported by many people, including Burnet (31), who proposed a mechanism for the manufacture of antibodies in the image of the antigens: the antigens act as templates for the manufacture by the body of specific enzymes, which then serve as the molds for the production of antibodies similar to the original antigens. Until recently there has been no suggestion as to why antibodies similar in structure to an antigen should combine specifically with it. Recently, however, Jordan (32) has stated that a strong attraction would occur between such identical or nearly identical molecules because of the quantum-mechanical resonance phenomenon, this has been denied by Pauling and Delbrück (33), who pointed out that the resonance energy would be so small as to be ineffective. Chemical evidence against the identity of antibodies and specific antigens has been presented by many authors, of whom the most recent are Haurowitz, Vardar, and Schwerin (34).

Forty years ago there was under way a keen controversy between Ehrlich and Bordet, and their respective supporters, as to whether the bonds between antibodies and antigens are chemical bonds or are physical forces of the sort producing surface phenomena such as adsorption. The modern point of view resolves this argument, but not in favor of either side, in fact, as in recent years an understanding has been obtained of the forces responsible for surface phenomena it has been found that these forces are the same as those which are operative in chemical reactions, so that the old distinction between chemical and physical forces has lost most of its meaning.

THE NATURE OF THE PRECIPITATE Under suitable conditions (salt concentration, antibody-antigen ratio, etc.) the first stage of combination of antibody and antigen, which may make itself evident in change in toxicity or other properties of the antigen, is followed by precipitation. There has been much discussion as to whether or not this second stage is specific, like the first stage,

or is non-specific. Direct experimental evidence on this point, while not conclusive, favors the view that the reaction is specific. The most pertinent observations are those on the agglutination of mixed cellular antigens by mixed antisera, Topley and collaborators (35) noted the formation of separate clumps by the different cells, whereas Abramson (36) observed mixed clumping. Hooker and Boyd (37) found that mixed human and chicken erythrocytes gave separate clumps under some conditions and mixed clumps under other conditions. The fact that separate clumping is observed at all strongly favors the concept of a specific second stage, since mixed clumping might result from mechanical intertwining of specific clumps, whereas separate clumping would hardly be expected to result from non specific interaction. Heidelberger has pointed out that in those cases where mixed clumping takes place the cells used were either very large or of greatly different sizes (38).

A reasonable theory of agglutination and precipitation, the framework theory (lattice theory¹), was proposed in 1934 by Marrack (6), and has received strong support from the theoretical considerations and experiments of Heidelberger (9, 14, 15) and Pauling (18, 19, 20, 28) and their collaborators.

It is clear that, after we have accepted a mechanism for the specific attachment of antibody molecules to a cellular antigen, the simplest possible explanation of the agglutination of the cells is that it results from the same mechanism, if an antibody molecule had the power of specific attachment to two cells, it could form specific bonds with the two cells and thus hold them together, and the repetition of this process would lead to the formation of larger and larger clumps. Specific precipitation of antibodies and molecular antigens would result from the same mechanism if both antibody molecules and antigen molecules were multivalent (capable of forming two or more antigen-antibody bonds), larger and larger complexes $A-B$, $A-B-A$, $A-B-A-B$, etc., would form until the aggregates became macroscopic in size. The evidence supporting the framework theory has been reviewed by Marrack (6), Heidelberger (14), and Pauling (17), some of it, including that provided by recent work, is presented in the following section in connection with a discussion of the valence of antibody molecules.

The first of the theories of non-specific precipitation is the theory of neutralization of electrical charges. This theory was supported by many early investigators, who were attracted by the analogy with the well known phenomenon of the mutual precipitation of oppositely charged colloids. Teague and Field (39) investigated the charges of agglutinins and bacteria and concluded that the former are positively and the latter negatively charged, it is now known, however, as the result of the application of improved experimental methods, that under ordinary conditions (normal hydrogen ion and salt concentrations) antibody molecules and most antigens are negatively charged, and the theory of neutralization has in consequence been abandoned.

(The failure of precipitation or agglutination to occur in antigen antibody

¹ We have adopted the name "framework theory" instead of "lattice theory" because of our belief that the framework of antibody antigen precipitates does not usually have the regularity of structure which would be indicated by use of the latter expression.

systems with low salt concentration is, indeed, attributed to the electrostatic repulsion of the negatively-charged complexes in solution, which prevents the formation of large aggregates, agglutination or precipitation may occur in the presence of salt, the cations of which neutralize the negative charges of the complexes)

Another theory of non-specific precipitation which was proposed soon after the discovery of the precipitation reaction is that the reaction results from the formation of a hydrophobic colloid, which precipitates in the presence of electrolytes. This theory has been revived recently by Eagle (40) and by Hooker and Boyd (37). Eagle's suggestion that the polar groups of the antigen which are assumed to be responsible for its solubility are masked by a layer of antibody molecules, which themselves turn their polar groups inward and present only non-polar groups toward the solvent, has been discussed by Marrack (6), who has marshalled some arguments against it. An important argument is that particles can be agglutinated by an amount of antibody very much smaller than the amount required to coat their surface, the most recently reported experiments of this sort (41) indicate that azoerythrocytes can be agglutinated by less than 0.02 per cent as much antibody as would cover their surface with a layer 3.5 Å thick.

Hooker and Boyd (37) have presented several arguments in support of the thesis that " particles grow to visible size by the indiscriminate and non-specific accretion of other related or unrelated, small or large, aggregates whose primary nuclei are molecules or particles of antigen coated with antibody-globulin ". As additional evidence for this concept and against the framework theory Boyd and Hooker (42) reported their failure to inhibit the agglutination of erythrocytes by use of an excess of hemagglutinin. In our opinion the fact that inhibition of agglutination of particles (43) as well as of precipitation of molecular antigens (44) by excess antibody has been observed gives strong support to the framework theory. The failure of inhibition to occur under ordinary circumstances may be due to the difficulty in saturating the multivalent antigens, especially cellular antigens with thousands of combining groups, as is indicated by the theories of Hershey (45) and Pauling (17). In particular, the experiments of Heidelberger and Kabat (43) on the agglutination by untreated pneumococci of pneumococci coated with antibody and then thoroughly washed are most easily explained by the framework theory. Hooker and Boyd (46, 47) have recently proposed the theory that precipitation of antibody by polyhaptenic dyes may result from the action of the dye molecules in pulling the antibody molecules to which they are bonded so tightly together as to prevent the solvent from reaching the polar groups. This theory seems to be incompatible with our observation (18) that in general the dyes of smaller molecular size, which according to Boyd's theory should pull the molecules more closely together, in fact precipitate less completely than those of larger molecular size.

COMPOSITION OF ANTIBODY-ANTIGEN PRECIPITATES AND VALENCE OF ANTIBODY
An essential requirement for agglutination or precipitation according to the framework theory is that both antigen and antibody be multivalent. The

experimental observations which indicate multivalence of antigens and of agglutinins and precipitins have been summarized by Marrack (6), Heidelberger (14), and Pauling (17)

The most straightforward evidence for the necessary multivalence of antigen is given by experiments on the reactions of antibodies with simple substances of known structure. Subsequent to Landsteiner's discovery (10) that simple haptens inhibit the precipitation and agglutination reactions by forming soluble complexes with antibody it was found by Landsteiner and Van der Scheer (21) that simple substances containing two or more haptenic groups form precipitates with hapten homologous antibodies. We have shown that of the twenty seven simple substances containing phenylarsonic acid groups which were tested with antisera made by injecting rabbits with azoprotein made from *p*-arsanilic acid each of those (twenty in number) which contained two or more of the haptenic groups gave the precipitation reaction, whereas none of the monohaptenic substances formed precipitates. These facts support the framework theory strongly.

(The failure to obtain precipitates with some polyhaptenic substances reported by Hooker and Boyd (46) and Boyd (47) may have been due to their failure to work under conditions favorable to precipitation. We have obtained precipitates with some of the same substances and have observed that substances which give precipitates with strong antisera may fail to do so with weak antisera.)

Experiments which have been reported on the number of haptenic groups per azoprotein molecule necessary for precipitation with hapten homologous antibody (48, 49) and some of our unpublished results indicate that a few groups are needed, but so far they have not been precise enough to distinguish between 1 and 2 as the minimum.

Direct proof of the bivalence of diphtheria antitoxin is given by the studies of the antitoxin in presence of an excess of toxin with use of the ultracentrifuge which showed that the complexes ToxAntitox and $\text{Tox}_2\text{Antitox}$ exist in the solution (50).

The fact that slides can be coated with alternate unimolecular layers of antigen and antibody in specific combination (51-52) indicates effective bivalence of antibody molecules as well as antigen molecules.

It has long been known that in antigen antibody precipitates molecules of antibody are present in larger numbers than those of antigen, the antibody antigen molecular ratio being considerably greater than unity for nearly all systems (6, p 161, 53). This was shown convincingly by the accurate quantitative investigations of Heidelberger and his collaborators (54). A simple explanation of this fact which does not follow directly from the framework theory in its original form (6, 14), is given by the theory as modified by Pauling (17), who made the assumption that antibodies in general are at the most bivalent. (This assumption was made because his proposed structural theory of the process of formation of antibodies is such as to make unlikely the occurrence of antibodies of higher valence.) The maximum valence N of antigens toward homologous antibodies is assumed to be determined by the sizes and shapes of the

antigen and antibody molecules, being equal to the number of antibody molecules which, when bonded to the antigen molecule, can be packed around it. If the antigen and antibody molecules were spheres of the same size, this number would be $N = 12$, for smaller antigen molecules it would be smaller, and for larger ones it would be larger.

The predicted antibody-antigen molecular ratio for small antigen molecules would be $N/2$ at the equivalence zone, with the maximum valences of both antibody and antigen effective, the limiting values of the ratio for antigen excess would be 1, and for antibody excess $N - 1$. For very large antigens the expected ratio at the equivalence zone would be less than $N/2$. These predictions are in reasonably good agreement with Heidelberger's observations (54, 17), which correspond to the following values of N : ovalbumin and R-salt-azobiphenylazoalbumin (molecular weight 40,000-46,000), $N = 6$, serum albumin (m w 67,000), $N = 6$ to 8, thyroglobulin (m w 700,000), $N = 30$ to 40. Data of other investigators (55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61) correspond to similar values of N , with assumed bivalence of antigen.

If the valence of the antigen were known, measurement of the antibody-antigen molecular ratio could be interpreted to give the valence of antibody molecules. The only reliable experiments of this sort which have been reported so far are those of Pauling, Pressman, and Ikeda (20) with simple antigens of known structure. They found that the dihaptenic antigens 2-methyl-4,6-di(*p*-azophenylarsonic acid)phenol and 2-methyl-4,6-di(*p*-azobenzene(*p*-azophenylarsonic acid))phenol gave with antisera homologous to the *p*-azophenylarsonic acid group precipitates with the same molecular ratio throughout the range of relative concentrations from antibody excess to antigen excess. This is what would be expected if both antibody and dihaptenic antigen were bivalent, the predicted molecular ratio under all conditions then being 1, corresponding to the structure —A—B—A—B—A—B—A—B— for the precipitate. The observed molecular ratio (average of 119 analyses) was 0.75. The same independence of molecular ratio on relative concentration was found also for the four trihaptenic and tetrahaptenic substances studied, this was interpreted as resulting from the effective bivalence of these molecules also, as the result of their small size in comparison with the antibody molecules. The average molecular ratios found for the trihaptenic and tetrahaptenic substances, 0.85 and 0.83, respectively, are only slightly less than unity. These results, with assumed effective bivalence of the antigens, indicate for antibody molecules the effective valence 2.3.

Substantiating evidence for the multivalence of precipitating antibodies is provided by the observations which have been interpreted as resulting from the presence in antisera of antibodies with a valence of one. Heidelberger and Kendall (62) demonstrated the presence in rabbit antisera of univalent antibodies, which are able to combine specifically with antigen but are not able, in the absence of multivalent antibodies, to form precipitates. These univalent antibodies also occur in considerable amount in horse antisera, they seem to be produced in large amount by the first injections of ovalbumin into horses, precipitating (multivalent) antibody being formed only on repeated

injection (63, 64) It is probable that univalent antibody confers on horse antitoxins the peculiar properties which they show, in particular the pronounced prezone (region of antitoxin excess in which precipitation does not occur) The change in properties of antisera on heat treatment (65, 66, 67) or treatment with formaldehyde (9) or other denaturing agent is probably due to the conversion of bivalent antibody to univalent antibody by destruction of one of the combining regions

QUANTITATIVE THEORIES OF THE PRECIPITATION REACTION Although the quantitative physico-chemical treatment of immunological phenomena was begun early in the present century, by Arrhenius and Madsen (1, 68), it is only during the last decade that significant progress has been made The reason for the delay is not far to seek—it lies in the fact that the mathematical treatment of numerical data of low accuracy has little significance so long as a sound qualitative understanding of the phenomenon has not been developed. We may mention in illustration Arrhenius' discussion (1, p 147) of the formula $C = K B^{2/3}$ which he found to express the relation between the amount C of agglutinin bound by bacterial cells and the amount B of free agglutinin, Arrhenius interpreted this equation (whose validity for the complex system we would ascribe to the accidental distribution of the heterogeneous antiserum) as showing that the agglutinin molecules are divided between two solvents, one within and one without the bacterial cells, and that three molecules of the bound agglutinin are formed from two of the free substance

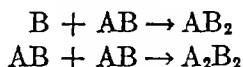
Recent theories are of two kinds those based on thermodynamic equilibrium among the reacting substances, and those based on the rates of reactions under non-equilibrium conditions There has been considerable discussion as to whether or not immunological reactions are reversible—whether, for example, an antigen antibody precipitate is soluble, and is in equilibrium with free antigen and antibody in solution We know from general principles however, that, given time enough, every system reaches equilibrium, and every material is more or less soluble, the questions of interest deal rather with such quantitative points as the length of time required for the system to reach equilibrium, and the magnitude of the solute concentrations in equilibrium with the precipitate

That the precipitation reaction in some cases reaches equilibrium in the hours or days usually allowed it is shown by various experiments on solution of the precipitate by salt (69), acid (70) alkali (71), and excess antigen, even after ageing for several months (72), including experiments in which there was variation in the method of approaching equilibrium (19)

Experiments on the Danysz phenomenon (73) and other related experiments indicate that a long time—many days—is needed for equilibrium to be approached for reactions involving change in composition of antigen antibody precipitates

The first quantitative theory which we shall discuss, that of Heidelberger and Kendall (14), was based on consideration of the rate of antigen antibody combination under non-equilibrium conditions The authors assumed that antigen A and antibody B first react completely and rapidly to form the com

plex AB, which uses up all the A (B being assumed present in excess). There then occur two competing slow reactions



The rates of formation of AB_2 (total number of units α) and A_2B_2 (total number of units β) are

$$\frac{d\alpha}{dt} = K[B][AB]$$

and

$$\frac{d\beta}{dt} = K'[AB]^2$$

in accordance with the laws of chemical kinetics. It is assumed arbitrarily that $K = K'$ and that the reactions are not reversible, by integration over the course of the reaction until the solution is exhausted of AB there is obtained to represent the composition of the precipitate, which consists of all the AB_2 and A_2B_2 formed, the equation

$$\frac{y}{a} = 2R - \frac{R^2 a}{b_0} \quad (1)$$

in which

y = milligrams of antibody precipitated

a = milligrams of antigen added

b_0 = total milligrams of antibody

R = antibody/antigen weight ratio at equivalence point

This equation for the composition of the precipitate, which corresponds to change from $2R$ at large antibody excess to R at the equivalence point, has been shown (15) to be in satisfactory agreement with the excellent experimental data obtained by the authors. In view of the arbitrary and unlikely assumptions originally used for its derivation, it is gratifying that Kendall himself (74) has recently derived the equation in another way, and that we have found (unpublished work) that the equation is obtained as an approximation from general considerations of chemical equilibrium when the assumption is made that the ratio may vary between the limits $2R$ and R and an expansion is made in powers of a/b .

Kendall's derivation is essentially the following (He considers also some more general cases)

Let antibody and antigen both be bivalent. For B_0 and A_0 molecules of antibody and antigen, respectively, there are $2B_0$ and $2A_0$ combining groups. Assume, for antibody excess, that all of the $2A_0$ antigen groups are bonded to antibody groups, and that they are distributed at random among the $2B_0$ antibody groups, without regard to whether or not the antibody molecule is already bonded at the other end. Since the chance that an antibody group is

bound is $2A_0/2B_0$, the chance that it is free is $1 - A_0/B_0$, and the fraction of antibody molecules free at both ends is $(1 - A_0/B_0)^2$. The fraction not free at both ends is $1 - (1 - A_0/B_0)^2 = 2A_0/B_0 - (A_0/B_0)^2$, and the number not free at both ends is thus multiplied by the total number, B_0 . If it be assumed that all antibody molecules not free at both ends are carried down in the precipitate with the antigen molecules the molecular ratio for the precipitate becomes

$$\frac{B_{pp}}{A_{pp}} = 2 - A_0/B_0 \quad (2)$$

and, introducing the ratio R of molecular weights, the weight ratio is found to be

$$\frac{y}{a} = 2R - R^2 \frac{a}{b_0} \quad (3)$$

This is identical with equation 1

Similar considerations have also been used by Ghosh (75) for the derivation of related equations

An involved theory of antigen antibody equilibria based in part on probability considerations has been extensively developed by Hershey (45). The theory, in common with others based on multivalent antigen and antibody, is in qualitative and rough quantitative accord with experiment.

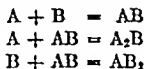
The only theory of the precipitation reaction which, following the program begun by Arrhenius, has been developed by straightforward application of the principles of chemical equilibrium is that of Pauling, Pressman, Campbell and Ikeda (10). This theory applies only to relatively simple systems, namely, those composed of bivalent antigen and bivalent antibody, univalent hapten, certain soluble complexes, and precipitate with invariant composition AB.

In order to show the nature of the treatment we present here the derivation of the equation for the amount of precipitate formed in absence of hapten generalized over the earlier treatment by consideration also of the complex AB_2 .

Let the molecular species A, B, AB, A_2B , and AB_2 in solution be in equilibrium with each other and with solid AB_{pp} . We represent the concentrations of the five solutes by the symbols

$$\begin{aligned} [A] &= \alpha \\ [B] &= \beta \\ [AB] &= s \\ [A_2B] &= a \\ [AB_2] &= b \end{aligned}$$

The quantities α , β , a , and b are variable whereas s is constant for a given system with precipitate present, it is the solubility of the precipitate. The equilibrium expressions for the three reactions



are respectively

$$\frac{s}{\alpha\beta} = 4K \quad (4)$$

$$\frac{a}{\alpha s} = K \quad (5)$$

$$\frac{b}{\beta s} = K'' \quad (6)$$

For simplicity we have assumed that each of the bonds in the complex A—B—A has the same strength as the bond in AB, this is probably a good approximation, in view of the fact that the two bonding regions are probably far apart on the large antibody molecules (The theory can be carried through without this assumption.) The constant K corresponds to equilibrium for one antibody valence and one antigen valence, and the factor 4 is an entropy factor or symmetry factor. We use K'' rather than K for the second bond in AB_2 because steric repulsion between the two antibody molecules attached to the same small antigen would be expected to decrease the stability of this complex.

The expressions for the total amounts of antigen and antibody in the system (per unit volume of solution) are

$$AB_{pp} + s + \alpha + 2a + b = A_{total} \quad (7)$$

and

$$AB_{pp} + s + \beta + a + 2b = B_{total} \quad (8)$$

Subtracting equation 8 from 7 we obtain

$$\alpha - \beta + a - b = A_{total} - B_{total}$$

Eliminating β , a , and b with the use of equations 4, 5, and 6 we obtain

$$\alpha - \frac{s}{4K\alpha} + Ks\alpha - \frac{K''s^2}{4K\alpha} = A_{total} - B_{total}$$

This quadratic equation in α gives on solution

$$\alpha = \frac{1}{2(1 + Ks)} \{ (A_{total} - B_{total} + [s(1 + K''s)(1 + Ks)/K] + (A_{total} - B_{total})^2 \}^{1/2} \quad (9)$$

(The positive rather than the negative sign before the radical is seen to be correct by the consideration of limiting cases.) From equation 7 we find on eliminating a and b the expression

$$AB_{pp} = A_{total} - s - (1 + Ks)\alpha - \frac{K''s^2}{4K\alpha} \quad (10)$$

Equations 9 and 10 give the solution to our problem, from 9 the value of α is to be found in terms of A_{total} and B_{total} and the parameters of the system s , K , and K'' and this on substitution in 10 gives the amount of precipitate.

It is shown in the original paper how this equation (with $K'' = 0$) accounts for many observed properties of antigen antibody systems

Future progress which may be anticipated involves the extension of this straightforward thermodynamic treatment to include the case of variable composition and randomness of structure of the solid phase. This will require the development of satisfactory approximate expressions for the free energy of such a solid phase, by application of the methods of statistical mechanics on the basis of sound structural concepts. This problem is not an easy one, but fortunately promising methods for attacking it have been developed in recent years by able theoretical physicists interested in the problem of the stability of alloys with greater or smaller degree of randomness of atomic arrangement, and we may be confident that great progress will soon be made in the formulation of a satisfactory quantitative theory of the precipitation reaction

SUMMARY

The forces responsible for combination and attraction of antigen and antibody molecules may be classified as electronic van der Waals attraction, Coulomb attraction, attraction of electric dipoles or multipoles, formation of hydrogen bonds etc. The specificity of interaction of antigen and antibody molecules arises from their structural complementarity, which permits close contact of the molecules over sufficient area for these weak forces to co-operate in forming a strong antigen antibody bond.

The weight of evidence indicates that further combination of the initial antigen antibody complexes to form a precipitate is a specific rather than a nonspecific reaction and is due to a continuation of the primary combination step to form a framework structure of alternate antigen and antibody molecules.

Furthermore it appears that both precipitating antigen and precipitating antibody must be multivalent at least bivalent.

The more recent quantitative theories of the precipitation reaction are discussed.

REFERENCES

- (1) ARRHENIUS S. *Immunochemistry* Macmillan and Co. 1907 p. 31.
- (2) PAULING L. *The nature of the chemical bond and the structure of molecules and crystals* Cornell University Press Ithaca N. Y. 2nd ed., 1910.
- (3) KRAUS R. *Wien klin. Wchnschr.* 10: 730 1897.
- (4) KRAUS R. In KOLLE and WASSERMANN. *Handbuch path. Microorganismen* 4: 592, 1004.
- (5) DEAN H. R. *A system of bacteriology* (V 6—Immunity p. 424) Medical Research Council His Majesty's Stationery Office London 1931.
- (6) MARRACK J. R. *The chemistry of antigens and antibodies* Report no. 230 of the Medical Research Council His Majesty's Stationery Office London 1934; second edition 1935.
- (7) HARTLEY P. *Brit. J. Exper. Path.* 7: 55, 1926.

- (8) FELTON, L D AND G H BAILEY J Infect Dis 38 131, 1926
- (9) HEIDELBERGER, M ET AL J Exper Med 64 161, 1936, 67 181, 1938, 68 913, 1938
- (10) LANDSTEINER, K The specificity of serological reactions C C Thomas, Springfield, Ill, 1936
- (11) BREINL, F AND F HAUROWITZ Ztschr physiol Chem 192 45, 1930
- (12) ALEXANDER, J Protoplasma 14 296, 1931
- (13) MUDD, S J Immunol 23 423, 1932
- (14) HEIDELBERGER, M Chem Rev 24 323, 1939, J Exper Med 61 563, 1935
- (15) HEIDELBERGER, M AND F E KENDALL J Exper Med 50 809, 1929
- (16) HAUROWITZ, F AND F BREINL Ztschr physiol Chem 214 111, 1933
- (17) PAULING, L J Am Chem Soc 62 2643, 1940
- (18) PAULING, L, D H CAMPBELL AND D PRESSMAN Proc Nat Acad Sci 27 125, 1941
- PAULING, L, D PRESSMAN, D H CAMPBELL, C IKEDA AND M IKAWA J Am Chem Soc 64 2994, 1942
- (19) PAULING, L, D PRESSMAN, D H CAMPBELL AND C IKEDA J Am Chem Soc 64 3003, 1942
- (20) PAULING, L, D PRESSMAN AND C IKEDA J Am Chem Soc 64 3010, 1942
- (21) LANDSTEINER, K AND J VAN DER SCHEER Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 29 747, 1932, J Exper Med, 56 399, 1932
- (22) RICE, O K Electronic structure and chemical binding McGraw-Hill Book Co, New York, 1940
- (23) LONDON, F Ztschr Physik 63 245, 1930
- (24) SCHWARZENBACH, G Ztschr physik Chem A176 133, 1936
- (25) LATIMER, W M AND W H RODEBUSH J Am Chem Soc 42 1419, 1920
- (26) ROTHEN, A AND K LANDSTEINER Science 90 65, 1939
- (27) HEKTOEN, L AND A K BOOR J Infect Dis 48 588, 1931
- (28) PRESSMAN, D, D H BROWN AND L PAULING J Am Chem Soc 62 3015, 1942
- (29) EHRLICH, P Studies on immunity John Wiley and Sons, New York, 1906
- (30) BUCHNER, H Münch med Wchnschr 40 449, 1893, 47 277, 1900
- (31) BURNET, F M The production of antibodies Macmillan & Co, Ltd, Melbourne, Australia, 1941, Chap X
- (32) JORDAN, P Ztschr Physik 113 431, 1939, Ztschr f Immunitätsforsch 97 330, 1940, Naturwissenschaften 29 89, 1941
- (33) PAULING, L AND M DELBRÜCK Science 92 77, 1940
- (34) HAUROWITZ, F, M VARDAR AND P SCHWERIN J Immunol 43 327, 1942
- (35) TOPLEY, W C C, J WILSON AND J T DUNCAN Brit J Exper Path 16 116, 1935
- (36) ABRAMSON, H A Nature 135 995, 1935
- (37) HOOKER, S B AND W C BOYD J Immunol 33 337, 1937
- (38) HEIDELBERGER, M Bact Rev 3 49, 1939
- (39) TEAGUE, O AND C W FIELD J Exper Med 9 86, 1907
- (40) EAGLE, H J Immunol 18 393, 1930
- (41) PRESSMAN, D, D H CAMPBELL AND L PAULING J Immunol 44 101, 1942
- (42) BOYD, W C AND S B HOOKER Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 39 491, 1938
- (43) HEIDELBERGER, M AND E A KABAT J Exper Med 65 885, 1937
- (44) DEAN, H R Proc Roy Soc Med 5 62, 1911
- (45) HERSHEY, A D J Immunol 42 455, 1941
- (46) HOOKER, S B AND W C BOYD J Immunol 42 419, 1941
- (47) BOYD, W C J Exper Med 75 407, 1942
- (48) HOOKER, S B AND W C BOYD J Immunol 23 446, 1932
- (49) HAUROWITZ, F, F KRAUS AND F MARX Ztschr physiol Chem 245 23, 1936
- (50) PAPPENHEIMER, A M, JR, H P LUNDGREN AND J W WILLIAMS J Exper Med 71 247, 1940
- (51) PORTER, E F AND A M PAPPENHEIMER, JR J Exper Med 69 755, 1939

- (52) FOURT W W D HARRIS AND G G WRIGHT Abstract 95th Meeting Am Chem Soc 1939
- (53) MARRACK J R Ann Rev Biochem 11 629 1942
- (54) HEIDELBERGER, M. J Am Chem Soc 60 242 1938
- (55) BOYD W C AND S B HOOKER. J Gen Physiol 17 341 1934 22 281 1939
- (56) HLECZKOWSKI A Brit J Exper Path 22 44 1941
- (57) LIU S C AND H WU Chinese J Physiol 15 237 1940
- (58) WU H., L H CHENG AND C P LI Proc Soc Exper Biol 25 407 1928
- (59) CULBERTSON J T J Immunol 23 439 1932
- (60) MARRACK J R AND F C SMITH Brit J Exper Med 12:30 1931
- (61) PAPPENHEIMER, A M JR AND E S ROBINSON J Immunol 32 291 1937
- (62) HEIDELBERGER, M AND F E KENDALL. J Exper Med 62 697 1935
- (63) PAPPENHEIMER A M JR J Exper Med 71 263 1940
- (64) HEIDELBERGER M H P TREFFERS AND M MAYER J Exper Med 71 271 1940
- (65) HOOKER S B AND W C BOYD Ann N Y Acad Sci 43 107 1942
- (66) SHIBLEY C S J Exper Med 60 825 1929
- (67) TYLER A Biol Bull 81:190 1941
- (68) MADSEN T Comm de l'institut serotherapie de l'Etat Danois 1907-13
- (69) HEIDELBERGER M AND F E KENDALL. J Exper Med 64 161 1936
- (70) LIU S AND H WU Chinese J Physiol 15 465 1940
- (71) FELTON L D J Immunol 22 453 1932
- (72) BOYD W C J Immunol 38 143 1940
- (73) HEALEY M AND S PINFIELD Brit J Exper Path 16 535 1935
- (74) KENDALL F E Ann. N Y Acad Sci 43 85 1942
- (75) GHOSH B N Ind J Med Research 23 285 1935

PHYSIOLOGICAL STUDY OF THE VERTICAL STANCE OF MAN

F A HELLEBRANDT AND ELIZABETH BROGDON FRANSEEN

*Departments of Physiology and Physical Medicine, University of Wisconsin and the
Department of Physiology, Mount Holyoke College*

Many years ago Sherrington (1920) remarked that posture is a theme worth studying, offering much opportunity for observation by those who are willing to undertake it. The literature in the field is rich and varied, spanning several branches of the basic sciences, medicine and surgery. The evolution of the biped stance has received extensive anthropologic study. The mechanics of standing, measurement of postural deformities, their prevention and treatment, have been subjects of comment and investigation for centuries. The neurological mechanisms which control the vertical stance of man and the physiology of the cardiovascular-respiratory responses to the hydrostatic effect of gravity have been exhaustively studied. Much of value to a fundamental understanding of posture may be deduced from a study of case histories which record behavior when controlling mechanisms are pathologically disrupted, or when deformity is sufficient to impair function. It would require a monograph of large proportions to encompass the information available in the literature. Since the subject of posture has yet to be surveyed in this way, the physiological implications of representative papers from the major fields of specialized interest form the basis of this review.

The classical contributions of Sherrington (1915), Magnus (1924a), de Kleijn (1924a) and of Rademaker (1931) on the postural reflexes are well known. Schäfer (1900) and Luciani (1915) have reviewed the early work on animal mechanics. More recent contributions to specialized aspects of biodynamics have been made by Steindler (1935), Morton (1935), Basler (1931), Bernstein (1935), and Phelps and Kipphuth (1932). The relationships of body mechanics to health have been discussed by Goldthwait and his school (1934). A recent symposium on posture was edited by Zirbes (1938) and Hoppe (1928) has contributed a general review.

According to Keith (1923), anatomists do not regard the postural adaptations of the human body as the resultant of a transformation peculiar to man, but rather as the culmination of a series of evolutionary phases which may be traced in the bodies of orthograde primates. After fifty years of interest in this subject he has abandoned his original view that the gibbon is representative of the pioneers of the orthograde stock and that man and the great anthropoids had passed through a hylobatian phase of evolution (1940). He now thinks that while gibbons in their early stages of evolution were developing along brachiating lines, two other modes of orthograde posture were being evolved in the same stock. In one both arms and legs were being used almost equally. In the other the lower limbs were being developed as the chief organs of support and locomotion.

The penalties of poor posture The change from the quadruped to the biped

posture has imposed difficulties which are interpreted by some as signs of extreme inadequacy of adaptation (Benson 1938, Hooton, 1936, 1939) Others while recognizing that the human body is not yet completely adjusted to the erect stance, consider the compensatory powers of Nature admirable and good (Hinchey, 1925, Main, 1937b, Jordan 1941) It has been widely assumed that anatomical defects in skeletal alignment encroach on body cavities secondarily affecting function (Dickinson and Truslow, 1912, Cyriax, 1938, Baker, 1942), and that good posture is a way to health (Canter, 1932, Forrester Brown, 1935) At the beginning of the century Keith (1903) postulated that when the abdominal wall is lax and the diaphragmatic supports give way, respiratory balance may be upset If the inspiratory muscles gain ascendancy there is danger of visceral displacement and subsequently, disorganization of function The major influence on thinking in this field has been exerted by Goldthwait (1932, 1933) who has long believed that the well poised individual is the most efficient because his muscles are well balanced, and because adequate space exists for the best possible functioning of the thoracic, abdominal and pelvic viscera.

Many clinical papers in the current literature on posture indicate that stance defects may result ultimately in a variety of malfunctions including lessened respiratory efficiency, prolapse of the abdominal viscera, impairment of digestion, pressure and derangement of the pelvic organs, dysmenorrhea, hemorrhoids, varicose veins constipation, cyclic vomiting foot strain, backache, neuritis and arthritis Barring orthopedic disabilities few of the etiologic associations are based on demonstrable fact Rather they are accepted as the *a priori* resultants of a sagging chest, low diaphragm, changed position of the heart and general visceroptosis

Almost from their first enunciation these now firmly entrenched concepts have been questioned (Osgood 1916) Many observations throw doubt on their validity It has been pointed out that the variability of visceral position is much greater than implied by textbook descriptions of the normal (Sever, 1913, Bactjer, 1916, Barclay, 1932) On the basis of orthodiagraphic examinations on 900 subjects Mills (1917) considers body habitus a determining factor of major importance to visceral form and position On the other hand, Coffey (1912) thinks that the development of general visceroptosis is probably impossible in the majority of men regardless of habitus In about 20 per cent the ascending and descending colon have not completely fused with the parietal peritoneum Coffey suggests that in this defective fifth of the human race are those in whom floating kidney mobile cecum and general visceroptosis are to be found The position of an organ may teach nothing regarding function (Bettemann, 1910) and chronic visceroptosis may exist in the healthy (Abhatt, 1934a) Wakefield and Mayo (1937) look upon the digestive function as so fundamental an endowment that it is beyond reason to suspect that the upright position assumed by the human species can in any way hinder hamper or decrease its efficiency Jones (1933) represents the view between the cited extremes He suggests that the relationship between poor posture and visceral function is "fairly definite and that by preventing bad posture one accomplishes "a little toward the pre-

vention of disease Schwartz, Britten and Thompson (1931) assessed the stance of 2,200 normal men and boys They came to the conclusion from the unexpected variability of the posture found in this essentially normal and vigorous group, that the importance of posture to health had been exaggerated

A few direct experimental attempts to relate posture and function have been made Wheatly and Moore (1927) carried out roentgenographic observations of visceral position and diaphragmatic excursion on a group of young adult women, gave special corrective exercises to those below standard in postural alignment, and note what was interpreted to be an improvement in the factors studied Klein and Thomas (1931) also reported that specific posture training resulted in demonstrable improvement of their experimental over a control group, the advantage being six to one Schwartz, Britten and Thompson (1928) had found no appreciable change in posture, for better or worse, when non-specific exercise was used on a test group of children Feeling the lack of basic information, Abbott (1934b) applied the Goldthwait postural treatment to patients with asthenic habitus and symptomatic visceroptosis He found his data difficult to interpret because of uncertainty in the evaluation of postural changes supposedly wrought by the exercises What is needed in studies of this type is a valid and reliable criterion of good stance, adequate objective measures of anatomic displacement of viscera, and acceptable assays of the functional status of the organ systems theoretically susceptible to influence by gravitational stresses In few case history studies have there been adequate control observations and therapy has been limited only rarely to correction of posture as the single variable under experimental investigation

Flagstand and Kollman (1928) used vital capacity as an index of respiratory damage in testing the hypothesis that functional impairment of the thoracic viscera follows lateral distortion of the spine In mild and moderate abnormalities the vital capacity was within normal limits In severe alignment disabilities it was reduced to within 53 and 65 per cent of normal When the curvature was confined to the lower thoracic and lumbar regions of the spine, vital capacity was not affected even though structural abnormalities were severe Schreiber (1934) made an experimental study on apes to observe the effects of various body positions on the shape of the abdominal cavity He found a characteristic position of the viscera for each posture studied Thus topographical pictures may reflect abnormality in posture rather than morphologic anomaly In 1934 Appleton produced unusual experimental postures in young and adult rabbits Significant deformations occurred only in the young in which growth was still active

Laplace and Nicholson (1936) initiated an extensive investigation to determine to what extent the belief that postural defects handicap physiologic function is justified by clinical and experimental evidence They obtained orthodiagrams of the chest and electrocardiograms, measured vital capacity, respiratory rate, tidal air, pulmonary ventilation, oxygen consumption, blood pressure, heart rate, and circulatory efficiency before and after acute variations in posture They also made a study of persons who had been taking corrective exercises for

a year Laplace and Nicholson found that the diaphragm was not always relatively elevated nor the heart more transversely placed by postural improvement. The influence of posture on the excursions of the diaphragm was variable. Vital capacity generally increased. There was no striking difference in oxygen consumption but pulmonary ventilation was greatly augmented. The statistical significance of observed differences was not estimated. They concluded on the basis of equivocal evidence that correct posture appears to have appreciable advantages to the circulation and respiration of most individuals, but that in some an apparent defect in posture may be a compensatory mechanism which it is inadvisable to disturb. Subsequently Nicholson and Laplace (1938) disregard a portion of their experimental data in favor of the *a priori* view that when a good posture is maintained without conscious effort its metabolic cost is less than that demanded by faulty alignment.

As a whole it has been difficult to displace the idea that attitudinal anomalies must of necessity be associated with functional disturbances. It is inadequately appreciated that organ systems carry on their work within very wide margins of safety, and that many compensatory mechanisms serve automatically to protect vital processes. It is difficult to believe on the basis of evidence as tenuous as that presented, that the human machine can be so fragile in its construction as to be significantly disrupted functionally by minor skeletal malalignments. Indeed, Rugh (1928) recognized as did Laplace and Nicholson that though postural changes affect appearance, they may be as well signs of compensation aimed at the preservation of essential functions. Möhring (1930) points out the paradoxical fact that a bad posture looks better than a good one if the so-called bad posture is balanced while the good one is not. As early as 1920 Lee and Brown had introduced the term "compensated defects." They looked upon poor posture without symptoms in much the same way as the clinician considers compensated heart disease, neglecting perhaps to take into account the vast difference in the relative importance of these two to reasonably adequate survival. It has been frequently suggested that malalignment may be adequately compensated for in youth, but gives way to symptoms under conditions of strain or as muscle power wanes with increasing age.

The literature following the last war makes repeated reference to the high incidence of disability developing under the rigors of military life and very generally credits faulty body mechanics as a contributory cause (Willard, 1918, Talbot and Brown 1920, Forrester Brown 1926, Milliken, 1928). Hellebrandt et al (1942) applied more precise modern methods to a re-exploration of the influence of the standard army pack on postural stability and alignment. Industry retains a concern over body mechanics in its relations to fatigue and output (Bedale and Vernon, 1924, Zacharias 1941) but the contemporary interest of military medicine has wandered away from such problems to an intensive study of the effects of centrifugal acceleration. There is a growing literature in this field. It has recently been reviewed exhaustively by Ham (1943). Positive accelerations of 6 to 8 g are known to occur in the maneuvers of modern combat aviation and human subjects are being exposed to these in controlled observa-

tions in planes and in the centrifuge When one considers the amazing capacity of the human to resist centrifugal accelerations of very high order, the effects of the gravitational stresses incidental to the simple verticality of the biped sink into insignificance by contrast That they can never be as malign as implied in a large and uncritical literature on the subject is probably a safe deduction from the type of evidence Ham reviews Analysis of the "black-out" phenomenon will doubtless add much to our fundamental understanding of the efficacy of the various buffer mechanisms called into play in efforts to avert cerebral ischemia of incapacitating proportions It is none the less interesting to observe that the application of simple postural tests of cardiovascular efficiency to the selection of prospective pilots was receiving interest as early as 1921 (Scott, Ellis) and that the Schneider Test continues to serve a useful purpose in aviation medicine The capacity to resist g will doubtless influence the selection of pilots for flight training involving high centrifugal stresses Factors affecting tolerance to centrifugal acceleration are in need of study (Rook and Dawson, 1938)

Tests and measurements of posture Efforts to measure posture in objective ways suitable for mass examinations have been made largely by lay observers In studying the normal, they have been confronted with deviations so slight that elaborate tests have become necessary to assign grades to such variations In contrast, precision devices have been comparatively little used by the orthopedic specialist in his examination of posture Since the early observations of Borelli, Braune and Fischer, Vierordt and Leitersdorffer, reviewed by Schäfer and Luciani, few physiologists have interested themselves in the problems of alignment Those most active in the development of practical methods of assessing the ability of the neuro-muscular and skeletal systems to resist gravity have shown the greatest disregard for the weakness of the evidence already cited which indicates poor posture as a factor inducing malfunction and ill health Although objective tests are more reliable than subjective ones (Cureton, Wickens and Elder, 1935), justification for making such exceedingly tedious measurements has never been put forward clearly To date, the tests have been used largely for purposes of cataloguing and education Few applying them have taken cognizance of the fact that "in biological terms posture is constant, continuous adaptation" and that there is a certain fruitlessness in classifying anomalies, its only satisfaction being the creation of a typology (Campbell, 1935) Few seem to have appreciated the fact that the posture tests in current use are based almost exclusively on an untenably static concept of standing Recognizing this point, Lee and Brown (1923) concede that the subjective rating of an examining physician who sees the body in use may give a fairer evaluation of stance mechanics than that attainable from a single instantaneous objective observation However, properly interpreted, posture tests have an obviously useful function

The literature contains a series of increasingly complex ways of testing and measuring posture General reviews embracing methods may be found in the papers of Mott (1927), Schwartz (1927) and Babecki (1929) To Cleha Mosher (1915) and Brown (1917) goes the credit for the earliest use of the

schematograph Fradd (1923) subsequently developed the silhouetteograph, which was later modified to include contours by Hubbard (1935), Wright (1935) and Hallett (1935). Co-ordinates were next included in the photographs (Moore 1934, Leonard 1934) to assist in evaluating the verticality of alignment. Biplane stereoscopic photographs were made by Clough and Murlin (1928) and Bernstein (1930) obtained a three dimensional concept of body position with the use of mirrors.

Variations in the depth of the antero-posterior curvatures of the spine have been scrutinized by the use of the lead tape, the conformature (Reynolds and Lovett, 1909), the comparagraph (Korb, 1939) and by the application of light aluminum pointers to project skeletal parts which are invisible in profile view photography (MacEwan and Howe 1934, MacEwan, Powell and Howe, 1935, Wickens and Kipbuth, 1937). Although these tests yield graphic records, their rating is often based entirely upon inspectional analysis guided by arbitrary criteria influenced unduly by changing esthetic considerations. Even the MacEwan and Howe test, which is one of the most exacting, does no more than replace individual judgment by a group evaluation. That this is inherent in the numerical scoring system proposed has escaped notice.

All posture tests appear to be built around the assumption that the less the jointed body parts deviate from the vertical, the smaller are the rotational stresses demanding equilibration by muscular contraction and the less the energy cost. The speculative nature of this view was recognized by du Bois-Reymond (1909). A vertical line coinciding with the axes of rotation of the joints of the inferior extremities and the lobe of the ear is widely looked upon as the ideal distribution of the parts around the vertical projection of the body's center of gravity. This alignment, which has been called the *normal stellung* after Braune and Fischer, is actually an abstraction never encountered in the normal weight-bearing body of living man. Although it is universally recognized that gravity is the main deforming force acting on the human body for the modification of posture, it is curiously true that few efforts have been made in the field of stance testing to establish an experimentally determined "weight line" as a point of departure for the analysis of the alignment of body parts. This has been done by Cureton and Wickens (1935) by a method identical in principle to that of du Bois-Reymond (1909) and Reynolds and Lovett (1909). Kelso and Hellebrandt (1937), and Hellebrandt and associates have synchronized biplane postural photographs with center of gravity determinations (1938, 1942a, c), and used these combined methods to check the validity of one of the current methods of evaluating stance (Hellebrandt et al. 1942d, e).

The biodynamics of standing. The early work on *Animal Mechanics* of Borelli, the Weber brothers and Braune and Fischer is adequately reviewed by Haycraft (Schäfer 1900). Recent students in this field include Cotton (1931), Basler (1929, 1932), Okuyama (1932), Kelso and Hellebrandt (1937) and Hellebrandt et al. (1937, 1938, 1942).

"When man became a biped and assumed the upright position, he immediately made an enemy of gravity, and he has been fighting this relentless foe ever

since" (Jones, 1933) In this struggle man demonstrates some of the most striking compensatory automatisms in human physiology Bedale and Vernon (1924) noted when several positions were taken in duplicate or triplicate on different occasions that there was nothing accidental about the postures assumed The optimum of any position could be gauged to a nicety and the versions of each mode were hardly distinguishable from each other

Reynolds and Hooton (1936) were the first to attempt an investigation of the speculative inferences concerning the relation of the pelvis to the mechanics of the erect posture The degree of pelvic inclination with its associated lumbar lordosis is probably the most important single factor determining the postural attitude of the individual They observed from a combination of biplane center of gravity determinations and x-ray measurements that asymmetries of the pelvis and unequal leg length bore no relation to lateral displacement of the projection of the center of gravity either in the pelvis or in the base of support

Mosher (1895, 1919) early called attention to the asymmetry of the natural stance of man Morton (1935) assumes that the center of gravity plumbs over the geometric center of the supporting base disregarding the toes which he does not consider actively functional in normal standing There has been interest in the exact location of the vertical projection of the center of gravity on the part of others (du Bois-Reymond, 1900, Basler, 1929, Hellebrandt et al, 1937) Hellebrandt and Fries (1942) direct attention to evidence which tends to invalidate the theoretical conception of Morton They found that the stance of adult women was overwhelmingly asymmetric, the vertical projection of the center of gravity falling slightly to the left and behind the geometric center of the total supporting base They propose that this phenomenon of stance eccentricity may be compensatory for a right sided limb preference

Postural sway is inseparable from the upright stance This phenomenon has been extensively studied since the pioneer observations of Vierordt (1862) The literature has been well reviewed by Skogland (1942) Gross estimates of the insecurity of the vertical posture were made by Weir Mitchell and Lewis in 1886 The work was continued by Hinsdale (1887) and by Bullard and Brockett (1888) In 1893 Romberg called attention to the diagnostic significance of the inordinate postural sway evoked by simple closure of the eyes and constriction of the supporting base in patients with posterior column disease Graphic records of postural sway, called cephalograms, are made either by a stylus attached to the head or by strapping a light platform to the subject's back and having him stand under a writing point Cephalograms have been used for the estimation of postural stability in the studies of Rosenfeld (1915), Eichkern and Skaggs (1928), Skaggs et al (1932), Skaggs (1937) and Schuldbach (1940) In 1922 Miles devised an ataxiometer which permitted better quantitative handling of estimates of postural instability than was permissible with the previous graphic methods The ataxiometer was subsequently used by Fearing (1924, 1925a, b) In 1940 Liebert combined the graphic and numerical methods, recording the distance covered in the cephalogram Ricaldoni's (1928) departure in method allowed for a biplane study of the amplitude, fre-

quency, rhythm, and form of the oscillations of the body as a whole while standing. He placed the subject on a platform suspended from cables. The movements of the platform were transmitted to a large air capsule and thence to a recording tambour. Moss (1931) subsequently devised a method similar in principle and this was used by Ormawake (1932). Finally, Hellebrandt and Kelsø (1942c) obtained oscillograms of postural sway. These compounded the shifts in the center of gravity occurring in the two cardinal vertical orientation planes of the body during natural effortless standing.

There is general agreement that stance is steadied when the eyes are open and focussed on a fixed point and least stable with the eyes closed. Distraction reduces sway. When the feet are together the stance is unsettled. Turning the toes out to an angle of 45 degrees or separating the feet so as to equalize the coronal and sagittal diameters of support steadies the stance. Sway is much greater in the antero-posterior vertical orientation plane than in the transverse. Height and weight correlate poorly with stability. In the Romberg test the relationships are so low as to lack significance. Thus the body may compensate in other ways for mechanically disadvantageous factors in physical build. Though kaleidoscopic at first sight when carefully made, postural sway patterns are characteristic for each person and highly reproducible. There is lack of agreement chiefly as to whether stance training reduces postural instability or not, and whether fatigue is reflected as readily as often implied, in an augmentation of sway.

Man possesses a relatively high center of gravity which must be maintained over a small supporting base. Since the weight line falls in front of the ankle joint shifting gravitational rotatory stresses must be incessantly equilibrated. One might conclude from the inseparable association of postural sway with standing that the struggle against gravity is but poorly met. However, capricious as the behavior of the center of gravity may seem its oscillations are so accurately balanced that the average relation of the center of mass to the base of support remains remarkably constant at least in vigorous young adults with good equilibratory and kinesthetic senses (Hellebrandt and Fries, 1942).

The neurological basis of standing. The myotatic reflex is of exceptional importance to the maintenance of the upright stance (Liddell and Sherrington, 1924-1925). The vertical orientation of the segmented body in respect to the line of gravity is conditioned by a more or less selective distribution of this reflex to the extensor muscle groups. Adjuvant reflexes emanating from widespread receptors: teleoceptive, labyrinthine, proprioceptive and exteroceptive, readily modify the geotonus of the antigravity muscles. Klein and Schilder (1920) aptly present the "postural model of the body" as one compounded from a combination of fluctuating optic influences, tactile impressions and kinesthetic experiences. The commingled sensations which regulate postural tone are only feebly discriminable. They rarely obtrude upon consciousness (Evans, 1926). Fulton and Sherrington (Cowdry, 1930) even place the basic proprioceptive reflex entirely "beyond self-examination by any effort of introspection." Although the brain has only a limited cognitive power over the muscles (Keith

1933), the acuteness of proprioception is susceptible to cortical influences (Fearing, 1925b). However, posture is essentially an automatism and the mind is unaware of how we do our standing (Sherrington, 1933, 1941).

The orthograde stance of man is a neurological achievement of significance. The multiplicity of the reflexes co-operating in its behalf suggests that the phenomenon must be important to warrant such elaborate protection. Deficiency of one reflex circuit may be associated with a compensatory coaction of those remaining (Hansson, 1932). It is usually conceded that a kinesthetic defect accompanied by insufficiency of more than one of the accessory postural reflexes abolishes normal stance (Wiggers, 1935, Starling, 1936), but the relative importance of the various accessory stance reflexes to the normal adult human has never been definitively determined.

The striking effect of retinal stimulation on the postural tonus of man is readily seen in the Romberg phenomenon. Poorly demonstrable in the normal, the magnitude of the steadying effect of visual impressions when the supporting base is narrowed, is easily appreciated when the proprioceptive reflex circuits are defective as in Fränkel's locomotor ataxia. How the eye controls the tonus of different muscle groups has been beautifully demonstrated in heliotropic insects by Garrey (1918). Unequal photochemical reactions of the two eyes call forth asymmetrical tension, unbalanced postures, and movements along forced paths.

The neck and labyrinthine reflexes have been studied by Magnus (1924, 1926), de Kleijn (1924), de Kleijn and Versteegh (1924, 1927), Bertoff (1915), and McNally (1930, 1933). The attitudinal reflexes originating in proprioceptive receptors of the neck and in the utricle are not conspicuous in adult man, but the tonic neck reflexes are elicitable in the normal human infant during the first twelve weeks of life. Gesell (1938) considers them virtually a universal feature of neonatal infancy. Their persistence beyond the first half year indicates retarded, arrested, or defective development.

Sherrington (1910) believed that centripetal impulses from the touch and pressure receptors of the soles of the feet contribute little or nothing to reflex standing. In the horse, pigeon and cat the afferent conductors could be severed without affecting reflex standing. Harris (1938) has recently described an ipsilateral extensor reflex, mild and long enduring, which may be evoked by stimulation of the medial plantar nerve in the dog. Bard (1941) describes a series of nonvisual placing reactions of importance to quadrupeds in maintaining the center of weight properly within the confines of the supporting base. Little is known about placing and supporting reactions in man. There is reason to suspect that the transformation of the weight-bearing limbs of man into rigid pillars of support by unyielding reflex tonus would be a disadvantageous retention of a primitive reaction incompatible with the maintenance of circulation in the biped.

The predominant afferents responsible for the production and control of postural tonus are those of the proprioceptive group coming from the muscles and joints of the weight-bearing limbs. These are of fundamental importance

The short circuit myotatic reflexes come into synaptic alliance with the motoneurons of the anterior horn. Their rhythmical bombardment is automatically insured by the incessant stimulation of stretch receptors incidental to the involuntary postural sway with which standing is invariably associated (Hellebrandt, 1938). Thus streams of impulses arise within the muscles themselves. While the stretch reflex is basically a spinal process (Denny Brown and Liddell, 1927), the afferent flow may impinge upon cord centers significantly modified by descending impulses of supraspinal origin which exert a profound influence on the subtetanic contractions which ultimately develop in the fraction of the antigravity motor units subjected to rotational stresses. The magnitude of the response, its speed and duration are probably related to the vigor and rate of the stretch being limited to the units specifically affected. Thus conceived, postural tonus would be automatically adapted to the force which must be equilibrated if the weight bearing limbs are to remain upright (Hellebrandt, Crigler and Kelso, 1939).

The long circuit afferent pathways mediating proprioceptive impulses travel to the cerebellum by way of the dorsal and ventral spino-cerebellar tracts and the posterior columns. Thence these impulses may be shunted rostrally by way of its superior peduncle to the thalamus and the cortex of the cerebrum or downward to synapse with the final common path via the reticulo-spinal, vestibulo-spinal or rubrospinal pathways. This suggests that the cerebellum, brain stem and cerebrum all contribute to the control of posture. Mesencephalic transection between the anterior and posterior corpora quadrigemina releases the lower motor neuron from the inhibitory influence of suprahullar centers and throws the antigravity muscles into strong tone. The augmenting impulses emanate from the vestibular nuclei and descend by way of the vestibulo-spinal tracts.

Bicher and Fulton (1938) showed that corticofugal impulses descending from the motor cortex and the premotor cortex are normally concerned in suppressing the neck and labyrinthine reflexes and the righting reflexes of the adult monkey and baboon. The rôle of the cerebellum in the control of postural reflexes is imperfectly understood but Dow (1938) has demonstrated that the anterior lobe has a well defined inhibiting effect on tonus. Bilateral destruction of the red nuclei produces characteristic disturbances in gait, mild increases in extensor and *stutz* tonus, delay and exaggeration of the *schmelz*, *hinkeln* and *stemmaeln* reactions. Ingram, Ranson and Barris (1934) conclude that the red nucleus is concerned with the regulation of muscle tone, plays its small part as a co-ordinator and exercises restraint on certain motor activities in a way perhaps subordinated to influences which originate above the mesencephalon. Mettler et al (1939) stimulated the corpus striatum of cats and monkeys. Stimulation of the caudate putamen or claustrum inhibited movements induced by cortical excitation while stimulation of the globus pallidum imparted 'plastic tonus' to the cortically induced movements, exerting a holding effect upon them prolonging their relaxation time.

A variety of efferent conductors impinge on the final common path tending to increase or decrease the activity of the lower motor neurons. In ascending

the phylogenetic scale, the final common path is brought more and more under the control of cerebral centers. The basal nuclei make only indirect connections with the final common path by way of the red nucleus, the substantia nigra and the thalamus, and efferent impulses from the cerebral motor centers descend either directly or by way of the cerebellum. Thus almost all portions of the central nervous system appear to have some part to play in the control of the postural reflexes. Wilson (1926) doubts whether the skeletal muscles of higher vertebrates ever respond to afferent impulses from one source alone. Indeed, the maintenance of posture must be looked upon as the resultant of a bewildering interplay of reflexes.

The chronological unfolding of the reflexes which allow for the assumption and preservation of the upright posture has been studied recently by Matulay (1938) on a group of 134 children divided into groups according to age. He found the neck and labyrinthine reflexes elicitable by the third month. Between the third and sixth months the hopping and bracing reactions appear and supporting tonus is demonstrable in the lower extremities on passive standing. The tonic reflexes start diminishing during the sixth to the twelfth months and are absent in children between the age of two and one half years and five and one half years in whom righting reflexes, hopping and bracing reactions are fully developed.

Under pathological conditions the primitive reflexes of infancy may reappear (Schaltenbrand, 1928). Weisz (1938) studied the neck reflexes and equilibrium reactions as synergic phenomena. The former fade as the latter increase in strength in the course of normal development. Byers (1938) believes that the primitive postural reflex mechanisms are increasingly buried in higher mammals by the activity of phylogenetically newer neural machinery and reappear only when this is destroyed. Magnus (1926b) has expressed the view that the attitudinal reflexes seen in animals are all present in man but only exceptionally demonstrable in the healthy adult. Neck righting reflexes are present in normal adults (Schilder, 1929). The optical righting reflexes are also active in man. Dusser de Barenne (Murchison, 1934) denies that tonic neck reflexes have been demonstrated in the normal human adult with any degree of certainty. He believes that when they occur, they cannot be identified with the true neurophysiological phenomena of Magnus and de Kleijn, being rather psychogenic motor reactions. Much will eventually be learned from attempts to interpret the postural disturbances seen in clinical medicine in terms of the experimental observations of Sherrington, Rademaker, Magnus and de Kleijn (Brock and Wechsler, 1927, Haynes, 1928, Schaltenbrand, 1929, Wechsler, Bieber and Balser, 1936, Matulay, 1938, Ford and Walsh, 1940, Nielsen and Frieman, 1941).

The energy cost of standing It has long been a favorite argument of those concerned with the correction of poor posture that so-called good body mechanics bring about a significant saving in energy and hence allay incapacitating fatigue. This concept, like the supposed detrimental effect of poor posture on visceral function, is based almost exclusively on *a priori* evidence. Tepper and Hellebrandt (1938) determined the metabolism of 75 women in recumbency and

passively assumed standing. The average increase on standing was 5.71 cal/sq m/hr or 16.25 per cent. Turner et al (1930) had observed a rise of 5.8 per cent at 62 degrees and 19 per cent at a 90 degree angle from the horizontal. These increases are small in comparison with the metabolic cost of the phasic contractions of exercise, and could hardly be significantly affected by minor alterations in body mechanics (Hellebrandt, Brogdon and Tepper, 1940). Laplace and Nicholson (1936) failed to show real differences in oxygen consumption as a result of improvement in posture.

Sherrington (1915) called attention to the fact that postural contractions may be maintained for long periods of time without obvious fatigue. This astonishing economy of postural contraction gave rise to speculation as to the cause of such indefatigability. Hoefler (1941) concluded from action potential studies that minimum exertion goes into standing under normal conditions. Posture appears to be maintained by the activity of a small fraction of the motor units potentially available. Larger action potentials occur only when weight distribution is changed by shifting or swaying. From this point of view normal standing on both legs is almost effortless.

A rotation of activity among motor units has long been postulated to explain the sustained maintenance of postural contractions without fatigue (Barbour and Stiles, 1912; Forbes, 1922; Fulton, 1926). Bard (1941) argues strongly against this. In part because incomplete tetani can be kept up almost indefinitely without fatigue in mammalian muscle with intact blood supply, Bard concludes 'there is no a priori reason for rotation'. However if the stretch afferents are in reality stimulated by postural sway, rotation of motor units probably follows whether there is a priori reason for such rotation or not. A glance at the trajectory of the shifting center of weight during normal effortless standing (Hellebrandt and Fries, 1942) affords good presumptive evidence in support of checkered asynergism of action on the part of motor units during standing and this may secondarily account in part at least for the indefatigability of postural contraction.

Compensations for the hydrostatic effect of gravity. The gravitational force exerted upon the circulating blood in the erect position is generally recognized as a cardiovascular handicap by virtue of the opposition it offers the venous return. The earliest observations upon this subject were made by physicians describing syncope attacks. One of these, Piorry (1826), even supplemented his clinical experience with investigative work on dogs. Physiologists long have concerned themselves with the effects of the changes imposed directly upon the cardiovascular system by verticality. They have given much attention to the diverse compensatory mechanisms which exist to offset threatened disparity between the size of the vascular bed and the volume flow in the erect position. A matter so important for survival as the adequacy of the circulation to vital centers located in the head is protected by a number of devices, as are many other indispensable functions. Thus vasoconstriction, acceleration of heart rate, augmentation of respiration, general tonus of muscle, and muscular activity have all been subjects of inquiry in this regard.

There have been many publications reporting a diminution of cardiac output in normal man in the vertical position as compared with the horizontal (Lindhard, 1913, Field and Bock, 1925, Turner, 1927a, Schneider and Crampton, 1934, Donal et al, 1934, Scott, 1936, Neukirch, 1937, Sweeney and Mayerson, 1937, McMichael, 1937, Asmussen et al, 1939b) A few observers have reported values similar for both postures or an augmentation of cardiac output during standing (Grollman, 1928, Schellong and Heinemeier, 1933, Goldbloom et al, 1940, Starr and Rawson, 1941) The magnitude of the reduction has varied from a slight change to a diminution of 26 per cent It is affected in particular by the length of the standing period, the nature of the change from horizontal to vertical (whether active or passive), the character of the stance (rigid, relaxed, supported or restless), and the ability of the subject to tolerate the upright position under various restricting conditions incidental to the technic of the particular procedure In their paper, Donal et al (1934) tabulate the values for cardiac output reported in the literature The evidence points toward the conclusion that stroke volume is significantly reduced in the vertical stance

Observations upon postural changes in blood composition and leg volume add indirect supporting evidence to the belief that cardiac output is reduced during standing They are the consequence of withdrawal of fluid in the dependent parts combined with simple stagnation in a widening vascular bed In 1928 Thompson, Thompson and Dailey reported an average loss of 11 per cent total plasma volume during prolonged standing They found this to be protein free The maximal fluid loss occurred in from 20 to 30 minutes and was returned to the circulation in about the same time upon resumption of recumbency Waterfield (1931a), using carbon monoxide instead of the dye method for estimating blood volume, obtained comparable values on the quantity of fluid lost, but observed a plasma concentration which suggested that the capillaries became permeable to protein fractions other than the globulin His plethysmographic measurements of the inferior extremities (1931b) demonstrated volume increases of an order which corresponded well to the blood volume changes, indicating that such loss of plasma from the circulation was due to its leakage into the tissues Turner (1930) reported a progressive increase in the volume of the legs in the erect position, as did Looke in 1937 and Asmussen and his associates in 1939 (a) Wells et al (1938) believe the ratio of the final rate of filtration to initial rate is of a magnitude to be expected on the assumption that filtration ceases in some muscles, but continues indefinitely in others and in the skin The distinction thus drawn between the muscles rests upon their fascial coverings In those tightly surrounded by connective tissue sheaths, intramuscular pressures rise to 50 cm of water during quiet standing, which is sufficient to stop filtration In those muscles more loosely covered, the intramuscular pressure reaches only 20 cm of water Thus the latter regions may be conceived of as the filtering areas through which plasma continues to seep into the tissue spaces more or less *ad infinitum*

The work of Krogh, Landis and Turner (1932) emphasized the relationship between filtration in the capillaries and the colloid osmotic pressure by showing

that when the latter was elevated in standing, the rate of filtration produced by a given venous pressure was uniformly lower. They found a significant leakage of protein in venous stasis when the pressure became high. Youmans et al (1934) reported a marked increase in the colloid osmotic pressure of serum withdrawn from the foot during passive support at near vertical angles maintained for protracted periods of time. Keys and Butts (1939) also reported a marked increase in colloid osmotic pressure as a result of one-half hour of quiet standing and confirmed the work of Man and Peters (1933) which showed that the capillaries are impermeable to lipoids. Youmans and his co-workers found that although the leg volume increased pitting edema did not occur in any strictly normal subjects. However in spite of the self limiting effect of filtration, it appears that as Krogh, Landis and Turner (1932) said, "the erect human being is constantly near to edema."

Further indirect support to the experimental evidence showing a reduction of the total output of the heart in standing is found in the observations of postural changes in blood velocity. Methods used in the study of circulation time in man include the intravenous injection of vital red (Thompson et al, 1928), of histamine phosphate (Bock, Dill and Edwards 1930), and solutions of calcium, magnesium and sodium salts (Kvale and Allen 1939, Mayerson et al 1939). These investigators are in agreement that during verticality a retardation of blood flow occurs. It was more marked when the subjects were passively tilted to the vertical than when they stood, even with as little motion as possible. Subsequent determinations on oxygen utilization of the legs were made by Florin, Edwards and Dill (1930). They estimated that in the erect posture only one half as much blood flows through the legs in unit time as in the reclining position. Although the superficial veins fill and stretch under the stagnating fluid it is suggested that the deeper veins are less subject to change in diameter. Kvale and Allen (1939) believe that information on the speed of flow in the arteries can be secured by subtracting the arm to-tongue time from the arm to-foot time. The resulting figure, which gives roughly the ventricle-to-foot time, they found increased after 10 minutes in the erect position indicating slowing of the arterial circulation apparently as a result of vasoconstriction. Their mostromuhr measurements on dogs (Mayerson, 1942) supplement and extend these on man and provide direct evidence of vasoconstriction with a slowing of volume flow to subcardial regions. The decrease on the arterial side is accompanied by a marked decrease in venous return.

The usual arterial blood pressure findings for normal erect subjects are a systolic pressure equal to or slightly above the recumbent values, and an elevated diastolic pressure. They are accompanied by a heart rate distinctly higher than that in recumbency. In 1904 Erlanger and Hooker observed that the acceleration of the heart and the diminution of the pulse pressure upon the assumption of the erect posture remind one strongly of the effects produced by hemorrhage. These normal postural responses have been widely studied under a variety of experimental procedures. In many cases the subjects have been passively tilted to the vertical to eliminate the complication introduced by the muscular work.

of active change in position. The subjects have been suspended in water to counteract the hydrostatic effect of gravity. Observations have been made within 10 seconds after the change in posture and have been continued without interruption through periods prolonged to more than an hour. The subjects have been instructed to stand completely at ease, as quietly as possible, at strict attention, or have been restrained from movement by extrinsic supports. The character of the standing has not always been described. The periods of verticality have been preceded by severe exercise as well as by rest of varying duration in recumbency. They have been interrupted by periods of mild exercise such as walking, either in place or about the laboratory. Environmental temperatures have been either uncontrolled or consciously varied. More papers have dealt with the response of the male than the female.

Within 10 seconds after active change from recumbency to the erect position, the systolic pressure may drop from 5 to 40 mm Hg as demonstrated by Wald, Guernsey and Scott in 1937. After about 30 seconds, they found that in the majority it regained or passed the recumbent level. The diastolic pressure usually showed a rise with the initial drop in systolic pressure, as did the heart rate. The values were exaggerated if a tilting table were used for the change in position and the systolic pressure then seldom exceeded the recumbent level. When the vertical position was maintained for longer periods, the heart rate rose 14 beats or more per minute and continued to accelerate the longer the period of observation and the more quiet the subject (Barach and Marks, 1913, Sewall, 1919, Mortensen, 1923, Lutterloh, 1937, Turner, 1929, Hamilton et al, 1932, Schellong and Heinemeier, 1933, Hellebrandt and Brogdon, 1938). The systolic pressure was not always held at its original level but frequently fell slightly. The diastolic pressure gradually but consistently rose sufficiently to reduce the pulse pressure to 20 mm of Hg or less. Gross (1940) reported the oscilometric index as measured in the arteries of the lower extremities to be reduced during standing. Support of the subjects at increasing angles from the vertical has shown the arterial pressure and heart rate values to alter directly with the gravitational stress exerted on the circulation (Turner et al, 1930, Ghrist, 1930, Hamilton et al, 1932, Hellebrandt and Brogdon, 1938). As is to be expected, nullification of the hydrostatic effect by immersion in water holds the values near those characteristic of recumbency (Erlanger and Hooker, 1904, Hellebrandt and Brogdon, 1938, Asmussen et al, 1939c).

Gravity shock—or orthostatic circulatory insufficiency. Not all individuals can tolerate prolonged quiet standing or passive verticality. As Turner emphasized in 1929, circulatory adjustment is effected by each person according to his own pattern, and it is clear that some patterns are far superior to others. Most of the investigators in this field encounter "fainters" among their subjects, even among those classified as strictly normal. They may suffer orthostatic circulatory insufficiency in from 10 to 30 minutes. Their systolic pressure is usually well maintained until just before the point of syncope. The diastolic pressure encroaches seriously upon the pulse pressure, finally falling rapidly as the systolic pressure drops. The heart rate, which may have exceeded the recum-

bent value by 40 beats per minute, suddenly slows Schellong and Heinemeier (1933) have presented a diagram on the basis of their work with both healthy men and patients, showing the course taken by the blood pressures, stroke volume, minute volume and oxygen consumption in "excellent regulation," "adequate regulation," "the transition period," "pre-collapse," and then infer the data for "collapse" itself Hick et al. (1940) reported a more marked postural effect in hot environments than did Hamilton et al (1932) but both groups of investigators rated the circulation less adequate in the erect position than in the horizontal

Gravity shock has been shown to interrupt standing quickly in post-exercise periods Mateef (1935, and Petroff 1932) observed it often in sportsmen after sprints at high speed and prevented it by handgaging the legs and thighs Brogdon and Hellehrandt (1940) found it to be uniformly present in some subjects when they were immobilized in the erect position after a brief vigorous bout of work on a bicycle ergometer The orthostatic circulatory insufficiency was often rapid in its onset Heart rates first fell to approximately 115 per minute from exercise values near 200, then began to rise again, approaching the immediate post-exercise level In recumbency, post-exercise, the fall to near stabilized levels would have been steady The diastolic pressure elevated, the systolic pressure fell far below the recumbent figure and syncope terminated the experiments

Weiner (1938) in South Africa combined the factors of exercise and a hot humid environment in studying the ability to stand He found that most of his adult male Bantu subjects could tolerate an hour of quiet standing after shovelling gravel for an equal period of time When, in control experiments, the standing was undertaken in a cool room, no cases of collapse occurred

Compensatory mechanisms must be highly perfected in those able to resist the gravitational stress placed on the circulation in post-exercise standing Under such conditions there tends to be a great disparity between the volume capacity of the vascular bed and the volume flow of blood Functional dilatation of the vessels of the inferior extremities increases their volume capacity The cessation of activity removes the well recognized muscle pump which has assured an augmented venous return during exercise The hydrostatic effect of gravity tends to further widen the bed and oppose venous return It is remarkable that the circulation can be maintained under such stringent circumstances

Mateef and Petroff (1932) and Looke (1937) were interested in the ability to resist gravity collapse as a problem of practical importance to choice of vocations which are carried on predominantly in the upright posture Massce (1942) has suggested that the ideal occupation for a person with orthostatic hypotension would be that of swimming instructor, standing in water to heart level would alleviate all symptoms

Postural changes in respiration The influence of body posture on respiration was recognized by Liljestrand and Wollin (1913) They demonstrated an increased pulmonary ventilation on standing This they attributed primarily

to an augmentation of respiratory rate Hamilton et al (1932) observed that an increase in pulmonary minute volume became evident as their male subjects reached an angle of 50 degrees from the horizontal, which is close to that found by Hellebrandt and Brogdon (1938) to be the critical position at which circulatory embarrassment commonly became evident in young adult women McMichael (1937) denies the possibility that the increase in pulmonary ventilation is apparent only, secondary to a postural change in pulmonary capacity The augmentation in pulmonary ventilation cannot be accounted for on the basis of increased metabolism (Turner, 1927, Franseen and Hellebrandt, 1943) Alterations in alveolar carbon dioxide also accompany postural change (Higgins, 1914, Turner, 1927, Böhme, 1937, Main, 1937a) In trying to decide why the alveolar CO_2 falls in the erect posture, Main postulates that the drop is due largely to pulmonary over-ventilation secondary to cephalic ischemia Hitchcock and Ferguson (1938) propose that the cause of the lowered alveolar CO_2 in the erect posture may be simple dilution resulting from the increased volume of functional residual air (Wilson, 1927), which is then maintained by an impairment of CO_2 transport from the dependent portions of the body due to stagnation of blood in the legs, but Main (1939) and Main and Baker (1941) do not concur in this view

There are many indications that postural changes in respiration are related to the hydrostatic opposition offered the circulation in standing Turner (1927) noted that over-breathing occurred especially among subjects who tolerated protracted standing poorly This observation is supported by McMichael (1937) who found the pulmonary ventilation/100 cc O_2 to vary approximately inversely as the absolute cardiac output

Respiratory movements are some times considered as a subsidiary line of defense against orthostatic collapse by virtue of expiratory compression of the abdomen and inspiratory thoracic suction Hill and Barnard (1897) observed that so long as the vasomotor mechanism is intact, the splanchnic area forms what can be likened to the resistance box to the circulation, and the effect of gravity is of no importance In the animals studied it was found that the splanchnic vasomotor mechanism was by itself sufficient to compensate for the hydrostatic effect of gravity However, if the vasomotor tone were abolished, blood collected in the abdominal vessels, the respiratory center was then excited by cerebral ischemia and blood was pumped into the heart by virtue of the aspiratory action of the thorax and the increased intra-abdominal pressure which curbed the outflow through the splanchnic capillaries Eyster and Hicks (1933) reinvestigated the problem on dogs and concluded that even extreme alterations of respiratory activity fail to modify stroke volume and cardiac minute volume significantly They suggested that the importance of breathing in reference to venous return has been exaggerated More recently Boyd and Patras (1941) have reported increases in stroke volume with inspiration which were augmented by the deep and prolonged breathing following vagotomy

Mettenleiter (1924) called attention to the influence of the pressure changes associated with deep inspiration on the quantity of blood forced from the liver

into the inferior vena cava. Edholm (1942) also believes the gasping respirations of the erect posture act along with contractions of the abdominal muscles to squeeze the liver and force blood up the vena cava. Franseen and Hellebrandt (1943) describe a periodicity in amplitude of breathing during orthostatic circulatory insufficiency so marked as to resemble Cheyne-Stokes respiration. Whether the increase in breathing prolonged the period of tolerance for the vertical posture through aspiratory action could not be determined. The fact that the increases observed were in many cases due to rises in rate with reductions in amplitude renders this unlikely. The augmentation seems rather to reflect a general slowing of the circulation in which the medullary centers suffer hypoxemia unless more effective compensatory mechanisms respond to combat the pull of gravity upon the blood column. Franseen and Hellebrandt (1943) present evidence in support of the material benefit played by postural sway in meeting orthostatic hyperpnea.

In 1937 Main postulated a proprioceptive stimulation of the respiratory center to account for changes in pulmonary ventilation during standing which exceed metabolic needs. Harrison (1939) has also suggested that the increase in ventilation produced by passive exercise or mild activity is due to a reflex arising in the moving parts and affecting the respiratory center. Comroe and Schmidt (1942) likewise conclude from observations on dogs and man that the proprioceptive system definitely contributes to hyperpnea of muscular exercise. Thus one might look upon postural sway as a stimulator of the respiratory center automatically regulating pulmonary ventilation in a manner destined to assist in the combat against the hydrostatic effect of gravity on the circulation. There are those who also recognize the exaggerated respiratory movements of deep breathing as stimuli for a compensatory cutaneous vasoconstriction (Collier et al., 1927, Bolton et al., 1936, Lich et al., 1936), but it is purely speculative to contemplate whether or not such might contribute in any significant way to the balance of power in the struggle to avert gravity collapse.

Pathological failures in compensation The imperfections of man's adaptation to the orthograde stance have been abundantly recognized. Although the literature in this field is extensive the failures in adaptation are only rarely incapacitating to a serious degree. When critically evaluated they serve convincingly as evidence of the remarkable ability of the human machine to continue its primary functions in the face of handicaps, and to re-emphasize the buffering value of the margins of safety under which all important activities proceed. Failure to isolate posture as the single etiological variable has complicated the interpretation of many reports in the literature. Both the erect posture and prolonged recumbence have been shown to be conducive to the formation of renal calculi (Ward, 1937, Pulvertaft, 1939, Carlson and Ockerblad, 1940, Lich and Mansfield, 1942).

Smith and Eaton (1942) reported a series of cases in which progressive orthostatic tremor of the legs occurred during full weight bearing, while Thomas (1939) observed one in which recurrent transient paralysis of the right arm and leg could be produced by passive tilting to a 75 degree angle. Ephedrine,

benzedrine and paredrine, which controlled the associated postural hypotension, greatly diminished the number and severity of the attacks

Mosher (1909) developed an instrument for measurement of pelvic obliquity and early stressed the importance of posture to signs and symptoms of abnormal functioning of the reproductive organs in women. She reasoned that intra-abdominal pressure should be directed downward and forward toward the pubic bones and anterior abdominal wall lest the abdominal contents be forced into the superior strait of the pelvis. Lateral obliquity was associated with asymmetry in the position of the uterus. In 1917 she compared the pelvic angle of women with good and poor posture. Faulty habits of standing were associated with a reduction in the obliquity of the pelvis, increase in intrapelvic pressure and retroversion or retroflexion of the uterus. Lateral asymmetries in posture allowed the intestinal loops to slide into the pelvis on the low side and serve as a pry, moving the fundus of the uterus away from the mid-line toward the high hip.

Klotz (1938) stressed the importance of proper weight lifting and weight carrying to the supporting functions of the pelvic floor. X-ray studies demonstrated a more inspiratory position of the diaphragm in incorrect lifting. This suggests that improper lifting may be associated with a Valsalva effort. Proper lifting seems to be done with the glottis open and the diaphragm in the expiratory position. That these points may be well taken is indicated by the observations of Mengert and Murphy (1934) that intra-abdominal pressures may increase from 7.7 to as high as 23.2 cm Hg by voluntary muscular effort.

In 1927 Miller commenced the use of silhouetteographs in the study of the stance of gynecological patients. He postulated that poor posture produced chronic congestion of the pelvic organs which might then be the cause of leukorrhea and menorrhagia. In 1930 he reported a decrease in the incidence of dysmenorrhea with improvements in body mechanics but subsequently failed to confirm his earlier views (1934). In 1934 Adams concluded that corrective postural exercises resulted in complete or partial relief of painful menstruation in enough cases to warrant their trial where gross pathological lesions could be excluded.

Marx (1928) observed initial and final emptying time of the stomach, lying and standing. The vertical posture inhibited gastric motility. Franseen (1941) observed that gastric acidity was clearly depressed throughout and following periods of fixed standing associated with orthostatic circulatory insufficiency. With free postural sway and improvement of the circulation, the gastric secretory curves were indistinguishable from those of recumbency. She suggested that vasoconstriction in the splanchnic region, while temporarily maintaining an adequate cerebral circulation during rigid standing, might become so extreme as to impair visceral function.

The pathogenesis of orthostatic albuminuria is still poorly understood. Janeway (1917) presents an historical survey of the problem. He found orthostatic albuminuria associated with lumbar lordosis. Brown (1920) and Lee (1923) noted that orthostatic albuminuria was frequently associated with poor

posture in otherwise normal young men. Beer (1937) reported 2 cases which showed massive unilateral albuminuria from the left kidney after maintenance of extreme lordosis for only 10 minutes during cystoscopic examination. He likened this to the lordotic albuminuria of orthostatic origin which is also unilateral and thought to be due to a pinching of the left renal vein between the angle formed by the abdominal aorta and the superior mesenteric artery. Rytand (1937), Russell (1925) and Shannon (1942) present evidence which indicates that orthostatic albuminuria is not always "functional" and that it should not be classified as benign without careful study.

Cordero and Friedman (1928) found the elimination of phenolsulphonphthalein greater in recumbency than during standing. The postural reduction ranged from 10 to 13 per cent and no correlation existed between the amount of water and of dye eliminated. They found the volume output of urine in two subjects with functional albuminuria from 50 to 200 per cent greater in recumbency than standing. Even the sitting posture reduces water diuresis by 36 per cent (Janney et al. 1933). The reduction of urinary excretory rate during standing has been postulated to be due to the number of glomerular capillaries exhibiting active circulation (White et al. 1920) and to the combined effect of increased colloidal osmotic pressure and reduced glomerular filtration rate (Nil and Rehberg, 1931). Smith (1939-40) noted a prompt reduction in renal blood flow in the majority of normal subjects tilted to the 70-80 degree angle, and failure of the filtration fraction to vary inversely with renal plasma flow. McCann (1940) estimated the diminution in renal blood flow of patients with nephropathy when in the erect posture to range from 20 to 43.5 per cent with relative constancy of glomerular filtration and increase in filtration fraction. This is in contrast to a reduction of less than 10 per cent in normal controls. Asmussen et al. (1939b) noted that diuresis was reduced from approximately 10 cc./min. to 2.8 cc./min. in one subject and from 20 cc./min. to 8 cc./min. in another by prolonged retention at a 45 degree angle during which oxygen consumption was practically unchanged, minute volume decreased from 4.6 to 4 liters, leg volume increased by 480 cc., systolic pressure was well maintained, diastolic pressure rose slightly, heart rate was markedly elevated and serum protein increased 8.5 per cent in spite of high water intake. These investigators also demonstrated that the diuresis could be altered at will by counteracting the hydrostatic effect of gravity on the circulation by immersion in water. They concluded that diuresis was reduced by the upright posture largely through incomplete reabsorption of water, secondary to a decrease in mesenteric circulation.

Orthostatic hypotension is a recently recognized syndrome related to the vertical posture. It is characterized by a chief complaint of marked weakness on standing associated with dizziness and syncope. Lowering the head, sitting or lying down are followed promptly by complete relief. The condition becomes progressively worse. Warm weather is associated with an exacerbation of the signs and symptoms. There is usually anhidrosis or hypohidrosis. The vision may be blurred. Diagnosis is predicated on the abrupt decrease in systolic blood pressure to shock levels and failure of the heart to accelerate in response to the

hypotension Nocturia is frequently present accompanied by decrease in the urinary output in the day time if the patient is ambulatory The deficiency in excretion of water is associated with no lowering in the excretion of phenol-sulphonphthalein Weis (1935) observed that the total day time urinary output was 1060 cc with the patient in bed and 380 cc at night When up and about the day urine output fell to 430 cc and night excretion was augmented to 1290 cc Baker (1938) recorded a day secretion of 450 cc and night output of 1435 in a typical case Croll, Duthie and MacWilliam (1935) administered a diuretic dose of water (1000 cc) and recovered 880 cc with the patient recumbent against 73 cc with the patient up and about

The first authentic case histories of this syndrome were reported in 1925 by Bradbury and Eggleston A similar syndrome had apparently been described in about 1891 by Laubry as present in a case referred to him by Babinski The number of recorded cases has now increased to approximately 50, most of them occurring in this country (Ghrist, 1927, 1928, Ashworth, 1929, Riecker and Upjohn, 1930, Sanders, 1931, Chew, Allen and Barker, 1936, Langston, 1936, Browne and Horton, 1939, Farmer, 1941) Several have reported cases of marked postural hypotension which have differed from the syndrome of Bradbury and Eggleston in one major respect, that of compensatory tachycardia (Sanders, 1932, Barker, 1933, Hughes and Yusaf 1935) It is not improbable that the two conditions are fundamentally different Gillespie and Barker (1938), for example, observed several children with postural hypotension The manifestations differed from those already described in a number of significant respects The orthostatic hypotension was inconstant It frequently appeared after exercise There were tachycardia and free sweating The circulatory insufficiency developed relatively slowly during approximately 15 minutes of standing Gillespie and Barker credit the differences to age but the signs and symptoms suggest gravity collapse rather than orthostatic hypotension The differential diagnosis between these two phenomena has yet to be considered in the clinical literature Gravity collapse is a physiological orthostatic circulatory insufficiency Orthostatic hypotension is associated with unequivocally abnormal manifestations

The pathogenesis of orthostatic hypotension is imperfectly understood The essential defect is in vasomotor regulation and the absent or diminished control of heart rate in response to the sharp change in blood pressure Alvarez and Roth (1935) made a systematic study of the various sympathetic phenomena in orthostatic hypotension They pointed out that sympathectomy did not produce orthostatic hypotension unless the lower thoracic anterior roots were sectioned, and suggested that this might indicate that it is the abdominal vessels which fail, not those of the lower extremities (Roth, 1937) Kvale et al (1939) reported cases of orthostatic hypotension following anterior rhizotomy or bilateral subdiaphragmatic extraperitoneal resection of the splanchnic nerves, celiac ganglia, and the first and second lumbar ganglia in the treatment of essential hypertension It may be significant that the secondary orthostatic hypotension in these patients was associated with tachycardia

There have been repeated signs of associated disease of the central nervous system in cases of orthostatic hypotension (Ganshorn and Horton, 1934, Ellis and Haynes, 1936, Baker 1938) Laufer (1942) observed the syndrome in a subject with influenzal encephalitis with central nervous system residues Spingarn and Hitzig (1942) described orthostatic circulatory insufficiency in *tabes dorsalis* and Addison's disease, and MacLean and Horton (1937) report a case associated with myasthenia gravis Stead and Ebert (1941) concluded that orthostatic hypotension is a selective disease of the sympathetic nervous system, probably of central origin sparing some parts One of the 3 original cases of Bradhury and Eggleston came to postmortem examination in 1927 but the brain and cord were not studied There was no anatomical evidence of sympathetic involvement, suprarenal disease or status thymico-lymphaticus

Kvale et al (1939) made circulation time determinations in orthostatic hypotension and reported no reaction within 2 minutes when standing indicating marked stagnation of blood in the veins Hallock and Evans (1941) reported a case of hypotension with tachycardia in which they observed an exaggeration of the normal filtration process during standing Within 10 minutes after being tilted to the vertical posture there was an absolute decrease of 567 cc. or 11 per cent in plasma volume and 650 cc. or 7.5 per cent in whole blood The normal plasma reduction in 10 minutes was noted as 80 cc There was hemoconcentration There were rises of 5 per cent in hemoglobin concentration, 6.5 per cent in hematocrit, and 14 per cent in plasma protein Stead and Ebert (1941) were unable to confirm the observation of abnormal filtration rate They found that pooling of blood in the abdomen alone did not produce a striking fall in blood pressure, nor was the pooling in the extremities sufficient to account for the hypotension When the subject stood in water, there was no pooling of abnormal amounts of fluid in the lower extremities Stead and Ebert concluded that the essential defect in the patient with orthostatic hypotension is an abnormal response to the pooling of normal quantities of blood during standing, the definitive feature being an absence of vasoconstriction in other parts of the body when the vascular bed in one part is dilated

Corcoran, Browning and Page (1942) believe that failure of the renal pressor system may participate in some measure in the genesis of orthostatic hypotension They tilted a patient with postural hypotension associated with tachycardia to 60 degrees and observed in addition to the decrease in systolic pressure progressing to syncope a diminution of renal blood flow Angiotonin was then administered greatly increasing both the blood pressure and renal blood flow, in contradistinction to the renal ischemia manifest in normal subjects under like conditions Angiotonin is the effector agent of the renal pressor system Under usual circumstances it excites renal arteriolar vasoconstriction sufficiently to reduce renal blood flow Corcoran et al interpret their findings to mean that in the type of orthostatic hypotension under observation the normal autonomy of the renal circulation is lost.

The subject of Corcoran, Browning and Page's observations slept for two months in the head up bed of MacLean and Allen (1940) This brought about

a progressive delay in the onset of postural syncope. Eventually, standing while doing light work was tolerated without symptoms. When the patient was now tilted to 60 degrees, syncope no longer occurred and there was an increase in renal blood flow over that originally observed. The administration of angiotonin was followed by a pressor response with renal vasoconstrictor effects indicative of return to normal.

Sewall (1916, 1919) early tried the use of an abdominal support in the treatment of orthostatic vertigo. As a whole, abdominal binders, tourniquets and bandages on the thighs have been without significant beneficial effect in the treatment of orthostatic hypotension (Baiker and Coleman, 1931, Ganshorn and Horton, 1934, Alvarez and Roth, 1935). Allen and Magee (1934) reported that thigh cuffs decreased the hypotension when this could not be obviated by the use of an abdominal binder. Hughes and Yusaf (1935) report a case history in which relief was obtained by walking. Allen and Magee (1934) describe a patient who discovered he could temporarily avert syncope by voluntarily contracting the muscles of his legs. MacWilliam (Croll, Duthie and MacWilliam, 1935) believes that both pulse rate and blood pressure adjustments in the standing posture are influenced by afferent impulses from the lower extremities "apparently originating in some part of the vascular circuit in these limbs." When a patient with orthostatic hypotension was made to execute a series of slight, slow movements, shifting the feet and progressing by minute steps, there was a notable alleviation of the hypotension. MacWilliam concluded that it was not simply the erect posture *per se* which explained orthostatic hypotension, but posture plus immobility of the lower extremities. Laplace (1942) described an atypical case in which hypotension could be abolished by increasing the carbon dioxide content of the inspired air or arrest of the circulation to the active muscles. The rationale of the latter may be explained in terms of the blood pressure elevating reflex of Alam and Smirk (1937) arising from voluntary muscles.

Jeffers et al (1941) classified the types of postural hypotension and discussed their treatment. Most success has been obtained through the use of the sympathomimetic amines on the assumption that orthostatic hypotension is associated with disturbance of the adrenergic portion of the autonomic nervous system. The following drugs have been shown capable of ameliorating the symptoms: ephedrine sulphate (Weis, 1935), benzedrine (Korns and Randall, 1937, Davis and Shumway-Davis, 1937, Brewster, 1940), and neosynephrine hydrochloride (Capaccio and Donald, 1938).

In 1940 MacLean and Allen described two cases of postural hypotension associated with high heart rate to which they gave the term orthostatic tachycardia. One occurred secondary to sympathectomy for essential hypertension and the other demonstrated a less abrupt fall in blood pressure than usual in individuals with orthostatic hypotension. That these patients probably exhibited some of the cardinal characteristics of physiological orthostatic circulatory insufficiency is indicated by MacLean and Allen's conclusion that the defect was not in arteriolar vasoconstriction but rather a failure in maintenance

of an adequate venous return. This defect in the "potential" venous return was diagnosed by the Flack test (Flack, 1923) which is essentially a Valsalva effort, the obstruction to the inflow of blood from the venous cistern of Keith by a high intrathoracic pressure being sufficient to induce syncope during the test when combined with an already defective venous return. Because the symptoms were worse upon arising in the morning than at the end of the day, MacLean and Allen postulated that something incidental to recumbency of the night was responsible for the recurrent loss of adaptation to the hydrostatic effect of gravity on the circulation. With this in mind, they placed the patient in a head up bed. The results were startlingly good. In 3 days one could stand for a half hour without syncope and in 4 days the other experienced no distress standing for one hour. Both showed return of postural syncope after one night in a flat bed. The mechanism of this unusual effect is yet to be determined.

Fine and Miller (1940) describe a bizarre case of paroxysmal auricular tachycardia which occurred invariably in sitting or standing unless under quinidine or digitalis control. It was explained by the assumption that a potential ectopic focus becomes activated in the erect posture as a result of diminished vagal activity induced by the lessened blood flow to the head which influences the center both directly and by way of the carotid sinus. In spite of the tachycardia, postural variations in blood pressure fell within normal limits. Weiss has made an extensive study of the carotid sinus reflex in health and disease. Weiss and Baker (1933) observed that pressure on the carotid sinus regularly brought on fainting more quickly when the patient was standing than when recumbent. The time interval between stimulation of the sinus and the onset of fainting was measured repeatedly in various positions of the body. It required 30 sec. to bring on the attack with the head down and the feet elevated to an angle of 30 degrees, 10 sec. in the horizontal and 8.5 sec. while standing. The symptoms incidental to a hypersensitive state of the carotid sinus reflex almost always occur when the patient is in the upright position and are relieved by his lying down when premonitory symptoms appear (Weiss et al. 1936).

Åkesson (1936) made an extensive study of changes wrought in the electrocardiogram by the assumption of the vertical posture by individuals without evidence of heart disease or intoxication. He selected 40 cases each of the most hypersthenic and most asthenic in habitus from a group of 200 normal defense workers. There was inversion of the T_1 or T_2 wave or reduction in its amplitude in 31 per cent of the cases. The more marked the grade of asthenia the greater the change in amplitude of the T wave. In contrast there was inversion of T_1 or T_2 in 69 per cent of 45 patients with a clinical diagnosis of "orthostatic anemia." Åkesson concluded that the change in position of the heart in standing and hence in contact with adjacent conducting media could not be taken as sufficient to explain the findings. Perschmann (1939) concurs in this. T wave changes developed slowly in his subjects when they were maintained at a passively supported posture for prolonged periods of time. There was no evidence of hypoxemia of the heart muscle and no relation between the blood pressure in the

vertical posture and the electrocardiographic change. There is general agreement that the typical electrocardiographic change due to shift in posture from the horizontal to the vertical is a flattening or inversion of a formerly positive T wave in leads 2 or 3 and this occurs especially in the young of asthenic habitus in whom there is vasomotor lability (Schlomka and Reindell, 1936, Erkelens, 1937, Hinrichs, 1937, Janzen, 1938, Sigler, 1938, Ylvisaker, 1940, Scherf and Weissberg, 1941, White et al., 1941). White et al. believe the position of the heart is the most important factor in the production of the T wave inversion. Mayerson and Davis (1942) suggest that the changes occurring beyond the immediate ones traceable to altered heart position are due primarily to increased sympathetic activity during the period of standing.

Adaptations for the prevention of orthostatic circulatory insufficiency. The problem of compensatory mechanisms for gravity collapse was first studied systematically in the laboratory by Leonard Hill in 1895. In his classical experiments, rabbits, cats and dogs suffered marked impairment of the cerebral circulation when held in the vertical position. The effect was exaggerated when splanchnic vasoconstriction was prevented. Monkeys were better able to tolerate passive verticality than rabbits, cats or dogs, but also lost the power to do so with impairment of vasomotor function. Vasoconstriction is considered by many the chief form of compensation which normally occurs in the erect posture, operating to prevent pooling of blood in the viscera and dependent limbs. In man the diastolic pressure has been shown to rise during standing. This is a sign of increasing vasomotor tone. It is compensatory in nature until it encroaches too far upon pulse pressure. The reflexes originating in the vascular pressoreceptors are responsible for this control. For some people it seems that the carotid sinus reflex is of less importance in the maintenance of blood pressure in the erect position than it is for others (Berry, Horton and MacLean, 1940).

There have been efforts to evaluate peripheral vasoconstriction as a factor of compensation in the erect and tilted posture, but the results are at variance. Roth et al. (1938) found an increase in skin temperature of the toes in the erect position, in contrast to the report of Youmans et al. (1935) that there occurred a prompt and significant fall in temperature. Roth and her associates attributed the discrepancy to the fact that the subjects of the earlier experiments were not in a basal condition. However, Nielsen et al. (1939) and Mayerson and Toth (1939) also report evidence of peripheral vasoconstriction with passive change of posture, confirming the conclusions of Youmans. Both made observations at high environmental temperatures. Nielsen et al. consider that the disturbance of the heat regulatory function due to vasoconstriction in the tilted position is to a certain degree compensated by an increase in evaporation. Mayerson and Toth also present evidence that reflex vasodilatation gives way to postural change. With heating of the extremity, the postural effect was at first overcome until complete vasodilatation was achieved, at which point the postural change again became evident. They found no significant differences between "fainters" and "non-fainters" in this respect, indicating that syncope in some cases may be due to failure of compensatory mechanisms other than vasoconstriction.

Attention also has recently been drawn to the venomotor system by Weiss, Wilkins and Haynes (1937) and Wilkins, Haynes and Weiss (1937), in studies concerned with peripheral circulatory failure. The administration of sodium nitrite induced an orthostatic collapse in healthy young adults who had experienced no subjective symptoms when the drug was given in the horizontal position. The work demonstrates that elements of the vascular bed peripheral to the arterioles in the extremities, as well as the abdominal vessels may act as regions for the pooling of blood in the upright posture.

Cardiac acceleration is a universal finding in the erect position. Hill (1895) considered this as a subsidiary compensation. The mechanism of its production as well as that of vasoconstriction has been clarified in part with the description of vascular receptors sensitive to hypotension. Diminutions in carotid pressure, adequate to influence the cardiac reflex centers, have been shown by intra-arterial determinations to occur in human subjects tipped to the vertical (Loman et al. 1936). Amussen, Christensen and Nielsen (1939) relate the rise in heart rate to volume changes of the extremities and the resultant decreased venous return of the vertical position. They considered the change of heart rate as essential in the adaptive mechanisms attempting to hold the blood pressure at levels compatible with an adequate circulation. Two summaries of their work may be found in the English literature (Krogh 1939, Amussen, Christensen and Nielsen 1940). The height to which the heart rate rises in standing may be considered in inverse relation to the adequacy of other compensatory mechanisms and as such is incorporated into postural tests of circulatory fitness proposed by Crampton (1913), Schneider (1920) and Turner (1927b, 1929). In 1897 Hill, Barnard and Soltau observed that when a man is in vigorous health the effect of gravity is compensated for by the vasomotor mechanism and not by the heart. When fatigued or neurasthenic, compensation occurs by virtue of an exaggerated increase in heart rate.

Muscular contraction is clearly an influence of importance in the regulation of the circulation during exercise. The pumping effect of rhythmic compression and release of the capillaries and valved veins is commonly recognized as decisive in assuring the venous return requisite for an augmented minute volume during intensive physical exertion. Hill, Barnard and Soltau (1897) noted in observations on healthy men, that venous tension might be grossly revealed as rising while a limb was held dependent and immobile but that the condition of the limb changed during activity of the appendage. Youmans et al. (1935) showed that active muscular movements are accompanied by less concentration and less rise in colloid osmotic pressure of the blood of the active extremity than the one kept motionless during the experiment. Stead (1910) came to the conclusion that every one will eventually faint if suspended long enough without support. He remarks that in death by crucifixion the victims were frequently tied to the cross, and the onset of collapse and syncope was hastened by the giving of wine which caused further relaxation of the vascular system.

Aside from eliminating muscular activity through the use of tilting boards for passive support in verticality, little specific attention has been paid experimentally to the slight but continual movement which is invariably present

when the normal biped stands and which may be a decisive factor in the maintenance of an adequate minute volume in the erect posture. Its efficacy should differ only in degree from the maximal squeezing effect operative in sport and that minimal which is compatible with normality as represented by skeletal muscle tonus.

Yandell Henderson (1931) suggested, in an amplification of his veno-pressor concept, that the general tone of all the skeletal muscles as well as the non-striated is a factor of great importance in venous return. In 1936, with Oughterson, Greenberg and Searle, he described a method for measuring intramuscular pressure and produced evidence of its influence on the circulation. A method similar in principle was applied by Mayerson and Burch (1940) to the study of peripheral pressure changes in men supported at a 75 degree angle. A considerable hydrostatic pressure is added to that in the veins of the inferior extremities in such a position. McIntire and Turner (1935) had found that the pressure in the veins of the foot was somewhat greater than the hydrostatic factor in healthy subjects who experienced no dizziness in a tilt to 75 degrees. In one subject who exhibited poor circulatory adjustment the pressure in the veins was insufficient to overcome the hydrostatic factor. Mayerson and Burch report an immediate and simultaneous rise in venous, subcutaneous and intramuscular pressure upon change in posture. Subjects who did not develop syncope showed a secondary and usually more marked increase in intramuscular pressure during the upright period, an increase which was absent in those demonstrating circulatory embarrassment. Increasing tonus by muscular contraction eliminated all signs of syncope. The experiments of Mateef and Petroff (1934) upon subjects with pathological loss of tone showed them to be particularly susceptible to gravity shock unless protection was afforded by bandaging from sole to pelvis. Their subjects with pathologically high tone tolerated as much as 55 minutes of standing with comfort and only moderate increases in heart rate. Such observations emphasize the importance of muscle tone in preventing dilatation of the capillaries and advancing blood toward the heart.

Hooker in 1911 pointed out that muscular action capable of emptying veins may be due to involuntary contractions. Many investigators have remarked since upon its possible assistance to the circulation. Mateef and Petroff (1932) noted periods of lability in the cardiovascular reactions to protracted standing which they thought might be associated with insignificant body movements. MacWilliam (1933) has postulated that slight, repeated movements of the weight-bearing limbs such as very slow progression with minute steps, influence pulse rate adjustments to standing through afferent impulses, but seems to ignore the mechanical effect of such movements in aiding venous return.

Looke (1937) remarked that in occupations carried on in the standing position, the slight activity of the leg muscles suffices to restrict too serious an increase in leg volume. Hellebrandt, Crigler and Kelso (1939) were able to demonstrate transient changes in intramuscular pressure during normal comfortable standing. They concluded that the rhythmic variation of intramuscular pressure was probably due to a shift in the incidence of tension between different

antigravity groups during comfortable relaxed standing Hellebrandt and Brogdon (1938) have compared the cardiovascular response during standing with normal physiological sway permitted or restricted by extrinsic supports Only when postural sway was unrestrained, could an hour of standing be tolerated without marked acceleration of heart rate, diminution of pulse pressure and eventual syncope Postural sway was also shown to be a factor of material benefit in combating the orthostatic hyperpnea of normal subjects (Franseen and Hellebrandt 1943) and to serve as an adequate preventive of post-exercise gravity shock (Brogdon and Hellebrandt, 1940)

The architectural design of the human is not conducive to stability A segmented structure, its center of gravity is placed high above a relatively small supporting base Postural sway is inseparable from the vertical stance of man This postural sway, autonomously controlled by the short circuit myotatic reflexes of the antigravity muscles, may be conceived of as playing a decisive rôle in the maintenance of an adequate venous return in a position as disadvantageous to the circulation as verticality The small bulk of the antigravity muscles of the stable quadrupeds used in animal experiments can hardly be expected to play a very important part in the adjustment to vertical postures foreign to the species Other compensatory mechanisms must be for them relatively more important In man, however, the triceps surae, quadriceps femoris and the glutei represent an impressive share of the total muscle weight Even partial activity of such a mass may well supply motive power against gravity to a significant quantity of blood There is probably sufficient evidence to suggest that postural sway, acting as an accessory pump, is a more important compensatory mechanism for the prevention of orthostatic circulatory collapse than has been generally recognized Indeed, without it, adequate venous return is difficult to maintain even in the healthy when the vertical stance must be sustained for protracted periods of time

SUMMARY

The evolution of the biped stance has been marked by a narrowing of the base of support and a progressive elevation of the center of gravity of the body as a whole Both mitigate against stability The vertical posture also imposes an hydrostatic handicap which encroaches enough on the adequacy of the circulation to make man in the upright stance vulnerable to peripheral circulatory collapse The numerous difficulties seemingly attributable to the change from quadruped to biped standing are interpreted by some as signs of extreme inadequacy of adaptation However, compensatory mechanisms automatically cancel the apparent mechanical disadvantages of the change so that gravitational stresses are counteracted easily in the majority of normal men

Posture has been studied by a variety of graphic and numerical methods which penalize angular deviations from strict verticality The common attitudinal anomalies are widely conceded to encroach sufficiently on body cavities to impair visceral functioning They are frequently associated with an augmentation of gravitational rotatory stresses which are assumed to necessitate ex-

haustive muscular contraction for adequate equilibration Neither view is supported by convincing experimental evidence

The steadiness of standing is affected little by mechanical factors in build Although the center of gravity of the body as a whole shifts incessantly during relaxed and effortless standing, the patterns formed by a trajectory of the shifting center of weight and the mean position of the vertical projection of this theoretical point are relatively constant The phenomenon of standing is elaborately protected by a multiplicity of co-operating reflexes Primitive automatisms present in the quadruped may also be observed in neonatal infancy, after which they are submerged by phylogenetically newer controls that are capable of being lifted by disease

Gravity is the major deforming force affecting man's stance, and postural sway a constantly varying stimulus to the stretch afferents In this way tonus is automatically adapted to the collapsing forces which must be equilibrated by the antigravity extensor muscles The final common path through which peripheral control of standing is mediated is also subject to an inhibitory modulation by way of motor and premotor corticofugal and cerebellar paths, to excitatory regulation by the vestibular nuclei, and to less well defined influences emanating bilaterally from the red nucleus and the corpus striatum

Standing is cheap in terms of metabolic cost and it has yet to be demonstrated unequivocally that improvement in so-called body mechanics is associated with a significant decrease in energy exchange The remarkable indefatigability of relaxed standing has not been fully explained The sensation of fatigue undeniably associated with prolonged standing is probably the resultant of more or less acute hypoxemia of higher centers which exercise a controlling influence over muscle tonus and cardiovascular respiratory mechanisms The hydrostatic opposition to venous return, loss of fluid into the tissue spaces of dependent parts, reduced velocity of blood flow and diminution in cardiac output act as multiple stimuli to a variety of compensatory mechanisms the objective of which is to offset the disparity between the size of the vascular bed during standing and the volume flow The relative importance of vasoconstriction, cardiac acceleration, augmentation of respiration, skeletal muscle tone, and insensible contraction, to the maintenance of an adequate circulation during standing in man, has not been determined Self-regulating involuntary postural sway may occupy a position in the primary line of defense by virtue of mechanical effects and reflex influences upon the vital centers located in the medulla Most of the compensatory mechanisms have been studied under conditions of graded gravitational stress, immediately after postural change, and during standing prolonged to the point of orthostatic circulatory collapse Gravity shock is aggravated by previous exercise and high environmental temperatures, both of which augment the disparity between the volume capacity of the vascular bed and the volume blood flow

Orthostatic hypotension, tachycardia, albuminuria, oliguria, flattening or inversion of the electrocardiographic T wave, depression of the motor and secretory functions of the stomach, and dysmenorrhea have all been attributed

to the vertical stance Failures in adaptation are occasionally so acute as to give rise to syndromes of pathological significance, but it has yet to be demonstrated that when these occur posture plays a decisive etiologic rôle

REFERENCES

- ABBOTT, W O *Pennsylvania Med J* 37 743 1934a
Med Clin North America 18: 155 1934b
- ADAMS T W *West J Surg* 42 88 1934
- ÅKESSON, S *Uppsala Läkares Förh* 41 333 1933
- ALAM, M AND F H SMIRK *J Physiol* 89 372 1937
- ALLEN, E V AND H R MAGEE *Med Clin North America* 18 585 1934
- ALVAREZ W C AND G ROTH *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin* 10 483 1935
- APPLETON, A B *Lancet* 1 451 1934
- ASHWORTH O O *Virginia Med Monthly* 56 260 1929
- ASNUSSON E., E H CHRISTENSEN AND M NIELSEN *Skandinav Arch f Physiol* 81
 190 1939a 204 1939b 214 1939c
Surgery 8 604 1940
- BABECKI J *Praceg Sport Lek* 1 66 1929
- BAETJER, F H *Am J Orthop Surg* 14 530 1916
- BAKER, F *Arch Phys Therapy* 23 389 1942
- BAKER T W *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin* 13 169 1938
- BARACH J H AND W L MARKS *Arch Int Med* 11 485 1913
- BARBOUR G F AND P G STILES *Am Phys Ed Review* 17: 73 1912
- BARCLAY A E *Quart J Med* 1 257 1932
- BARD P *Macleod's Physiology in modern medicine* St Louis C V Mosby Co 1941
- BARKER N W AND J H COLEMAN *Med Clin North America* 15 241, 1931
- BARKER N W *Med Clin North America* 16 1301 1933
- BASLER A *Pfüger's Arch* 221 768 1929
Ztschr Morph Anthropologie 30 552 1932
Der Schwerpunkt des leben den Menschen Canton 1931
- BEDALE E M AND H M VERNON *Ind Fatigue Res Bd Report no 20* London H M
 Sta Off 1924
- BEER E *J Mt Sinai Hosp* 3 193 1937
- BENSON R A *U S Naval Med Bull* 35 563 1933
- BERITOFF J S *Quart J Exper Physiol* 9 199 1915
- BERNSTEIN N *Arbeitsphysiol* 3 179 1939
Biodynamik des Ganges des normalen erwachsenen Mannes Moscow, 1935
- BERRY, M R B T HORTON AND A R MACLEAN *Med Clin North America* 24 1095
 1940
- BETTMANN H W *Am J Orthop Surg* 14 522 1916
- BIEDER I AND J F FULTON *Arch Neurol Psychiat* 39 433 1938
- BOCK A V D B DILL AND H T EDWARDS *J Clin Investigation* 8 533 1930
- BÖHME M *Ztschr f Kreislaufforsch* 29 657 1937
- DU BOIS REYMOND R *Arch f Anatomie und Physiologie Verhandlungen der physio-
 logischen Gesellschaft zu Berlin* 1900
Handbuch der Physiologie des Menschen 4 561 1909
- BOLTON B E A CARMICHAEL AND G STRUPP *J Physiol* 88 83 1936
- BOYD T E AND M C PATRAS *Am J Physiol* 133 220 1941
- BRADBURY S AND C FOOLESTON *Am Heart J* 1 73 1925
Am Heart J 3 105 1927
- BREWSTER E S *Ann Int Med* 14 326 1940
- BDOCK S AND I S WECHSLER *Arch Neurol Psychiat* 17 12 1927
- BROGDON E AND F A HELLENBRANDT *Am J Physiol* 100 216 1930

- BROWN, L T Am J Orthop Surg 15 774, 1917
 Boston Med Surg J 182 649, 1920
- BROWNE, H C AND B T HORTON Minnesota Med 22 302, 1939
- BULLARD, W N AND E G BRACKETT Boston Med Surg J 119 595, 1888
- BYERS, R K Am J Dis Children 55 696, 1938
- CAMPBELL, D G Physiotherapy Rev 15 43, 1935
- CANTER, B M Internat J Med and Surg 45 134, 1932
- CAPACCIO, G D AND C J DONALD J A M A 110 1180, 1938
- CARLSON, H E AND N F OCKERBLAD South Med J 33 582, 1940
- CHEW, E M, E V ALLEN AND N W BARKER Northwest Med 35 297, 1936
- CLOUGH, H D AND J R MURLIN Am J Dis Child 36 425, 1928
- COFFEY, R C Surg, Gynec and Obst 15 365, 1912
- COLLIER, R J, H B A R DENSHAM AND H M WELLS Quart J Exper Physiol 18 291, 1927
- COMROE, J H AND C F SCHMIDT Fed Proc 1 16, 1942
- CORCORAN, A C, J S BROWNING AND I H PAGE J A M A 119 793, 1942
- CORDERO, N AND M H FRIEDMAN Arch Int Med 41 279, 1928
 Proc Inst Med Chicago 7 43, 1928
- COTTON, F S Australian J Exper Biol Med Sc 8 53, 1931
- COWDRY, E V Human biology and racial welfare New York, Paul B Hoeber, 1930
- CRAWFORD, C W New York Med J 98 916, 1913
- CROLL, W F, R J DUTHIE AND J A MACWILLIAM Lancet 1 194, 1935
- CURETON, T K AND J S WICKENS Research Quarterly, Am Phys Ed Assoc 6 Suppl 93, 1935
- CURETON, T K, J S WICKENS AND H B ELDER Research Quarterly, Am Phys Ed Assoc 6 Suppl 81, 1935
- CYRIAX, E Brit J Physical Med 1 161, 1938
- DAVIS, P L AND M SHUMWAY-DAVIS J A M A 108 1247, 1937
- DENNY-BROWN, D E AND E G T LIDDELL J Physiol 63 144, 1927
- DICKINSON, R L AND W TRUSLOW J A M A 59 2128, 1912
- DONALD, J S, C J GAMBLE AND R SHAW Am J Physiol 109 666, 1934
- DOW, R S J Physiol 94 67, 1938
- EDHOLM, O G J Physiol 101 1, 1942
- EICKHORN, G C AND E B SKAGGS Mich Acad Sci Arts and Letters 10 369, 1928
- ELLIS, N M Am J Med Sc 161 568, 1921
- ELLIS, L B AND F W HAYNES Arch Int Med 58 773, 1936
- ERKELENS, A D Nederl tijdschr b geneesk 81 4557, 1937
- EVANS, C L Recent advances in physiology Philadelphia, P Blakiston's Son & Co, 1926
- EYSTER, J A E AND E V HICKS Am J Physiol 104 358, 1933
- ERLANGER, J AND D R HOOKER Johns Hopkins Hosp Repts 12 145, 1904
- FARMER, H E J Nat Med Assn 33 126, 1941
- FEARING, F S J Comp Psychol 4 91, 1924, 5 1, 1925a
 J Nerv Ment Dis 61 449, 1925b
- FIELD, H AND A V BOCK J Clin Investigation 2 67, 1925
- FINE, M J AND R MILLER Am Heart J 20 366, 1940
- FLACK, M Brit Med J 2 921, 1923
- FLAGSTAD, A E AND S KOLLMAN J Bone and Joint Surg 10 724, 1928
- FLOBKIN, M, H T EDWARDS AND D B DILL Am J Physiol 94 469, 1930
- FORBES, A Physiol Rev 2 361, 1922
- FORD, F R AND F B WALSH Arch Ophthal 23 1274, 1940
- FORRESTER-BROWN, M. F Brit Med J 1 690, 1926
 J Roy San Inst 55 429, 1935
- FRADD, N W J Bone and Joint Surg 5 757, 1923

- FRANSEEN E B *Am J Physiol* 133 280 1941
- FRANSEEN E B AND F A HELLEBRANDT *Am J Physiol* 138 364, 1943
- FULTON, J F *Muscular contraction and the reflex control of movement* London, Bailière, Tindall & Cox 1926
- GANSHORN J A AND B T HORTON *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin* 9 541 1934
- GARREY W E *J Gen. Physiol* 1 101 1918
- GESELL, A. *J Pediat.* 13 455 1938
- GHRIST D G *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin* 2 117 1927
- Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin* 5 272 1930
- GHRIST D G AND G E BROWN *Am J Med Sc* 175 336, 1928
- GILLESPIE, D L AND N W BARKER *J Pediat* 12 772 1938
- GOLDBLOOM A M L KRAMER AND A LIEBERSON *Arch Int Med* 65 178 1940
- GOLDTHWAIT J E *Proc Am Student Health Assn Bull* 16 36 1932
- J Bone and Joint Surg* 15: 279, 1933
- GOLDTHWAIT, J E L T BROWN L T SWAIM AND J G KUHNA *Body mechanics in the study and treatment of disease* Philadelphia, J B Lippincott Co, 1934
- GROLLMAN A *Am J Physiol* 88 285 1928
- GROSS D *Rev argent de cardiol* 7 312 1940
- HALLETT R *Physiotherapy Rev* 15 64 1935
- HALLOCK P AND G EVANS *Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med* 47 460 1941
- HAM, G C *War Med* 3 30 1943
- HAMILTON J E, J S LICHTY AND W R PITTS *Am J Physiol* 100 383, 1932
- HANSSON K G *Internat Clin* 3 171 1932
- HARRIS A. S *Am J Physiol* 124 117 1933
- HARRISON T R *Failure of the circulation.* Baltimore 1939
- HAYNES R S *Am J Dis Children* 38 1093 1928
- HELLEBRANDT, F A D KUBIN W M LONGFIELD AND L E A KELSO *Physiotherapy Rev* 17: 231 1937
- HELLEBRANDT F A. R H TEPPER, G L BRAUN AND M C ELLIOTT *Am J Physiol* 121 465 1938
- HELLEBRANDT F A *Am J Physiol* 121: 471 1938
- HELLEBRANDT F A AND E BROGDON *Am J Physiol* 123 95 1938
- HELLEBRANDT F A AND L E A KELSO *Am J Physiol* 123 96 1938
- HELLEBRANDT F A AND G L BRAUN *Am J Physical Anthropology* 24 347 1939a
- HELLEBRANDT F A, E F CRIGLER AND L E A KELSO *Am J Physiol* 126 247 1939b.
- HELLEBRANDT F A E BROGDON AND R. H TEPPER. *Am J Physiol* 129 773, 1940
- HELLEBRANDT F A L E A KELSO AND E C FRIES *Physiotherapy Rev* 22 10, 1942a
- HELLEBRANDT F A AND E C FRIES *Physiotherapy Rev* 22 17 1942b
- HELLEBRANDT F A AND L E A KELSO *Physiotherapy Rev* 22 83, 1942c
- HELLEBRANDT F A. K. S RIDDLE AND E C FRIES *Physiotherapy Rev* 22 88 1942d.
- HELLEBRANDT F A K. S RIDDLE E M LARSEN AND E C FRIES *Physiotherapy Rev* 22 143, 1942e
- HELLEBRANDT F A AND E. C FRIES *Physiotherapy Rev* 22 186 1942.
- HELLEBRANDT F A E C FRIES AND E M LARSEN *Fed Proc* 1 39, 1942
- HENDERSON Y J A M A 97 1265 1931
- HENDERSON Y A W QUINTERSON L A GREENBERG AND C P SEARLE *Am J Physiol* 114 261 1938
- HICK F A R W KEETON N GLICKMAN AND M M MONTGOMERY *Am J Physiol* 129 P382 1940
- HOOVER, H L *Am J Physiol* 34 114 1914
- HILL L *J Physiol* 18 15 1895
- HILL, L AND H BARNARD *J Physiol* 21 323 1897
- HILL, L H BARNARD AND A B SOLTAN *J Physiol* 22 xix, 1897
- HINCHAY, F *J Missouri Med Assn* 22 298 1925

- HINRICHS, A Ztschr f Kreislaufforsch 29 790, 1937
- HINSDALE, G Am J Med Sc 93 478, 1887
- HITCHCOCK, F A AND J K W FERGUSON Am J Physiol 124 457, 1938
- HOEFER, P F Arch Neurol Psych 46 947, 1941
- HOOKER, D R Am J Physiol 28 235, 1911
- HOOTON, E A Science 83 271, 1936
- Atlantic Monthly 164 435, 1939
- HOPPE, H B Ergebn d allg Path u path Anat 22 1, 1928
- HUBBARD, C H Research Quarterly, Am Phys Ed Assoc 6 Suppl 50, 1935
- HUGHES, T A AND M YUSAF Lancet 1 1101, 1935
- INGRAM, W R, S W RANSON AND R W BARRIS Arch Neurol Psychiat 31 768, 1934
- JANEWAY, T C Med Clin North America 1 21, 1917
- JANNEY, J C, G RILEY AND E W WALKER Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 31 398, 1933
- JANZEN, R Ztschr f d ges exper Med 103 671, 1938
- JEFFERS, W A, H MONTGOMERY AND A C BURTON Am J Med Sc 202 1, 1941
- JONES, J A Am J Dis Children 46 148, 1933
- JORRAN, H H New York State J Med 41 2203, 1941
- KEITH, A Lancet 1 631, 1903
- Brit Med J 1 451, 499, 545, 587, 624, 669, 1923
- The engines of the human body Philadelphia, J B Lippincott Co, 1933
- Am J Phys Anthropology 26 251, 1940
- KELSO, L E A AND F A HELLEBRANDT Science 86 451, 1937
- KEYS, A AND H R BUTT Arch Int Med 63 165, 1939
- DE KLEIJN, A Roy Soc Med Proc Soc Otol 17 6, 1924
- DE KLEIJN, A AND C VERSTEEGH Proc Roy Soc Med Sec Laryngol and Sec Otol 17 17, 1924
- J Laryngol and Otol 42 649, 1927
- KLEIN, A AND L C THOMAS U S Dept Labor, Children's Bureau, Pub no 205 Washington, 1931
- KLEIN, E AND P SCHILDER J Ner and Ment Dis 70 241, 1929
- KLOTZ, R Zentralbl f Gynak 62 1046, 1938
- KORB, E M Research Quarterly, Am Phys Ed Assoc 10 142, 1939
- KORNS, H M AND W L RANDALL Am Heart J 13 114, 1937
- KROGH, A, E M LANDIS AND A H TURNER J Clin Investigation 11 63, 1932
- KROGH, A Proc Inst Med Chicago 12 398, 1939
- KVALE, W F, E V ALLEN AND A W ADSON Am Heart J 18 537, 1939
- KVALE, W F AND E V ALLEN Am Heart J 18 546, 1939
- LANGSTON, W Ann Int Med 10 688, 1936
- LAPLACE, L B AND J T NICHOLSON J A M A 107 1009, 1936
- Am J Med Sc 192 345, 1936
- LAPLACE, L B Ann Int Med 17 339, 1942
- LAUFER, S T Canad Med Assn J 46 160, 1942
- LEE, R I J Bone and Joint Surg 5 747, 1923
- LEE, R I AND L T BROWN Am J Med Sc 160 651, 1920
- J Bone and Joint Surg 5 753, 1923
- LEONARD, B H Research Quarterly, Am Phys Ed Assoc 5 79, 1934
- LICH, R AND R MANSFIELD Am J Surg 57 89, 1942
- LIDDELL, E G T AND C SHERRINGTON Proc Roy Soc B 96 212, 1924, 97 267, 1925
- LIEB, C C, M G MULINOS AND H L TAYLOR Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 34 89, 1936
- LIEBERT, H Arbeitsphysiol 11 151, 1940
- LILJESTRAND, G AND G WOLLIN Zentralbl f Physiol 27 1268, 1913
- LINDHARD, J Skandinav Arch f Physiol 11 485, 1913

- LOOKE H. *Arbeitsphysiol* 9 498 1937
 LOMAN J, W DAMASHEK A MYERSON AND D GOLDMAN. *Arch Neurol Psychiat* 36 1216, 1936
 LUTTERLOH C H. *Am J Med Sc* 183 87, 1937
 LUCIANI L. *Human physiology*. London Macmillan & Co, 1915
 MCCANN, W S. *J A M A* 115 573, 1940
 MACLEWAN, C G AND E C HOWE. *Research Quarterly Am Phys Ed Assoc* 8 144, 1934
 MACLEWAN C G E POWELL AND E O HOWE. *Physiotherapy Rev* 15 167 1935
 McINTIRE, J M AND A H TURNER. *J Clin Investigation* 14 16 1935
 MACLEAN A R AND B T HORTON. *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin* 12 787, 1937
 MACLEAN, A R AND E V ALLEN. *J A M A* 115 2162 1940
 McMICHAEL, J. *Quart. J Exper Physiol* 27 55 1937
 McNALLY, W J. *Ann Otol Rhin and Laryngol* 39 248, 1930
 Trans Am Acad Ophthal 38 265 1933
 MACWILLIAM J A. *Quart J Exper Physiol* 23 1, 1933
 MAGNUS R. *Körperstellung*. Berlin 1924a
 Proc Roy Soc Med Sec Laryngology and Sec Otology 17 11, 1924b
 Lancet 104: 531, 585 1926a
 Laryngoscope 36 701 1926b
 MAIN, R J. *Am J Physiol* 118 435, 1937a
 Virginia Med Monthly 64 830 1937b
 Am J Physiol 126 P576 1939
 MAIN R J AND J P BAKER. *Virginia Med Monthly* 68 210 1941
 MAN, E B AND J P PETERS. *J Clin Investigation* 12 1031 1933
 MARK H. *Deutsch Arch f klin med* 161 174, 1928
 MASSEN J C. *J Med Assoc Georgia*. 31: 147, 1942
 MATEEF, D. *Arbeitsphysiol* 8 595, 1935
 MATEEF D AND C PETROFF. *Ztschr f d ges exper Med* 85 115 1932
 Klin Wehnschr 13 217, 1934
 MATULAY, K. *Bratisl lek listy* 18 457, 1938
 MATYERSON, H S. *Am J Physiol* 136: 331, 1942
 MAYERSON H S AND L A TOTH. *Am J Physiol* 125 474, 1930
 MAYERSON, H S, H M SWEENEY AND L A TOTH. *Am J Physiol* 125 481, 1939
 MAYERSON H. S AND G E BURCH. *Am J Physiol* 128 258 1940
 MAYERSON, H S AND W D DAVIS. *Am Heart J* 24 3 1942
 MENGERT, W F AND D P MURPHY. *Surg Gynec and Obst* 58 160 1934
 METTENLEITER, M. *Deutsch Ztschr f Chlr* 183 379 1924
 METTLER F A H W ADER, E LIPMAN AND F A CULLER. *Arch Neurol Psychiat* 41 684 1930
 MILES W R. *J Indust Hyg* 3 316, 1922
 MILLER N F. *J A M A* 89: 1761 1927 95: 1790 1930
 Am J Obstet and Gynec 27: 634 1934
 MILLIKEN, R. A. *Mil Surgeon*. 63 182 1928
 MILLS R W. *Am J Roentgenol* 4 185 1917
 MITCHELL, S W AND M J LEWIS. *Am J Med Sc* 92 303 1880
 MORRINO P. *Arch f Orthop* 28 322 1930
 MOORE C U. *Am J Dis Children* 47 483 1934
 MORTENSEN, M A. *Am J Med Sc* 155 697 1923
 MORTON, D J. *The human foot*. New York, Columbia U Press, 1935
 MOSHER C D. *School and Soc* 1 642, 1915
 MOSHER F M. *Ann Hyg* 10 144 1905
 Woman's Med J 19 245 1909 27 108, 1917, 29: 243 1919
 MOSS F A. *J Soc Automotive Eng* 38 580 1931
 MOTT G F. *U S Nav Med Bull* 25 1, 1927

- MURCHISON, C A handbook of general experimental psychology Worcester, Mass , Clark U Press, 1934
- NEUKIRCH, F Skandinav Arch f Physiol 77 60, 1937
- NI, T G AND P B REHBERG J Physiol 71 331, 1931
- NICHOLSON, J T AND L B LAPLACE Arch Phys Therapy 19 229, 1938
- NIELSEN, M, L P HERRINGTON AND C E A WINSLOW Am J Physiol 127 573, 1939
- NIELSEN, J M AND A P FRIEMAN Bull Los Angeles Neurol Soc 6 115, 1941
- OKUYAMA, M Reports Inst Science of Labour, No 6 Kurasaki, Japan, 1932
- OMWAKE, K T J Appl Psychol 16 623, 1932
- OSGOOD, R B Am J Orthop Surg 14 533, 1916
- PERSCHMANN, G Ztschr f Kreislaufforsch 31 384, 1939
- PHELPS, W M AND R J H KIPHUTH The diagnosis and treatment of postural defects Baltimore, C C Thomas, 1932
- PIORRY, P A Arch Gen de Med 12 527, 1826
- PULVERTAFT, R G J Bone and Joint Surg 21 559, 1939
- RADEMAKER, G G J Das Stehen Berlin, J Springer, 1931
- REYNOLDS, E AND R W LOVETT Am J Physiol 24 286, 1909
- REYNOLDS, E AND E A HOOTON Am J Physical Anthropol 21 253, 1936
- RICALDONI, M A Bull et mém Soc méd d hôp de Paris 52 1138, 1928
- RIECKER, H H AND E G UPJOHN Am Heart J 6 225, 1930
- ROMBERG, M H A manual of the nervous diseases of man London, Sydenham Soc , 1893
- ROOK, A F AND D J DAWSON Lancet 2 1503, 1938
- ROSENFELD, M Arch f Psychiat 59 287, 1918
- ROTH, G M Am Heart J 14 87, 1937
- ROTH, G M, M M D WILLIAMS AND C SHEARD Am J Physiol 124 161, 1938
- RUGH, J T Arch Pediat 45 319, 1928
- RUSSELL, J W Lancet 2 683, 1925
- RYTAND, D A Arch Int Med 59 837, 848, 1937
- SANDERS, A O Am J Med Sc 182 217, 1931
- Am Heart J 7 808, 1932
- SCHÄFER E A Text-book of physiology Edinburgh, Young J Pentland, 1900
- SCHALTENBRAND, G Arch Neurol Psychiat 20 720, 1928
- Arch Surg 18 1874, 1929
- SCELLONG, F AND M HEINEMEIER Ztschr f d ges exper Med 89 49, 1933
- SCHERF, D AND J WEISSBERG Am J Med Sc 201 693, 1941
- SCHILDBACH, F Arbeitsphysiol 11 153, 1940
- SCHILDER, P Arch Neurol Psychiat 22 1116, 1929
- SCHLOMKA, G AND H REINDELL Ztschr f klin Med 130 313, 1936
- SCHNEIDER, E C J A M A 74 1507, 1920
- SCHNEIDER, E C AND C B CRAMPTON Am J Physiol 110 14, 1934
- SCHREIBER, H Morphol Jahrb 73 469, 1934
- SCHWARTZ, L Pub Health Reports 42 1219, 1927
- SCHWARTZ, L, R H BRITTEN AND L R THOMPSON Public Health Bull no 179, Washington, 1928, Pub Health Bull no 199, Washington, 1931
- SCOTT, V T J A M A 76 705, 1921
- SCOTT, J C Am J Physiol 115 268, 1936
- SEVER, J W New York Med J 98 551, 1913
- SEWELL, H Am J Med Sc 151 491, 1916, 158 786, 1919
- SHANNON, W R Minnesota Med 25 458, 1942
- SHERRINGTON, C S J Physiol 40 28, 1910
- Brain 38 191, 1915
- West London Med J 25 97, 1920
- The brain and its mechanism Cambridge, Univ Press, 1933

- SIOLER L H Am Heart J 15: 146 1938
 SKAGGS E B I S SKAGGS AND M JORDON Am J Psychol 44 749 1932
 SKAGGS E B Am J Psychol 49 105, 1937
 SKOGLAND, J E Med Rec 155 15 1942
 SMITH H W The Harvey lectures 1939-40
 SMITH L A AND L M EATON Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin 17 122 1942
 SPINGARN C L AND W M HITZIG Arch Int Med 69: 23 1942
 STARLING Principles of human physiology Philadelphia Lea and Febiger, 1936
 STARR I AND A J RAWSON Am J Physiol 134 403 1941
 STEAD E A Bull New England Med Center 2 290 1940
 STEAD E A AND R. V EBERT Arch Int Med 67 546 1941
 STEINDLER, A Mechanics of normal and pathological locomotion in man Springfield Ill C G Thomas 1935
 SWEENEY H M AND H S MAYERSON Am J Physiol 119 412, 1937
 TALBOT F B AND L T BROWN Am J Dis Children 20 168 1920
 TEPPER, R H AND F A HELLEBRANDT Am J Physiol 122 563 1938
 THOMAS H M Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp 65 329 1939
 THOMPSON W O P K THOMPSON AND M E DAILEY J Clin Investigation 5 573 1928
 THOMPSON W O J M ALPER AND P K THOMPSON J Clin Investigation 5 605 1928
 TURNER A H Am J Physiol 80 601 1927a 81 197 1927b 87 687 1929
 TURNER A H, M I NEWTON AND F W HAYNES Am J Physiol 94: 507 1930
 VIFROEDT K Grundriss der Physiologie des Menschen Tübingen 1862
 WAKEFIELD F G AND C W MAYO Am J Digestive Dis and Nutrition 4 287 1937
 WALD H M GUERNSEY AND F H SCOTT Am Heart J 14 319, 1937
 WARD R O Lancet 1 23 1937
 WATSFIELD R E J Physiol 72 110 1931a 121 1931b
 WECHSLER, I S I BIEBER AND B H BALSER Arch Neurol Psychiat 35 1208 1936
 WEINER J S J Indust Hyg and Toxicol 20: 389 1938
 WEIS C R Ann Int Med 8 920 1935
 WEISS S AND J P BAKER Medicine 12 297 1933
 WEISS S, R B CAPPS E B FERRIS AND D MUNRO Arch Int Med 58 407 1936
 WEISS S, R W WILKINS AND F W HAYNES J Clin Investigation 15 73, 1937
 WEISS J J Nerv and Ment Dis 63 150 1938
 WELLS H S J B YOUMANS AND D G MILLER J Clin Investigation 17 489 1938
 WHEATLEY F E AND H MOORE Boston Med and Surg J 196 1080 1927
 WHITE H L I T ROSEN S S FISCHER AND G H WOOD Am J Physiol 78 185 1926
 WHITE P D F L CHAMBERLAIN AND A GRATZIEL Brit Heart J 3: 233 1941
 WHICKENS J S AND O KIPHUTH Research Quarterly, Am Phys Ed Assoc 8 38 1937
 WIGGERS C J Physiology in health and disease Philadelphia, Lea and Febiger, 1935
 WILKINS R W F W HAYNES AND S WEISS J Clin Investigation 16: 85 1937
 WILLARD, DEF P Am J Orthop Surg 15 429 1918
 WILSON J G Laryngoscope 35 791, 1926
 WILSON, W H J Physiol 64 54 1927
 WRIGHT S E Physiotherapy Rev 15 133 1935
 YLVISAKER L S AND H B KIRKLAND Am Heart J 20 592 1940
 YOUMANS J B II S WELLS D DONLEY D G MILLER AND H FRANK J Clin Investigation 13 447 1934
 YOUMANS J B J H AKEROYD AND H FRANK J Clin Investigation 14: 739 1935
 ZACHARIAS, K. Zentralbl f Gewerbehyg 18 119 1941
 ZIEBES D L Symposium on posture Phil Delta Pi Fraternity, 1938

NON-CALORIC FUNCTIONS OF DIETARY FATS¹

GEORGE O BURR AND RICHARD H BARNES

Division of Physiological Chemistry, University of Minnesota, Minneapolis

Although it is well known that dietary fats can be largely replaced by carbohydrates without any immediate and striking ill effects upon experimental animals, a sudden decrease in the fat content of human diets brings complaints from workers that they are unable to do as much work and their appetites are not satisfied. Starling (177) stated in 1918 that the people lost weight rather than eat more of the high carbohydrate diet made necessary by the war-time shortage of fats. Now, a new generation is faced with the same problems of fat-rationing and it seems desirable to reconsider the value of fat in the diet in the light of recent investigations. The excellent review by Anderson and Williams (3) in this journal five years ago makes it unnecessary to go over the whole field again. The fundamental ideas about fat metabolism are essentially unchanged and it is the object of this paper to bring the subject up to date, citing the new data which confirm or deny current theories. The average American consumes about one hundred pounds of fat annually, deriving therefrom approximately one-third of his total calories. This is a result of natural selection of foods according to appetite and may be considered normal. Our most concentrated energy source, fats, can supply the needs for the heaviest work without undue bulk.

Experience shows that the growth and reproductive performance of animals is modified by the consumption of dietary fats, which differ among themselves in their effects. Since all natural fats are glycerides of fatty acids any observed differences must be attributed to 1, the acids themselves, 2, the glycerides, or 3, substances which are associated with the glycerides as impurities or as a part of the lipid molecule itself. Those properties of the fatty acids, glycerides and known impurities which may conceivably account for the demonstrated effects of fats will now be considered.

Digestibility It goes without saying that a food can only be as efficient as it is digestible and in this respect the average fat ranks high. Many experiments with man and laboratory animals have shown digestibility coefficients of over 97 per cent. It should be noted that figures in the literature are not always obtained by the same method of calculation. In some cases the values are not corrected for endogenous fat (the fecal fat of controls on fat-free diet).

Some factors which affect digestibility are 1, species of animal, 2, health of the animal, 3, amount of fat in the diet, and 4, melting point and composition of the fat. Method of feeding, presence of roughage and other variables, excepting high calcium, seem to have little effect on the results. The present discussion is limited to digestibility in its usual sense. Factors affecting rates of absorption and theories of transport across tissues have been recently reviewed by Frazer (68) and by the authors (26).

¹ Assistance in the preparation of these materials was furnished by the personnel of Work Projects Administration, Official Project no. 165-1-71-124, Subproject no. 382

McCay and Paul (135) have shown that the guinea pig is much less able than the rat, rabbit or sheep to utilize hard fats. The rat compares favorably with the human being in this respect and by data obtained on the rat the usefulness of a fat to man may be judged.

The health of the subject is essential to utilization of fat, or other foods. Obstruction of the bile duct has the most striking effects on fat absorption but other factors affect the retention of fat to a marked degree. Many people are sensitive to fats, which must, therefore, be limited in the diet. Premature infants and twins have difficulty in absorbing fats, especially the more saturated ones (185). Langworthy (108) pointed out that a number of fats, particularly beef suet and cocoa butter, exerted laxative effects on the subjects (human) if fed at high levels. Gullickson, Fontaine and Fitch (77) found that young calves suffer severe scours when certain liquid oils are homogenized into a skim milk diet. These laxative effects were not noticeable if the amount of fat was kept small. Langworthy's subjects were able to consume as much as 116 to 130 grams per day with no laxative effects. The rat tolerates fats extremely well as shown by the experiments of Hoagland and Snider (91) in which digestibilities were about the same in diets containing 5 and 55 per cent of fat.

Of all the factors affecting digestibility hardness or melting point has received the most attention. There is a point above which fats are so poorly utilized that they are not only lost as food but also exert deleterious effects upon the animal. Instead of the 97 per cent digestibility of liquid oils and soft fats the utilization of harder fats, either natural or synthetic, is likely to fall gradually as melting points rise above body temperature, until at 50°C only 90 per cent retention by man may be expected. With strictly comparable triglycerides the effect of melting point can be strikingly demonstrated with rats. For example, Evans and Lepkovsky (64) found the following digestibilities in per cent for palmitin (m.p. 58-60°C), myristin (m.p. 53-54°C), laurin (m.p. 43°C), caprin (m.p. 25-26°C), and caprylin (m.p. 7-8°C), respectively 73.4, 91.0, 96, 96.5 and 97.5. It will be seen that an important loss in digestibility has occurred at a melting point of 53°C. In an attempt to correlate digestibility with the melting points of mixed fats Hoagland and Snider (92) studied a group of lards, hydrogenated vegetable shortenings and shortenings made of mixed animal and vegetable fats. In the range from 39°C to 56°C no correlation was found between the percentage utilization and the melting point, or amount of total saturated acids in the fats. There were, however, large differences in digestibilities as shown by the following data: average for lards 94 per cent, average for hydrogenated vegetable shortenings 87.5 per cent, and average for vegetable and animal shortenings 85.0 per cent. These are significant differences for which an explanation may be found in some of the following facts. The excreted fatty acids are of very low iodine number, showing a selective excretion of the saturated acids which must, therefore, to a considerable extent affect digestibility. Holt and co-workers (96) were able to predict the digestibility of fats by infants by assuming the following percentage retention of the fatty acids: Unsaturated, 98; short chain saturated, 90; palmitic, 88; stearic, 60; and saturated acids longer than stearic, 40. Barbeur (8)

found the arachidic acid (m p 76°C) of peanut oil almost wholly excreted in the feces along with appreciable amounts of stearic and palmitic acids. Hence digestibility depends more upon the amounts of longer chain saturated acids than upon the total saturated acids. Hydrogenation may have produced stearic acid without increasing the total saturated acids beyond the value for the lards, which are much richer in the more readily absorbed palmitic acid.

One other point is of interest here. The same acid in compounds of different melting points will be absorbed to different degrees as shown by the ready utilization by rats of ethylstearate (m p $30\text{--}31^{\circ}\text{C}$) as compared with stearin (m p $71\text{--}72^{\circ}\text{C}$) (64). However, there are numerous reports of poorer utilization by other animals of ethyl esters as compared with the glycerides (96). The melting point of a mixed fat is not a good criterion of its composition. A difference of several degrees in melting points of glycerides arises from a shift of a fatty acid from the α to the β -position (41). The decrease in *in vitro* hydrolysis by pancreatic lipase of hydrogenated fats of increasing melting points correlates well with the observed fall in digestibility (186).

It is evident from the cited data that the hardness of fats and their content of long chain saturated acids exert a material effect upon their food value. Melting point, as determined by the official methods, is not an exact indicator of digestibility of mixed fats, although in a broad sense its effects are evident. If for no other reason, it is a mistake to hydrogenate fats so completely that their digestibilities are materially affected.

Mobilization and utilization of the fatty acids. It has long been known that dietary fats are deposited in body tissues, milk, and eggs. This occurs so extensively that it can hardly be said that any fat is characteristic of a species, unless it be that synthesized from non-fat precursors which McAmis, Anderson and Mendel called "physiological" or "synthetic" fat (133). The appearance of dietary fat in milk was demonstrated by Stohmann in 1869 (180), in body fat by Lebedeff in 1882 (112), in the fetus by Thiemich in 1905 (184), and in eggs by Henriques and Hansen (84) in 1903. The many recent papers, by furnishing more detailed information about this phenomenon, have shown that the results obtained depend upon 1, the body tissue or fluid analyzed, 2, the species of animal, 3, the kind of fatty acids used, and 4, the method of conducting the experiment. The sum of the evidence from these "tagging" experiments demonstrates the lability and rapid turnover of tissue lipids, a result confirmed and extended by the very recent use of isotopes and isomers.

The method of experimentation may largely control the absolute results. Starvation followed by refeeding brings about the most rapid change in body fats. High levels of fat in the diet produce in a short time the same result as low levels fed over a longer period. Some tissues are much more affected than others. Blood and liver lipids reflect almost immediately a change in dietary fat. More slowly the adipose tissue may change several fold in iodine number while the brain is exceptionally constant in its fatty acid content (171) (170), a stability possibly related to the inability of nervous tissue to burn fat or acetone bodies. Although phospholipids may reach a high degree of unsaturation, their percentage

change in iodine number is not equal to that which may be induced in the simple glycerides (108). Dietary fats produce changes in egg (39) (130) and milk (86) lipids which do not closely parallel the changes in depot fat (103) (93). This selective utilization of fatty acids varies so much with the species that it may be considered a "species characteristic". Certainly it plays a large part in fixing the composition of the body lipids of the different animals on their natural diets. The pig, rat and chicken are very responsive to dietary fats, their body lipids being changed profoundly by the diet (117) (54) (2) (39) without apparent effects upon their metabolism or well being. In contrast, the body fat of beef and sheep (90) remain fairly constant in composition regardless of diet.

In those animals which respond to dietary fats a high degree of selection of individual fatty acids takes place, some being excluded from the tissues while others are preferentially held. This preference for certain acids is based upon properties associated with chain length (molecular weight), unsaturation, or melting point. It is not essential that the fatty acid be one usually found in diets or that it be the naturally occurring isomer. Erucic acid, an uncommon member of the oleic series, was found by Munk (140) to be deposited in the body fat of dogs. McConnell and Sinclair (137) were able to introduce into the lecithin and cephalin of the rat nearly thirty per cent of elaidic acid, the high melting trans isomer of oleic, which Barbour (7) had already shown to be readily stored in the whole body fat (9.2 per cent) and utilized in starvation like other acids in his study of the nutritive value of hydrogenated shortenings. The oleostearic acids (conjugated isomers of linolenic) are readily incorporated into tissue lipids of the rat (143) and hen (40) and secreted unchanged in the milk of the cow (97). The conjugated isomers of linoleic acid (142) and brominated acids (4) are other unnatural forms which react in the body enough like the natural ones to make them useful as tracers, a subject recently reviewed by Bloor (14) and Chaikoff (33).

Since butter fat and coconut oil are among the best food fats it is obvious that the low molecular weight acids are readily utilized when taken as a part of a mixed diet. However, a high degree of selectivity is shown by animals in their utilization of fatty acids of different chain length. In 1882 Lebedeff (112) showed that neither butter nor tributyrin in the diet increased the volatile acids of the body fat of the dog. Since that time much work has been done to establish the fact that fatty acids with less than 10 carbons are not deposited in more than traces in rat body fat (51, 50, 42, 154, 153, 37, 98, 34, 106, 118, 114). A very sharp break occurs at this molecular weight, the records showing only traces of caprylic (154), 15 per cent of capric and 25 to 32 per cent of lauric (153) (114) acids in body fats of animals fed in comparable ways. These very short acids must be immediately degraded (100) or synthesized into the longer acids and stored. There is considerable evidence for some synthesis and deposition of the higher saturated acids by addition of two or more carbons (51) (154) (106). Thus the low molecular weight acids may affect the body composition without themselves being deposited. Immediate degradation of the major portion of these acids has been demonstrated by the use of the deuterio-compounds (106) as well as by their ketogenic action even when the liver is rich in glycogen (121). A

marked rise in blood acetone bodies follows ingestion of the lower fatty acids (C_4 to C_{10}) but not the higher (C_{12} to C_{18}). Another interesting observation is that caproic and butyric acids do not prevent the rise of blood sugar and the loss of galactose from the urine of rats on a skim milk diet while the higher fatty acids and many common oils bring about the normal utilization of galactose (165).

Body fats of higher animals made by synthesis from carbohydrate and protein are comprised chiefly of oleic, palmitic and stearic acids. Usually about 95 per cent of the acids have 16 or 18 carbons (54) (88) (116). The strong tendency for the maintenance of this high percentage of these two groups is well demonstrated by the work of Hilditch and Longenecker (87) in which the body fat of milk-fed rats is compared with the milk fat. Of 22.8 molar per cent of C_4 to C_{12} acids in the butter only 1.4 molar per cent was found in the body fat. There was a good storage of myristic acid. By a forced feeding of large percentages of the 10 and 12 carbon acids it is possible to have them deposited in quantity and upon starvation they are readily utilized. In fact Longenecker (114) finds a greater rate of loss of lauric than other acids from depot fats very rich in it. This might be interpreted as selective utilization but, as he points out, it may be determined by the glyceride structure. There is very little evidence for much selective use of the ordinary depot fatty acids on starvation of pigs, rats, sheep and other animals although small differences have been regularly observed (89) (90) (115). As Hilditch and co-workers point out, the general distribution of the fatty acids in mixed glycerides militates against use of a single acid if it be assumed that the whole glyceride must be utilized as a unit.

Unsaturation of a fatty acid exerts a marked effect upon its deposition. The higher animal, which is incapable of synthesizing more than traces of the highly unsaturated acids, except arachidonic, may preferentially retain a large proportion of those present in the diet (53) (2). Much of the linoleic acid of the feed is retained in the body of the pig (53). This acid is considered largely responsible for the softening of lards. When 60 per cent of the calories of the diet come from fat the iodine number of the body fat of rats follows closely that of highly unsaturated oils (2). When more saturated fats, lard and Crisco are fed there is a selective retention of the unsaturated acids which makes the body fat more unsaturated than the dietary fat. Exceptional in its effects is cottonseed oil which, upon inclusion in the diet, raises the melting point of hog lard (55) and of cow's milk fat (49).

The very highly unsaturated acids of fish oils are avidly held by certain tissues, a property which probably led to the theory of desaturation (167, 169, 168, 86). The phospholipids, especially sensitive to these acids, will show a marked change in fatty acid content with the inclusion of only a trace (50 mgm. per day) of cod liver oil in the diet of the rat (168). The change takes place quickly, being complete within 10 to 15 days (169). Their affinity for unsaturated acids is so great that phospholipids pick them up from coconut oil or butter diets which markedly lower the iodine number of the neutral glycerides (167). Linolenic acid does not seem to be so readily deposited in the rat (167), nor is it secreted in appreciable amounts by the mammary gland of the cow which does transfer much of the fish

oil acids into the butter (86) It is, however, readily deposited in egg yolk as are the acids from sperm oil (39) (40) In general, saturated acids in the diet do not so markedly affect the composition of body fats, eggs or milk Barbour (8) concluded that, possibly due to limits of digestibility, the saturated acids of rat body fats cannot be raised above the "normal" of about 25 per cent Cruickshank (39) also found relatively little effect of ingested saturated acids on egg fat It seems that this rule should be applied only to the longer chain acids When butter, coconut oil or the C_{12} or C_{14} acids themselves are fed the effects are very definite Fasted rats, fed a diet rich in coconut oil, may deposit as much as 72.5 molar per cent of saturated acids in the depot fat (118)

In addition to being deposited or immediately oxidized, ingested fatty acids may be saturated (hydrogenated), (143) (40) (119) (166), desaturated, partially degraded to normal acids with fewer carbons (86) (114) or lengthened to a higher molecular weight (51) All of these changes, postulated from analytical data, have been given direct proof by the use of deuterium Desaturation of stearic and palmitic acids to oleic and palmitoleic, respectively, has been demonstrated but linoleic and linolenic are not formed in this way by the animal Nor do they take up deuterium from the heavy water of body fluids, proof that they are not synthesized by the rat or mouse but must be derived from the diet

The essential fatty acids This subject recently reviewed in great detail by one of us (24), will be treated more briefly here and brought up to date by the addition of some new references To quote from that review "The term essential fatty acids was introduced in 1930 (29) and since that time has been used rather loosely to designate a group of unsaturated acids which will bring about a renewal of growth of rats which have reached a plateau on a low fat diet Strictly speaking only one of these is essential If linoleic acid is added to the deficient diet, growth will be renewed"

A large number of purified fatty acids have been tested in this way in different laboratories and it has been demonstrated that they differ in their effects upon the animal Exclusion of fat from the diet leads to 1, development of scaly skin and caudal necrosis, 2, retardation of growth, 3, kidney lesions and hematuria, and 4, early death Males become sterile and females produce poor litters and fail in lactation High respiratory quotients high metabolic rates and high water consumption have been observed and histological changes in various tissues described

Of the above effects growth response and skin cure seem to be the best measures of effectiveness of oils and fatty acids In some instances (62) (187) the skin is only mildly affected but this is probably due to unusually high humidity in the colony (24) The effects upon the oestrus cycle are irregular (187) and in young animals may not show up at all (156) Those acids which have been reported to have some curative effect upon fat deficient rats are linoleic, linolenic, arachidonic, docosahexenoic and hexahydroxystearic In addition, linoleyl alcohol is useful All other fatty acids and isomers of the above compounds have been reported negative

Linoleic, arachidonic and linolenic acids are the only ones which have been

extensively worked with Quantitative comparisons of their growth effects, made in different laboratories, are not in close agreement but it is clear that linoleic and arachidonic are much alike while linolenic is inferior This acid produces some growth but does not cure the skin, reduce water consumption to normal or improve lactation (24) (156) Decosahexenoic acid and the mixed esters of cod liver oil react in a similar way and it can be said that linoleic and arachidonic acids are highly specific in their effects upon the skin

The rat is the only species studied sufficiently to establish the daily requirement for linoleic acid Prophylactic doses of 20 mgm gave optimum growth in young rats (128) (28), 23 mgm gave good growth and reproduction (124), but for optimum lactation 100 mgm is recommended by Quackenbush, Kummerow and Steenbock (156) because the performance of their rats was superior to that reported by earlier workers In curative experiments the higher levels of 50 to 100 mgm daily seem distinctly superior (187) (27) (30) and it must be concluded that the lower requirements for early growth of young well-fed rats (92) is due to the stored linoleic acid which is limited by the diet of the mothers (25) (158) (157) This effect is so pronounced that the average longevity of rats on a fat deficient diet may be increased from 4 months to 14 months by changing the mothers from coconut oil to corn oil (25) Also, the iodine number of the carcass fats of weanlings may be reduced from 134 to 94 (158) by changing the mothers from stock diet to a diet made of potato meal, casein and salts

Very few experiments have been done on the essential fatty acid requirement of other species The goat, cow, chicken and pig have been kept for short periods on diets low in fat without the development of outward signs of the deficiency However, the mouse responds to a lack of linoleic acid (193) very much as the rat does except that in combined pyridoxine and linoleic acid deficiency it declines and dies before developing either scaly skin or acrodynia (67) When reared on a simplified low fat diet similar to that used for an experiment with man (21) dogs develop scaly skin which is curable with fats (81) The iodine number of the blood lipids drops about 25 per cent and rises as the cure takes place

Little is known about the requirements of man for unsaturated fatty acids Two infants maintained by Von Gröer on a diet very low in fat grew fairly well but one developed a generalized eczema (189) Of three infants kept on a fat-free diet by Holt and co-workers (96) one developed an eczema which was cured by feeding fat In two infants maintained at the University of Minnesota Hospital for 10 weeks on a diet extremely low in fat there was a moderate decrease in the iodine number of the serum lipids An adult human subject maintained for six months on a diet which produces typical fat deficiency symptoms in rats felt no ill effects but he lost weight, suffered a change in respiratory metabolism and a marked fall in the arachidonic and linoleic acid content of the serum lipids (21)

The above effects parallel closely the changes in rats suffering linoleic acid deficiency A distinct fall in blood iodine numbers accompanies the development of scaly skin (80) Assuming an analogy between rat scaly skin and simple infantile eczema Hansen and co-workers (79) began a study of eczematous human subjects, in whom they have found a distinctly lower blood content of

arachidonic and linoleic acids (20) In infants with uncomplicated eczema the average fall in serum lipid iodine number is about 25 per cent (79) When corn oil, lard or other unsaturated fats are fed most of the eczemas are cured or greatly alleviated About 50 per cent of hospitalized adult patients with subnormal serum fatty acid iodine numbers showed distinct improvement of their skin when treated with lard by Finnerud, Kessler and Wiese (66) Although the results with human subjects are not as uniform as with experimental animals under controlled conditions, it seems clear that many people are receiving less than their optimal requirement of linoleic acid From a survey of the national dietary it has been estimated that linoleic acid constitutes about one per cent of the average American food It is likely that many people consume less than this amount, which has been suggested by some as the requirement for rats It is not surprising, therefore, that there are individuals who, because of low intake or abnormally high requirement, respond to additional unsaturated fatty acids in their diet

That the most marked human response should be in the skin falls in line with the view that linoleic acid is highly specific for that tissue The first symptom of its deficiency is scales on the feet of young rats which may appear within 10 days and before growth has been measurably affected The thicker and more differentiated skin of fat-deficient rats has been recently described by camera lucida drawings (195) Possibly the most striking effect of linoleic acid on the skin is produced by a combined deficiency of pyridoxine and fats Severe acro-dynia is produced which can be completely eliminated by the feeding of linoleic acid When fed at sub-optimal levels pantothenic acid and linoleic acid supplement each other but only linoleic acid can alone cure all skin symptoms (159) In an attempt to explain these inter relations the body lipids of the rats used in the above experiments were analyzed (158) Some differences were found in the fat content and iodine numbers of the groups but there is no evidence that pyridoxine or other B factors bring about a synthesis of linoleic acid

The ready mobilization of the unsaturated fatty acids is shown by the work of Smedley MacLean, Hume and Nunn (175) (174) (176) who find that the arachidonic acid of subcutaneous tissue is rapidly moved to the growing liver and developing tumors Tumor growth was not retarded by limiting the intake of unsaturated acids

A new specific function of linoleic has been described by Engel (50) With synthetic vitamin supplements and a fat-free diet, choline had its optimum lipotrophic effect only when inositol, pyridoxine and linoleic acid were all present One-tenth milliliter of corn oil daily reduced the liver fat to half in one experiment The author postulates a mutual influence of these factors in the mobilization of fat, although it is known that linoleic acid deficiency does not materially decrease the rate of incorporation of labeled fatty acids into liver phospholipids (9)

The relationship between dietary fats and other nutrients Fats markedly affect the availability and utilization of a number of dietary essentials It is difficult to evaluate the importance in human nutrition of these effects which are readily demonstrated with laboratory animals In certain cases, particularly when ox-

dized or rancid fats come into intimate contact with other foods either in the dietary mixture or in the intestinal tract, the relationship of fats to other nutrients assumes an increased significance. In the following discussion an attempt has been made to bring together some of the pertinent information on the effects that both fresh and rancid fats have on other dietary substances.

Vitamin A It has long been recognized that different fats have a profound effect upon the biological efficacy of vitamin A and its precursor, carotene. Only one year before Moore's (144) discovery that carotene is converted into vitamin A in the animal body, Duhere, Morton and Drummond (45) found that carotene which was dissolved in ethyl oleate was biologically inactive and reported that carotene did not exhibit vitamin A activity. Even before this time it had been observed that vitamin A was poorly utilized when administered in mineral oil (46, 31, 140) and following this that the utilization of carotene was even more affected (47). Natural fats were shown to have varying effects upon carotene utilization and in 1935 the Medical Research Council concluded that in vitamin A assays the standard β carotene was more efficacious if dissolved and administered in coconut oil or certain samples of arachis oil than when given in olive oil, hardened cottonseed oil, ethyl laurate, or liquid paraffin (139, 109).

It is probable that at least two separate factors are responsible for the diverse effects of fats on vitamin A and carotene utilization. These are 1, absorption, and 2, oxidative destruction. Largely through the well known work of Drummond, Bell and Palmer (44), and Greaves and Schmidt (75), it is now known that to some extent both carotene and vitamin A follow the general pathway of fat absorption. Furthermore it has been shown by Ahmad (1) and Mulder and Kelly (145) among others that dietary fat is necessary for the normal absorption of vitamin A and that with amounts up to at least 10 per cent of the total weight of the diet, the apparent absorption of the vitamin increases.

It is probable that the loss of biological potency, apparent when the vitamin or its precursor is administered in various natural fats, is largely due to oxidative destruction before absorption takes place. This oxidation might be brought about by simple diffusion of atmospheric oxygen through a solvent which in itself neither accelerates nor inhibits the reaction. However, the formation of pro-oxidants which increase the rate of carotene destruction is of more serious consequence. Baumann and Steenbock (11) found that carotene dissolved in ether, chloroform, cyclohexane, acetone, carbon disulfide, toluene and pyridine, and kept at 4°C was more than 75 per cent destroyed in 5 months while other solvents such as benzene and petroleum ether were less destructive. Ether, the solvent which caused the greatest loss, readily becomes contaminated with peroxides.

In the above study, hydroquinone effectively reduced carotene destruction in all of the organic solvents that were employed. In 1931 Olcovitch and Mattill (148) came to the conclusion that the stability of carotene in solution is dependent upon the nature and the amount of antioxidant present. The importance of antioxidants was further stressed by Shrewsbury and Kraybill (173) who found that if butter fat was treated with charcoal the vitamin A and carotene, together with natural antioxidants, were destroyed and furthermore that if carotene was

added to this charcoal treated hutter fat and immediately fed to rats an appreciable part of its potency was lost. If hydroquinone was also added, the carotene was protected against *in vitro* oxidation but it still lost a part of its biological activity (106). A number of results have been published on the biological potency of carotene dissolved in different fats and in many of these no correlation between *in vitro* oxidation and biological potency could be observed. Sherman (172) clarified some of the discrepancies in earlier publications by showing that there are real differences in vitamin A potency dependent upon the fat in which it is administered, but that this effect is observed to a noticeable extent only when the basal diet is fat-free except for the essential fatty acids.

Another demonstration of the influence of antioxidants on vitamin A potency was recently presented by Hickman, Harris, and Woods (85) who used the U S P vitamin A assay method with olive oil as the specified vegetable oil in the basal diet and studied the effect of added vitamin E (molecular distillate containing 40 per cent mixed tocopherols) on the growth response to fixed quantities of three different forms of vitamin A (crystalline alcohol, a crystalline acetate and mixed carotenes). With all three substances the addition of antioxidant vitamin E markedly increased growth. In the case of carotene, a dose of the vitamin that was insufficient to support life if given alone, induced growth when fed with sufficient vitamin E.

It was observed that the tocopherols were effective only if administered simultaneously with the vitamin preparations. This would indicate that they protected the vitamin A from oxidative destruction while in the intestine. Baumann, Rusing and Steenbock (10) showed that when a hutter fat concentrate dissolved in cottonseed oil was administered to rats, the storage of vitamin A in the liver took place to a large extent and the losses due to destruction in the intestinal tract were large during the first few losses were small so that faulty absorption could not account for the intestinal loss. If intestinal destruction of vitamin A is largely prevented by vitamin E, hydroquinone which is a much more potent antioxidant than vitamin E might be expected to have a greater effect. However, as shown by Kraybill and Shrewsbury (106) and Quackenbush, Cox and Kraybill (107) this is not the case. The latter investigators using both a hutter fat concentrate and α -tocopherol together with carotene dissolved in olive oil (value = 0) have come to the conclusion that hydroquinone, a phenolic compound, is extracted from carotene solutions in the intestine and therefore cannot exert any antioxidant action at this site. On the other hand, α -tocopherol being fat soluble remains with the carotene and exerts its action during its passage through the intestinal tract.

With the development of rancidity *in vitro*, natural antioxidants such as carotene and vitamin A are destroyed. The substance which causes this destruction is still unknown. Lease, Lease, and Wills (111) in an extensive study on this subject have come to the conclusion that Vitamin A is not destroyed by oxidized glycerol, glycerol, hyde, allyl alcohol, straight chain aldehydes, m

at,
and
low
the
the
ut 1

or decomposition products formed by the commercial hydrogenation of fats. The components of rancid fats which cause destruction of vitamin A are not removed by steam distillation nor by extraction with alcohol. From the vast literature that has now accumulated on this subject of *in vitro* vitamin A oxidation it would appear that loss of activity is associated with the intense peroxide formation that follows the termination of the induction period of the fat in which the vitamin is dissolved. Sumner (181) has illustrated this relationship between rate of peroxidation and carotene destruction by using active lipoxidase preparations. It is his conclusion that intermediates of fatty acid peroxidation are the active agents involved, but not the peroxides themselves.

Vitamin D It was early pointed out by Zucker and Barnett (196) that dietary fat exerts some antirachitic action and this observation has been amply substantiated by more recent investigations (104) (105) (138) (15) (76) (103) (100) (101) (17). The antirachitic effect of fat in the diet is relatively small but consistent, and is dependent upon the amount of fat present. For example, Knudson and Floody (103) found that with 0.025 mgm. of crystalline vitamin D₂ dissolved in propylene glycol and added to 40 grams of a rickets producing basal diet, the extent of healing was about 3 times greater if 5 per cent hydrogenated vegetable oil was included. With 10 per cent fat the vitamin D was less effective and 20 per cent reduced the healing to the approximate level of the fat-free basal diet.

Explanations of this antirachitic effect of dietary fat have been largely concerned with the influence that fat might have on calcium and phosphorus absorption. It is known that in sprue, celiac disease and in other types of profound steatorrhea, calcium absorption is impaired, the unabsorbed calcium being excreted in the feces, for the most part, as calcium soaps. It has also been observed that when the fat content of the diet is greatly increased the amount of calcium soaps in the feces increases (38) (5) (160) (13). However, it has been often reported that small amounts of fat in the diet have a beneficial effect upon calcium absorption (94) (95) (19) (70), but it is not fully agreed that fat increases the absorption and retention of calcium or the calcification of bones (17) under all conditions. It would appear that both calcium absorption and calcification are more definitely enhanced by dietary fat in the rachitic animal than in the normal.

In an attempt to explain the manner in which vitamin D-free fats influence calcification Jones (101) studied the effect of a number of substances on the acidity of the intestinal contents and on the calcification of the bones of rachitic rats. In agreement with the work of others it was found that fat (10 per cent lard or oleic acid) decreased the pH of the lower portion of the small intestine at the same time showing a definite antirachitic effect. However, lactose also increased the acidity of the lower intestinal tract, but did not exhibit any antirachitic action. Dibasic phosphate protected the rats against rickets without changing the pH of the intestinal tract. Although these experiments do not completely rule out intestinal acidity changes as a factor involved they do point out the obscurity of the mechanism of the fat effect on calcification.

Vitamin E Early in the development of the knowledge concerning the physi-

ology and chemistry of vitamin E it was pointed out that amounts of wheat germ oil which added to a fat-free diet were sufficient to relieve sterility in rats became ineffective if lard, crisco, or oleic acid were included in the diet (60). The explanation for this effect of fat on vitamin E activity, simultaneously presented by Mattill (129), and Evans and Burr (59), was that oxidative changes which accompany the development of rancidity in unsaturated fats destroy the vitamin. Macomber (125) added 5 per cent wheat germ to a diet containing 20 per cent lard and found the diet to be deficient in vitamin E.

Goettsch and Pappenheimer (73) first pointed out that rabbits and guinea pigs developed a characteristic muscular dystrophy when fed diets that were treated with ferric chloride and contained lard and cod liver oil. The ferric chloride treatment was known to destroy vitamin E (190) and the lard and cod liver oil additions seemed to aggravate this deficiency symptom. Madsen (126) found that muscular dystrophy could be produced by a vitamin E-free diet containing a cod liver oil concentrate without lard being present. The addition of cotton seed oil afforded some protection, but if cod liver oil in its natural form was included, cottonseed oil was without effect. In view of the fact that muscular dystrophy can be brought about by the ingestion of cod liver oil concentrates as well as by the natural cod liver oil it is interesting to note that Evans and Burr (59) had found that the vitamin E destroying material of oxidized lard could be concentrated in the unsaponifiable fraction.

Although it is not fully agreed that the sole reason for the development of muscular dystrophy in certain animals fed cod liver oil is through a destruction of vitamin E, there is an accumulation of evidence that the dystrophy can be prevented by the appropriate administration of α tocopherol (123) (122) (57) (130). It is the opinion of Mattill and Golumbic that there is no difference between the muscular dystrophy of cod liver oil and that produced by lack of vitamin E. If this is true it is probable that the influence of vitamin E-free fat in the diet in protecting against or aggravating the onset of deficiency symptoms is entirely due to an anti-oxidant protection of the vitamin or a pro-oxidant aid in its destruction. Either might take place before or after the ingestion of the dietary mixture. A complete review of the studies on muscular dystrophy has just been published by Pappenheimer (150) in this journal.

Vitamins of the B complex The very striking sparing action that dietary fat has on thiamin has long been recognized. While the excellent reviews that have been written on this subject, especially those of Williams and Spies (194) and Cowgill (30), adequately bring the literature up to recent years, a few contributions should be discussed.

Stern, Arnold and Elvehjem (179) in a study of the B_1 sparing action of fat, isocalorically replaced the carbohydrate of a B_1 -deficient diet with fat and found that rats which had developed polyneuritis through previous subjection to a low fat, thiamin free regimen grew well, exhibited no signs of polyneuritis, and the females had normal estrous cycles. The symptoms of polyneuritis which the rats had when the fat diet was started did not completely subside for about 1 week although growth during this time was good. These authors point out

that since thiamin administration causes the disappearance of polyneuritic symptoms within 4 to 6 hours, fats must act in a manner independent of thiamin. Salmon and Goodman (164) had previously reported that a diet containing 40 per cent fat, but very low in thiamin, did not prevent the occurrence of polyneuritis in rats. Stern, Arnold and Elvehjem offer the suggestion that perhaps the diet used by Salmon and Goodman was low in some dietary factors other than thiamin for when the autoclaved yeast content of a high fat diet was increased symptoms of polyneuritis disappeared. It has been well established by the use of autoclaved and synthetic fats that the sparing action is not due to the presence of thiamin. Melnick and Field (141) have carried out chemical determinations for thiamin in fats, with negative results. Furthermore, Kemmerer and Steenbock (102) found no increase in the amount of thiamin in body tissues when thiamin deficient rats were fed high fat diets, and Cahill (32) has found that in humans ingesting a diet with a constant thiamin content, the addition of fat had no influence on the amount of thiamin excreted in the urine. These results together with recent information on the participation of thiamin in the carboxylase system indicate that fat spares thiamin by altering metabolism in such a way as to circumvent its need. An observation that could be interpreted as a confirmation of this idea has been presented by Banerji (6) who found that the ingestion of a high fat diet not only alleviated the severity of a thiamin deficiency bradycardia, but diminished the excretion of bisulfite-binding substances in the urine.

Evans, Lepkovsky and Murphy (65) noticed an apparent aggravating effect of fat upon the vitamin G requirement of rats. More recently Mannering, Lipton and Elvehjem (127) have shown that fat at a level of 25 and 40 per cent of the diet, markedly increased the riboflavin requirement of the rat, while with the dog the level of dietary fat has no influence on the need for this vitamin (152).

Dietary fat seems to have some sparing action on the pantothenic acid (188) and biotin (147) needs of the rat. Furthermore certain fats (corn oil) give a much greater protection from egg white disease than others (Crisco), an observation that might be associated with their content of the essential fatty acids (120).

Rancid fat In the foregoing discussion some mention has been made of the deleterious effects of oxidized fat in the diet, particularly in the destruction of vitamins A and E. Serious as the effect on these two vitamins is, the detrimental properties of rancid fat are much more extensive.

The stability of all the essential nutrients to oxidized fat is not known, but on the basis of chemical structure and properties, the following substances might be considered capable of destruction by such pro-oxidants. Vitamin A, carotene, vitamin D, vitamin E, pantothenic acid, pyridoxine, biotin, ascorbic acid, and linoleic acid. There is a serious lack of information concerning the possible destruction of many of these substances by oxidized fat, but that information which is available will be discussed here.

It was pointed out by Mattill and Golumbic (130) that many investigators working with E deficient animals have occasionally encountered dermatitis in

older animals and caudal necrosis in the new born. The dermatitis is sometimes relieved by the administration of wheat germ oil. As the wheat germ oil *per se* is possibly not responsible for the cure of dermatitis symptoms it may have protected other factors by its antioxidant properties. Neither pantothenic acid nor pyridoxine have been studied, but at least one of the dermatitis preventing vitamins, biotin, has been shown to be destroyed by organic peroxides (23) and by products produced in rancid fats (151a).

While the most important factor concerned in the oxidation of vitamin D in animal foods seems to be the amount of exposed surface area, rancid fats are also of importance in its destruction (71).

Ascorbic acid, which is known to act as a fat antioxidant, is not appreciably destroyed during the induction period (74). Experiments from the authors' laboratory indicate that when pure ascorbic acid is suspended in highly rancidified fat it is not oxidized.

The peroxidation of unsaturated fats naturally destroys linoleic acid. Feeding of such oxidized fats has been shown to result in the development of skin changes in rats (192) and dogs (191) suggestive of linoleic acid deficiency, but in a much more severe form than that ordinarily produced by occlusion of the essential fatty acids.

The presence of rancid fat in the diet has effects other than in destroying essential nutrients. György *et al* (78) studied a diet of the following composition: Casein 6, cornstarch 50, sucrose 22, cod liver oil 2, salts 4, and linoleic acid (crude) 16 with daily supplements of thiamin, riboflavin, pyridoxine, and pantothenic acid. Within 3 to 4 weeks standing at room temperature the linoleic acid was almost completely destroyed by oxidation. If butter yellow (N,N-dimethylaminobenzene) was incorporated in the diet at a level of 0.06 per cent, it was destroyed by the oxidizing linoleic acid. These authors are of the opinion that such substances as Crisco, butterfat, or rice which have a pro-carcinogenic effect when given together with butter yellow do so by stabilizing the carcinogen either by reducing the unsaturated acid content of the diet or through an antioxidant effect. However, this can not be the explanation for the enhancing effect of dietary fat on tumor production by skin application of 20 methylcholanthrene for in this case rancidified fat is equally effective (110). Of striking interest in the study by György *et al* was the observation that the diet containing linoleic acid was very toxic. Rats fed this regimen either with or without butter yellow, lost weight, developed an anemia of the secondary type, a leucopenia, and were subject to pediculosis. These symptoms could be prevented by the daily addition of yeast to the diet. The toxicity was apparently due to oxidation products of the unsaturated fatty acid.

In this laboratory loss of weight and death have been noted when a balanced diet containing casein, glucose, lard, salt mixture, and pure B vitamins together with cod liver oil and wheat germ oil was fed to rats. The toxicity of this diet was related to the development of rancidity, but as cod liver oil has been included in the diet in the same manner as in the György study it was thought probable that a deficiency of vitamin A had developed. Yeast was also found

protective, but on further study it was found that the yeast exerted a strong antioxidant effect which protected the lard from oxidation. When cod liver oil was fed separately and oxidation of the fat was prevented by refrigeration no toxic symptoms were manifested, but if the lard was rancidified to a peroxide value of 200 to 400 milli-equivalents per 1000 grams and again the cod liver oil fed separately loss of weight, decreased hemoglobin, and red and white blood cell count resulted. The livers of rats showing these symptoms had normal amounts of vitamin A, so the toxicity must have been due to other causes.

The anemia that has been reported by György *et al* and also observed in this laboratory might be due to some indirect cause. It is of interest that Haurowitz, Schwerin, and Yenson (83) have found that in the well known catalytic effect of hemin and hemoglobin on the oxidation of unsaturated fatty acids, both pigments are completely destroyed. In this reaction inorganic iron is released, but neither porphyrins nor bile pigment derivatives are found. If there is any physiological significance in these observations, the oxidation products of the unsaturated acids that act as pro-oxidants must be absorbed from the intestinal tract and enter the blood stream. While there is at present no definite answer to this point there are reports that have some bearing. Irwin *et al* (99) report that hydrogenated cottonseed oils having peroxide values of 107.6 and 80.1 and melting points of 45.3° and 45.6°C respectively are absorbed to the extent of 90-92 per cent within 12 hours. Unpublished results from this laboratory show that when highly oxidized fat is ingested by rats the keeping time of the animals body fat is decreased. This does not necessarily mean that pro-oxidants are deposited in the adipose tissues for the peroxide value of the freshly rendered body fat is zero. Furthermore as was mentioned above the vitamin A stores in the liver are maintained at a normal level. The decreased keeping time of adipose fat after the ingestion of rancid fat could be due to the complete destruction of all dietary antioxidants. Under normal conditions these antioxidants might be absorbed and help stabilize the body fat. It is very likely that some products of oxidation are absorbed from the intestinal tract. For example, heptyl aldehyde (35) which is known to occur in small amounts in rancid fat, is readily absorbed and enters the body tissues. If harmful products of rancidification are absorbed they must do so to only a small extent for parenterally administered these substances exhibit a toxicity far beyond that observed following oral ingestion (48).

From the foregoing discussion it can be seen that the presence of highly oxidized fats accelerates the destruction of a large variety of food factors. While most of the detrimental effects of ingestion are probably due to induced nutritional deficiencies the possibility remains that some activity is directly manifested in the body tissues. The inadvertent addition of oxidized fat to a diet mixture, the development of fat oxidation in the diet due to lack of proper stabilization and the possibility of oxidative changes in the intestinal tract must be given serious consideration in practical nutrition as well as in the theoretical interpretations of experimental studies.

The value of dietary fat as measured by growth and reproductive performance
Many experiments have demonstrated that growth, lactation, reproductive

performance and other metabolic functions are altered by the consumption of fats. The results obtained are not always readily correlated with the composition of the fats and their expected digestibility, mobilization and retention, essential fatty acid content or effects on other nutrients. From the preceding discussions it is conceivable that fats of widely different fatty acid contents might have very different nutritive values. The cases to be cited below may be considered typical of the scores in the literature which record effects of quantity or quality of dietary fats.

Nearly all experiments have shown that the inclusion of fresh, palatable and digestible natural fats improves the diet in some way. Infants on fat free diets develop loose, mushy, fermentative stools (96). Calves do not grow as well on skim milk supplemented with fat soluble vitamins as on whole milk (77) or reconstituted milk into which butter oil, lard or beef tallow had been homogenized. On low fat the average daily gain was 1.07 pounds as compared with 1.43 pounds for the whole milk group. Cows (131) (72) and goats (12) produce less milk and butter fat on low fat diets. On a ration containing only 0.45 per cent ether extract decreases in milk yield of goats ranged from 25 to 55 per cent and the butter fat yield dropped 35 to 70 per cent. With cows the effects have not been so striking but a summary of experiments done by Maynard and co-workers over a period of 12 years has demonstrated that diets containing about 6 or 7 per cent of fat increase yields of both milk and butter fat as compared with diets containing less than 4 per cent fat. The depression of milk and butter fat yields, very marked when cod liver oil or menhaden oil is fed to cows (134) (22), is slight or lacking on the inclusion of shark liver oil (134) (161) (43) salmon oil (134), or unsaturated plant oils like corn oil (183) in the diet. In fact some of the above increases were obtained with the highly unsaturated soybean oil. Growing chicks (162) have been kept 14 weeks on a grain ration so low in fat that the iodine number of the body fat was greatly reduced without retarding the growth significantly although the average weight of both males and females on the low-fat ration was already slightly low at the end of this short (14 week) period. When laying hens were put on a diet containing less than 0.1 per cent fat there was a tendency toward a lower and less sustained egg production (163).

Many experiments with rats are not useful to this discussion because proper low fat diets were not used as controls or growth and reproductive performance was not recorded. However, there are a number of experiments which show definite improvement on the inclusion of some fat in the diet (in excess of the essential fatty acid requirement). Diets containing only the fat in crude casein and yeast and supplemented by 2 or 3 drops of cod liver oil do not produce maximum growth, ovulation or lactation (61) (62) (63) (64). Twenty or twenty-five per cent of lard, butter, or cottonseed oil is better than five or ten per cent of lard. It is not certain that the low fat diets were always adequate in the essential fatty acids. With higher levels of fat it has been found that diets containing 30 to 55 per cent of different fats produce greater weight gains in young rats than does a 5 per cent diet (91). In this laboratory at the present time there are groups of rats on diets containing 20 per cent of several fats. All are superior in growth and lactation to controls receiving 10 drops of corn oil (Maxola) daily. The

average weight of the high fat animals is 13 per cent above that of the low fat group. It is not known in any of these cases whether the increased weight is due entirely to obesity. However, with mixed diets of natural foods containing 4.50 and 9.29 per cent of fat, it has been recently shown that rat mothers with the higher fat intake show improved lactation and that the young at 17 days of age contain more dry matter, more fat and more protein (132). There are, however, experiments in which rats receiving up to 55 per cent of their diet as fat did not grow more in the first six weeks than the controls on sucrose (164). There is also the experience of those working with fat deficiency that fat-free diets supplemented daily with only 25-100 mgm of linoleic acid produce fair growth and lactation (124) (156). In the first case (124) the performance is definitely below optimum and in the second (156), while it is said to compare favorably with that of the stock colony, no exact comparison of weaning weights is given. There is a preponderance of evidence that several species respond favorably to added dietary fat. Since all of these species have great powers of fat synthesis from carbohydrate (except for certain unsaturated acids) and are capable of utilizing either of these food materials for work with almost equal efficiency (107) it is not surprising that the differences are small. Nevertheless for optimal nutrition fat should furnish a considerable proportion of the calories.

Large differences have been reported in the comparative nutritive value of different lipids, both natural and synthetic. The outstanding feature of these experiments is the irregularity of results from different laboratories and even within one laboratory. Most of the work has been done with rats on a basal diet to which have been added equal amounts of the fats under test. Usually ad libitum feeding has been allowed and the overall growth effects recorded. In some cases, however, the gain per calorie intake has been calculated or the food consumption limited and the gain per unit of fat recorded. Since there is little difference in the composition of different batches of commercial fats, it seems likely that the method of feeding or unrecognized effects of rancidity on the rest of the diet may account for the lack of uniformity. Lacking space for a detailed discussion here of each experiment with comments on possible factors affecting the results, only a few of the older experiments will be given along with the most recent ones.

From the work of Ozaki (149), Eckstein (51) (52), Powell (154) (153), Davis (42), Barbour (8), Evans and Lepkovsky (62) (63) (64) (113), Cox (37), and Salmon and Goodman (164) with synthetic esters and salts of the fatty acids it is evident that the comparative growth promoting value of these materials depends upon the form in which they are fed, the percentage in the diet, and the adequacy of the rest of the diet. Even as much as 60 per cent of the diet may be composed of the methyl, ethyl, glycerol or propylene glycol ester of mixed fatty acids of lard without ill effects (113), only the ethylene glycol ester being toxic. Soaps may also be fed successfully at lower levels. In general the glyceryl esters seem best. This is especially true when single fatty acids make up as much as 75 or 80 per cent of the calories. For example, ethyl laurate is very toxic at this level (37) while laurin is tolerated and promotes growth (164). Butyrim and

ethyl butyrate are highly toxic as contrasted with the esters of acetic or caproic acids which allow fairly good growth. There is a sharp distinction between the 4-carbon acid and its neighboring homologues. Its ill effect on growth is due not only to a depression of appetite resulting in starvation but to an injurious effect upon tissues (42). Toxic effects of the other single fatty acids become evident only when they are fed at very high levels and the admixture of other acids eliminates the difficulty. In practically all cases the natural fats are superior to glycerides resynthesized from single or mixed fatty acids. In fact, only when the best of natural fats are added is the performance better than on a low fat-high carbohydrate diet. The addition of 20 per cent or more of synthetic esters of single or mixed fatty acids usually results in growth inferior to that on the basal diet (64) (164).

The order of relative efficiency of different fats may be reversed by a change of level in the diet as well as by a partial deficiency in the diet such as thiamin (64) (164), or vitamin A (24). Ad libitum feeding may reverse the order as compared with restricted feeding.

There are many experiments which demonstrate that, with not over 30 per cent of fat in the diet, the growth of rats is good on fats ranging in composition from coconut oil to linseed oil (25) (91). When very great differences due to small amounts of fat are observed the diet should be examined carefully for some deficiency, possibly due to the action of the fat itself. The effects of different oils are not shown as strikingly with rats as with calves which fail to grow, decline, and die when liquid fats are homogenized into skim milk (77). But with the rat there is considerable evidence that some liquid fats like cottonseed or corn oil do not equal solid fats in promoting early growth (164) (25) (91), especially when they constitute a large part of the diet. Although the superiority of butter fat for calf nutrition seems established it is not so readily demonstrated with the rat. Using the method of homogenizing fats into mineralized skim milk more rapid early growth on butter fat has been found (18) (24) but the results are sometimes small and not always regular. These differences in early growth were not found by Freeman and Ivy (69) when commercial evaporated milk was compared with a filled milk containing coconut oil instead of butterfat. After three months, however, the animals receiving butterfat were larger than their controls. With simplified diets it has been found by Harris and Mosher (82) that the results can be reversed by using animals of different age, weanling rats growing more rapidly on butterfat and older rats more rapidly on coconut oil. Premature babies and twins, in whom fat utilization is defective, absorb olive oil and soy bean oil far more completely than butter, with a resulting improvement in growth and nutritive condition (185). Some early experiments with solid diets indicate a superior value of butter for lactation (61), but more recently Sure (182) has reported no differences in lactation performance on diets containing 15 per cent of several fats, including butter. Recently Boer and Jansen (16) have postulated a new growth promoting fatty acid in butter. However, Euler, Euler and Sjöberg (58) report better growth of rats on margarine. In our laboratory at the present time there are six groups of rats which show that at the 20 per cent level

butter is just equal to several other fats. Some older experiments, in which very high levels of fats were used (55 and 60 per cent of the diet), show distinctly superior growth on other fats as compared with butter (164) (62). If each of the other commercial fats is reviewed, conflicts in results will be found similar to those mentioned above for butter. The answer seems to lie in the variability of the products used by the workers as well as in the differences in methods of experimentation. The former effect is well illustrated by the recent paper of Hoagland and Snider (92) in which several lards are compared with several hardened vegetable and animal shortenings. The average growth rate of rats for all the lards was essentially the same as for all the shortenings. However, the lards differ significantly among themselves. Until all workers use exactly the same materials and conduct the experiments under identical conditions, conflicting results will continue to appear. From the explanation of these differences will come a more complete knowledge of the rôle of fat in the diet.

SUMMARY

There are ample reasons for recommending that the fat intake be not reduced much below the normal established by habit. To give the best results added fats must be fresh. Rancidity renders them unpalatable, destructive to other vital foods and possibly slightly toxic in themselves. Frequently the preservation of a mixed food is largely a matter of the prevention of fat deterioration.

REFERENCES

- (1) AHMAD, B. *Biochem J* 25 1195, 1931
- (2) ANDERSON, W E AND L B MENDEL. *J Biol Chem* 76 729, 1928
- (3) ANDERSON, W E AND H H WILLIAMS. *Physiol Rev* 17 335, 1937
- (4) ARTOM, C AND M SWANSON. *Federation Proc* 1 99, 1942
- (5) BAHRDT, H. *Jahrb Kinderheilk* 71 249, 1910
- (6) BANERJI, G G. *Biochem J* 34 1329, 1940
- (7) BARBOUR, A D. *J Biol Chem* 101 63, 1933
- (8) BARBOUR, A D. *Biochem J* 106 281, 1934
- (9) BARNES, R H, I I RUSOFF AND G O BURR. *Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med* 51 235, 1942
- (10) BAUMANN, C A, B M RIISING AND H STEENBOCK. *J Biol Chem* 107 705, 1934
- (11) BAUMANN, C A AND H STEENBOCK. *J Biol Chem* 101 561, 1933
- (12) BENDER, R C AND L A MAYNARD. *J Dairy Science* 15 1, 1932
- (13) BIRK, W. *Jahrb Kinderheilk* 66 69, 1907
- (14) BLOOR, W R. *Physiol Rev* 19 557, 1939
- (15) BOER, J. *Acta Brevia Neerland Physiol Pharmacol Microbiol* 9 67, 1939
- (16) BOER, J AND B C P JANSEN. *Voeding* 2 204, 1941
- (17) BOOTH, R H, K M HENRY AND S K KON. *Biochem J* 36 445, 1942
- (18) BOUTWELL, R K, R P GEYER, C A ELVEHJEM AND E B HART. *J Dairy Sci* 24 1027, 1941
- (19) BOYD, O F, C L CRUM AND J F LYMAN. *J Biol Chem* 95 29, 1932
- (20) BROWN, W R AND A E HANSEN. *Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med* 36 113, 1937
- (21) BROWN, W R, A E HANSEN, G O BURR AND I McQUARRIE. *J Nutrition* 16 511, 1938
- (22) BROWN, J B AND T S SUTTON. *J Dairy Sci* 14 125, 1931
- (23) BROWN, G B AND V DU VIGNEAUD. *J Biol Chem* 141 85, 1941
- (24) BURR, G O. *Federation Proc* 1 224, 1942

- (25) BURR G O Chemistry and medicine p 101 Univ of Minnesota Press, 1940
- (26) BURR G O AND R H BARNES Ann Rev Biochem (in press)
- (27) BURR G O, J B BROWN J P KASS AND W O LUNOREHO Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 44: 242 1940
- (28) BURR, G O AND M M BURR. J Biol Chem 82 345, 1929
- (29) BURR, G O AND M M BURR J Biol Chem 86 587 1930
- (30) BURR G O, M M BURR AND E S MILLER J Biol Chem 97 1 1932
- (31) BURROWS, M T AND W K FARR Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 24 719 1927
- (32) CAHILL W M J Nutrition 21 411 1941
- (33) CHAIKOFF I L Physiol Rev 22 291 1942
- (34) CHANNON H J G N JENKINS AND J A B SMITH Biochem J 32 784 1938
- (35) CLARK W G Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 40 562, 1939
- (36) COWOILL, G R The vitamins pp 159-178 American Medical Association Chicago 1939
- (37) COX W M J Biol Chem 103 777 1933
- (38) CHRONHEIM, W AND E MÜLLER Biochem Ztschr 9 76 1908
- (39) CRUICKSHANK E M Biochem J 28: 965 1934
- (40) CRUICKSHANK E M J HOUSTON AND T MOORE Biochem J 33 1630 1939
- (41) DAUBERT B F AND C G KING Chem Rev 29 269 1941
- (42) DAVIS, R E J Biol Chem 88 67 1930
- (43) DEUEL H J, JR. L F HALLMAN C JOHNSTON AND F MATTSO J Nutrition 23 567 1942
- (44) DRUMMOND J C M E BELL AND E T PALMER Brit Med J 1 1208 1935
- (45) DULIERE W R A MORTON AND J C DRUMMOND J Soc Chem Ind 48 316 1929
- (46) DUTCHER R A, J O ELY AND H E HONEYWELL. Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 24 953 1927
- (47) DUTCHER R A P L HARRIS E R HABTLER AND M B GUERBANT J Nutrition 8 269 1934
- (48) DYME H C P M NELSON B LOWE AND V E NELSON Iowa State Col J of Sci 16 189 1941
- (49) ECKLES C H AND L S PALMER Missouri Agric Expt Sta Research Bul 27, 1916
- (50) ECKSTEIN H C J Biol Chem 84 353 1929
- (51) ECKSTEIN, H C J Biol Chem 81 613 1929
- (52) ECKSTEIN H C J Biol Chem 102 591 1933
- (53) ELLIS N R AND O A HANKINS J Biol Chem 66 101 1925
- (54) ELLIS N R AND H S ISRELL J Biol Chem 69 239 1926
- (55) ELLIS N R C S ROTHWELL AND W O POOL. J Biol Chem 82: 385 1931
- (56) ENOEL R W J Nutrition 24 175 1942
- (57) EPPSTEIN S H AND S MOROULIS J Nutrition 23 473 1942.
- (58) EULER B V H V EULER AND I SÄDERO Arch for Chem Mineralogy and Geology 16B no 8 1942
- (59) EVANS H M AND G O BURR. J A. M. A 89 1587 1927
- (60) EVANS H M AND G O BURR J A. M. A 88 1462 1927
- (61) EVANS H M AND G O BURR Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 25 390, 1928
- (62) EVANS H M AND S LEPKOVSKY J Biol Chem 96 157 1932
- (63) EVANS H M AND S LEPKOVSKY J Biol Chem 96 165 1932
- (64) EVANS H M AND S LEPKOVSKY J Biol Chem 96 179 1932
- (65) EVANS H M S LEPKOVSKY AND E A MURPHY J Biol Chem 107 443, 1934
- (66) FINNERUD C W R. L. KESLER AND H F WIESE Arch Derm and Syph 44: 849, 1941
- (67) FOT J R AND L R CRECEDO J Nutrition 22: 439 1941
- (68) FRALER A C Physiol Rev 20: 561 1940
- (69) FREEMAN, S AND A C IVY J Dairy Sci 25 877 1942
- (70) FRENCH, C E J Nutrition 23 376 1942

- (71) FRITZ, J C, J L HALPIN, J H HOOPER AND E H KRAMKE J Ind Eng Chem 34 979, 1942
- (72) GIBSON, G AND C F HUFFMAN Michigan Agric Expt Sta Quart Bull 21 258, 1939
- (73) GOETTSCH, M AND A M PAPPENHEIMER J Exper Med 54 145, 1931
- (74) GOLUMBIC, C AND H A MATTILL J Am Chem Soc 63 1279, 1941
- (75) GREAVES, J D AND C L A SCHMIDT Am J Physiol 3 492, 1935
- (76) GRIDGEMAN, N T, H LEES AND H WILKINSON Biochem J 33 645, 1939
- (77) GULLICKSON, T W, F C FONTAINE AND J B FITCH J Dairy Sci 25 117, 1942
- (78) GYÖRGY, P, R TOMARELLI, R P OSTERGARD AND J B BROWN J Exper Med 76 413, 1942
- (79) HANSEN, A E J Dis Children 53 933, 1937
- (80) HANSEN, A E AND G O BURR Proc Soc Exper Biol Med 30 1201, 1933
- (81) HANSEN, A E AND H F WIESE Proc Soc Exper Biol Med, in press
- (82) HARRIS, R S AND L M MOSHER Food Research 5 177, 1940
- (83) HAUROWITZ, F, P SCHWERIN AND M M YENSON J Biol Chem 140 353, 1941
- (84) HENRIQUES, V AND C HANSEN Skand Arch Physiol 14 390, 1903
- (85) HICKMAN, K C D, P L HARRIS AND M R WOODSIDE Nature 150 91, 1942
- (86) HILDITCH, T P Compt Rend 5th Congress International, Technique et Chimique des Industries Agricoles, 1937
- (87) HILDITCH, T P AND H E LONGENECKER Biochem J 32 784, 1938
- (88) HILDITCH, T P AND S PAUL Biochem J 32 1775, 1938
- (89) HILDITCH, T P AND W H PEDELTY Biochem J 34 40, 1940
- (90) HILDITCH, T P AND Y A H ZAKY Biochem J 35 940, 1941
- (91) HOAGLAND, R AND G G SNIDER U S D A Tech Bull no 725, 1940
- (92) HOAGLAND, R AND G G SNIDER U S Dept Agr Tech Bull no 821, March 1942
- (93) HOLLAND, E B, M E GARVEY, H B PIERCE, A C MESSER, J G ARCHIBALD AND C O DUNBAR J Agric Res 24 365, 1923
- (94) HOLT, L E, JR, A M COURTNEY AND H L FALES Am J Dis Child 19 97, 1920
- (95) HOLT, L E, JR AND H L FALES Am J Dis Child 23 471, 1922
- (96) HOLT, L E, JR, H C TIDWELL, C M KIRK, D M CROSS AND S NEALE J Pediatrics 6 427, 1935
- (97) HOUSTON, J, A G COTTON, S K KON AND T MOORE Biochem J 33 1626, 1939
- (98) HUGHES, R H AND E J WIMMER J Biol Chem 108 141, 1935
- (99) IRWIN, M H, J WEBER, H STEENBOCK AND J M GODFREY Am J Physiol 124 800, 1938
- (100) JONES, J H J Nutrition 20 367, 1940
- (101) JONES, J H J Biol Chem 142 557, 1942
- (102) KEMMERER, H R AND H STEENBOCK J Biol Chem 103 353, 1933
- (103) KNUDSON, A AND R J FLOODY J Nutrition 20 317, 1940
- (104) KON, S K AND R G BOOTH Biochem J 28 111, 1934
- (105) KON, S K AND R G BOOTH Biochem J 28 121, 1934
- (106) KRAYBILL, H R AND C L SHREWSBURY J Nutrition 11 103, 1936
- (107) KROGH, A AND J LINDHARD Biochem J 14 290, 1920
- (108) LANGWORTHY, C F J Ind Eng Chem 15 276, 1923
- (109) LATHBURY, K C AND G N GREENWOOD Biochem J 28 1665, 1934
- (110) LAVIK, P S AND C A BAUMANN Cancer Research 1 181, 1941
- (111) LEASE, E J, J G LEASE, J WEBER AND H STEENBOCK J Nutrition 16 571, 1938
- (112) LEBEDEFF, A Centr Med Wissenssch 20 129, 1882
- (113) LEPKOVSKY, S, R A OTER AND H M EVANS J Biol Chem 108 431, 1935
- (114) LONGENECKER, H E J Biol Chem 130 167, 1939
- (115) LONGENECKER, H E J Biol Chem 129 13, 1939
- (116) LONGENECKER, H E J Biol Chem 128 645, 1939
- (117) LONGENECKER, H E Chem Rev 29 201, 1941

- (118) LONDENECKER H E AND T P HILDITCH Biochem J 32 784, 1938
- (119) LOVERN J A Blochem J 32 2142 1938
- (120) MACKAY, E M AND R H BARNES Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 46 853, 1941
- (121) MACKAY, E M, A N WICK AND C P BARNUM J Biol Chem 135 183, 1940
- (122) MACKENZIE, C G AND E V MCCOLLUM J Nutrition 19: 345 1940
- (123) MACKENZIE C G J B MACKENZIE AND E V MCCOLLUM J Nutrition 21 225 1941
- (124) MACKENZIE C G J B MACKENZIE AND E V MCCOLLUM Blochem J 33 935 1939
- (125) MACOMBER D New England J Med 209:1235, 1933
- (126) MADSEN, L L. J Nutrition 11 471 1938
- (127) MANNERING, G J, M A LIPTON AND C A ELVEHJEM Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 46 100 1941
- (128) MARTIN G J J Nutrition 17: 127 1939
- (129) MATTILL, H A J A M A. 89 1505 1927
- (130) MATTILL, H A AND C GOLUMBID J Nutrition 23: 625 1942
- (131) MAYNARD L A J K. LOOSLI AND C M McCAY Cornell Univ Agric Expt Sta Bull 753, 1941
- (132) MAYNARD L A AND E RASMUSSEN J Nutrition 23 385 1942.
- (133) McAMIS A J W E ANDERSON AND L B MENDEL. Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 26 515, 1929
- (134) McCAY C M P HENRY AND L A MAYNARD J Nutrition 15 367, 1938
- (135) McCAY C M AND H. PAUL J Nutrition 15: 377 1938
- (136) MCCOLLUM E V J G HALPIN AND A H DRESCHER. J Biol Chem 13: 219 1912
- (137) McCONNELL, K P AND R G SINCLAIR J Biol Chem 118 131, 1937
- (138) McDougall, E J Biochem J 32 194, 1938
- (139) Medical Research Council Special Report no 202
- (140) MELLANBY M J Physiol 64 331 1927
- (141) MELNICK D AND H FIELD JR J Nutrition 17 223 1939
- (142) MILLER E S R. H BARNES J P KASS AND G O BURR. Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 41: 485, 1939
- (143) MILLER E S AND G O BURR Proc Soc Exper Biol Med 38 726 1937
- (144) MOORE T Blochem J 24 606, 1930
- (145) MUELDER K D AND E KELLY J Nutrition 23 335 1942
- (146) MUNK I Virchow's Arch 95 407 1884
- (147) NIELSEN E AND C A ELVEHJEM J Biol Chem 144 405 1942
- (148) OLCOVITCH H S AND H A MATTILL. J Biol Chem 91 105 1931
- (149) OZAKI J Biochem Ztschr 189 233 1927
- (150) PAPPENHEIMER A N Physiol Rev 23 37 1943
- (151) PAUL, H AND C M McCAY Arch. Biochem 1 247 1942
- (151a) PAYCEK P L AND G M SHULL. J Biol Chem 146 351 1942
- (152) POTTER R L A E AXELROD AND C A ELVEHJEM J Nutrition 24 449 1942
- (153) PDWELL M J Biol Chem 95 43 1932
- (154) PDWELL, M J Biol Chem 89 547 1930
- (155) QUACKENBUSH F W R P COX AND H STEENBOCK J Biol Chem 145 169 1942
- (156) QUACKENBUSH F W F A. KUMMEROW AND H STEENBOCK J Nutrition 24 213, 1942.
- (157) QUACKENBUSH F W B R. PLATZ AND H STEENBOCK J Nutrition 17 115 1939
- (158) QUACKENBUSH F W AND H STEENBOCK J Nutrition 24 393 1942
- (159) QUACKENBUSH F W H STEENBOCK F A KUMMEROW AND B R PLATZ J Nutrition 24 225 1942
- (160) ROTHBERG O Jahrb Kinderheilk 65 60 1907
- (161) RUBOFF L L. H E SKIPPER AND P T D ARNOLD J Dairy Sci 25 807 1942
- (162) RUSSELL, W C, M W TAYLOR AND L J POLSKIN J Nutrition 19 555 1940

- (163) RUSSELL, W C , M W TAYLOR AND H A WALKER Poultry Sci 20 372, 1941
- (164) SALMON, W D AND J G GOODMAN J Nutrition 13 477, 1937
- (165) SCHANTZ, E J , C A ELVEHJEM AND E B HART J Biol Chem 122 381, 1938
- (166) SCHONHEIMER, R AND D RITTENBERG Physiol Rev 20 218, 1940
- (167) SINCLAIR, R G J Biol Chem 92 245, 1931
- (168) SINCLAIR, R G J Biol Chem 96 103, 1932
- (169) SINCLAIR, R G J Biol Chem 95 393, 1932
- (170) SINCLAIR, R G J Biol Chem 118 131, 1937
- (171) SINCLAIR, R G J Biol Chem 86 579, 1930
- (172) SHERMAN, W C J Nutrition 22 153, 1941
- (173) SHREWSBURY, C L AND H R KRAYBILL J Biol Chem 101 701, 1933
- (174) SMEDLEY-MACLEAN, I AND E M HUME Biochem J 35 996, 1941
- (175) SMEDLEY-MACLEAN, I AND E M HUME Biochem J 35 990, 1941
- (176) SMEDLEY-MACLEAN, I AND L C A NUNN Biochem J 35 983, 1941
- (177) STARLING, E H Brit Med J 2 105, 1918
- (178) STEENBOCK, H , M H IRWIN AND J WEBER J Nutrition 12 103, 1936
- (179) STERN, F E , A ARNOLD AND C A ELVEHJEM J Nutrition 17 485, 1939
- (180) STOHMANN, F J f Landu II, 4 116, 1869
- (181) SUMNER, R J J Biol Chem 146 215, 1942
- (182) SURE, B J Nutrition 22 491, 1941
- (183) SUTTON, T S , J B BROWN AND E W JOHNSTON J Dairy Sci 15 209, 1932
- (184) THIEMICH, M Jahrb f Kinderheilk 51 174, 1905
- (185) TIDWELL, H C , L E HOLT, JR , H L FARROW AND S NEALE J Pediatrics 6 481, 1935
- (186) TOFTE, F Biochem Ztschr 272 308, 1934
- (187) TURPEINEN, O J Nutrition 15 351, 1938
- (188) UNNA, K , G V RICHARDS AND W L SAMPSON J Nutrition 22 553, 1941
- (189) VON GRÖER, F Biochem Ztschr 97 311, 1919
- (190) WADDELL, J AND H STEENBOCK J Biol Chem 80 437, 1928
- (191) WHIPPLE, D V Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 30 319, 1932
- (192) WHIPPLE, D V Oil and Soap 10 228, 1933
- (193) WHITE, E A , J R FOY AND L R CERECEDO Am Chem Soc Abstracts, Division of Biological Chemistry, April 1942, Memphis
- (194) WILLIAMS, R R AND T D SPIES Vitamin B₁ Pp 266-277, Macmillan, New York, 1938
- (195) WILLIAMSON, R Biochem J 35 1003, 1941
- (196) ZUCKER, T F AND M BARNETT Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 20 375, 1923

QUANTITATIVE AND QUALITATIVE VARIATIONS IN NORMAL LEUKOCYTES

CYRUS C STURGIS AND FRANK H BETHELL

Thomas Henry Simpson Memorial Institute for Medical Research, University of Michigan

Two excellent reviews have been written dealing primarily with changes of the leukocytes in the circulating blood under different physiological conditions, in man by Garrey and Bryan (1936), and in rabbits by Cheng (1930). The reader is referred to these publications for a comprehensive consideration of the literature and summary of the status of our knowledge concerning the subject to the date of each publication. The present article was requested because some important contributions have been made since the appearance of the two reviews mentioned above. The material in recent articles has been based on studies which, in some instances were more accurate technically, due to the use of standardized apparatus and technic, the results have been treated by modern statistical methods, more important observations have been made on changes in the differential formula and on the maturity of the neutrophils as indicated by the shape of the nucleus. Furthermore there has been a growing appreciation that under normal conditions, at short intervals, there is a spontaneous and irregular fluctuation of the total number of leukocytes and of the percentages of the different varieties of white corpuscles, which may easily be misinterpreted unless evaluated critically. Hence any changes in the leukocytes, especially when they are within the range of normal, or moderate in extent, should not be interpreted as due necessarily to any single or constant physiological or pathological influence, unless the trend is a uniform one in multiple experiments.

Recognition of the cause and extent of the physiological variations in the leukocytes is important when fluctuations in their number and variety are utilized as evidence of significant alterations either in experimental or human physiology. Undoubtedly conclusions have been reached without proper allowance for observational error, spontaneous variations, or the uncertainty of isolated determinations. In clinical medicine, decisions have been based on one or a few widely spaced leukocyte counts, with a differential formula determined by a survey of only one hundred cells and with a total disregard for their physiological variations. Since the introduction of the sulfonamide drugs, for example, there has been a tendency to regard a decrease in the white blood cells as evidence of the toxicity of the drug and hence as an indication for its discontinuance, even though the diminished total white count remains within normal limits. As a consequence, an erroneous interpretation may lead to the denial to the patient of an exceedingly valuable and sometimes life saving therapeutic agent.

Our present knowledge indicates that variations in the white blood cell count of the circulating blood may occur as the result of the action of any one, or a combination, of the four following mechanisms:

I Alterations in the rate of production of leukocytes. A decrease in the leuko-

exclusion of such factors as thickness, evenness, and length of film, and permitted the inference that the observed variations were due to irregularities of cell distribution, especially along the edges of the films. The differences observed between drops were also greater than might have been anticipated as due to random subsampling. Therefore, more accurate results may be secured by counting on films prepared from two drops of blood, than by utilizing only one drop, even though the total number of leukocytes enumerated is the same in both cases.

Although Mainland and his associates point out that the distribution of blood corpuscles, as they are counted on a film, is discontinuous and therefore not truly represented by a normal curve, they submit data justifying the assumption that for purposes of statistical calculation the distribution may be considered as symmetrical when the conditions of examination are strictly defined. On this assumption, for the 24 healthy male students, aged 19 to 28 years, whose bloods were examined in the early spring, the following figures are submitted based on a count of 2100 leukocytes for each student (table 1)

TABLE 1

	MEAN PERCENTAGE	STANDARD ERROR OF MEAN	STANDARD DEVI- ATION OF SERIES	COEFFICIENT OF VARIATION
Neutrophils	56.88	± 1.201	± 5.886	10.4
Eosinophils	2.01	± 0.209	± 1.023	50.9
Basophils	0.44	± 0.042	± 0.204	46.5
Lymphocytes	37.03	± 1.221	± 5.982	16.2
Monocytes	3.64	± 0.168	± 0.825	22.7

The unavoidable error in differential counting, or that due to the accidents of random sampling where the distribution is assumed to be normal, has been calculated by Barnett (1933) according to Bernoulli's theorem $SD = \sqrt{npq}$, where SD is the standard deviation, n is the total number of cells counted, p is that fraction of the total made up of the particular cell type in question, and q is that fraction of the total composed of all the remaining cells. Barnett checked the application of this theorem to the differential count experimentally by a series of counts of 100 cells each, made on cover slip preparations from the same sample of venous blood, and found reasonably close agreement between the observed and predicted cell values. He has constructed a chart showing maximum errors due only to chance in differential counts based on the enumeration of 100, 200 and 400 cells. The maximum error he defined as three times the standard deviation. Thus if 100 cells are counted and 50 per cent are neutrophils the standard deviation is 5 per cent and the maximum error is 15 per cent. When the total number of cells is 400 instead of 100 the respective values are halved. Barnett concludes that at least 400 cells should be counted in order to obtain reliable results in the differential count.

The validity of the above theorem, as applied to differential counts, was also tested by Plum (1936), who counted on a number of slide films from 50 to 100 sets of cells, each set being composed of from 50 to 100 members. He examined

QUANTITATIVE AND QUALITATIVE VARIATIONS IN NORMAL LEUKOCYTES

CYRUS C STURGIS AND FRANK H BETHELL

Thomas Henry Simpson Memorial Institute for Medical Research University of Michigan

Two excellent reviews have been written dealing primarily with changes of the leukocytes in the circulating blood under different physiological conditions, in man by Garrey and Bryan (1936), and in rabbits by Cheng (1930). The reader is referred to these publications for a comprehensive consideration of the literature and summary of the status of our knowledge concerning the subject to the date of each publication. The present article was requested because some important contributions have been made since the appearance of the two reviews mentioned above. The material in recent articles has been based on studies which, in some instances were more accurate technically, due to the use of standardized apparatus and technique, the results have been treated by modern statistical methods, more important observations have been made on changes in the differential formula and on the maturity of the neutrophils as indicated by the shape of the nucleus. Furthermore, there has been a growing appreciation that under normal conditions, at short intervals, there is a spontaneous and irregular fluctuation of the total number of leukocytes and of the percentages of the different varieties of white corpuscles, which may easily be misinterpreted unless evaluated critically. Hence any changes in the leukocytes, especially when they are within the range of normal, or moderate in extent, should not be interpreted as due necessarily to any single or constant physiological or pathological influence, unless the trend is a uniform one in multiple experiments.

Recognition of the cause and extent of the physiological variations in the leukocytes is important when fluctuations in their number and variety are utilized as evidence of significant alterations either in experimental or human physiology. Undoubtedly conclusions have been reached without proper allowance for observational error, spontaneous variations, or the uncertainty of isolated determinations. In clinical medicine, decisions have been based on one or a few widely spaced leukocyte counts, with a differential formula determined by a survey of only one hundred cells and with a total disregard for their physiological variations. Since the introduction of the sulfonamide drugs, for example, there has been a tendency to regard a decrease in the white blood cells as evidence of the toxicity of the drug and hence as an indication for its discontinuance, even though the diminished total white count remains within normal limits. As a consequence, an erroneous interpretation may lead to the denial to the patient of an exceedingly valuable and sometimes life-saving therapeutic agent.

Our present knowledge indicates that variations in the white blood cell count of the circulating blood may occur as the result of the action of any one or a combination, of the four following mechanisms:

I Alterations in the rate of production of leukocytes. A decrease in the leuko-

cyte count may result from simple inhibition or maturation-arrest in the bone marrow, whereas an increase is dependent upon simple hyperplasia or accelerated maturation

II Variations which are dependent upon changes in their rate of destruction or elimination from the body

III Changes in the number per cubic millimeter resulting from differences in concentration of the circulating blood plasma

IV Redistribution of the white blood cells in the vascular channels Evidence in recent years tends to reaffirm the earlier belief that this mechanism is the basis for many, if not all, of the physiological variations in the leukocyte count

The above classification is based, with modifications, on the information presented by Lawrence (1941), to which reference should be made for fuller details,

OBSERVATIONAL VARIATIONS Variations in total leukocyte counts attributable to observational error may be separated *a priori* into two classes (1), the "error" involved in drawing conclusions relative to an entire population on the basis of data derived from observations on small random samples, 2, "blunders" introduced by defective technical methods and inaccurate apparatus Although, in practice, one cannot disregard the influence of "blunders" in the evaluation of individual counts, it is nevertheless possible so to standardize the conditions of observation that variations introduced by the second class become negligible thereby permitting a statistical approach to the "error" of random sampling Bryan, Chastain and Garrey (1935) point out that this error is influenced by three factors, *a*, mixing of the cells and diluting fluid, *b*, filling the counting chamber by capillarity, and *c*, settling of cells by chance on the ruled field of the counting chamber They are able to demonstrate that the last named, chance settling of the cells, is responsible for practically all of the major variations of subsampling It therefore becomes possible, within reasonably accurate limits, to apply the laws of a normal frequency distribution system in the statistical evaluation of total leukocyte counts, when the conditions of observation are sufficiently well standardized These authors also point out that more accurate expression of the "error" of physiologically normal leukocyte counts is gained by the use of a scale of absolute numbers rather than percentages since the latter are partly dependent on the means of the leukocyte counts Based on an analysis of 2508 white blood cell counts they report an average error of $\pm 241 \pm 35$ cells per cubic millimeter when 10 unit hemacytometer areas of one square millimeter each and a blood dilution of 1 to 20 are employed The magnitude of this error did not alter appreciably at the different levels of the observed leukocyte counts as was shown by the low value of its probable error

It has also been demonstrated by Plum (1936) that when the conditions of leukocyte enumeration are adequately controlled the accidental distribution of cells in the counting chamber becomes the only important variable His data, obtained by empirical observation, led him to conclude that a systematic relationship exists between the magnitude of the standard deviation and the number of

cells enumerated in each determination, and that this relationship may be expressed in terms of a Poisson's series according to which the standard deviation is equal to the square root of the counted number of cells

For a laboratory procedure in such common use as the determination of percentages of the several types of leukocytes, the differential count, the many technical methods employed and the lack of exact information concerning their respective accuracy constitute a striking deficiency in hematologic practice. Moreover, few observers possess well founded knowledge of the statistical error involved in the differential count when the distribution of the cells in the stained film is assumed to be entirely "accidental."

Differential counts of five entire blood films made on slides with a cover slip spreader, and an almost complete count on a sixth, were compared by Mainland, Du Brier and Stewart (1935) with four clinical methods of differential counting. It was found that the results obtained either by counting three sets of 100 leukocytes, using cross rows, one 3 mm from the beginning, the second at about the middle and the third about 3 mm from the end of the film, or by counting all the cells in the middle longitudinal row one field in width from beginning to end of the film, agreed sufficiently closely with the total counts to be attributed to random sampling. On the other hand more complicated procedures, such as Schilling's "meander four field" method and Silberstein's method, showed discrepancies greater than are usually attributable to chance. For the cross count method, with allowance for the size of the samples employed the authors estimate a range for the neutrophil percentage, attributable to random sampling, from 7.4 per cent above the true value to 7.4 per cent below it. The minimum ranges of error for the other cell types were lymphocytes, 0.1 per cent, monocytes, 2.6 per cent, eosinophils 2.4 per cent, basophils, 1.0 per cent. These values, derived from small samples for which due allowance was made, should include about 99 per cent of all observations. In a later publication, Mainland, Coady and Joseph (1935) estimate the observational variation for the cross count method of differential enumeration using slide preparations. They point out two sources of variation affecting the differential count, apart from the error involved in truly random sampling. These variations are well recognized, but frequently overlooked by the laboratory worker. They consist of 1, abnormalities of distribution of the several types of leukocytes on the film, as prepared by the slide method, so that in differential counting one is "taking a sample merely of the area of film examined not a representative sample of the whole drop", 2, differences between successive drops of blood and between blood obtained from more than one puncture. Their data were obtained from twenty-four healthy male students. Across each of seven blood films, prepared by the slide and cover glass method, five from successive drops from a right ear puncture and two from successive drops from a left ear puncture, made on the same occasion from each student, three sets of 100 leukocytes each were counted. The variations of these sets were greater than could be attributed to purely random sampling, indicating, therefore, that in the comparison of differential counts the methods employed must be strictly adhered to. Their technique permitted

exclusion of such factors as thickness, evenness, and length of film, and permitted the inference that the observed variations were due to irregularities of cell distribution, especially along the edges of the films. The differences observed between drops were also greater than might have been anticipated as due to random subsampling. Therefore, more accurate results may be secured by counting on films prepared from two drops of blood, than by utilizing only one drop, even though the total number of leukocytes enumerated is the same in both cases.

Although Mainland and his associates point out that the distribution of blood corpuscles, as they are counted on a film, is discontinuous and therefore not truly represented by a normal curve, they submit data justifying the assumption that for purposes of statistical calculation the distribution may be considered as symmetrical when the conditions of examination are strictly defined. On this assumption, for the 24 healthy male students, aged 19 to 28 years, whose bloods were examined in the early spring, the following figures are submitted based on a count of 2100 leukocytes for each student (table 1).

TABLE 1

	MEAN PERCENTAGE	STANDARD ERROR OF MEAN	STANDARD DEVI- ATION OF SERIES	COEFFICIENT OF VARIATION
Neutrophils	56.88	± 1.201	± 5.886	10.4
Eosinophils	2.01	± 0.209	± 1.023	50.9
Basophils	0.44	± 0.042	± 0.204	46.5
Lymphocytes	37.03	± 1.221	± 5.982	16.2
Monocytes	3.64	± 0.168	± 0.825	22.7

The unavoidable error in differential counting, or that due to the accidents of random sampling where the distribution is assumed to be normal, has been calculated by Barnett (1933) according to Bernoulli's theorem $SD = \sqrt{npq}$, where SD is the standard deviation, n is the total number of cells counted, p is that fraction of the total made up of the particular cell type in question, and q is that fraction of the total composed of all the remaining cells. Barnett checked the application of this theorem to the differential count experimentally by a series of counts of 100 cells each, made on cover slip preparations from the same sample of venous blood, and found reasonably close agreement between the observed and predicted cell values. He has constructed a chart showing maximum errors due only to chance in differential counts based on the enumeration of 100, 200 and 400 cells. The maximum error he defined as three times the standard deviation. Thus if 100 cells are counted and 50 per cent are neutrophils the standard deviation is 5 per cent and the maximum error is 15 per cent. When the total number of cells is 400 instead of 100 the respective values are halved. Barnett concludes that at least 400 cells should be counted in order to obtain reliable results in the differential count.

The validity of the above theorem, as applied to differential counts, was also tested by Plum (1936), who counted on a number of slide films from 50 to 100 sets of cells, each set being composed of from 50 to 100 members. He examined

consecutive adjacent longitudinal rows, starting at the margin and 'proximal' end of the film. The results showed that, in these experiments, the individual counts were distributed about the mean in the manner of the normal curve.

The normal frequency or Gaussian curve is not strictly representative of the distribution of most cell values in the differential count even though the "sampling error" is assumed to be the only source of variation, according to Goldner and Mann (1938). However, by a mathematical analysis, they demonstrated that the error involved in the application of the normal curve to all counts is negligible. Based on this approximation they have constructed "confidence curves" for differential counts of 200 leukocytes employing a "probability" of 95 per cent ("Fiducial Coefficient" of 0.95). The validity of the curves was tested by serial observations of a single sample of blood. For leukocyte percentages ranging between 30 and 70 the calculated "maximum" variation is approximately ± 6 per cent.

The several sources of possible error in the performance of the differential leukocyte count have been considered by MacGregor, Richards and Loh (1940) with particular reference to variations dependent upon technique of making the film and method of selection of areas for counting. On all slide preparations lack of uniformity of distribution of cell types was found to be the rule. Variations, in some cases exceeding 20 per cent, were attributable to this factor. A general relationship was observed between the wave distribution pattern of one type of cell and that of any other type. In order to determine this relationship consecutive areas throughout slide films were counted and the values obtained subjected to Fourier analysis. From the data secured in this manner graphs were constructed. These graphs enable correlations to be made between the count determined by examination of all cells in the film and the results obtained by 1, 'edge' count along the two longitudinal margins of the film for a width of one microscopic field, 2, 'battlement' count three horizontal edge fields followed by two fields toward the center, then two horizontal and then two in a vertical direction back to the edge, 3, 'cross-sectional' count, back and forth across the body of the film from one edge to the other until at least 300 cells have been counted. It therefore becomes possible, according to the authors, to compare results obtained by different methods of counting by the application of correction factors varying with the type of cell and its observed percentage value. The accuracy of such 'corrections' is dependent upon a standardized technique of film preparation and is lessened in cases of total leukocyte counts differing widely from the normal. MacGregor and his associates found that closest approximation to the values obtained by a count of the entire film was provided by the battlement method utilizing both edges of the film. Greatest corrections were necessary in the case of counts made by the cross-sectional method, with the straight edge method occupying an intermediate position. Counts performed on cover slip films correspond more closely to the straight edge count than to either of the other two methods of counting on slide preparations.

The percentage of lymphocytes in the case of a healthy individual was found by Boveri (1930) to average about 10 per cent higher when determined on slide

films by the cross count technique described above, than when enumerated in cover slip preparations or in a Buerker counting chamber. The counting chamber is assumed by the author to give most nearly perfect random distribution. On the basis of removal of four-tenths of the granulocytes and monocytes from the countable portions of a slide film the author has constructed a curve showing the corrections that should be made in order to obtain the true lymphocyte percentages from values obtained by counting slide preparations.

The four-field meander method, counting from one side of the film to the other and back, and differential enumeration of cells in a counting chamber were compared by Klotz (1939) for constancy of results when single samples of blood were used. The slide films were made in a uniform manner, standardizing the size of the drop, the angle of the spreading slide and the pressure exerted when making the spread. Random cross counting gave results considered to be more accurate than either the four-field or hemacytometer chamber methods.

From the rather widely differing conclusions of the several authors whose work has been described above, it is apparent that no agreement has been reached regarding either the preferred method of differential counting on slide preparations, or the degree to which distribution of cells approaches the wholly accidental on either slide or cover slip films. However, it has been the experience of most observers who have compared the slide and cover slip methods, that slide films show a distinct predominance of neutrophils and monocytes at the edges and tail of the preparation, and that even with a well standardized technique, this inequality of distribution varies with the concentration of the red cells and the number of leukocytes in the blood, whereas, in cover slip films, utilizing only the weight of the upper slip to effect the spread, the distribution of white cells is more nearly uniform. It is obvious that the method employed in selection of areas for differential counting becomes less important as the distribution of cells approaches the "accidental."

✓ **DAILY AND HOURLY VARIATIONS** It has long been known that fluctuations in the leukocyte count may occur throughout the day, but originally these were attributed to exercise or digestive activity. Later it was recognized that they arise independently of these possible excitants. In 1925 Sabin, Cunningham, Doan and Kindwall reported that a characteristic hourly rhythm of the total white blood cell count occurred in man and rabbits, and that this accounted for a variation in a proportion of 1/2. Furthermore, they found that the white blood cell count was increased in the afternoon, independent of food intake, and that the entire increase was due to changes in the number of neutrophils. They also concluded that the lymphocytes have a shorter rhythm than the neutrophils, and that their total number varies in the proportion of 1/3. The suggestion that oscillations characteristically occur at hourly intervals has not been confirmed. Casey, (1940), after a most extensive study, concluded that his studies on rabbits did not reveal "a statistically significant variation in the hourly mean." Kennon, Shipp and Hetherington (1937) in an investigation of the leukocyte count in young men likewise failed to discover "proof of rhythmicity occurring at regular intervals of short duration, either for the total number of

leukocytes or the total numbers of any one type of cell " It is true, however, that variations of considerable magnitude in the white blood cell count, due to the changes in the numbers of granulocytes, do occur in the blood of rabbits and man Furthermore, these alterations are not related to food intake or exercise According to Garrey and Bryan (1936) if one substitutes the phrase *irregular and sometimes pronounced oscillations* for *rhythms*, the apparent disagreements in the literature are of minor importance These observers conclude that when leukocyte counts are done in the morning, under basal conditions, a great majority of the white blood cell counts will fall within the range of 5,000 to 7,000 cells per cubic millimeter According to them, it is firmly established that the minimum count is observed in the morning, under conditions of rest, and that it varies least under these conditions Furthermore, they state that after an hour of recumbent rest in the afternoon, 90 per cent of all leukocyte counts fall within the limits of the morning basal counts

In the study of Kennon Shipp and Hetherington (1937) the white blood cell count in six young men was determined at intervals of 15 minutes throughout the day for 5 to 7 hours, on two successive days They observed that the total number of leukocytes varied from count to count, due to changes in the granulocytes, but no evidence of a rhythm could be determined, the undulations in the curve had a tendency to adhere to the same pattern in a given subject on successive days, after a rest of one-half to one hour there was a fall in the leukocyte count to the basal range, there was no significant alteration in the total white blood cell count when an erect posture was assumed, the apparent spontaneous variations in the white blood cell count throughout the day were very slight usually the difference being between 100 and 400 cells between the highest and lowest counts, but in one instance the maximum variation was 900, and in another, 1800 cells, while there was no steady, consistent rise in the white blood cell count in the afternoon, in all instances there was a definite post meridian peak between twelve noon and 3 00 p m and although the subjects had breakfast or a light lunch during the days of the study, there was no evidence of a digestive leukocytosis

Casey (1940) undertook a comprehensive statistical evaluation of a large number of white blood cell counts in normal rabbits in order to determine if a recognizable diurnal cycle in the leukocyte series actually existed in this species The counts had been made not oftener than three times a week in a given animal and usually only once a week In all, 597 estimations on 190 of the 204 rabbits were made between 9 00 a.m. and 12 00 noon, and 366 determinations of 136 of the 204 rabbits between 12 00 noon and 5 00 p.m. It was concluded that no single individual hourly mean differed significantly from any other, what variation was present they considered, could be accounted for on the basis of random sampling The white blood cell count averaged 7,891 per cu mm for the morning, and 7,914 per cu mm for the afternoon period, a difference of $23 \pm$ white blood cells which is not significant This investigator also concluded that there was no evidence that a digestive leukocytosis occurs in the rabbit between the hours of 9 00 a.m. and 5 00 p.m., as no statistically significant change was ob-

served in the group permitted free access to food and water. It is recognized by Casey that previous observers have reported that the lowest white blood cell counts in man occur early in the morning and the highest in the afternoon, despite control of the food intake, muscular effort and emotional stress. It is also pointed out that repeated painful punctures cause a successive rise in the leukocyte count (Garrey, 1929). Furthermore, Casey is critical of most of the studies of the variations and rhythms in the white blood cells, as he considers that they are based on an inadequate number of estimations, and no statistical consideration of observational variation seems to have been undertaken. His study, he believes, is significant and conclusive for a number of reasons, among them being only a single examination was made on an animal on any one day, the material was analyzed by accepted biometric procedures, it represents by far the most extensive study of the sort, which has been made. Certainly, his results seem, in general, to contradict the belief that there is a uniform diurnal rise in the leukocyte count in rabbits. It cannot be said, however, from the material presented, that individual rabbits do not show a diurnal rhythm, or an increase in the leukocyte count in the afternoon hours.

As a prelude to a study of the variation in the leukocytes in rabbits following the injections of various substances, Reifensstein, Ferguson and Weiskotten (1941) have made a most careful study of the spontaneous variations at hourly intervals in the total leukocyte count, the differential formula, and the maturity of neutrophils in normal rabbits. Throughout the experiments there was careful control of the health and handling of the animals, the environment, and the diet. Adequate precautions were taken to ensure the accurate estimation of leukocytes as 16 unit areas of the chamber were counted which meant that 800 cells were actually enumerated, when the total leukocytes numbered 10,000 per cubic millimeter. Eight leukocyte estimations were made at hourly intervals on the same day between approximately 9 00 a m and 4 00 p m. Three blood films were made at the time of each count, and 300 cells were enumerated in order to calculate the differential formula. A group of fourteen adult New Zealand white and mixed rabbits of both sexes, weighing approximately 2.5 to 3.2 kgm each, were studied during the period from May 24, 1939, to January 23, 1940.

The results show that there is considerable spontaneous variation in the leukocyte counts of each rabbit. This is apparent when the average of all eight counts on each day for each rabbit are compared. The average for the series of the fourteen animals was 9,449 per cubic millimeter with maximum average variation from 6,414 to 15,014 per cubic millimeter. Repeated studies on the same rabbits at approximately the same hours of the day, on different days, show that each animal seems to have its own characteristic leukocyte picture and variations appear to be decreased in extent under such conditions. The observers advise that when hourly data dealing with the leukocytes are determined for experimental purposes, it appears wise to employ the same animal after its individual leukocyte behavior has been determined, and then utilize the same period of the day for counting. When average hourly estimations for all of the fourteen animals are considered, the total leukocyte values are fairly constant,

the average number of neutrophils increase and the average number of lymphocytes decrease during the day. For example, the average hourly counts per cubic millimeter for the fourteen animals, from approximately 9 00 a.m. to 4 00 p.m. were as follows 9,600, 9,221, 9,621, 9,914, 9,300, 9,800. On the other hand, the total leukocyte count in the same rabbits may vary from 7,000 per cubic millimeter at 9 00 a.m. to 14,900 at 3 00 p.m. This is not true of all of the animals for in some the count may have a remarkable constancy. A comparison of the average morning neutrophil counts with those in the afternoon shows that almost invariably there is an increase in these cells during the latter part of the day. This varies from approximately 200 to 2,000 cells per cubic millimeter. Occasionally there is a decrease. With the tendency to an increase in the neutrophils during the afternoon, there is usually a decrease of the lymphocytes of approximately 200 to 3,500 cells per cubic millimeter. Here again there may be an occasional increase. The authors conclude their discussion with a very appropriate and practical warning, as follows "These results seem to indicate that when the hourly leukocyte picture of the rabbit is studied under different experimental conditions, it would seem advisable to determine the general normal leukocyte trends of each animal and then maintain the same period of the day for counting at hourly intervals under experimental conditions, as well as establish similar control of other possible sources of error in the determinations."

An additional study by Reifstein and Hilfinger (1942) merits careful consideration for they investigated in rabbits for the first time the variation in the maturity of polymorphonuclear neutrophilic leukocytes from hour to hour during the day. Total and differential white blood cell counts were made at hourly intervals at the same time of the day for six hours on twenty normal adult animals. The cells were classified according to the following grouping:

Group I. Cells with the nuclear material in one mass, round, oval, or indented not more than one-half through its width.

Group II. Cells with the nuclear material not divided into segments but may be lobed, spiral looped, rosette shaped or variously irregular.

Group III. Cells with nuclear material showing segmentation into two parts which are either entirely separate (as viewed in the film), or connected with a narrow filament.

Group IV. Cells with the nuclear material showing segmentation (as in group III) into more than two parts.

According to this arrangement the first and second groups comprise the division known as the non filamented and groups III and IV the filamented neutrophils.

These results are expressed in the weighted mean which has the advantage of indicating the maturity of 100 neutrophils by a single figure. It is computed as follows. The number of cells in each of the four groups is multiplied by the number of the group (I, II, III or IV) all results are added and the sum is divided by the total number of cells counted. According to them, the weighted mean is an exceedingly sensitive index of nuclear classification as a difference of one point

in the second decimal place means that one neutrophil has been moved to the group either below or above its original assignment

A consideration of the results shows that each animal on its particular day of counting appeared to have a rather characteristic weighted mean. The only other change was that some seemed to be "more to the left" than others. There did not seem to be a tendency for the mean to shift to the left or right during successive hourly counts. In other words, there was a strong tendency to maintain the initial average neutrophilic maturity during the six hour period of counting.

The percentage of the non-filamented neutrophils (groups I and II) varied from 11 to 48, with a mean of 28.5, median of 29 and a mode of 29. Only two group I-neutrophils were observed in classifying approximately 14,000 neutrophils. One table is presented showing the neutrophilic maturity counts on the same animal at approximately the same time of day (9:45 a.m.) on different days during a 23 months period. These data emphasized that while the level of the neutrophilic weighted mean in a rabbit may vary slightly over a long period of time, the relative constancy of the mean, once it has been established for any particular daily period of study, is maintained during this interval. In other words, when a general trend in the neutrophils has been determined for each animal, there is every reason to expect that there will be very little shift to the "left" or "right" during the succeeding six hours. These results would indicate that the ratio of the appearance of younger neutrophils in the blood to the disappearance of the older neutrophils from the blood is balanced or constant. The scarcity of group I cells suggests that rarely are cells of the neutrophilic series discharged into the blood until they reach a stage which is more mature than the metamyelocyte stage. Their studies would suggest also that any variation in the neutrophils which does occur at short intervals is not due to an increase in the more immature cells of this series. It is likely, therefore, that such variations are on the basis of a redistribution of the cells of the body.

Medlar (1929, 1936), after an exacting study on normal persons and on patients with tuberculosis, reached the following conclusions concerning the fluctuations in the white blood cell count. In his opinion neither the total leukocyte count nor the percentage of the different types of white corpuscles has an absolute level. A variation in the total of 50 per cent and in the differential count of 10 per cent may occur in normal persons when counts are made at five to ten minute intervals, over a period of an hour or two. Such variations may occur at irregular and unpredictable intervals. He cautions that a significant fluctuation must, therefore, be more than 50 per cent of the total and 8 per cent of the differential picture. Furthermore, to be pertinent, it is necessary that the changes occur uniformly in subsequent observations. He noted no significant effect of rest and random activity on the total and differential count. This led him to conclude that distinctive "rest" and "activity" levels of the leukocyte count do not exist if the activity is limited to mild exercise. He is also of the opinion that "complete relaxation, such as a night's sleep or two hours in bed, appears to bring about a more irregular distribution of the leukocytes, both in

the total and in the differential count, than is present during a state of normal activity."

THE EFFECT OF ACTIVITY ON THE LEUKOCYTE COUNT It appears to be clearly established that the leukocytes increase in numbers in the circulating blood following muscular exertion. This is a constant finding and, furthermore, the leukocytosis is, to a certain extent, proportional to the duration and severity of the muscular contractions. Reviews of the literature bearing on this subject have been published by Grawitz (1911) and by Garrey and Bryan (1935). Exercise of any type increases the leukocyte count, even "random activity" causing a moderate rise in the count. It has been established that the leukocyte level is lowest during periods of minimal activity (Bryan, Chastain and Garrey, 1935) and that the correct basal count is the one made in the early morning under conditions of rest (Naegeli, 1931). Following the initial observations of Schultz (1893) it was shown that Marathon runners at the termination of a race uniformly had a leukocytosis which varied between approximately 14,000 and 27,000 cells per cubic millimeter, and a percentage of polymorphonuclear leukocytes which ranged from 80 to 90 per cent of all the white blood cells. It is generally believed that the increase is due to a redistribution of the white blood cells in the vascular system rather than to a formation of new leukocytes. This is indicated by the rapidity with which the increase may occur and by the fact that only a small percentage of the cells are of the younger types. It has been recorded immediately following a quarter mile race, lasting less than one minute, that there is a leukocytosis of 35,000 per cubic millimeter. Isaacs and Gordon (1924) report that at the termination of a Marathon race the polymorphonuclear leukocyte count percentage may be as high as 94.7. That this increase is attributable to a redistribution of cells in the vascular system is shown by the fact that in all cases examined by them the polymorphonuclear neutrophil leukocytes appeared to be of the mature, adult type, with clear-cut nuclear lobulation. It is generally believed that the changes in the circulating blood following exercise are due to circulatory shifts with the liberation of sequestered leukocytes from unused capillaries throughout the body. These reservoirs, in which the polymorphonuclear cells are stored, may be in various organs and tissues of the body such as the spleen, liver, lungs, glands of internal secretion, bone marrow, and muscles.

That the degree of leukocytosis is due to the intensity and the duration of the exertion is shown conclusively by the observations of Edwards and Wood (1932) who noted an increase of nearly 300 per cent in the white blood cell counts of football players although the average duration of actual play in a sixty minute game is only eight minutes. This degree of leukocytosis is surpassed only by that observed in Marathon runners. Furthermore, it was found that the degree of leukocytosis was directly proportional to the extent of their participation in the game, as shown by the following figures: after playing one-quarter, the average count was 12,000 per cubic millimeter, one half, 15,500, three-quarters, 18,000, and the entire game 23,000.

It is claimed by some that the emotions of fear, rage and apprehension may

raise the count to activity level (Garrey, 1929) but Edwards and Wood (1932) consider that excitement alone is without effect upon the leukocyte count. This they demonstrated by determining the leukocyte count on spectators at games, football players immediately before games, and track athletes just prior to a race. Leslie and Zwemer (1935) failed to obtain an increased leukocyte count in cats with excitement alone and therefore concluded that they were unable to show any increase in the white blood cell count from emotional stimulus in the absence of activity. For a further discussion of this aspect of the subject see under "Emotion."

It is claimed that lactic acid of the blood, blood sugar, blood pressure, body temperature and capillary dilatation can be ruled out as separate causes related to leukocytosis in exercise (Edwards and Wood, 1932). The leukocytosis in exercise seems to be proportional to the extent of the alterations in the circulatory rate of the body. As this is accelerated, the sequestered cells are swept into the circulation causing a physiological leukocytosis. Furthermore, they remain there for a considerable period of time before, as it is reasonable to assume, they gradually settle out again in the various capillaries of the body when the circulation becomes slowed. Leslie and Zwemer (1935) believe that the main factor in the prompt production of leukocytosis following exertion is the dilatation of collapsed capillaries in the muscles of the body. They state that during rest there are vast numbers of leukocytes adherent to inactive vessel walls. These become detached when the capillaries open during exercise, are swept into the circulation, and account for the rise in leukocytes. The possibility that the spleen may harbor a reserve store of leukocytes which enter the general circulation when this organ contracts following adrenalin injection thereby causing a transient leukocytosis, has led some to emphasize that the viscera may play an important rôle in the production of physiological elevation of the white cell count. This is undoubtedly true but it has been demonstrated that the injection of adrenalin will cause such a leukocytosis in persons following splenectomy (Lucia, Leonard and Falconer, 1937). A more likely explanation of the increase in number of leukocytes is that the adrenalin increases the rate of blood flow and thereby redistributes the formed elements of the blood. Thus it is not difficult to understand why there is a leukocytosis in exercise of any type, or, in fact, in any condition in which the circulatory rate is increased. This may occur in random activity, in the labor of a pregnant woman, in athletic contests, following the injection of adrenalin, in excitement, and following convulsive seizures.

It should be pointed out that in some persons the leukocytosis is due to an increase in lymphocytes instead of polymorphonuclear cells. For example (Garrey and Bryan, 1935), a high grade of leukocytosis may show a preponderance of lymphocytes. It is also reported (Jokl, 1931) that the blood picture undergoes three changes following exercise: first, an increase in the percentage of lymphocytes following strenuous exercise such as a race of 2,000 meters; second, a preponderance of polymorphonuclear leukocytes after a race of long duration (10 to 25 kilometers) and, third, an "intoxication picture" after

Marathon race when the percentages of polymorphonuclear cells and lymphocytes are normal. The first two types of change have been observed by others but not the third, as previous work has shown that the picture in the blood following Marathon races is that of a polymorphonuclear leukocytosis. That a lymphocytosis may follow a bout of short, intensive exercise is to be expected in some instances, because the exertion has been shown to increase the flow of lymph (Rous, 1908). The original view of Ehrlich was that a lymphocytosis could result from an increase in the rate of production of the lymphocytes in lymphoid tissue and also from a flushing out of the lymph cells through an increase in the lymph flow. The classical observations of Rous confirm the view that the lymphocytes, too, like the polymorphonuclear cells, are sequestered but in the lymphatic rather than the circulatory system, and that following exercise they are redistributed to the circulating blood thereby causing an increase in the percentage of these cells. The experiments of Rous prove the existence of a large reservoir of lymphocytes stored in the lymphatic system, which is quickly yielded to the blood following exercise.

Thus in any person there are at least two ever present variables, which are responsible for the changes in the white blood cell content of the circulating blood. One of these is the reserve supply of polymorphonuclear leukocytes which is sequestered in the inactive capillaries of the body. The other is the segregation of lymphocytes in the lymphatic system. Cells of both types are returned to the circulating blood following muscular activity but in one person the lymphocytes may be swept into the circulation first, while in another it may be the polymorphonuclear cells. In general it may be said that the lymphocytes more commonly respond to short severe exercise whereas in prolonged exertion the leukocytosis is of the polymorphonuclear type.

In the course of a comprehensive investigation of the problem of fatigue and hours of service of drivers of commercial vehicles operating in interstate commerce, Donahue of the Public Health Service (1941) observed the influence of driving upon the leukocyte picture of truck drivers.

Preliminary studies indicated that the leukocyte count might be utilized as an index of the fatigue status of commercial truck operators. It was found that the average leukocyte count of 737 drivers was 9,811 per cubic millimeter, with a range varying from 4,900 to 19,200 per cubic millimeter. These figures were recognized as higher than those usually reported for the general population. There was a statistically significant difference between the counts in different cities, for in Baltimore, Chicago and Nashville the average counts were 9,010, 9,713 and 10,712 per cubic millimeter, respectively. This variation may have been due to a variation in the time of working hours, or different economic conditions. No age trends were observed in the total leukocyte count. The mean values of the leukocyte counts of all drivers showed a consistent tendency toward an increase with hours of driving since major sleep. The rise was found to be relatively slight as compared with subjects undergoing severe muscular exercise. It was concluded that these results are suggestive of a chronic effect of the regime of the truck driver on the leukocyte level."

The effect of either the increased muscular activity associated with a pronounced tachycardia, or of the accelerated circulatory rate, or of both of these factors, is well demonstrated by the observations of Levine and Golden (1922) on patients with greatly increased heart rates. Eleven patients with paroxysmal rapid heart action were studied in whom the rate varied between 130 and 250 per minute for two hours to over twelve days. In six of these the leukocytosis ranged between 13,000 and 22,000 per cubic millimeter. The authors considered that the blood findings were due to the cardiac upset, as a return to normal occurred promptly when the rate was lowered.

Bookman and Fraad (1935) studied the effect of prolonged training on the neutrophil count. They made weekly observations on 14 members of a college football team during the period of approximately eleven weeks of almost daily strenuous exercise. No significant variations were found in the percentage of neutrophils and hence it was concluded that prolonged exercise and training do not have an appreciable effect on the polymorphonuclear counts. They emphasize that this is rather remarkable as the total white blood cell count during energetic practice and actual contests must have fluctuated violently.

VARIATIONS WITH AGE According to Poncher (1943) the average leukocyte count shortly after birth is 25,000 cells per cubic millimeter. The level falls rather precipitately to about 14,000 at the tenth day of life, with a subsequent very gradual decline throughout infancy and childhood. Poncher's conclusions appear to be based, in part, on the observations of Kato (1935). Washburn (1935) reported a total of 73 leukocyte counts on six babies performed during the first ten days of life. Wide variations were found both between different infants, and between counts on the same babies, the average of all the counts was 15,208 per cubic millimeter. For seven infants between two and twenty-six weeks of age a total of 535 leukocyte counts varied between 5,000 and 24,000, with 80 per cent of the counts within the range of 8,000 to 16,500. Washburn observed no tendency to orderly rhythms in the fluctuations of the individual infants' counts, nor was any correlation noted between the counts and activity or feeding. Kato (1935) analyzed 1,081 total and differential counts performed on 1,037 individuals between birth and fifteen years of age. At the end of the first day of life he found an average leukocyte count of 22,000 per cubic millimeter with a pronounced drop at the third or fourth day to an average of 8,750. Thereafter a slight temporary rise occurred during the first three months of life with an average maximum level of 10,000 to 11,000. A gradual fall was then observed, persisting throughout the remaining years of infancy and childhood.

The values usually given for the leukocytes in normal infants and children are criticized by Osgood as being derived from studies on subjects not truly healthy. With a number of collaborators (1939, 1941) he has reported total, differential and absolute leukocyte counts for new-born infants and for age groups above 4 years. During the first day of life the leukocyte count averaged 15,000 with maximum values of about 24,000. A fall to an average of 10,000 was observed on the second day with a further decline to 7,000 on the third, fourth, fifth and sixth days. The count then increased to about 8,000 where

it persisted throughout the remainder of the ten day period of observation upon which the study was based. In a study of 86 children four to seven years old, Osgood and his associates found an average leukocyte count of 10,400 with a 95 per cent range of 5,500 to 15,500. Scatter diagrams indicated that, within these ages, the values for white blood cells are constant. At eight years the total leukocyte count declines, according to these authors, to an average level of 8,400, range 4,000 to 13,000, and these values persist through adolescence. A further decrease occurs after the age of eighteen, when the adult values were established as mean total leukocyte count 7,400, range 4,000 to 11,000. The authors observed no differences between the sexes, either in total or differential leukocyte counts, in any of the age groups studied.

The white blood cell values at four periods in the first year of life were studied by Magnusson (1938). He provides an extensive bibliography of articles published prior to 1936. His own observations made on carefully selected subjects are shown in table 2.

TABLE 2

AGE	NUMBER OF COUNTS	LEUKOCYTES (THOUSANDS PER CU. MM.)	
		Mean	Standard deviation
<i>week</i>			
3rd	16	14.18 \pm 0.77	3.08 \pm 0.54
11th	20	10.79 \pm 0.62	2.77 \pm 0.44
23rd-25th	20	13.41 \pm 0.62	2.77 \pm 0.44
49th-52nd	20	12.82 \pm 0.72	3.23 \pm 0.51

In a study of approximately 300 healthy infants, aged 4 to 6 months, Bethell (1943) found an average leukocyte count of 11,279, standard deviation of 1,012 cells per cubic millimeter. At 10 to 14 months the mean count was 12,358, standard deviation 3,886. In the older age group the flatness of the frequency distribution curve, with some skewness toward the higher values, may be due to the inadvertent inclusion of children with subclinical pathologic processes. If so, it illustrates the difficulty involved in the selection of normal subjects for the determination of leukocyte counts applying to young children. Relatively mild infectious processes may produce either leukocytosis or leukopenia, depending upon the responsible etiologic agent, and such changes tend to persist for long periods after the disappearance of clinical evidences of disease.

At birth the neutrophils are the predominant type of leukocyte in the circulating blood. Their relative and absolute numbers fall rapidly, and during the second week are exceeded by the lymphocytes. After the first year the lymphocytes gradually decline but remain the most numerous cells until about the fourth year when they are surpassed by the increasing percentage of neutrophils. According to Poncher (1943) the number of granulocytic and lymphocytic types approximate each other at the tenth day of life and again at the fourth year. Eosinophils and basophils remain at a relatively uniform level throughout infancy and childhood and their numbers are about equal to the adult values.

TABLE 3
Mean leukocyte values at different ages*

AGE	AUTHOR	TOTAL W.B.C 000/CU MM	NEUTRO- PHILS	EOSINO- PHILS	BASO- PHILS	LYMPHO- CYTES	MONO- CYTES
			per cent	per cent	per cent		
Newborn	Poncher† 1943	25,000	60 0	2 5	0 5	22 5	10 0
	Chunard‡ 1941	15,000	60 0	3 0	0 5	30 0	5 0
10th day	Poncher†	14,000	40 0	2 5	0 5	42 5	7 0
	Chunard‡	8,000	43 0	3 0	0 5	45 0	5 0
4th-6th month	Poncher†	12,000	32 0	2 5	0 5	52 5	4 0
	Magnusson 1938	13,410	24 18	3 09	0 21	64 16	7 32
	Bethell 1943	11,279	25 0	1 80	0 15	69 33	3 61
10-12th month	Poncher†	9,000	32 0	2 5	0 5	57 0	4 0
	Magnusson	12,820	29 52	2 54	0 25	60 63	6 41
	Bethell	12,358	28 62	2 46	0 14	65 54	3 65
	Suzuki§ 1937	11,000	27 5	2 0	0 6	62 5	5 0
4th year	Poncher†	9,000	42 0	2 5	0 5	45 0	4 0
	Osgood‡ 1939	10,400	41 0	3 0	0 5	48 0	3 0
	Suzuki§	8,500	45 0	2 5	0 6	45 0	5 5
7th year	Poncher†	8,000	50 0	2 5	0 5	33 0	4 0
	Osgood‡	10,400	41 0	2 0	0 5	48 0	3 0
	Suzuki§	8,000	50 0	2 5	0 6	40 0	5 5
12th year	Poncher†	8,000	52 0	2 5	0 5	28 0	4 0
	Osgood‡	8,400	41 0	2 0	0 5	48 0	3 0
	Suzuki§	7,000	60 0	3 0	0 7	30 0	6 0
15th year	Osgood‡	8,400	51 0	2 0	0 5	42 0	4 0
	Suzuki§	6,500	65 0	3 0	0 7	23 0	6 0
Adult	Osgood‡	7,400	55 0	2 0	0 5	38 0	4 0
	Suzuki§	6,000	67 0	3 0	0 7	23 0	6 0

* It has not been possible to establish statistically comparable ranges for the data included in this table. It is designed to indicate the trend of change throughout infancy and childhood. Apparently healthy individuals, especially in infancy, may give values differing widely from the means. Where the summation of percentages falls appreciably short of 100, the discrepancy is due to omission of unidentified and disintegrated cells. The numbers of observations from which these figures were derived are comparatively large with the exception of those of Magnusson. This author, however, chose his subjects with especial care and subjected his data to detailed statistical analysis.

† Approximate values calculated from the authors' ranges.

‡ Smoothed means, with some values adapted from the authors' classification to fit the present table.

§ Data largely compiled from the reports of many authors, chiefly in the Japanese and German literature.

The mean values for the total and differential count throughout infancy, childhood, adolescence and adulthood, as observed by several recent authors, are given in table 3

PREGNANCY, LABOR AND THE PUERPERIUM Most observers report an elevated leukocyte count during pregnancy, the increase being due to greater numbers of neutrophils, with a higher percentage of younger forms than is found in non-pregnant women. Carey and Litzenberg (1936) report 977 leukocyte counts obtained during the course of 134 pregnancies. The median value of these counts was between 10,000 and 11,000 per cubic millimeter, with no consistent alterations throughout the duration of gestation. Fifty per cent of the counts fell in the range of 8,700 to 12,500. No differences in leukocyte counts between primiparae and multiparae were observed. Hematologic data

TABLE 4

Leukocyte values in pregnancy, the puerperium and at approximately one year after delivery (Bethell, Hartsuff and Farrell 1943)

MONTH OF PREGNANCY	LEUKOCYTES (THOUSANDS/CC. MM.)			DIFFERENTIAL COUNTS (MEAN PERCENTAGES)					
	No. of subjects	Mean	S.D.	No. of subjects	Neut.	Eos.	Bas.	Lymph.	Mono.
2nd	11	10 182	2 836	10	58 00	2 00	0 00	34 00	4 00
3rd	46	10 022	2 445	41	66 71	1 67	0 17	27 85	3 03
4th	81	10 420	2 154	79	67 66	2 17	0 11	27 51	3 35
5th	125	10 838	3 112	114	67 72	1 68	0 15	26 06	4 11
6th	154	10 539	2 543	147	60 56	1 40	0 12	25 21	3 08
7th	200	10 875	2 435	188	60 68	1 39	0 15	25 30	4 41
8th	226	10 518	2 975	190	60 47	1 58	0 12	25 11	4 47
9th	174	10 339	2 515	149	63 96	1 52	0 09	25 32	4 46
Postpartum									
5th-9th week	843	8 102	1 853	334	51 29	2 84	0 31	41 28	4 28
10th-14th month	111	8 072	610	107	54 63	2 54	0 28	39 52	3 83

obtained on 36 women at different periods of gestation were reported by Olivella, Chediak and Ballestero (1938). They found average values for the total leukocyte count of 9,250 cells per cubic millimeter, neutrophils, 68 per cent, eosinophils, 2 per cent, lymphocytes, 23 per cent, monocytes, 4.5 per cent.

Blood studies were carried out by Bethell, Hartsuff and Farrell (1943) on healthy women in various months of their pregnancies, at approximately six weeks postpartum, and at about one year after delivery. In all, 1471 total leukocyte counts and 1359 differential counts were obtained. Although statistical analysis of these data has not been completed, it is possible to observe the general nature of the leukocyte changes in pregnancy and the puerperium as evidenced by the figures in table 4. The total leukocyte count remains constantly elevated throughout pregnancy with relatively minor changes from month to month. There is a persistent neutrophilia which increases through the seventh month of gestation and then appears to undergo a slight decrease.

Lymphocyte, eosinophil and basophil percentages are lower than in non-pregnant healthy adults, but the absolute values for these cells are but little affected during gestation. The percentage of monocytes is approximately the same in pregnant and in non-pregnant persons, but their absolute number is increased in the former group. Throughout pregnancy the range of leukocyte values is very great as indicated by the high figures for the standard deviations. The total count declines and becomes more uniform at the 5th to 9th week postpartum, the decrease being at the expense of the neutrophils. The data obtained at approximately one year after delivery may be considered as representing the normal non-pregnant leukocyte values for the subjects of this investigation.

Changes in the leukocyte count during labor have been studied by Gibson (1937) who observed a slight rise in total cell values at the beginning of parturition and a much greater increase immediately after its termination. Counts in the range of 10,000 to 39,800 were found during the first six hours after delivery in 38 normal women. In primiparae the leukocyte values tended to be higher and the leukocytosis to persist for a longer time than in multiparae. The leukocytosis of parturition was made the subject of an investigation by Boyd, Blenkinsop and Mylks (1937), with particular reference to the lipid composition of the white blood cells. In 14 patients the average leukocyte count in early labor was 7,100 cells per cubic millimeter, the lowest being 4,300 and the highest 10,000. At the end of labor, but before anesthesia, the average was 8,000, with a range of 5,700 to 11,200. In every instance some increase in the count occurred, averaging 1,700 cells, a 24 per cent gain over the values early in labor. No changes either in the differential count or in the lipid composition of the cells between beginning and advanced labor were observed. Earlier publications on the leukocyte count in labor have been reviewed by Wolff (1941), who reports studies on fifty normal women observed from shortly after the onset of labor until the conclusion of hospitalization at the eighth day after delivery. The number was equally divided between primiparae and multiparae. Twenty-one of the subjects were also examined at some time during the last weeks of pregnancy when their leukocyte values averaged 8,054 cells per cubic millimeter, with a range of 5,750 to 12,200. In all of these women a rise averaging about 2,000 cells was noted after the onset of labor, as compared to the previous counts. As labor progressed the leukocyte values increased to maximum averages at delivery of 22,250 and 15,270 in the cases of primiparae and multiparae respectively. The third stage of normal labor was not associated with further changes in the counts. The leukocyte values gradually returned to a normal range by the seventh day of the puerperium. Wolff states "that the work of the contracting uterine muscle appears to stimulate the mobilizing of the polymorphonuclear leukocytes into the systemic circulation."

EMOTION Leukocyte alterations, both quantitative and qualitative, associated with affected states have been reported by many investigators. The subject is discussed extensively by Garrey and Bryan (1935). In rabbits, including splenectomized animals, Nice and Katz (1936) observed, consistently,

leukopenia occurring during excitement, whereas in cats the same stimulus was followed by leukocytosis. In another article Katz and Nies (1936) reported no change in the ratio of non filamentous to filamentous neutrophils in the blood of rabbits during excitement. They conclude that the emotional leukopenia of rabbits appears to be due to the sequestration of neutrophils in the peripheral capillaries and tissues.

In humans with emotional disorders Milhorat, Small and Diethelm (1942) observed the frequent occurrence of leukocytosis. The subjects of their investigation comprised 200 psychiatric patients and no correlation was noted between the level of the white cell count and the specific psychiatric disease, although the degree of leukocytosis paralleled to a certain extent the intensity of the emotional reaction. Fear, agitation or anger characterized the emotional states, associated with leukocytosis. Improvement in the subjective reaction was followed by a return of the leukocyte count to normal levels. Although no consistent changes, either in the total or differential leukocyte values, were observed by Beeble (1935) in a study of 20 psychotic patients, he observed an increase in the percentage of cells containing 'toxic' (basophilic with Romanowsky stain) and Sudanophile granulations. The extent of such granulations varied directly with the intensity of the mental disorder. Hematologic values, including total leukocyte and differential counts, were determined by Hill and Taylor (1938) in 21 subjects with pathologic anxiety states. The results were subjected to statistical analysis and showed no significant differences from the data afforded by a control group. However, in comment, it appears from the authors' protocol that their subjects were not in a state of severe emotional stress at the time of examination.

THE EFFECT OF DIETARY CHANGES AND STARVATION A physiologic study by Forbes, Johnson and Consolaro (1941) of the blood of share croppers in Mississippi showed that a majority of the apparently healthy negroes who were observed had a leukopenia with related neutropenia, whereas white persons living under the same conditions had normal white blood cell counts. The average leukocyte count of 23 negroes was 4,050 cells per cubic millimeter, whereas the average count of 7 white persons living under the same conditions, and said to be partaking of similar diets, was 7,600 per cubic millimeter. Some of the percentages of neutrophils in the negroes were as low as 22 to 34, and the average for the entire group was 50 per cent, while the average percentage in the white persons was 60. Iron medication caused an increase of the neutrophils in the blood of 18 negroes from an average of 1500 to one of 2700 per cubic millimeter. The authors state that the cause of the leukopenia is not apparent. That a dietary deficiency might have been an important etiological factor is a possibility, but the evidence in regard to this is not clear. It was difficult to obtain an accurate picture of the eating habits of the negroes but there did not appear to be a pronounced dietary deficiency. Nevertheless, it is admitted that "occasionally they might be reduced to corn, beans, potatoes and salt pork." That the leukopenia may possibly be associated with a food deficiency is supported by the experimental work of Day and his associates (1940). It was

observed by these investigators that a leukopenia as low as 700 cells per cubic millimeter occurred in monkeys when they were fed the Goldberger black-tongue-producing diet

Benedict and his collaborators, as reported in an extensive study on human vitality and efficiency under prolonged restricted diet (1919), made certain observations on the blood in normal subjects who received such a diet for intervals varying from 22 to 37 days. The food intake was such that approximately a 10 per cent weight loss was attained. Under this regimen there was no significant change in the total white blood cell counts. It was considered that there was a disturbance of the proportion of the various types of white blood cells, as the average per cent of lymphocytes was high (36 per cent), and the average of the neutrophils was low (56 per cent). In New England, at that time, the average normal percentages for lymphocytes was considered to be 22, and of neutrophils 64.

Early observations on the effect of fasting in man and animals on the morphological constituents of the blood have been extensively reviewed by Ash and reported by Benedict in his remarkable study of the changes occurring during prolonged fasting (1915). Unfortunately many of these reports are obviously marred by faulty technic and must be rejected. Almost every type of numerical change in the leukocytes has been reported. The results of Ash, however, can be accepted as accurate. He made a complete blood study on a healthy male who lived for thirty-one days without food and drinking only distilled water. It was concluded that in an otherwise healthy person, with restriction of mental and physical activities, the blood can withstand complete abstinence from food for a period of at least 31 days, without displaying any essentially pathological changes. There were some significant alterations, however, in the leukocytes which were interpreted as physiological. Their number increased rather rapidly at the onset of the fast, reaching 12,400 per cubic millimeter on the third day. There was a fall to 8,400 per cubic millimeter on the fourth day, after which there was a variation of about 1,000 per cubic millimeter until the 16th day when the count approximated the preliminary level. Observations could be made only for three days after the termination of the fast, and no important changes were noted during this interval. The fluctuations in the total leukocyte count were obviously due to changes in the number of the neutrophils. Ash had no explanation for the increase of neutrophils during the early days of the fast other than, as he says, a rather unscientific one, namely, that the neutrophils are ever on the defense for the organism, and that these cells are most sensitive to changes in body conditions. The increase cannot be attributed to alterations in the water content of the blood, to an obscure bacterial infection, or to a stimulating effect of the perverted products of metabolism, for there was no evidence that these factors were of importance. The paucity of accurate observations which deal with the relationship between the food intake and changes in the leukocytes, makes any generalization concerning this subject unwarranted. From the studies carried out under the direction of Benedict it does not appear likely that starvation and undernutrition result

in any significant changes. The observation of a low white blood cell count in negroes, and the leukopenia seen in animals which are given a black tongue-producing diet, suggest the possible relationship between some components of the diet and the level of the total white blood cell count. Obviously the subject demands further careful studies before conclusions can be formulated.

DIGESTION Whether or not there occurs a leukocytosis attributable to digestion is still a controversial question. The very extensive literature on the subject is reviewed by Arneth and Ostertdorf (1923) and Garrey and Bryan (1935). Within recent years comparatively few contributions to the subject have been made, and it is the consensus of most observers that diurnal variations of the leukocyte count are not dependent upon digestive processes. Inada (1936) observed leukocytosis in rabbits after the intravenous injection of a five per cent solution of glucose (0.1 gram per kilo body weight). The change in the leukocyte count was attributed to redistribution of the cells and was of the same type observed after feeding a diet high in carbohydrate or protein. Injection of minute fat globules caused no change in the white blood cells. Inada infers from his results that digestion leukocytosis in rabbits is related to the absorption of glucose, but is independent of the absorption of fat.

THE NORMAL LEUKOCYTE PICTURE IN A HOT CLIMATE Heat and intense solar radiation are factors common to the subtropical environment of Iraq in which the leukocyte picture in healthy British soldiers was studied by Kennedy and MacKay (1936). They made the following observations: 1, there was a relative reduction in the percentage of neutrophils, the mean being 56.6 with a minimum of 35 and a maximum of 75.5 per cent, 2, the monocytes were increased, the mean being 13.7, the minimum 4.0, and the maximum 29.5 per cent, 3, and the polymorphonuclear index showed a shift in the direction of immaturity. In addition, occasional abnormal cells were observed such as myeloblasts, promyelocytes, myelocytes, lymphoblasts, Türk cells and normoblasts. The average blood counts were within the normal range as follows: Red blood cells, 5,375,000 per cubic millimeter, white blood cells, 8,780 per cubic millimeter, hemoglobin 96.3 per cent (Sahli). The authors conclude that the only environmental agency affecting all subjects was the climate and that heat and solar radiation are the common factors to which the blood changes might be attributed. Heat may produce a transient increase in the circulating leukocytes, but its long continued action is unknown. It has been recognized that ultraviolet radiation produces changes in the circulating blood (Russell and Russell, 1927, Kennedy and Flint, 1930, Kennedy and Thompson, 1927). Russell and Russell (1928) have reported that sunlight, ultraviolet radiation and heat all produce an increase in the lymphocytes, and also that eosinophils are increased by irradiation. These authors state that when soldiers are transferred from a temperate climate to the tropics there is a considerable increase in the lymphocytes and erythrocytes, and the neutrophils are diminished.

EFFECT OF HYPERTHYREXIA UPON LEUKOCYTE COUNT Changes in the leukocyte count were observed by Bierman (1934) following hyperthyreuxia induced by exposure of patient to radiations with a wave length of about 30 meters.

In most instances the rectal temperature reached 104 to 106°F and was maintained at this level for 3 to 4 hours by surrounding the patient with a hood containing carbon filament lamps. Hourly observations of the leukocyte count were made on patients suffering from various diseases. The initial change was a reduction of between 25 and 30 per cent in the total number of leukocytes which occurred in the first or second hours of treatment. This was due to a diminution in the neutrophils. Following this there occurred constantly an elevation in leukocytes whose maximum, amounting to approximately 80 per cent of the initial figures, occurred about the sixth to the ninth hour. The magnitude of the leukocyte response depended upon the height and duration of the temperature rise, but the maximum leukocytosis occurred several hours after the temperature had returned to the normal level. The highest leukocyte count recorded was 22,600 per cubic millimeter. As the increase was due mainly to changes in the total number of neutrophils, and as the staff (non-filamented) neutrophils showed the greatest rise, usually being between 200 and 300 per cent, it was concluded that the increase was due to stimulation of the bone marrow. The reviewers would like to comment that although the evidence that stimulation of the bone marrow seems to be clear, nevertheless the accelerated circulation rate which accompanies hyperpyrexia must contribute something to the transient increase in the leukocyte count by causing a redistribution of white blood cells. It is stated (Bierman and Fishberg, 1934) that during hyperpyrexia the velocity of the blood flow may be increased more than 400 per cent.

THE EFFECT OF METEOROLOGICAL ALTERATIONS Variations in the leukocytes in relation to meteorological alterations have been studied by Berg (1938). In a previous communication Petersen and he (1933) had observed that the average counts in winter were higher than those in summer, while the degree of fluctuation was greatest in the latter season. A continuation of the study had led the author to conclude that in normal persons, a period of heightened systolic and diastolic pressure is followed by an increase in neutrophils and eosinophils with the appearance of more immature forms, and an elevation of the total white cell count. It was also found that the level and the extent of the seasonal fluctuations are influenced by constitutional habitus. For example, a person with a pyknic habitus was reported as having the highest level and also showed the greatest degree of fluctuations, whereas the strongly sympathicotonic individual not only had the lowest level, but also the lowest degree of fluctuations. References are given to authors who have noted variations in levels and fluctuations in the counts with constitutional differences. Data are presented showing the correlation which is claimed to exist between variations in the level of the leukocyte count, the character of the fluctuations, meteorologic episodes, and the pathologic condition of five patients suffering, respectively, with aleukemic lymphadenosis, myelogenous leukemia, pulmonary tuberculosis (two patients), and chronic lymphatic leukemia.

THE EFFECT OF ALTITUDE In 1933 Stammers studied the white blood cell counts of persons living in Johannesburg, South Africa, which has an altitude of approximately 6,000 feet and receives 73 per cent of sun light. He reported

that the mean per cent of the polymorphonuclear cells was 54.2 and of the lymphocytes 39.7. These values are about 14 per cent lower than the average normal percentage for the neutrophils and approximately 14 per cent higher in the case of the lymphocytes, according to the standards then accepted. As persons residing at high altitudes are exposed to more ultraviolet radiation, which had been shown by Clark (1922) to stimulate a relative lymphocytosis, it was assumed that this was the explanation of the changes observed.

Peterson and Peterson (1934) reported their study on healthy young adults in the vicinity of Butte, Montana, at an elevation of 5755 feet, with a sunlight percentage of 57. Their conclusions agreed with those of previous observers, namely, that a relative lymphocytosis occurs at high altitudes, as the mean lymphocyte percentage was 36.2, and that of the neutrophils 54.36. These findings are in accord with those of Ruppner (1920) who studied the blood of persons in the Swiss Alps, and with those of Hartman whose observations were made on members of the German Expedition to the Himalayas (1931).

Changes in leukocytes attributable to high altitude and increased solar radiation show, at the most, only slight deviations from generally accepted normal values, although the trend of such changes appears to be suggestive.

DISPLACEMENT, DISTRIBUTION OR PSEUDO-LEUKOCYTOSES Veylens (1938) in his comprehensive and scholarly review on the distribution of leukocytes in the vascular system contributes pertinent information relative to increases in the leukocytes in both physiologic and pathologic conditions. His observations indicate that normally in the veins some of the white corpuscles are axial flowing and others are marginal and adherent to the vessel wall. These latter cells are always neutrophils. He believes that an increase or decrease in the number of marginal leukocytes in the capillary veins is the main reason for changes in distribution of the leukocytes. The position of the leukocytes in the blood stream of the small veins is dependent upon two chief factors, first, alterations in the circulatory rate, and second variations in the suspension stability of the blood plasma which is probably related in part, at least, to its fibrinogen content. According to this theory a decrease in the white blood cell count results when there is a reduction in the rate of blood flow and consequently the corpuscles remain in the marginal position and many become attached loosely to the vessel wall. With an increased circulatory velocity the number of white blood cells adherent to the wall of the small veins is diminished, and as they enter again the general circulation, the leukocyte count in the peripheral blood is increased. The exact relationship of the changes in the suspension stability to the physiologic leukocytoses is less clear. Doubtless in certain pathologic conditions such as infections, there is an increase in fibrinogen which causes a general marginal position in the veins. This, Veylens considers, is due to an increase in the adhesiveness between the neutrophils and the vein wall, and in a reversal of the size of the red and white corpuscles. The latter is explained by the possibility that an increase in the fibrinogen content of the circulating blood causes an aggregation of red blood cells which are larger than single neutrophils or their aggregates.

REFERENCES

- ARNETH, J AND L OSTENDORF *Fol haematol* 29 213, 1923
 BARNETT, C W *J Clin Investigation* 12 77, 1933
 BECCLE, H C *J Ment Sc* 81 840, 1935
 BENEDICT, F G *Carnegie Inst of Washington, Publ* 203, 1915
 BENEDICT, F G, W R MILES, P ROTH AND M SMITH *Carnegie Inst of Washington, Publ* 280, 1919
 BERG, M *J Lab and Clin Med* 23 797, 1938
 BETHELL, F H To be published, 1943
 BETHELL, F H, F E HARTSUFF AND C FARRELL To be published, 1943
 BIERMAN, W *Am J M Sc* 187 545, 1934
 BIERMAN, W AND E H FISHBERG *J A M A* 103 1354, 1934
 BOOKMAN, J J AND D J FRAAD *Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med* 33 183, 1935
 BOVERI, R M *Guy's Hosp Repts* 89 112, 1939
 BOYD, E M, G W BLENKINSOP AND G MYLKS, JR *Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med* 36 300, 1937
 BRYAN, W R, L L CHASTAIN AND W E GARREY *Am J Physiol* 113 430, 1935
 CAREY, J B AND J C LITZENBERG *Ann Int Med* 10 25, 1936
 CASEY, A E *Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med* 45 863, 1940
 CHENG, S C *Am J Hygiene* 11 449, 1930
 CHUINARD, E G, E E OSGOOD AND D M ELLIS *Am J Dis Child* 62 1188, 1941
 CLARK, J H *Physiol Rev* 2 277, 1922
 DAY, P L ETAL *J Exper Med* 72 463, 1940
 DONAHUE, D D *Federal Security Agency, U S Public Health Service, Washington, D C, U S Gov't Printing Office*, 1941
 EDWARDS, H T AND W B WOOD *Arbeitsphysiol* 6 73, 1932
 FORBES, W H, R E JOHNSON AND F CONSOLAZIO *Am J Med Sc* 201 407, 1941
 GARREY, W E *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin* 4 157, 1929
 GARREY, W E AND W R BRYAN *Physiol Rev* 15 597, 1935
 GIBSON, A *J Obstet and Gynaec Brit Emp* 44 500, 1937
 GOLDNER, F M AND W N MANN *Guy's Hosp Repts* 88 54, 1938
 GRAWITZ, E *Klin Pathologie Leipzig*, 1911
 HARTMAN, H *Klin Wehnschr* 12 458, 1933
 HILL, D AND S TAYLOR *Lancet* 1 1382, 1938
 INADA, T *Nagayo J Med Sc* 10 137, 1936
 ISAACS, R AND B GORDON *Am J Physiol* 71 106, 1924
 JOKI, E *Arbeitsphysiol* 4 26, 1931
 KATO, K *J Pediat* 7 7, 1935
 KATZ, H L AND L B NICE *J Lab and Clin Med* 21 1145, 1936
 KENNEDY, W P AND K N FIINT *Quart J Exper Physiol* 20 101, 1930
 KENNEDY, W P AND I MACKAY *J Physiol* 87 336, 1936
 KENNEDY, W P AND W A R THOMPSON *Quart J Exper Physiol* 17 265, 1927
 KENNON, B R, M E SHIPP AND D HETHERINGTON *Am J Physiol* 118 690, 1937
 KLOTZ, L J *J Lab and Clin Med* 25 424, 1940
 LAWRENCE, J S *J A M A* 116 478, 1941
 LESLIE, C J AND R M ZWEMER *Am J Med Sc* 190 92, 1935
 LEVINE, S A AND R GOLDEN *Arch Int Med* 29 837, 1922
 LUCIA, S P, M E LEONARD AND E H FALCONER *Am J Med Sc* 194 35, 1937
 MACGREGOR, R G S, W RICHARDS AND G L LOH *J Path and Bact* 51 337, 1940
 MAGNUSSON, J H *Acta paediat* 23 14, 1938
 MAINLAND, D, B DUBILIER AND C B STEWART *Canad Med J* 33 667, 1935
 MAINLAND, D, B K COADY AND S JOSEPH *Folia haemat* 54 8, 1935
 MEDLAR, E M *Am J Med Sc* 177 72, 1929
Arch Int Med 57 367, 1936

- MILHORAT, A T S M SMALL AND O DIETHELM Arch Neur and Psychiat 47 779, 1942
 NAEGELI O Blutkrankheiten und Blutdiagnostik 5th ed, Springer Berlin 1931
 NICE L B and H L KATZ Am J Physiol 117: 571 1936
 OLIVELLA J R. A CHEDIAK AND R BALLESTERO Vida Nueva 41: 49, 1938
 OSGOOD, E E AND OTHERS J Lab and Clin Med 24: 905 1939
 Arch Int Med 64: 105 1939
 Am J Dis Child 68 81 282 1939
 PETERSEN W F AND M BERG Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 30: 830 1933
 PETERSON, R. F AND W G PETERSON J Lab and Clin Med 20: 723 1934
 PLUM P Actamed Scandinav 90 342 1938
 PONCHER H G In LEVINSON and MacFATE. Clinical laboratory diagnosis Lea & Febiger Philadelphia, 1943 p 804
 REIFENSTEIN, G H, J H FERGUSON AND H O WEISKOTTEN Am J Path 17 219, 1941
 REIFENSTEIN G H AND M F HILFINGER. Am J Path 18: 383, 1942
 ROUS F P J Exper Med 10: 238, 1908
 RUFFANNER, E Schweiz med Wchnschr 1 105 1920
 RUSSELL E H AND W K RUSSELL. Ultra violet radiation and actinotherapy E & S Livingstone, Edinburgh 1927
 SABIN F R. R S CUMMINGHAM C A DOAN AND J A KINDWALL. Johns Hopkins Hosp Bull 37 14, 1925
 SCHULTZ G Deutsch. Arch Klin Med 61 234, 1893
 STAMMERS A D J Physiol 78 225 1933
 SUZUKI T Tohoku J Exper Med 30 378 1937
 VEJLENS, G Acta Path and Micro-biol Scand Supp 33 pp 1, 1938
 WASHBURN, A H Am J Dis Child 60: 413 1935
 WOLFF J R. Am J Obstet and Gynec 41: 611, 1941

SELENIUM POISONING¹

ALVIN L. MOXON AND MORRIS RHIAN

Experiment Station Chemistry Department, South Dakota State College Brookings, S D

The element selenium was discovered by Berzelius and Gahn in 1817 while they were examining the sediment from a sulfuric acid plant at Gripsholm, Sweden. Although the total production of selenium has never been very large, it has several important industrial uses, especially in the chemical, electrical, ceramic and metallurgical industries. The yearly world production of selenium in peace time is about 1,000,000 pounds most of which is recovered from the anode slimes of copper refineries. Watkins, Bearnse and Shutt (180) have recently presented an excellent review on the commercial importance of selenium.

Selenium compounds are of importance in carrying out certain chemical reactions. Selenium has been useful as a dehydrogenating agent in determining the structure of complex organic compounds (137). It has also been used as a specific oxidant (145) and as a reagent for ascorbic acid (89).

The greatest interest in selenium and its compounds has been aroused in relation to its toxic effects in the animal body. Although Japha (70)² proved as early as 1842 that selenium was definitely toxic, it was not associated with general livestock poisoning ("alkali disease") until 1931.

Probably the first authentic written record of selenium poisoning ("alkali disease") in livestock is the report written in 1856 by Madison (92), an Army surgeon stationed at Fort Randall, territory of Nebraska.³ He described a fatal disease among the horses which had grazed in a certain area near the fort. The horses lost the long hair from the mane and tail, and their feet became so sore that they were unable to move about in search of food.

Soon after the settlement of the territory around Fort Randall, about 1891, the farmers experienced difficulty with the same disease that Madison had described. They called it the "alkali disease" because they associated it with alkali seeps and waters of high salt content. Even though experiments carried out at the South Dakota Experiment Station as early as 1912 and 1913 (83) (84) proved that suspected water did not cause the malady, the name "alkali disease" is still associated with the livestock disturbance which is now known to be chronic selenium poisoning.

In 1929 Franke started his investigations at the South Dakota Experiment Station which led to co-operative work with several bureaus of the U S Depart-

¹ Approved for publication by the Director of the South Dakota Agricultural Experiment Station.

² Jones (Biochem J 4 405 1909) has credited Gmelin (54) with the first work on the effect of selenium on the animal body. The reviewers have examined Gmelin's book and have failed to find any mention of selenium.

³ Part of the chapel at Fort Randall is still standing on its original site in southeastern Gregory county, South Dakota, just three or four miles from the Nebraska boundary.

ment of Agriculture and the discovery, by Robinson (146), of selenium in cereals which Franke had found to be toxic to laboratory animals. A more detailed account of the early work on the selenium problem has been published (103). Reviews on certain phases of the selenium problem have appeared at various times since the discovery of selenium in toxic grains (29) (60) (93) (97) (129) (154) (169) (173) (174) (180) (185). The selenium problem as it is now recognized may be summarized briefly as follows. Soils which have been derived from certain geological formations contain selenium which is available to plants and is absorbed by the plants to the extent that they are toxic when consumed by animals. This toxic vegetation causes considerable livestock losses and is, directly and indirectly, a hazard to public health in certain areas.

In this review the present status of the selenium poisoning problem will be discussed under the main divisions of Geological Distribution of Selenium, Selenium in Soils, Absorption of Selenium by Plants, The Use of Selenium for the Control of Insects on Plants, Selenium Poisoning in Livestock, Selenium Poisoning in Poultry, Experimental Selenium Intoxication in Laboratory Animals, Organic Selenium Compounds, Public Health, and Methods of Analysis for Selenium.

The Geological Distribution of Selenium. Franke et al (49) reported the observation that the cases of "alkali disease" of livestock encountered in their preliminary survey all occurred on "gumbo" soils derived from Pierre shales. Beath and co-workers (7) were the first to work on the geological distribution of selenium in relation to the poisoning of livestock. They had associated poisonous plants with Cretaceous shales before they found selenium in the plants. Many of these plants grow either on the unweathered shale or soils derived from the shale.

Cretaceous formations have contributed most of the selenium for the formation of soils which produce toxic vegetation (8) (9) (14) (15) (19) (103) (113) (114). In South Dakota the Cretaceous formations have been mapped, sampled and analyzed for selenium (113) (114) and with the data thus obtained it is possible to predict, in some detail, areas which are capable of producing toxic vegetation. Stratigraphically the parent material which has produced most of the seleniferous soils in South Dakota (113) (114) (152) occurs near the top of the Pierre formation in the Mobridge member, at the base of the Pierre in the Sharron Springs member, and in the upper (Smoky Hill) member of the Niobrara formation which lies just below the Sharron Springs member of the Pierre formation.

Highly seleniferous soils have been derived from the Mobridge member of the Pierre formation in northern Nebraska and southern South Dakota. Because of the stratigraphic position of this member of the Pierre formation it has been the parent material for soils over large areas. Fortunately, the selenium content of the soils is high only in the areas adjacent to the Missouri River in the south central part of South Dakota and in north central Nebraska (114). To the west and north the selenium content of the Mobridge and the derived soils decreases to unimportant amounts. Soils which have been derived from the Mobridge member are of more value for crop production than the soils which have been

derived from any of the other members of the Pierre formation. Many of the soils derived from the other members are not suitable for cultivation and are used only for grazing purposes.

The Sharron Springs member at the base of the Pierre formation contains considerable quantities of selenium in South Dakota, but its outcrops are limited to small areas and it does not weather readily. Therefore, very little productive soil has been derived from it in this area.

The upper part of the Niobrara formation (Smoky Hill member) appears to be seleniferous and capable of producing toxic vegetation wherever it outcrops or occurs near the surface. Some of the most seleniferous soils in western South Dakota (113) (114) Wyoming (14) (15) (74), Kansas (15) and Colorado (14) (15) have been derived from the Smoky Hill member of the Niobrara formation.

Selenium has been found in formations older than the Cretaceous formations, but in most cases it appears to be present in amounts insufficient to produce highly toxic soils or vegetation. Beath, Gilbert and Eppson (10) reported that formations of Permian and Triassic age contain selenium in Wyoming and Idaho.

Williams, Lakin and Byers have reported that glacial drift contains selenium in North Dakota (190) and in Canada (190) (18). During the past year a detailed study has been made of a glaciated area in South Dakota on which selenium "indicator" plants have been found (164). It was revealed that the selenium in this glacial drift occurs largely in glacial lake silts.

Small amounts of selenium are continually being removed from seleniferous soils by leaching. The Colorado River carries appreciable quantities of selenium below irrigated areas where drainage and seep water come from seleniferous soils (186). This selenium is carried to the Gulf of California. Selenium has been found in deposits from the bottom of the Gulf of Mexico (114) and in the sea-bottom deposits from various parts of the world (187) (15). The fact that ocean water contains no more than a trace of selenium while marine deposits, both ancient (Cretaceous formations) and modern, contain selenium in appreciable quantities indicates that the element is precipitated upon reaching the ocean. The mechanism for the precipitation is suggested by the work of Strock (160), Byers et al. (19) and Olson and Jensen (124) who found that selenite selenium is rapidly precipitated from solution in the presence of colloidal ferric hydroxide.

Selenium has been found in small amounts in some meteorites from various parts of the world (17) and in rather large amounts in volcanic lavas from Hawaii (20).

Selenium in Soils Moxon, Olson and Scaright (114) have estimated that from 60 per cent to 80 per cent of the selenium in the original geological formation is lost in the soil forming processes. Thus, soils containing two to four parts per million of selenium have been formed from geological formations which originally contained about ten parts per million of selenium. The balance of the selenium is lost through leaching during the soil forming processes.

Much of the work which has been done in locating seleniferous soils has been

of a reconnaissance nature. Geological formations which are known to be seleniferous and "indicator" plants (11) have been of great value in these surveys. Byers and co-workers (14) (15) (19) (77) (189) (190) have made the most extensive surveys which have covered large areas in the United States and certain areas in Mexico (16) and Canada (18) (190). In much of the reconnaissance work only samples of surface soil have been taken for analysis, but the intensive field studies of Olson et al. (125) (126) (128) indicate that the selenium content of the surface soil is of little value in predicting the capability of the soil to produce toxic vegetation. The importance of sampling technique in survey work has been pointed out by Olson, Whitehead and Moxon (128). Samples of soils and vegetation taken at two hundred foot intervals showed extremely wide variations in selenium content.

Byers and co-workers (19) (188) have reported that selenium occurs in soils in the following forms: *a*, elemental, *b*, pyritic or selenide, *c*, selenite, *d*, selenate, and *e*, organic. Olson and Moxon (127) found that the humus of some surface soils contained up to 40 per cent of the total selenium. However, recent detailed field studies have shown that the selenium (organic and inorganic) content of the surface soil is of little importance as a source of selenium for plants. The water soluble selenates in the second and third feet of the profile are the important source of available selenium for grass plants. Some selenite was found in this water solution (128).

Lakin, Williams and Byers (79) have shown that there are large areas of highly seleniferous soils in Hawaii and Puerto Rico which do not produce toxic vegetation. They concluded that the selenium in these "non-toxic" soils occurs largely as a basic iron selenite which is not available to plants. Moxon, Olson and Searight (114) found that basic iron selenite was not readily available to plants in greenhouse experiments.

Hurd-Karrer (65) (66) and Byers (14) from greenhouse experiments have reported that the sulfate content of soils has a great influence on the absorption of selenium by plants. In experiments carried out by the South Dakota Experiment Station (43) on field plots in a seleniferous area, the addition of sulfur failed to inhibit the absorption of selenium by crop plants. Hurd-Karrer (68) observed that sulfates would protect plants against selenates but not against selenites. Selenates constitute the main source of selenium available to plants at least in some highly seleniferous soils (128) but since the available selenium occurs in the second and third feet of the soil profile, it would be difficult to mix sulfates or other forms of sulfur into the soil thoroughly enough to be of much practical value. Furthermore, the seleniferous soils usually contain high concentrations of sulfates.

Absorption of Selenium by Plants Cameron (21) appears to be the first to have demonstrated that plants would absorb selenium from soils to which it had been added. He reported his work in 1880. In 1885 Knop (75) demonstrated that selenic and selenous acids are absorbed by plants. In 1934 Beath et al. (6) reported that certain plants could be used as "indicators" for seleniferous soils and geological formations. These "indicator" plants are all classified

in the genera *Stanleya*, *Oenopsis*, *Xylorrhiza* and *Astragalus* (certain species) Field observations (8) (9) (19) (103) suggested that selenium was essential for the growth of the "indicator" plants, and Trelease and Trelease (176) have reported that selenium is a stimulating if not an essential, element for "indicator" plants They have also studied physiological differences of "indicator" species, and "non indicator" species of *Astragalus* (177) Trelease (172) has classified a number of species of *Astragalus* by germination tests in the presence and absence of sodium selenite Beath, Gilbert and Eppson (11) have recently summarized their extensive work with "indicator" plants

In range areas the highly seleniferous "indicator" plants are of importance as a livestock hazard In seleniferous farming areas, however, the "indicator" plants are usually not as abundant as they are in grazing areas, and because of the nature of the associated vegetation they are not especially important as a livestock hazard Crop plants and grasses are sources of selenium causing livestock losses in farming areas While the selenium content of "indicator" plants often reaches several thousand parts per million, the selenium content of cereals is seldom as much as one hundred parts per million

There has been no satisfactory explanation for the ability of "indicator" plants to absorb such large amounts of selenium under conditions where ordinary plants absorb only traces of the element This certainly, should be a challenging problem for plant physiologists and plant biochemists

Robinson (147) determined the selenium content of wheat from various parts of the world A sample from South Africa contained 1.5 p.p.m.,⁴ which was the highest amount found in imported samples, except for a sample from Saskatchewan, Canada which contained 1.9 p.p.m. Samples of wheat collected from seleniferous areas in South Dakota contain up to 30 p.p.m. of selenium and one sample of wheat which was grown on soils derived from the Niobrara formation has been found to contain 63 p.p.m. of selenium. This is the highest concentration of selenium in any sample of field grown wheat collected from seleniferous areas Hurd Karrer (67) produced wheat containing 220.0 p.p.m. of selenium by adding sodium selenate to soil in the greenhouse The sample of wheat which contained 63 p.p.m. of selenium was milled in an experimental mill (115) and the fractions analyzed for selenium. The bran contained 88.44 p.p.m., the shorts 77.18 p.p.m. and the patent flour 53.20 p.p.m. of selenium The percentage distribution of selenium in the fractions of this milled sample was comparable to the distribution of selenium in three other samples of wheat, of lower selenium content, which were milled and analyzed at the same time.

Thorvaldson and Johnson (171) of the University of Saskatchewan analyzed 230 composite samples representing 2,230 individual samples of wheat, mainly from the 1938 crop grown in the province of Saskatchewan The maximum selenium content of the composites was 1.5 p.p.m. Individual samples were found with a maximum of 4.0 p.p.m. selenium

Byers and Lakin (18) analyzed a number of "indicator" plants and a few miscellaneous plant samples from the provinces of Alberta, Saskatchewan and

⁴ p.p.m. = parts per million

Manitoba, Canada One sample of young wheat plants from Saskatchewan contained 120 p p m of selenium, another sample contained 30 p p m

Lakin and Byers (78) determined the selenium content of 951 samples of wheat and wheat products from Minnesota, North Dakota, South Dakota, Nebraska, Kansas, Colorado, Wyoming and Montana Slightly more than 30 per cent of the samples collected in South Dakota contained over 40 p p m of selenium Five per cent of the samples from Kansas contained over 40 p p m of selenium It should be pointed out that their samples are by no means representative of wheat produced in states where seleniferous areas have been mapped, because they selected most of their samples in areas known to be highly seleniferous If their samples had been picked at random like the samples collected in Canada (171) the average selenium content would have been much lower This might well be illustrated by the values obtained by Moxon and Sebesta (119) They analyzed 86 samples of wheat grown in 1939 which were taken at random from 14 counties in south central South Dakota Seventy-two of these samples contained less than 10 p p m of selenium Only one sample contained over 40 p p m, and it contained only 5.0 p p m It would have been possible to select samples with higher concentrations of selenium Likewise, it should be possible to select individual samples high in selenium content in other states or in Canada after a study is made of the occurrence of selenium on many individual farms as has been done in South Dakota

Olson, Jorjln and Moxon (126) determined the selenium content of several grasses and plants collected over a three-year period from fenced plots on a highly seleniferous ranch The results indicated that grasses containing from 10 p p m to 20 p p m of selenium will produce typical symptoms of chronic selenium poisoning ("alkali disease") in cattle

Perkins and King (136) found that selenium as sodium selenite when applied at rates up to 25 p p m of the soil in greenhouse experiments stimulated germination, spring growth and harvest weight of Tenmarq wheat Applications of selenium greater than 80 p p m killed the wheat Levine (87) and Stanford and Olson (165) have also observed that selenium in small amounts stimulated the growth of plants For wheat plants grown in culture solutions (68), selenite selenium was more toxic than selenate selenium in the presence of high concentrations of sulfur while the toxicities were reversed if the sulfur concentration was below 30 p p m

Painter and Franke (132) have studied the selenium sulfur relationships in cereal plants and concluded that although the metabolism of selenium and sulfur is similar in cereal plants, it is not identical for these two elements

The Use of Selenium for the Control of Insects on Plants The toxicity of selenium to insects has led to the use of some selenium compounds as control measures Sprays for the control of insects on citrus fruits have been prepared by dissolving selenium in a solution of potassium ammonium sulfide (55) The United States Department of Agriculture in 1933 issued a warning regarding the use of selenium-containing spray materials, because little was known about the effects of the residues of such sprays (123) In the same year the California

Agricultural Experiment Station began a study of the use of selenium-containing sprays on citrus fruits and grapes. In 1938 the results of this study were reported by Hoskins, Boyce and Lamiman (64). The selenium-containing sprays were effective for the control of mites on citrus and grapes. Based on the limited information available at that time, they concluded that if the selenium sprays were properly used there would be no danger to public health, in spite of the relatively high selenium content of the grapes.

Hurd Karrer and Poos (69) found that aphids are killed by concentrations of selenium in wheat plants that are too low to cause injury to the plants. Experiments carried out in Trinidad (138) have shown that cotton plants can be rendered toxic to the cotton stainer and the pink bollworm by the application of small amounts of sodium selenate to the soil. Neiswander and Morris (122) have shown that the application of small amounts of selenium to soils will control red spiders on ornamental plants. They observed significant reduction in both mites and other insects on plants which contained selenium.

On the basis of present information, the application of selenium to soils as a control measure for insects should be discouraged. The concentrations of selenium applied are such that many plants could be made distinctly toxic.

Even though some insects can be killed by adding selenium to the soil or by spraying the plants with selenium compounds, there are certain insects which thrive on highly seleniferous plants and seeds. Trelease and Trelease (175) found weevils (*Acanthoscelides fraterculus*) and seed-chalcids (*Bruchaphogus mexicanus*) completing their life cycles in seeds of *Astragalus bisulcatus*. The seeds contained 1,475 p.p.m. of selenium. Byers et al (19) found flies (possibly *Pseudotephritis*) living on a sample of *Astragalus racemosus* plants which contained 1,800 p.p.m. of selenium. Morton (105) analyzed grasshoppers (*Melanoplus bivittatus*) which were collected from seleniferous plants. They contained as much as 20 p.p.m. of selenium and exhibited no deleterious effects from the seleniferous diet.

Selenium Poisoning in Livestock Selenium poisoning of livestock has been divided into two general classes: chronic and acute or sub acute (20) (103). The chronic type, "alkali disease" is predominant in South Dakota and in other states where seleniferous soils are farmed extensively. It results from the consumption of vegetation, grains and forages containing up to approximately 250 p.p.m. of selenium for a period of several days or weeks. The acute type, "blind staggers," is the common type in Wyoming and in the range areas of other states where highly seleniferous "indicator" plants are abundant. These plants usually contain several thousand parts per million of selenium and frequently cause death within a short time when consumed in relatively small amounts by livestock.

Draize and Beath (29) and Beath et al (7) (8) have described and discussed the acute type of poisoning, "blind staggers," in considerable detail. The term "blind staggers" is a rather misleading designation because the animals may not become blind, and they may not stagger about in all cases. In the early stages the animal may stray from the herd, there is usually a slight impairment of vision and the animal has difficulty in judging nearness of objects in its path.

In the next stage the blindness usually becomes more pronounced and is accompanied in most cases by a depraved appetite and the desire to chew wood, bone, metal objects, etc. There is also a greater tendency to wander, often aimlessly, in circles, and in case a solid object is encountered, the animal makes an effort to push forward rather than to turn to one side and go around the object. The last stage is characterized by various degrees of paralysis. There is evidence of abdominal pain, and death results from failure of respiration, much the same as has been observed in dogs and rats which have been injected with lethal doses of selenium (3) (39). Some of the symptoms observed by Miller and Williams (98) in horses, mules and cattle which had been subjected to lethal doses of sodium selenite were similar to the symptoms of "blind staggers."

Symptoms of the "alkali disease" or chronic selenium poisoning have been observed in a number of "alkalied" animals (29) (103). Dullness and lack of vitality is a general symptom. The animals become emaciated, stiff and lame, and fail to respond to good care and selenium-free feed. A prominent symptom in horses and mules is the loss of the long hair from the mane and tail. For this reason the chronic form of poisoning is often referred to as the "bobtailed disease." This loss of hair from the mane and tail often takes place within a month after horses are moved to seleniferous areas. Madison (92) mentioned the fact that symptoms of the "alkali disease" appeared in dragoon (cavalry) horses brought to Fort Randall just ten days after they arrived from Fort Lookout and from Big Sioux River (eastern South Dakota). Of special interest to the reviewers is the fact that the horses arrived at Fort Randall (from non-seleniferous areas) on August 10, since it has been our observation that symptoms of "alkali disease" usually start to appear at about this time of year in animals on seleniferous ranges. The appearance of the symptoms usually follows very closely the occurrence of hot winds which dry the green vegetation.

The loss of long hair from the mane and tail in horses and mules, and the loss of the long hair from the switch of cattle is usually accompanied or followed shortly by lameness and soreness of the feet. Swelling appears at the coronary band. In very mild cases there may be no further change although the animals may be lame for some time. In severe cases a gradual separation of the wall of the hoof occurs below the coronary band, and a new growth of hoof starts at the coronary band. In some cases the old hoof is sloughed off and in others it remains attached to the new growth until the new hoof has grown to normal length. In cattle the old hoof usually remains attached to the new growth and in cases where there have been several attacks the old ragged hoofs may be 8 or 10 inches long and turned upwards at the end. During the time the animals are sloughing the old hoofs and growing new ones they are very lame and often are in severe pain. Usually they do not move about much and unless feed and water are within easy reach, death may result from starvation and thirst.

As a result of placental transmission of selenium (183) animals may be born with hoofs which show the effects of selenium poisoning (103) (155).

Miller and Williams (99) produced chronic selenium poisoning in horses and mules by feeding small daily doses of sodium selenite over long periods of time.

The symptoms were similar to those of the "alkali disease" but were not quite as pronounced

In hogs the symptoms of "alkali disease" are emaciation, lameness, loss of hair from the body and irregular growth of the hoofs with occasional sloughing of the hoofs similar to the condition in cattle and horses. When young pigs are fed corn containing 10 p.p.m. to 15 p.p.m. of selenium, the symptoms appear within two or three weeks.

Beath (5) has observed that sheep on seleniferous ranges produce lambs with abnormal eyes and deformed feet. In 1935 Draize and Beath (20) published data on 100 autopsies of cattle and sheep suffering from either "blind staggers" or "alkali disease." This report covers both gross pathology and microscopic pathology. Following is a brief summary of their report.

Pathology of "blind staggers" Atony of the smooth muscles of the gastrointestinal tract, gall bladder and bladder is common. The blood vessels of the viscera are congested. In winter cases impaction of the rumen is usually observed. A stasis of the food material is evident also in the omasum. The abomasum and upper small intestine show irritation of varying degrees and petechial hemorrhages and ulceration are noted in severe cases. The large intestine is usually free from irritation. Peritoneal blood vessels are congested and ascites is common.

The liver is acutely congested and areas of focal necrosis appear early in the intoxication. These necrotic areas appear to be connective tissue scars which on contraction form pits upon the surface of the organ. Cirrhosis is not as prevalent in "blind staggers" as it is in "alkali disease." The gall bladder may be enlarged to twice normal size and the walls often exhibit mucoid degeneration and congestion of the blood vessels. There is congestion in the medulla of the kidney and kidney stones are not uncommon in the more advanced cases.

Examination of the heart revealed endocarditis, myocarditis and petechial hemorrhages of the epicardium. Erosion of the long bones, especially the tibia, is found in about two-thirds of the cases. In typical cases of "blind staggers" the hoofs are not involved.

"Alkali disease" The lesions of "alkali disease" are of much more chronic nature than those of "blind staggers." At autopsy the heart and liver show the most severe lesions. In the advanced cases the heart is invariably atrophied (dish rag) and shows evidence of decompensation. Bundles of muscle fibers appear to be separated by a sero-fibrinous exudate. Petechial hemorrhages on the epicardium are not as common as in "blind staggers" but endocarditis and myocarditis are prevalent.

The liver is cirrhotic and often atrophied. Microscopic examination reveals changes typical of cirrhosis. The kidney is usually severely damaged in the "alkali disease" and glomerulo-nephritis is observed in many cases. Both the medulla and cortex of the adrenals are hemorrhagic. Lesions in the gastrointestinal tract are of the same general character as observed in "blind staggers" except that the intense irritation is not observed. Erosion of the joints of the long bones is common in "alkali disease."

A high incidence of anemia is found in both "alkali disease" and "blind stag

gers" The reviewers have observed that the hemoglobin content of the blood can be used to detect early stages of the "alkali disease" in cattle In severe cases the hemoglobin may drop as low as 70 grams per cent (164)

Selenium Poisoning in Poultry Poor hatchability of eggs has always been a common complaint among farmers in "alkalied" or seleniferous areas and this defect can be used as an aid in locating such areas Hatchability is influenced by concentrations of selenium in the feeds that are too low to cause manifest symptoms of poisoning in other farm animals Chicks that do hatch from seleniferous eggs are weak and have a wiry appearing down Experimental work has shown that the developing chick embryo is extremely sensitive to selenium poisoning

Before selenium was suspected as the cause of "alkali disease," Franke and Tully (50) obtained eggs from a farm in an "alkalied" area and incubated them at the South Dakota Agricultural Experiment Station Contrary to the popular belief, nearly all the eggs were fertile Upon examination only 6 out of 133 eggs showed no signs of a developing embryo However, only 5 chicks actually hatched, and 2 of these died within 2 days The rest of the fertile eggs contained deformed embryos in various stages of development Some of the monsters were alive but were unable to make their way from the shell because of their deformities In most of the monsters the upper beak was very short or missing, many of the embryos had deformed legs and wings and some lacked eyes

Tully and Franke (178) then found that a ration containing 65 per cent of grain from an "alkalied" area inhibited growth of chicks, initial egg production of pullets was delayed and total egg production was reduced Later, after Robinson (146) found selenium in the toxic wheat which Franke had supplied, it was shown (103) that inorganic selenium produced the same effects in chickens as had previously been noted from toxic grains This work has also shown that chickens appear to be more sensitive to poisoning by inorganic selenium than white rats Decreased feed intake and production of monsters in the eggs was noted when White Leghorn hens were fed a ration containing 35 p p m of selenium as sodium selenite

In the ration of young chicks 8 p p m of selenium as sodium selenite caused depression in growth, but 4 p p m had no apparent effect

As further evidence that the deformities of the embryos were caused by selenium Franke et al (38) injected small amounts of sodium selenite into the air cells of fertile eggs before incubation Selenium in amounts as low as 0.0005 mgm per egg (0.1 p p m) caused typical deformed embryos

When rations containing seleniferous grains (15 p p m selenium in ration) were fed to laying hens for seven days the hatchability of the eggs decreased to zero but returned to normal in seven days after the hens were changed back to selenium-free rations (140) One per cent of elemental sulfur in seleniferous rations failed to affect the toxic action of selenium

Poley and Moxon (139) studied the tolerance levels of selenium in laying rations Selenium at a level of 25 p p m had no appreciable effect upon hatchability, at a level of 50 p p m hatchability was reduced slightly, and at a level of 100 p p m hatchability was reduced to zero It has been recommended

that starting rations for chicks contain less than 5 p.p.m. of selenium (141) The selenium content of meat and eggs from hens which had been fed a seleniferous ration for six weeks was reported by Moxon and Poley (116) When the ration contained more than 2.5 p.p.m. of selenium, the meat and eggs contained concentrations of selenium in excess of the suggested tolerance limit for foods (15) (121)

Landauer (80) studied the effect of chronic selenium intoxication in laying Creeper hens on their progeny He found that the Creeper mutation exaggerated the interference with normal development caused by selenium. Except for this study by Landauer, all of the published work on selenium poisoning in poultry has been done at the South Dakota Agricultural Experiment Station

Experimental selenium intoxication in laboratory animals The experimental investigation of the action of selenium on the animal body has been stimulated by two interests The earliest interest was in the action of toxic doses of selenium to show the pharmacological relationship of this element to other well known poisons The second interest is in the effect of relatively small amounts of selenium ingested over a long period of time It is now recognized that chronic selenium poisoning of animals has been known for nearly a century, but the possibility of widespread chronic selenosis in humans has been recognized only in the past decade

Acute toxicity of selenium Czapek and Weil (27) credit Japha (70) with the first investigation of the toxicity of selenium Japha reported in 1842 on the action of metallic selenium and various selenium salts on men and animals His subjects were chiefly local animals and himself Rabuteau (143) in 1869 published the results of his investigations on the properties and elimination of selenium (and tellurium) from the animal body He contended that characteristic blood changes were produced, and that death was due to mechanical effect of certain crystals formed in the blood

As the result of work extending over several years, Czapek and Weil (27) reported the pharmacological action of toxic doses of selenium on cold blooded animals (the frog) and warm blooded animals (rabbits, cats and dogs) They used sodium selenite and selenious acid as sources of selenium, assuming that the selenates were toxic to the animal only after reduction to selenite The principal results and conclusions of Czapek and Weil's work may be summarized as follows

The lethal dose for the frog is less than 0.1 mgm. of selenium The essential action is a narcosis of the central nervous system followed by stoppage of the heart in an engorged condition in diastole In general the action of the sodium selenite on the heart was contrary to that of digitalis, and the two compounds counteract each other to a certain extent They concluded that sodium selenite acts on the ganglia of the heart or some other regulatory mechanism rather than directly on the heart muscle itself Death is due to a combination of the effects on the heart and on the central nervous system There was no difference between the action of sodium selenite and sodium arsenite but the latter seemed to kill frogs more quickly in the same dose

In warm blooded animals the first symptoms appear about 5 minutes after

gers" The reviewers have observed that the hemoglobin content of the blood can be used to detect early stages of the "alkali disease" in cattle In severe cases the hemoglobin may drop as low as 70 grams per cent (164)

Selenium Poisoning in Poultry Poor hatchability of eggs has always been a common complaint among farmers in "alkalied" or seleniferous areas and this defect can be used as an aid in locating such areas Hatchability is influenced by concentrations of selenium in the feeds that are too low to cause manifest symptoms of poisoning in other farm animals Chicks that do hatch from seleniferous eggs are weak and have a wiry appearing down Experimental work has shown that the developing chick embryo is extremely sensitive to selenium poisoning

Before selenium was suspected as the cause of "alkali disease," Franke and Tully (50) obtained eggs from a farm in an "alkalied" area and incubated them at the South Dakota Agricultural Experiment Station Contrary to the popular belief, nearly all the eggs were fertile Upon examination only 6 out of 133 eggs showed no signs of a developing embryo However, only 5 chicks actually hatched, and 2 of these died within 2 days The rest of the fertile eggs contained deformed embryos in various stages of development Some of the monsters were alive but were unable to make their way from the shell because of their deformities In most of the monsters the upper beak was very short or missing, many of the embryos had deformed legs and wings and some lacked eyes

Tully and Franke (178) then found that a ration containing 65 per cent of grain from an "alkalied" area inhibited growth of chicks, initial egg production of pullets was delayed and total egg production was reduced Later, after Robinson (146) found selenium in the toxic wheat which Franke had supplied, it was shown (103) that inorganic selenium produced the same effects in chickens as had previously been noted from toxic grains This work has also shown that chickens appear to be more sensitive to poisoning by inorganic selenium than white rats Decreased feed intake and production of monsters in the eggs was noted when White Leghorn hens were fed a ration containing 3.5 p.p.m. of selenium as sodium selenite

In the ration of young chicks 8 p.p.m. of selenium as sodium selenite caused depression in growth, but 4 p.p.m. had no apparent effect

As further evidence that the deformities of the embryos were caused by selenium Franke et al (38) injected small amounts of sodium selenite into the air cells of fertile eggs before incubation Selenium in amounts as low as 0.0005 mgm per egg (0.1 p.p.m.) caused typical deformed embryos

When rations containing seleniferous grains (15 p.p.m. selenium in ration) were fed to laying hens for seven days the hatchability of the eggs decreased to zero but returned to normal in seven days after the hens were changed back to selenium-free rations (140) One per cent of elemental sulfur in seleniferous rations failed to affect the toxic action of selenium

Poley and Moxon (139) studied the tolerance levels of selenium in laying rations Selenium at a level of 25 p.p.m. had no appreciable effect upon hatchability, at a level of 50 p.p.m. hatchability was reduced slightly, and at a level of 100 p.p.m. hatchability was reduced to zero It has been recommended

namely 40 mgm per kgm. All reports agree that selenium metal is not toxic because of its insolubility.

In determining the relative toxicity of arsenic, selenium, tellurium and vanadium Franke and Moxon (39) administered the sodium salts of all the elements by intraperitoneal injection. The relative toxicity in decreasing order was tellurite, selenite, vanadate, arsenite, selenate, arsenate and tellurate. No deaths were noted from 1600 mgm./kgm. of molybdenum as ammonium molybdate.

Smith, Stohlman and Lillie (159) noted that repeated small doses of selenium were cumulative in effect, although the amount required to kill in this manner was greater than in a single dose. They found no evidence of a tolerance being acquired, as had been reported by Modica (101). Marked individual variation in susceptibility to selenium toxicity was noted for rats, cats, and rabbits, and the same has been reported for dogs (3).

The characteristic blood changes which Rabuteau (143) ascribed to selenium poisoning have not been observed by subsequent investigators (26) (27) (195). The only recent study of the changes in the blood picture due to acute selenium poisoning is that of Anderson and Moxon (3). They summarized the characteristic blood changes in dogs as follows: Marked rise in hemoglobin and as much as 62 per cent rise in hematocrit. Decrease in inorganic phosphorus, non-protein nitrogen, calcium, ascorbic acid, and blood sugar. Reduction in glutathione content of the blood was indicated. No effort was made to determine the presence of the characteristic crystals in the blood described by Rabuteau, but not found by other workers.

Recently Moxon and Rhian (117) have investigated the effects of massive doses of selenium as sodium selenite (20 mgm./kgm.) administered subcutaneously to dogs. It has been observed that death results in 25 to 30 minutes after administration of the selenium. This observation may be used for comparison with other investigators' reports that doses of 4 mgm./kgm. or more of selenium result in death "in a few minutes," or "in a relatively short time."

That the toxicity of sodium selenite injected intraperitoneally can be influenced by other compounds was reported by DuBois, Rhian and Moxon (31). Reduced glutathione, in a ratio of 10 moles to one mole of selenium, when injected two hours before the selenium prevented death in 8 of 10 rats given 3.0 to 3.5 mgm. of selenium per kilogram. The same amount of glutathione was ineffective when 40 mgm./kgm. of selenium was given, showing that large excesses of GSH are necessary for the protective effect.

Dudley (34) has reported that selenium oxychloride is extremely vesicant and toxic. When 0.01 cc. was applied to the skin of a rabbit death occurred in less than 24 hours. The reviewers have noted that one drop of the compound applied to the skin of a dog produced death in a few hours.

Sub-acute and chronic toxicity of selenium. The comprehensive investigation of the chronic toxicity of selenium was begun by Franke in 1928 as stated earlier in this review. Since then many investigators have shown that symptoms produced by feeding naturally toxic (seleniferous) rations and normal

(selenium-free) rations with added inorganic selenium are virtually identical (40) (44) (46) (57) (94) (121) (150) The more important symptoms of sub-acute selenium poisoning in the white rat described by Franke (36) and Franke and Potter (45) may be summarized as follows *a*, marked restriction of food intake, *b*, decreased growth, *c*, marked, progressive anemia, and *d*, definite pathological changes especially in the liver Rats fed a diet with a selenium content which produces a condition of sub-acute toxicity restrict their food consumption to as little as 25 per cent of that of rats fed a similar diet without selenium Most of the rats assume a characteristic hunched posture In a few cases the hind legs become paralyzed The fur becomes rough and is stained a dark yellow around the genitals In rats that die in a short time, gross pathology is not evident The most marked symptom is dilatation of the veins of the visceral region The lungs and liver usually have a congested appearance The reproductive organs are undeveloped and may show degeneration The intestines show evidence of hemorrhage, the animals are jaundiced and very emaciated

Rats fed a ration with a lower selenium content may be said to show symptoms of chronic poisoning They may show slight increases in weight and appear to be in fair condition, but their reproduction may be impaired (48) In many cases a definite breakdown of vital organs takes place They develop an anemia of progressive severity and die with hemoglobin levels as low as 2.0 grams per 100 cc blood The most outstanding pathology is in the liver which is atrophied, necrotic, cirrhotic and hemorrhagic in varying degrees In cases of active liver regeneration it is usually found that the right lateral and/or the caudate lobes are hypertrophied The left lateral and central lobes are most susceptible to atrophy In many cases the heart and the spleen are enlarged Ascites and pleural edema are common In some instances death results from internal hemorrhage from the liver Lillie and Smith (91) have studied the histogenesis of the liver changes associated with chronic selenosis

Recognizing that there are individual variations it may be said that in general symptoms of chronic poisoning in rats are common when the ration contains 5 to 15 p.p.m. of selenium, and sub-acute symptoms are produced when the ration contains 15 to 25 p.p.m. selenium or more

The tendency for range animals to avoid certain plants, or the common vegetation of well-defined areas, has long been recognized in relation to "alkali disease" An analogous situation has been shown to exist in laboratory feeding trials Rats given a choice of rations invariably avoided those containing either naturally occurring selenium or sodium selenite (47) Miller and Schoening (100) noted that young pigs were loath to eat corn containing selenium Admittedly, the lower food intake of the animals accounts for some of the symptoms of selenium toxicity, but Franke and Potter (45), Franke and Painter (42) and Munsell, DeVaney and Kennedy (121) have shown that the other symptoms and at least part of the growth effect are due to the selenium in the ration

Relatively little experimental work on chronic selenium poisoning has been done with laboratory animals other than the rat Smith, Westfall and Stohl-

man (161) (162), Smith, Stohlman and Lillie (159), and Westfall, Stohlman and Smith (183) have reported investigations using cats and rabbits. Moxon (107) studied selenium poisoning in pigs under laboratory conditions and Rhian and Moxon (144) have used 34 dogs in studies on the toxicity of orally ingested selenium. Ellis et al (35) have studied selenium poisoning in fishes which were kept in water containing small amounts of selenium.

Smith and his co-workers have been especially interested in securing information on the chronic toxicity of selenium that may be directly applicable to interpretation of their survey data on selenium poisoning in humans. They noted in some of their work (161) that the susceptibility of the cat, rabbit and rat to selenium poisoning decreased in that order. The cat, in common with other carnivora, showed more intestinal symptoms than the rabbit. It is also interesting that these investigators have found no anemia in cats suffering from chronic selenium poisoning. In later reports (156) (157) they concluded that the species differences in susceptibility could be accounted for on the basis of the selenium:protein ratio of the diet. It is still questionable whether this conclusion can be applied to species differences mentioned in other reports.

In their work with dogs, Rhian and Moxon (144) found that these animals exhibited most of the symptoms shown by the rat and many shown by larger (farm) animals. In general the dog is more susceptible to chronic selenium poisoning than the rat.

The principal symptoms of chronic or sub-acute selenium poisoning described for the dog are as follows:

As shown by voluntary restriction of food intake and sub-normal growth, as little as 7.2 p.p.m. of selenium in the ration in the natural form (in corn) and 10 p.p.m. as added sodium selenite were toxic. As added sodium selenite, 20 p.p.m. selenium in the ration induced almost complete refusal of food and death in a very short time. This amount of selenium in the natural form produced severe nervous disorders (resembling blind staggers). Pathologically the liver and spleen were most severely affected. Small localized hemorrhages were noted in the intestines. Severe ascites was quite common. The dogs became markedly emaciated and the hair became coarse and rough. In the later stages of intoxication apathy was common.

Chronic or sub-acute selenium poisoning has little effect on the commonly determined blood constituents of the dog, except hemoglobin. Anemia in dogs becomes progressively more severe as the selenium poisoning progresses, terminal values for hemoglobin being as low as 3.5 grams per cent. Phosphatase activity of the blood is increased and non-protein nitrogen is slightly reduced.

Distribution of selenium in the body The occurrence of selenium in the animal body has been shown to be related to the amount and form of selenium administered and length of time of administration. Dudley (32) has studied the distribution of selenium in acute cases of poisoning and Smith, Westfall and Stohlman (161) have summarized the limited information available up to 1937, on the distribution of selenium in the animal body.

In cases of acute selenium toxicity, there is excretion of selenium as a volatile,

very odoriferous compound in the breath. It has been claimed that this compound is methyl selenide (61), but definite proof of this is lacking (151). Miller and Williams (98) obtained some information on the amount of selenium retained by horses, mules, pigs, and a calf in cases of acute poisoning. In general they found selenium in all tissues examined except hide and hair. The kidney, liver, lung and spleen invariably contained the most selenium, and its occurrence in less active tissues of the body was apparently in direct ratio to the time of survival.

Smith, Westfall and Stohlman (162) studied the distribution of selenium in doses up to two-thirds of the minimum lethal dose. It was noted that as soon as 5 minutes after the intravenous injection of sodium selenite the concentration in the kidney exceeded that in the blood. The selenium content of the kidney and liver increased, and that of the blood decreased for 6 hours after which there was a continued gradual excretion of the selenium from all parts of the body. It was noted that in all cases the concentration of selenium in the red blood cells was greater than that in the blood plasma.

Through the use of radioactive selenium McConnell (95) has studied the distribution of a single sub-toxic dose of sodium selenate in the body of the rat up to 96 hours after administration. A wide but varied distribution of selenium was found in the tissues examined. The greatest concentration of selenium was found in the liver, muscle, gastro-intestinal tract and blood. Lesser amounts of selenium were found in lung, spleen, heart and tumor and none was found after 24 hours in skin, fur, teeth or long bones. Small amounts were deposited in tumor tissue. Selenium was excreted chiefly through the kidney, only a small amount being excreted in the feces. In a later report (96) it was noted that 3 to 10 per cent of a single dose of selenium was exhaled in the first 24 hours. The volatile compound was not identified.

The distribution of selenium in the animal body after chronic poisoning has been studied thoroughly by Dudley (32), Smith, Westfall and Stohlman (161), Munsell, DeVaney and Kennedy (121), Moxon (103), Rhian and Moxon (144) and Anderson and Moxon (1).

After oral administration of selenium to produce chronic poisoning, all the tissues of the body contain some selenium. To some extent, the amount and kind of selenium in the ration and the length of the period of administration influence the amounts in various tissues. Munsell, DeVaney and Kennedy (121) found that when rats were fed a seleniferous ration over a long period of time, the selenium content increased to a maximum during the first 4 to 8 weeks of feeding and remained constant thereafter. If the poisoning did not become increasingly severe, the excretion balanced the intake. Excretion takes place through three channels, the breath, urine and feces. Smith, Westfall and Stohlman (161) have shown that in the cat 50 to 80 per cent of the total selenium is excreted in the urine and from a trace up to 18 per cent in the feces.

In the body the highest concentration of selenium is found in the liver, kidneys, spleen, pancreas, and lung. Other less active tissues contain relatively much less selenium. It was noted (162) that more selenium is retained in the

body when the ration contains naturally occurring organic selenium than when it contains sodium selenite. Conversely, urinary excretion of sodium selenite is greater. Using a ration containing 18 p.p.m. selenium, Anderson and Moxon (1) using smaller concentrations of selenium than used by Smith, Westfall and Stohlman, noted no difference in retention of naturally occurring selenium and sodium selenite. Retention of selenium was a maximum during the first week of feeding, and steadily decreased after that time. When the rats were placed on a selenium free ration, most of the selenium was excreted from the body within two weeks after the change. Individual variation in selenium content of the tissues is very marked (144).

Data obtained by the reviewers and others (164) indicate that when cattle graze on naturally seleniferous plants, the distribution of selenium in the body is qualitatively the same as that noted for experimental animals. For eight steers that had been on seleniferous range for two seasons the average analysis of body tissues (on the fresh weight) showed a concentration of 3.05 p.p.m. selenium in the hoof, 2.2 p.p.m. in the kidney and 1.2 p.p.m. in the liver. All the other parts of the carcass were lower in selenium content, the muscle containing 0.88 p.p.m. For 30 steers that had been on the same range for three seasons the average selenium content of the liver was 5.7 p.p.m., the kidney 4.1 p.p.m., and the muscle 3.0 p.p.m.

The characteristic pathology of the stomach noted in chronic selenium poisoning has aroused interest in its effect on the function of this organ. Smith and Stohlman (158) have reviewed the meager literature on this subject up to 1940. In their own experiments they found that chronic selenium poisoning in rats and cats had no essential effect on free or total gastric acidity.

From a study of the effects of chronic selenium poisoning on liver function in rabbits and cats, Smith, Westfall and Stohlman (163) concluded that liver function measured by the rose bengal, bilirubin and hippuric acid tests could be correlated with the structural changes in the liver. The rose bengal test was most sensitive in measuring liver dysfunction due to selenosis.

A number of investigators have commented on the effect of selenium on blood sugar and liver glycogen. Wright summarized the information available to 1941 (194). From his own work he concluded that doses of sodium selenite greater than 50 mgm./kgm. cause increase in blood sugar and over 100 mgm. cause decrease in liver glycogen in the rat. In the rabbit, 30 mgm./kgm. cause an increase in blood sugar, followed in the fasted rabbit by a sharp fall preceding death. He also noted that fasted rats injected with sodium selenite have a lowered glucose tolerance and delayed deposition of liver glycogen from the injected glucose. The observations of Svrbely (170) and Lardy and Moxon (82) suggest that ascorbic acid may play an important rôle in the detoxification of selenium.

Effect of selenium on the blood Franke and Potter (45) observed that one of the symptoms of chronic selenium poisoning in rats was a progressive anemia. Terminal values as low as 20 grams per cent hemoglobin were noted. This effect was first noted when the ration contained naturally toxic grain and has

been shown to be caused also by rations containing sodium selenite (46) (150) Smith, Stohlman and Lillie (159) have further studied the anemia of the rat and observed that the chief characteristics are "relatively low hemoglobin compared to the red count, marked reticulocytosis which at times may be as high as 80 per cent, anisocytosis, polychromatophilia and normoblasts in greater or lesser numbers"—"The anemia when well developed is essentially microcytic and hypochromic" These same workers observed that cats seem to be less inclined to show anemia in chronic selenium poisoning Only two out of fourteen cats given daily doses of 0.2 to 0.25 mgm selenium per kilogram showed definite anemia

Progressive anemia is a constant symptom of selenium poisoning in dogs (144) Hemoglobin values of 4.0 grams per cent were noted in dogs that lived a relatively long time on a ration containing selenium In other instances, terminal values of 3.5 grams per cent have been observed in young puppies severely affected by chronic selenium poisoning (117)

Aside from the characteristic anemia, chronic selenium poisoning of the dog seems to have no characteristic effect on the blood picture (144) Preliminary data indicate an elevation of blood phosphatase values, and a slight reduction in non-protein nitrogen (This effect on phosphatase is contrary to that observed by Bauer (4))

Observations on the blood picture of cattle grazing on seleniferous range have failed to reveal any pronounced changes except for the hemoglobin levels (164)

The effect of dietary factors on selenium poisoning Early in the investigation of the "alkali disease," Franke and co-workers (103) attempted to find a dietary factor (or factors) that would prevent or reduce the toxicity of seleniferous rations Various feeding trials with rats showed that changing the calcium and phosphorus content (2.8 per cent to 11.2 per cent tri-calcium phosphate) and the Ca/P ratio of the ration (1.2 to 1.6) had no beneficial effect That vitamins A and D had no close relationship to selenium poisoning was shown by feeding a ration containing up to 4 per cent of cod liver oil Yeast as a source of vitamin B complex (up to 0.8 gram per rat per day as a supplement) had no beneficial effect The combined effect of supplements of orange juice, dry yeast and cod liver oil gave improved growth to rats but did not change the characteristic pathology due to selenium In more recent work (164) it has been noted that daily administration of crystalline vitamin B₁ (either orally or by injection) to rats fed a ration containing 12 p.p.m. of selenium greatly increased the severity of the symptoms

Cystine to the extent of 5 per cent of the ration had no alleviating effects on selenium poisoning and at the higher level seemed to be slightly toxic itself Schneider (150) also fed cystine at concentrations of 0.2, 0.4, and 0.6 per cent of the ration and noted no beneficial results Sulfur fed at 0.5 per cent of the ration was not beneficial in selenium poisoning and itself was slightly detrimental to rats and chickens (103)

The effect of the protein content of the ration on selenium poisoning has been investigated (56) (90) (103) (153) (157) From feeding rations of high, normal,

SELENIUM POISONING

and low protein content (with equal caloric value) it was concluded South Dakota workers (103) that selenium poisoning was less severe than with a high protein content. This conclusion has been substantiated by Smith (153) and Smith and Stohlman (157) who have extended the observations as a possible explanation for certain previously observed species differences in susceptibility to selenium poisoning. Expressed on the basis of per cent selenium per 100 grams of ration, they concluded that a selenium ratio of 1:30 or less is non-toxic, while a ratio of 1:10 is dangerously toxic. Contrary to the finding of Smith and Stohlman (157) that a ration with the same selenium content and a protein selenium ratio of 1:10 is dangerously toxic, neither cystine nor methionine were themselves of value in alleviating the toxic effect of selenium. Schultz and Lewis (151) found that addition of methionine to a methionine deficient ration did have beneficial effects. Probably the protective effect noted is due to more than the methionine content of the diet (157).

Proteins derived from wheat, dried brewers' yeast, desiccated liver, and zein (157) have definite value in the alleviation or prevention of chronic selenium poisoning. Lactalbumin, ovalbumin, gelatin, and trypsin (157) do not agree on the action of all these proteins. Moxon (103) that of commercial proteins fed to rats crude casein and linseed meal were the only ones that prevented the characteristic liver lesions. Crude casein gave excellent growth response and linseed meal gave the best growth of the vegetable proteins used, but not as good as casein or dried liver. Dried whole beef liver, Labco (purified) casein, and whole milk powder all gave good growth, but failed to prevent or alleviate pathological lesions of selenium poisoning. Meat scraps, tankage and corn gluten meal gave poor growth and no protection against selenium poisoning.

In experiments with dogs it was noted that dried beef liver (18 per cent of the ration) gave excellent growth and prevented all the symptoms of selenium poisoning. Linseed meal gave poor growth and no protection against selenium poisoning. Crude casein and tankage gave good protection in dogs and was the only protein to protect both rats and dogs. The species differences shown by this work with rats and dogs emphasizes the need for experimental work with farm animals before any practical applications can be recommended.

It may be well to mention that although Smith and Stohlman (157) found good protective action by the proteins of wheat and corn for the rat, experiments with dogs in this laboratory have shown no particular protective action for these proteins (104). In fact, the most severe cases of poisoning in dogs have occurred on rations containing large amounts of these proteins.

There is disagreement concerning the effect of the fat content of the ration on selenium poisoning. Moxon (103) reported that in a ration containing 37.5 p.p.m. of selenium the percentage of fat in the ration had very little influence on the toxicity of selenium. Smith (153) observed some beneficial effect from a ration of low protein and high fat content, but suggests the result may come from the protein sparing action of the fat.

Effect of other elements In experiments designed to show the effect of certain other elements administered concurrently with selenium (104) (110) (164) it has been noted that fluorine, molybdenum, chromium, vanadium, cadmium, zinc, cobalt, nickel and uranium caused an increase in mortality. All these elements were given in the drinking water at a concentration of 5 p p m with a ration containing 11 p p m selenium. The same amount of soluble tungsten prevented, to a limited extent, the typical liver lesions caused by selenium and decreased mortality. A level of 25 p p m tungsten reduced mortality slightly but did not prevent liver lesions.

Surprisingly enough, 5 p p m of arsenic as sodium arsenite administered in the same manner completely prevented the symptoms of selenium poisoning. Greater feed consumption and better growth resulted from giving 25 p p m of arsenic, but liver lesions were not entirely prevented. DuBois, Moxon and Olson (30) have further shown that sodium arsenite and arsenate are equally effective in counteracting the effect of selenium in seleniferous wheat, while arsenic sulfides (AsS_2 and AsS_3) are ineffective. Sodium arsenite was equally effective against selenium in the form of seleniferous wheat, sodium selenite and the selenium analogue of cystine. It was noted that 10 p p m arsenic in the ration gave slightly better results than 5 p p m in the drinking water, due to a slightly higher arsenic intake. Arsenic was effective in treating rats that had been fed the seleniferous ration for 20 days previous to beginning the arsenic treatment, but was ineffective after the rats had been on the toxic ration for 30 days.

Lead had no effect on the toxicity of selenium, but bismuth (subnitrate) had a slightly beneficial effect.

It has been noted that growing chicks are more sensitive to arsenic than rats or dogs, and the arsenic treatment of chicks is thus less successful than the treatment of rats or dogs (108).

Subsequent work with chickens (108) has shown that 10 p p m of arsenic in the drinking water nearly counteracts the effect of 14 p p m of selenium in the ration. More recent studies (164) have shown that arsenic markedly improves hatchability of eggs from hens fed a seleniferous ration.

Moxon (107) has reported prevention by arsenic of selenium poisoning in a pig raised under laboratory conditions, and Rhian and Moxon (144) have shown that 5 p p m of arsenic in the drinking water will prevent selenium poisoning in dogs fed a ration containing approximately 10 p p m selenium.

Recent work in the reviewers' laboratory (164) has further substantiated the relationship of the time of administration of selenium and arsenic noted by DuBois, Moxon, and Olson (30). When an amount of selenium equivalent to that consumed in a ration containing 12 p p m selenium was injected daily and 5 p p m of arsenic in the water was given *ad lib*, death resulted in over half the animals. When the selenium was given in the ration and arsenic equivalent of that consumed in the water was injected daily, no deaths resulted. When the selenium was in the ration and arsenic in the water, no deaths resulted.

Arsenic in the form of certain organic compounds (neocarsphenamine and sulfarsphenamine) equivalent to 5 p p m. arsenic in the drinking water, was not quite as effective as sodium arsenite at the same level of arsenic.

It has been noted that antimony trichloride fed in the ration has about the same activity as organic arsenic in preventing selenium poisoning. Sodium antimoniate has given no protection against selenium poisoning.

Effect of certain organic compounds Stekol (166) showed that bromobenzene and naphthalene were detoxified in the body of the rat, dog and rabbit by conjugation with tissue cystine and methionine and excreted in the urine as *p*-hromophenyl mercapturic acid. The close relationship between sulfur and selenium compounds suggested an investigation of the action of bromobenzene and similar compounds in selenium poisoning. Moxon et al (118) reported that administration of bromobenzene to rats and dogs fed a seleniferous ration increased the urinary selenium output. Moxon (108) noted that administration of either bromobenzene, benzene or naphthalene to steers grazing on seleniferous range caused a rise in urinary selenium output. The selenium content of the blood decreased in most cases. This observation suggests that these aromatic compounds aid in converting tissue selenium into a compound that is readily excreted from the kidney.

These observations suggest that much more work should be done on the nature of compounds that will promote excretion of selenium from the animal body.

Effect of selenium on enzyme systems That selenium has direct effect on certain unicellular organisms and enzyme systems has been known for many years. Czapek and Weil (27) state that Chabrie (22) had found sodium selenite to inhibit alcoholic fermentation. They concluded that the growing yeast cells reduced the selenite to metallic selenium. This inhibiting action was later confirmed by Woodruff and Gies (195) and more recently by Moxon and Franke (112) who extended the observation to show the relative toxicity of selenium and other metals to fermentation systems. They found that during yeast fermentation of glucose, as measured by CO_2 production, selenium was more toxic than vanadium, arsenic, and tellurium. The toxicity of sodium selenite, selenide and selenate decreased in that order. Sodium sulfide partially counteracted the toxic effects of the selenium salts, but elemental sulfur had almost no action of this type. Sodium sulfite, ammonium sulfate and sodium thiosulfate were unable to counteract the toxic effects of selenium. Later Lardy and Moxon (81) noted that 0.2 mgm. of arsenic would almost completely counteract the effect of 1 mgm. of selenium in inhibiting the fermentation of glucose by bakers' yeast.

Gastler (53) found that selenium salts had no effect on the saccharogenic activity of malt diastase, taka diastase and amylase.

Levine (88) has reviewed the literature pertaining to the action of selenium salts on bacterial growth and the action of such cultures in reducing selenium compounds.

The action of selenium salts on isolated enzyme systems has been investigated

for various purposes Collett (23) showed that selenite and selenate inhibit the action of succinoxidase, and in later work Collett and co-workers (24) (25) have used selenium to determine the specificity of certain dehydrogenases

Labes and Krebs (76) found that 0.02 per cent sodium selenite inhibited the action of succinoxidase of pig's muscle Potter and Elvehjem (142) demonstrated that by using sugars as substrates, selenium caused 80 per cent inhibition in the oxygen uptake of living yeast cells Less than 10 per cent inhibition was noted when pyruvate or lactate was used as substrate These workers suggest the action of the selenite may be indirect, through its action on glutathione as has been suggested by Bersin (13)

Wright (191) showed that selenium inhibits the oxygen consumption of mammalian (rat) tissue slices Using glucose or succinic, pyruvic, lactic or citric acids as substrate, kidney, brain, muscle and tumor slices were incapable of oxidation With the liver slices the action of selenium was an initial stimulation followed by inhibition All the tissues rapidly oxidize p-phenylene-diamine in the presence of selenium Reduced glutathione or pyruvic acid would protect the tissue from the action of selenium if they were added with the selenium If the selenium was allowed to act for a time before the glutathione or pyruvic acid was added, the oxygen consumption was not restored Wright concluded that selenium is a general hydrogenase inhibitor Later Wright (192) measured the effect of diselenodiacetic acid on tissue slices The selenium in this compound inhibited the oxygen consumption of slices of rat liver, brain, and kidney, but had no effect on muscle tissue Anaerobic glycolysis of liver, kidney, or tumor slices was not affected by this organic compound

While investigating the effect of selenium on rat livers Wright (193) found that selenium as sodium selenite, selenate or diselenodiacetic acid inhibits the activity of urease but has no specific effect on liver arginase This further indicates a relationship between selenium and those enzymes dependent on the action of sulphydryl groups

Bernheim and Klein (12) have classified enzymes on the basis of their reaction to or with selenium into three groups "those relatively insusceptible to selenium, including the glucose, lactate, and pyruvate oxidases of brain and probably l-tyrosine, xanthine, and alcohol oxidases of liver, (b) those in which selenium catalyzes the destruction of an active group, including succinoxidases, choline oxidase, d-proline oxidase, and tyramine oxidase, and (c) l-proline oxidase which is inactivated immediately, suggesting that selenium combines with an active group"

It seems that work on the specific action of selenium on the enzyme systems of the animal body is in its infancy, and much more information is required before the exact mechanism of selenium poisoning can be elucidated

Organic selenium compounds Painter has reviewed the literature on organic selenium compounds up to 1941 (129) so only those compounds of immediate biological interest will be discussed here

The early work of Franke (37) and Franke and Painter (41) (42) (131) (133) (130) showed definitely that the selenium in toxic cereals was associated with the

proteins of the cereals. The studies indicated that the selenium is an integral part of the protein molecule and consequently there has been much speculation regarding the possibility of selenium replacing sulfur in cystine and methionine. The selenium analogue of cystine has been prepared by Fredga (51) (52) and Painter (135). Painter (135) has also recently prepared phenyl-seleno-cysteine, benzyl-seleno-cysteine, benzyl-seleno-homocystine.

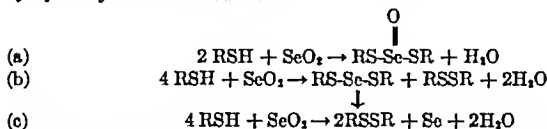
Painter, Franka and Gortner (134) synthesized organic diselenides, selenium ethers and seleninic acids of acetic, β propionic, n propyl, and benzyl radicals. They studied the relationship of these compounds and the selenium compounds in plants (133) in regard to their decomposition in alkaline solutions. Moxon, Anderson and Painter (109) have compared the toxicities of these organic compounds and selenium in wheat.

The toxicity of the selenium analogue of cystine (106) (111) is comparable to the toxicity of selenium in seleniferous grains and in sodium selenite, while toxicity of selenium in all other organic selenium compounds investigated has been much less (106) (109) (111). This is further evidence that selenium may occur in cereal proteins as the selenium analogue of a sulfur amino acid. Horn and Jones (62) have isolated a crystalline amino acid complex containing selenium and sulfur from highly seleniferous *Astragalus pectinatus*. They have tentatively assigned a structure to the components of their complex and they state "It is believed that the selenium in toxic wheat and other grains is combined in the protein as an amino acid having a similar structure."

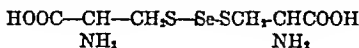
They have not published data on the toxicity of the amino acid complex but Horn, Jones, and Rungle (63) have published articles on the isolation of a new sulfur-containing amino acid (lanthionine) from sodium carbonate-treated wool. Lanthionine is similar in structure to the selenium containing amino acid complex. Du Vigneaud and Brown (179) have synthesized lanthionine so it should be possible to synthesize the selenium analogue and determine its toxicity.

There is very little definite information on the mechanism of selenium toxicity. There is however, some information on its effect on unicellular organisms and enzyme systems (see section on Effect of Selenium on Enzymes).

Selenite will oxidize sulphydryl compounds forming disulfide and an unstable RS-Se-SR compound. According to Painter (129) the action of selenite on sulphydryls may take three courses



Stekol (167) has reported the preparation of selenium tetracysteine from sodium selenite and cysteine hydrochloride. Using the same compounds Painter (129) reported the preparation of selenium dicycysteine as shown below



Compounds of the type $RS-Se-SR$ are unstable as shown by reactions (b) and (c) above and are, therefore, difficult to isolate in the pure form. Painter (135) is of the opinion that the reaction of selenite and cysteine would take place according to reactions (b) and (c) rather than by the reaction which Stekol has reported.

Bersin (13) prepared $HOOCCH_2S-Se-SCH_2COOH$ from thioglycolic acid and selenite. He believes that a similar unstable compound is formed from selenite and glutathione. Crude glutathione isolated from the blood of selenized cattle contains some selenium (2). DuBois, Rhian and Moxon (31) have shown that injections of reduced glutathione will protect rats against doses of selenite which ordinarily cause death. The administration of arsenic (either oral or injected) will likewise protect rats against the toxic action of selenium (either oral or injected). This action of arsenic would suggest the possibility of some reaction between arsenic and selenium compounds *in vivo*. Arsenious acid will react with cysteine to form arsenious tri-cysteine (71) (167). Possibly arsenic reacts with selenium compounds in such a way as to keep the selenium compounds from attacking the sulfhydryl compounds of the body.

Public Health The relationship of selenium poisoning to public health was reviewed by Manville (93) in 1938 and by Smith in 1940 (154).

Smith, Franke and Westfall (155) in 1935 made a survey involving 111 families living in seleniferous areas of Wyoming, South Dakota, and Nebraska to determine the possibility of selenium intoxication through the ingestion of seleniferous foodstuffs. They found that urines from 92 per cent of the individuals examined contained selenium in amounts varying from 2 to 133 micrograms per 100 cc. This, of course, gave definite proof that selenium was being ingested, but they were unable to discover any symptoms pathognomonic of selenium poisoning. Smith and Westfall (160) made field studies in 1936 and were unable to reach any more definite conclusions about the symptomatology of selenium poisoning in humans.

Lemley (85) and Lemley and Merryman (86) became interested in selenium poisoning in humans in connection with several cases of acute dermatitis. Urine specimens from these cases contained selenium in amounts comparable to the selenium content of urines collected from farm animals suffering from selenium poisoning. Lemley and Merryman (85) (86) administered bromobenzene to the patients with dermatitis and found that it gave immediate relief, and most cases were cleared completely within two or three weeks. Westfall and Smith (184) were unable to increase the rate of elimination of selenium from rabbits by the administration of bromobenzene and have discouraged its use in human cases of selenium poisoning. Nevertheless, it is still being used by physicians in seleniferous areas who report that it is the only treatment which will clear up the particular dermatitis which appears to be associated with selenium.

More field and clinical investigations need to be carried out in the seleniferous areas in an effort to establish the symptomatology of selenium poisoning in humans and to arrive at some definite tolerance levels for selenium in foodstuffs.

Dudley (33) has discussed the hazard of selenium poisoning among workers in

industrial operations where selenium is handled Both Dudley (33) and Hamilton (59) have described the symptoms of human cases of selenium poisoning caused by the inhalation of volatile selenium compounds Halter (58) reported a human case of industrial selenium poisoning Painter (129) has described his experiences in connection with the accidental inhalation of concentrated hydrogen selenide

Motley, Ellis and Ellis (102) reported experiencing sore throats after working with sodium selenite and after handling animals which had been injected with sodium selenite The reviewers, however, have never experienced sore throats at any time which could be attributed to the handling of selenium compounds or handling of animals which had been injected with selenium compounds

Byers (16) discovered some cases of selenium poisoning in humans in Mexico which resulted from soils being contaminated by selenium in the wastes from silver and gold mines

Sternor and Lidfeldt (108) have determined the selenium content of urine samples from what they call normal subjects They find more selenium than should be present unless the subjects are exposed to some source of selenium Selenium has been investigated at different times as a possible cure for cancer A few typical references on this work are (28) (72) (149) (181) (182)

Methods of analysis for selenium Painter (129) has reviewed the methods of analysis for selenium Most of the selenium determinations which have been made on rocks, soils, and plant and animal tissues have been made by the methods of Robinson et al (148) and Beath, Eppson and Gilbert (8) During the past two years the reviewers have used the A. O. A. C. method as described by Klein (73) This method is especially accurate for small quantities of selenium

REFERENCES

- (1) ANDERSON H. D. AND A. L. MOXON The excretion of selenium by rats on a seleniferous wheat ration J Nutrition 22: 103 1941
- (2) ANDERSON H. D. AND A. L. MOXON The isolation of glutathione and thioneline from the blood of selenized steers. Proc South Dakota Acad Sci 21: 16 1941
- (3) ANDERSON H. D. AND A. L. MOXON Changes in the blood picture of the dog following subcutaneous injections of sodium selenite J Pharmacol and Exper Therap 76: 343 1942.
- (4) BAUER, F. K. Experimentelle Vergiftung mit Selen unter Besonderer Berucksichtigung der Wirkung auf das Knochen-system Arch f Gewerbepath Gewerbehyg 10: 117, 1940
- (5) BEATH O. A. Personal communication
- (6) BEATH O. A. J. H. DRAIBE, H. F. EPPSON, C. S. GILBERT AND O. C. MCCREARY Certain poisonous plants of Wyoming activated by selenium and their association with respect to soil types J Am Pharm Assn 23: 94 1934
- (7) BEATH O. A., J. H. DRAIBE AND C. S. GILBERT Plants poisonous to livestock. Wyoming Agric Expt Sta Bull no 200 1934
- (8) BEATH O. A. H. F. EPPSON AND C. S. GILBERT Selenium and other toxic minerals in soils and vegetation Wyoming Agric Expt Sta Bull no 206 1935
- (9) BEATH O. A. H. F. EPPSON AND C. S. GILBERT Selenium distribution in and seasonal variation of type vegetation occurring on seleniferous soils J Am Pharm Assn 26: 304 1937

- (10) BEATH, O A , C S GILBERT AND H F EPPSON Selenium in soils and vegetation associated with rocks of Permian and Triassic age *Am J Botany* 24 96, 1937
- (11) BEATH, O A , C S GILBERT AND H F EPPSON The use of indicator plants in locating seleniferous areas in western United States IV Progress Report *Am J Botany* 28 887, 1941
- (12) BERNHEIM, F AND J R. KLEIN Action of sodium selenite on the oxidation of l-proline *J Biol Chem* 139 827, 1941
- (13) BERSIN, T Thiol compounds and enzymes *Ergebn d Enzymforsch* 4 68, 1935
- (14) BYERS, H G Selenium occurrence in certain soils in the United States with a discussion of related topics *U S Dept Agric Tech Bull* no 482, 1935
- (15) BYERS, H G Selenium occurrence in certain soils in the United States with a discussion of related topics Second Report, *U S Dept Agric Tech Bull* 530, 1936
- (16) BYERS, H G Selenium in Mexico *Ind Eng Chem* 29 1200, 1937
- (17) BYERS, H G Selenium in meteorites *Ind Eng Chem (News Ed)* 16 459, 1938
- (18) BYERS, H G AND H W LAKIN Selenium in Canada *Canad J Research* 17 364, 1939
- (19) BYERS, H G , J T MILLER, K T WILLIAMS AND H W LAKIN Selenium occurrence in certain soils in the United States with a discussion of related topics Third Report, *U S Dept Agric Tech Bull* no 601, 1938
- (20) BYERS, H G , K T WILLIAMS AND H W LAKIN Selenium in Hawaii and its probable source in the United States *Ind Eng Chem* 28 821, 1936
- (21) CAMERON, C A Preliminary note on the absorption of selenium by plants *Proc Roy Soc (Dublin)* 2 231, 1880
- (22) CHABRIE, C *Bull d l societe chim* 50 133, 1888 (Quoted by CZAPEK and WEIL (27))
- (23) COLLETT, M E The specificity of the intracellular hydrogenases in frog's muscle *J Biol Chem* 58 793, 1924
- (24) COLLETT, M E AND M F CLARKE On the question of the specificity of the intracellular dehydrogenases II The effect of poisons on the dehydrogenase systems of frog and of fish muscle *J Biol Chem* 82 429, 1929
- (25) COLLETT, M E , M RHEINBERGER AND E G LITTLE *Ibid* V Toxicity of arsenic, selenium and tellurium compounds to the dehydrogenase systems of frog and fish muscle *J Biol Chem* 100 271, 1933
- (26) CROMPTON, H J A contribution to the pharmacology of selenium, tellurium and arsenic *Med Chron (Manchester)* 39 304, 1903-04
- (27) CZAPEK, H AND J WEIL Über die Wirkung des Selens und Tellurs auf dem thierischen Organismus *Arch f exper Path u Pharmacol* 32 438, 1893
- (28) DELBERT, P Traitment des cancers par le selenium *Bull Assoc franc p l'etude du cancer* 6 85, 1913
- (29) DRAIZE, J H AND O A BEATH Observations on the pathology of blind staggers and alkali disease *J Am Vet M A.* 85 753, 1935
- (30) DUBOIS, K P , A L MOXON AND O E OLSON Further studies on the effectiveness of arsenic in preventing selenium poisoning *J Nutrition* 19 477, 1940
- (31) DUBOIS, K P , M RHIAN AND A L MOXON The effect of glutathione on selenium toxicity *Proc South Dakota Acad Sci* 19 71, 1939
- (32) DUDLEY, H C Toxicology of selenium I A study of the distribution of selenium in acute and chronic cases of selenium poisoning *Am J Hygiene* 23 169, 1936
- (33) DUDLEY, H C Selenium as a potential industrial hazard *Pub Health Repts* 53 281, 1938
- (34) DUDLEY, H C Toxicology of selenium V Toxic and vesicant properties of selenium oxychloride *Pub Health Repts* 53 94, 1938
- (35) ELLIS, M M , H L MOTLEY, M D ELLIS AND R O JONES Selenium poisoning in fishes *Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med* 36 519, 1937

- (36) FRANKEL, K. W. A new toxicant occurring naturally in certain samples of plant foodstuffs. I Results obtained in preliminary feeding trials. *J Nutrition* 8: 597 1934
- (37) FRANKEL, K. W. A new toxicant occurring naturally in certain samples of plant food stuffs. II The occurrence of the toxicant in the protein fraction. *J Nutrition* 8: 609 1934
- (38) FRANKEL, K. W. A. L. MOXON, W. E. POLEY AND W. C. TULLY. Monstrosities produced by the injection of selenium salts into hens' eggs. *Anat. Rec.* 65: 15 1938
- (39) FRANKEL, K. W. AND A. L. MOXON. A comparison of the minimum fatal doses of selenium, tellurium, arsenic and vanadium. *J Pharmacol and Exper Therap* 58: 454 1938
- (40) FRANKEL, K. W. AND A. L. MOXON. Toxicity of orally ingested arsenic, selenium, tellurium, vanadium and molybdenum. *J Pharmacol and Exper Therap* 81: 89 1937
- (41) FRANKEL, K. W. AND E. P. PAINTER. Selenium in proteins from toxic foodstuffs. IV. The effect of feeding toxic proteins, toxic protein hydrolysates, and toxic protein hydrolysates from which the selenium has been removed. *J Nutrition* 10: 599 1935
- (42) FRANKEL, K. W. AND E. P. PAINTER. Selenium in proteins from toxic food stuffs. I. Remarks on the occurrence and nature of the selenium present in a number of foodstuffs or their derived products. *Cereal Chem* 13: 67 1936
- (43) FRANKEL, K. W. AND E. P. PAINTER. Effect of sulfur additions on seleniferous soils. Binding of selenium by soil. *Ind. Eng. Chem* 29: 591 1937
- (44) FRANKEL, K. W. AND E. P. PAINTER. A study of the toxicity and selenium content of seleniferous diets with statistical consideration. *Cereal Chem* 15: 1 1938
- (45) FRANKEL, K. W. AND V. R. POTTER. A new toxicant occurring naturally in certain samples of plant foodstuffs. III. Hemoglobin levels observed in white rats which were fed toxic wheat. *J Nutrition* 8: 615 1934
- (46) FRANKEL, K. W. AND V. R. POTTER. A new toxicant occurring naturally in certain samples of plant foodstuffs. IX. The toxic effects of orally ingested selenium. *J Nutrition* 10: 213 1935
- (47) FRANKEL, K. W. AND V. R. POTTER. A new toxicant occurring naturally in certain samples of plant foodstuffs. XIII. The ability of rats to discriminate between diets of varying degrees of toxicity. *Science* 83: 330, 1936
- (48) FRANKEL, K. W. AND V. R. POTTER. A new toxicant occurring naturally in certain samples of plant foodstuffs. XIV. The effect of selenium containing foodstuffs on growth and reproduction of rats at various ages. *J Nutrition* 12: 205 1936
- (49) FRANKEL, K. W., T. D. RICE, A. G. JOHNSON AND H. W. SCHOENING. A report on a preliminary field survey of the so-called alkali disease of livestock. *U. S. Dept. Agric. Circ.* no. 320 1934
- (50) FRANKEL, K. W. AND W. C. TULLY. A new toxicant occurring naturally in certain samples of plant foodstuffs. V. Low hatchability due to deformities in chicks. *Poultry Sci.* 14: 273, 1935
- (51) FREDGA, A. Selen-substituierte Aminosäuren. I. Synthese von α' -Diamino Diselen-Dihydrokrylsäure (Selenocystin). *Svensk Kemisk Tidskrift* 43: 160 1938.
- (52) FREDGA, A. Selen-substituierte Aminosäuren. II. Die optisch aktiven Formen von Selenocystin. *Svensk Kemisk Tidskrift* 49: 124 1937
- (53) GASTLER, G. F. The effects of certain salts upon the saccharogenic activity of three typical enzymes. M. S. Thesis. South Dakota State College 1938
- (54) GNELIN, C. G. Versuche über die Wirkungen des Baryts, Strontians, Chroms, Molybdäns, Wolframs, Tellurs, Titans, Osmiums, Platins, Iridiums, Rhodiums, Palladiums, Nickels, Kobalts, Urans, Ceriums, Eisens und Mangans auf den thierischen Organismus. Tübingen in der H. Luppachens Buchhandlung 1824.

- (55) GNADINGER, C B Selenium insecticide material for controlling red spider Ind Eng Chem 25 633, 1933
- (56) GORTNER, R A, JR. Chronic selenium poisoning of rats as influenced by dietary protein J Nutrition 19 105, 1940
- (57) GORTNER, R A, JR AND H B LEWIS The retention and excretion of selenium after the administration of sodium selenite to white rats J Pharmacol and Exper Therap 67 358, 1939
- (58) HALTER, K Die Selenvergiftung unter besonderer Berücksichtigung der dabei Beobachtbaren Hautveränderungen in Verbindung Mit Sekundärer Porphyrrie Arch f Dermat u Syph 178 340, 1938
- (59) HAMILTON, A Industrial toxicology Harper's Publishing Co, New York, 1934
- (60) HANCE, F E Selenium—I The Hawaiian Planters Rec 42 197, 1938
- (61) HOFMEISTER, F Über methylierung im Thierkörper Arch exper Path u Pharmacol 33 198, 1893-94
- (62) HORN, M J AND D B JONES Isolation from *Astragalus pectinatus* of a crystalline amino acid complex containing selenium and sulfur J Biol Chem 139 649, 1941
- (63) HORN, M J, D B JONES AND S J RINGEL Isolation of a new sulfur-containing amino acid (lanthionine) from sodium carbonate-treated wool J Biol Chem 138 141, 1941
- (64) HOSKINS, W M, A M BOYCE AND J F LAMIMAN The use of selenium in sprays for the control of mites on citrus and grapes Hilgardia 12 115, 1938
- (65) HURD-KARRER, A M. Inhibition of selenium injury to wheat plants by sulfur Science 78 560, 1933
- (66) HURD-KARRER, A M Selenium injury to wheat plants and its inhibition by sulfur J Agric Res 49 343, 1934
- (67) HURD-KARRER, A M Selenium absorption by plants and their resulting toxicity to animals Smithsonian Report for 1935, 239
- (68) HURD-KARRER, A M. Comparative toxicity of selenates and selenites to wheat Am J Botany 24 720, 1937
- (69) HURD-KARRER, A M AND F W POOS Toxicity of selenium-containing plants to Aphids Science 84 252, 1936
- (70) JAPHA, A Experimenta nonnulla de vi seleni in organismum animalen Dissertation Halle, 1842
- (71) JOHNSON, J M AND C VOEGTLIN Arsenic derivatives of cysteine J Biol Chem 89 27, 1930
- (72) KEYSSER, F Zur chemotherapie subkutaner und in Organen infiltrierend Wachsender Maustumoren Ztschr Chemotherapie 2 188, 1914.
- (73) KLEIN, A K Report on selenium J A. O A C 24 363, 1941
- (74) KNIGHT, S H AND O A BEATH. The occurrence of selenium and seleniferous vegetation in Wyoming Wyoming Agric Expt Sta Bull 221, 1937
- (75) KNOP, W Über die Aufnahme verschiedener Substanzen durch die Pflanze, welche nicht zu den Nährstoffen gehören Ber d math phys Classe der Kgl Sachs Gesellsch der Wissensch 8 15 pp 1885
Abs in Botanisches Centralblatt 22 35, 1885
- (76) LABES, R AND H KREBS Die verschiedene Angriffsart von tellurit, selenit, arsenit und anderen giften auf die Dehydridase- und oxydaseatmung des Muskelgewebes Fermentforsch 14 430, 1935
- (77) LAKIN, H W AND H G BYERS Selenium occurrence in certain soils in the United States, with a discussion of related topics Sixth Report U S Dept Agric Tech Bull 783, 1941
- (78) LAKIN, H W AND H G BYERS Selenium in wheat and wheat products Cereal Chem 18 73, 1941

- (79) LAKIN H W K. T WILLIAMS AND H G BYERS 'Non toxic' seleniferous soils
Ind Eng Chem 30: 599 1938
- (80) LANDAUER, W Studies on the Creeper fowl XIII The effect of selenium and the
asymmetry of selenium induced malformations J Exper Zool 83 431 1940
- (81) LARDY H A AND A. L MOXON The effect of selenium and arsenic at various ratios
on the fermentation of glucose by baker's yeast Proc South Dakota Acad
Sci 19: 109 1939
- (82) LARDY, H A AND A. L. MOXON The ascorbic acid content of livers from selenized
rats and chicks. Proc South Dakota Acad Sci (in press)
- (83) LARSEN, C AND D E BAILEY Effects of alkali water on dairy cows South Dakota
Agric Expt. Stn Bull 147: 299 1913
- (84) LARSEN C, W WHITE AND D E BAILEY Effects of alkali water on dairy products.
South Dakota Agric Expt Sta. Bull 132: 220 1912
- (85) LEMLEY R. E. Selenium poisoning in the human A preliminary case report J
Lancet (Minneapolis) 60: 523, 1940
- (86) LEMLEY R. E. AND M P MERRYMAN Selenium poisoning in the human J Lancet
(Minneapolis) 61: 435 1941
- (87) LEVINE, V E The effect of selenium compounds upon the growth and germination
in plants Am J Botany 12 82, 1925
- (88) LEVINE, V E. The reducing properties of microorganisms with special reference
to selenium compounds. J Baet 10 217 1925
- (89) LEVINE V E. Precipitation and color reaction for ascorbic acid specificity of
acidified sodium selenite solution Proc Soc. Exper Biol and Med 35: 231 1936
- (90) LEWIS, H B J SCHULTZ AND R. A. GORTNER, JR. Dietary protein and the toxicity
of sodium selenite in the white rat. J Pharmacol and Exper Therap 68: 292,
1940
- (91) LILLIE, R. D AND M. I SMITH. Histogenesis of hepatic cirrhosis in chronic food
selenosis Am J Pathol 16: 223 1940
- (92) MADISON, T C Sanitary Report--Fort Randall In Coolidge, R. H. Statistical
report on the sickness and mortality in the Army of the United States Jan
1855 to Jan 1860 Washington D C G W Bowman 1860 (U S) Cong 36th
1st Session Senate Ex. Doc 53 37 1860
- (93) MANVILLE, I A. The selenium problem and its relationship to public health Am
J Pub Health 29 709 1939
- (94) MARTIN A. L. The toxicity of selenium to plants and animals Am. J Botany 23:
471 1936
- (95) McCONNELL, K P Distribution and excretion studies in the rat after a single sub-
toxic subcutaneous injection of sodium selenate containing radioselenium J
Biol Chem 141: 427 1941
- (96) McCONNELL, K. P Respiratory excretion of selenium studied with the radioactive
isotope J Biol. Chem 145 55 1942
- (97) MILLER, J T AND H G BYERS Selenium in plants in relation to its occurrence in
soils J Agric Res 55 59 1937
- (98) MILLER, W T AND K. T WILLIAMS. Minimum lethal dose of selenium as sodium
selenite to horses, mules cattle and swine J Agric Res 60 163 1940
- (99) MILLER, W T AND K T WILLIAMS Effect of feeding repeated small doses of
selenium as sodium selenite to equines J Agric Res 61: 353 1910
- (100) MILLER W T AND H W SCHOENING Toxicity of selenium fed to swine in the form
of sodium selenite J Agric. Res 56 831 1933.
- (101) MORIOA O Azione cronica del selenio Arch di farm e. terap (Palermo) 5: 61
1897
- (102) MOTLEY H L. M M ELLIS AND M. D ELLIS. Acute sore throats following exposure
to selenium. J A. M A 109 1718 1937

- (103) Moxon, A L Alkali disease or selenium poisoning South Dakota Agric Expt Sta Bull 311, 1937
- (104) Moxon, A L The effect of arsenic on the toxicity of seleniferous grains Science 88 81, 1938
- (105) Moxon, A L The selenium content of grasshoppers found feeding on seleniferous vegetation Proc South Dakota Acad Sci 19 69, 1939
- (106) Moxon, A L Toxicity of selenium-cystine and some other organic selenium compounds J Am Pharm A Sci Ed 29 249, 1940
- (107) Moxon, A L The influence of arsenic on selenium poisoning in hogs Proc South Dakota Acad Sci 21 34, 1941
- (108) Moxon, A L Some factors influencing the toxicity of selenium Univ of Wis Ph D Thesis, 1941
- (109) Moxon, A L, H D ANDERSON AND E P PAINTER The toxicity of some organic selenium compounds J Pharmacol and Exper Therap 63 357, 1938
- (110) Moxon, A L AND K P DuBois Influence of arsenic and certain other elements on the toxicity of seleniferous grains J Nutrition 18 447, 1939
- (111) Moxon, A L, K P DuBois AND R L POTTER The toxicity of optically inactive *d*- and *l*-selenium-cystine J Pharmacol and Exper Therap 72 184, 1941
- (112) Moxon, A L AND K W FRANKIE The effect of certain salts on enzyme activity Ind Eng Chem 27 77, 1935
- (113) Moxon, A L, O E OLSON, W V SEARIGHT AND K M SANDALS The stratigraphic distribution of selenium in the Cretaceous formations of South Dakota and the selenium content of some associated vegetation Am J Botany 25 794, 1938
- (114) Moxon, A L, O E OLSON AND W V SEARIGHT Selenium in rocks, soils and plants South Dakota Agric Expt Sta Tech Bull no 2, 1939
- (115) Moxon, A L, O E OLSON, E I WHITEHEAD, R J HILMOE AND S N WHITE Selenium distribution in milled seleniferous wheats Cereal Chem 20 376, 1943
- (116) Moxon, A L AND W E POLEY The relation of selenium content of grains in the ration to the selenium content of poultry carcass and eggs Poultry Sci 17 77, 1938
- (117) Moxon, A L AND M RHIAN Unpublished data
- (118) Moxon, A L, A E SCHAEFER, H A LARDY, K P DuBois AND O E OLSON Increasing the rate of excretion of selenium from selenized animals by the administration of bromobenzene J Biol Chem 132 785, 1940
- (119) Moxon, A L AND E E SEBESTA Unpublished data
- (120) MUEHLBERGER, C W AND H H SCHRENK The effect of the state of oxidation on the toxicity of certain elements J Pharmacol and Exper Therap 33 270, 1928
- (121) MUNSELL, H E, G M DeVANEY AND M H KENNEDY Toxicity of food containing selenium as shown by its effect on the rat U S Dept Agric Tech Bull 534, 1936
- (122) NEISWANDER, C R AND V H MORRIS Introduction of selenium into plant tissues as a toxicant for insects and mites J Ec Ent 33 517, 1940
- (123) NELSON, E M, A M. HURD-KARRER AND W O ROBINSON Selenium as an insecticide Science 78 124, 1933
- (124) OLSON, O E AND C W JENSEN The absorption of selenate and selenite selenium by colloidal ferric hydroxide Proc South Dakota Acad Sci 20 115, 1940
- (125) OLSON, O E, D F JORNLIN AND A L MOXON Field studies on methods for determining availability of selenium to plants Soil Sci 53 365, 1942
- (126) OLSON, O E, D F JORNLIN AND A L MOXON The selenium content of vegetation and the mapping of seleniferous soils J Am Soc Agron 34 607, 1942
- (127) OLSON, O E AND A L MOXON The availability, to crop plants, of different forms of selenium in the soil Soil Sci 47 305, 1939
- (128) OLSON, O E, E I WHITEHEAD AND A L MOXON Occurrence of soluble selenium in soils and its availability to plants Soil Sci 54 47, 1942

- (129) PAINTER, E P The chemistry and toxicity of selenium compounds, with special reference to the selenium problem *Chem Rev* 23: 179 1941
- (130) PAINTER, E P AND K W FRANKE Selenium in proteins from toxic foodstuff III The removal of selenium from toxic protein hydrolysates *J Biol Chem* 111 643 1935
- (131) PAINTER, E P AND K W FRANKE Selenium in proteins from toxic foodstuffs II The effect of acid hydrolysis *Cereal Chem* 13: 172 1936
- (132) PAINTER, E P AND K W FRANKE On the relationship of selenium to sulfur and nitrogen deposition in cereals *Am J Botany* 27: 336 1940
- (133) PAINTER, E P AND K W FRANKE The decomposition of seleniferous proteins in alkaline solutions *J Biol Chem* 124 557, 1940
- (134) PAINTER, E P., K W FRANKE AND R A GORTNER Organic selenium compounds Their decomposition in alkaline solutions and other properties related to the behavior of selenium compounds in cereals *J Organic Chem* 5 570 1940
- (135) PAINTER, E P Personal communication 12/18/42
- (136) PERKINS A T AND H H KING Selenium end Tenmarq wheat *J Am Soc Agron* 30 664 1938
- (137) PHILLIPS, M. AND M J GOSS The dehydrogenation of alkali lignin from corn cobs with selenium *J.A.O.A.C* 21: 632, 1938
- (138) PHILLIPS E AND T G MASON Selenization of cotton under field conditions in Trinidad *Empire Cotton Gr Rev* 15: 290 1938
- (139) POLEY W E AND A L MOXON Tolerance levels of seleniferous grains in laying rations *Poultry Sci* 17 72 1938
- (140) POLEY W E A L MOXON AND K W FRANKE Further studies of the effects of selenium poisoning on hatchability *Poultry Sci* 16: 219 1937
- (141) POLEY, W E., W O WILSON A L MOXON AND J B TAYLOR The effect of selenized grains on the rate of growth in chicks *Poultry Sci* 20 171 1941
- (142) POTTER, V R AND C A ELVEHEIM The effect of selenium on cellular metabolism The rate of oxygen uptake by living yeast in the presence of sodium selenite *Biochem J* 30: 189 1936
- (143) RABUTEAU Recherches sur les propriétés et sur l'élimination des composés oxygénés du Sélénium et du Tellure *Gazette hebdom* 16: 241 1869
- (144) RHAM M AND A L MOXON Chronic selenium poisoning in dogs and its prevention by arsenic *J Pharmacol and Exper Therap* 78: 249 1943
- (145) RILEY, H L Selenium dioxide—a new oxidizing agent *Sci J Roy Coll Sci* 5 7 1935
- (146) ROBINSON, W O Determination of selenium in wheat and soils *J.A.O.A.C* 16 423 1933
- (147) ROBINSON W O Selenium content of wheat from various parts of the world *Ind Eng Chem* 28 736 1936
- (148) ROBINSON W O H C DUDLEY K T WILLIAMS AND H G BYERS Determination of selenium and arsenic by distillation *Ind and Eng Chem Anal ed* 6: 274 1934
- (149) ROFFO A H AND S M NEUSCHLOSS The influence of rubidium, selenite and selenate ions on the respiration of normal and neoplastic cells *Bull Soc Chim biol* 7: 515 1925
- (150) SCHNEIDER H A Selenium in nutrition *Science* 83: 32 1936
- (151) SCHULTZ, J AND H B LEWIS The excretion of volatile selenium compounds after the administration of sodium selenite to white rats. *J Biol Chem* 133: 199, 1940
- (152) SEARIGHT, W V Lithologic stratigraphy of the Pierre formation of the Missouri valley in South Dakota. *South Dakota State Geol Survey Rep of Investigations* 27: 1 1937

- (153) SMITH, M. I. The influence of diet on the chronic toxicity of selenium. *Pub Health Repts* 54 1441, 1939
- (154) SMITH, M. I. Chronic endemic selenium poisoning. *J A M A* 116 562, 1941
- (155) SMITH, M. I., K. W. FRANKE AND B. B. WESTFALL. The selenium problem in relation to public health. *Pub Health Repts* 51 1496, 1936
- (156) SMITH, M. I., R. D. LILLIE, E. F. STOHLMAN AND B. B. WESTFALL. Studies in chronic selenosis. *Nat'l Inst of Health Bull* no 174, 1, 1940
- (157) SMITH, M. I. AND E. F. STOHLMAN. Further observations on the influence of dietary protein on the toxicity of selenium. *J Pharmacol and Exper Therap* 70 270, 1940
- (158) SMITH, M. I. AND E. F. STOHLMAN. Studies in chronic selenosis. II. Gastric acidity in chronic selenium poisoning. *Nat'l Inst of Health Bull* 174 15, 1940
- (159) SMITH, M. I., E. F. STOHLMAN AND R. D. LILLIE. The toxicity and pathology of selenium. *J Pharmacol and Exper Therap* 60 449, 1937
- (160) SMITH, M. I. AND B. B. WESTFALL. Further field studies on the selenium problem in relation to public health. *Pub Health Repts* 52 1375, 1937
- (161) SMITH, M. I., B. B. WESTFALL AND E. F. STOHLMAN. The elimination of selenium and its distribution in the tissues. *Pub Health Repts* 52 1171, 1937
- (162) SMITH, M. I., B. B. WESTFALL AND E. F. STOHLMAN. Studies on the fate of selenium in the organism. *Pub Health Repts* 53 1199, 1938
- (163) SMITH, M. I., B. B. WESTFALL AND E. F. STOHLMAN. Studies in chronic selenosis. III. Liver function and bile pigments in experimental chronic selenium poisoning. *Nat'l Inst Health Bull* 174 21, 1940
- (164) South Dakota Agric Expt Sta, unpublished data
- (165) STANFORD, G. AND O. E. OLSON. The effect of low concentrations of selenium upon the growth of grain. *Proc South Dakota Acad Sci* 19 25, 1939
- (166) STEKOL, J. A. Studies on the mercapturic acid synthesis in animals. *J Biol Chem* 117 147, 1937
- (167) STEKOL, J. A. Selenium tetracysteine. *J Am Chem Soc* 64 1742, 1942
- (168) STERNER, J. H. AND V. LIDFELDT. The selenium content of "normal" urine. *J Pharmacol and Exper Therap* 73 205, 1941
- (169) STROCK, L. W. The distribution of selenium in nature. *Am J Pharm* 107 144, 1935
- (170) SVIRBELY, J. L. Vitamin C studies in the rat. The effect of selenium dioxide, sodium selenate and tellurate. *Biochem J* 32 467, 1938
- (171) THORVALDSON, T. AND L. R. JOHNSON. Selenium content of Saskatchewan wheat. *Canad J Res* 18 138, 1940
- (172) TRELEASE, S. F. Identification of selenium indicator species of *Astragalus* by germination tests. *Science* 95 656, 1942
- (173) TRELEASE, S. F. Bad earth. *Scientific Monthly* 54 12, 1942
- (174) TRELEASE, S. F. AND A. L. MARTIN. Plants made poisonous by selenium absorbed from the soil. *Botanical Rev* 2 373, 1936
- (175) TRELEASE, S. F. AND H. M. TRELEASE. Immunity of certain insects to selenium poisoning. *Science* 85 590, 1937
- (176) TRELEASE, S. F. AND H. M. TRELEASE. Selenium as a stimulating and possibly essential element for indicator plants. *Am J Botany* 25 372, 1938
- (177) TRELEASE, S. F. AND H. M. TRELEASE. Physiological differentiation in *Astragalus* with reference to selenium. *Am J Botany* 26 530, 1939
- (178) TULLY, W. C. AND K. W. FRANKE. A new toxicant occurring naturally in certain samples of plant foodstuffs. VI. A study of the effect of affected grains on growing chicks. *Poultry Sci* 14 280, 1935
- (179) VIGNEAUD, V. DU AND G. B. BROWN. The synthesis of the new sulfur-containing amino acid (lanthionine) isolated from sodium carbonate-treated wool. *J Biol Chem* 138 151, 1941
- (180) WAITEKINS, G. R., A. E. BEARSE AND R. SHUTT. Industrial utilization of selenium and tellurium. *Ind Eng Chem* 34 899, 1942

- (181) WALKER, C H AND J KLEIN 'Se its therapeutic value especially in cancer
Am Med 10: 628 1915.
- (182) WEBSTER, J H Selenium in the treatment of cancer Brit. Med J 3890:1052 1935
- (183) WESTFALL, B B E. F STOHLMAN AND M I SMITH. The placental transmission of
selenium J Pharmacol and Exper Therap 64: 55 1938
- (184) WESTFALL, B B AND M I SMITH Further studies on the fate of selenium in the
organism J Pharmacol and Exper Therap 72: 245 1941
- (185) WILLIAMS, K. T Selenium and its relation to soil plants and animals. *Tabulae
Biologicae* 14 194 1937
- (186) WILLIAMS, K. T AND H G BYERS. Occurrence of selenium in the Colorado River
and some of its tributaries. Ind and Eng Chem Anal ed 7: 431 1935
- (187) WILLIAMS, K. T AND H. G BYERS. Selenium in deep sea deposits Ind Eng Chem
News ed 13: 353 1935.
- (188) WILLIAMS, K. T AND H. G BYERS. Selenium compounds in soils Ind Eng Chem
28 912, 1936
- (189) WILLIAMS, K T, H W LAKIN AND H G BYERS Selenium occurrence in certain
soils in the United States with a discussion of related topics Fourth Report
U S Dept Agric Tech Bull 702, 1940
- (190) WILLIAMS, K. T H W LAKIN AND H G BYERS. Selenium occurrence in certain
soils in the United States with a discussion of related topics Fifth Report Tech
Bull 758 1941
- (191) WRIGHT C I Effect of sodium selenite and selenate on the oxygen consumption of
mammalian tissues Pub Health Repts 53: 1825 1938
- (192) WRIGHT, C I. The effect of diselenodiacetic acid on the metabolism of tissue slices
J Pharmacol and Exper Therap 65: 40 1939
- (193) WRIGHT C I Effect of selenium on urease and arginase J Pharmacol and Exper
Therap 68: 220, 1940
- (194) WRIGHT C I The effect of sodium selenite on the blood sugar and liver glycogen of
rats and rabbits Pub Health Repts 56: 345, 1941
- (195) WOODRUFF, I O AND W J GIES On the toxicology of selenium and its compounds
Proc Am Physiol Soc 6: 29 1902

BIOCHEMICAL PROBLEMS OF THE CHEMO-AUTOTROPHIC BACTERIA

C B VAN NIEL

Hopkins Marine Station of Stanford University, Pacific Grove, California

1 *Development of the concept of chemo-autotrophism* When Winogradsky came to de Bary's laboratory, he undertook to study the then vital problem of the alleged pleomorphism of the "sulfur bacteria" For an exact investigation pure cultures were desirable, if not imperative, and it was undoubtedly anticipated that with such cultures it would be an easy matter to conquer the last important stronghold from which the doctrine of bacterial pleomorphism could still be defended But the early attempts at growing the organisms in laboratory media led to developments in the field of physiology whose significance overshadows the final demonstration that the putative morphological variability exists no more in this group than among other bacterial species Careful observations and deductions, supported by a few simple, conclusive experiments, led the young scientist to the revolutionary concept that certain micro-organisms, although devoid of chlorophyll, can nevertheless maintain themselves, and even develop, in the absence of organic substances

Typical for the natural habitat of the sulfur bacteria is the invariable presence of hydrogen sulfide, the organisms themselves are found stuffed with sulfur globules The correlation had given rise to interpretations involving a causal relationship, it being held that the sulfide was produced from sulfur by the sulfur bacteria Winogradsky's earliest experiments, however, showed convincingly that this could not be so And, struck by the gradual disappearance of the sulfur globules from cells which were kept for some days in various culture solutions, he supplied additional hydrogen sulfide to the cultures, whereupon sulfur droplets soon reappeared in the organisms From these observations Winogradsky conceived the causal relation to be otherwise The bacteria would be restricted to a sulfide-containing environment because they need this substance which they oxidize to sulfur, the oxidation process furnishing the catabolic energy which the more common organisms derive from the oxidation or fermentation of organic materials Experiments showed that, when sulfide is not available, the sulfur bacteria can maintain themselves by oxidizing the stored sulfur to sulfate

The studies on the sulfur bacteria (1, 2) were soon followed by similar investigations on iron bacteria (3), occurring normally in water with ferrous salts in solution The deposition of ferric hydroxide was considered as due to a comparable physiological oxidation process

The full consequences of the idea that the oxidation of an inorganic substance could provide the energy for vital processes were realized when Winogradsky succeeded in isolating the nitrifying bacteria in pure culture With these it was shown that the oxidation of ammonia to nitrite, and of nitrite to nitrate, enables the respective organisms to synthesize their cell materials entirely from carbon

dioxide and minerals in darkness (4). This process of carbon dioxide assimilation has been designated by Pfeffer (5) as chemosynthesis, and the organisms as chemosynthetic. More recently the better term chemo-autotrophic has been proposed (6).

Amplly corroborated by subsequent workers, the existence of chemo-autotrophic micro-organisms thus became established, and various species have since been isolated which can live and grow in strictly mineral media. The chemical energy derived from the oxidation of sulfide, sulfur, sulfite and thiosulfate, of comparable selenium compounds, of ammonia and nitrite, or of molecular hydrogen, can adequately be substituted for the radiant energy which permits green plants to synthesize organic matter in the light.

Such processes are not restricted to aerobic conditions. Oxidation of sulfur and thiosulfate with the simultaneous reduction of nitrate allows the development of *Thiobacillus denitrificans* in the absence of air (7, 8, 9), similarly certain hydrogen bacteria can grow anaerobically in the presence of nitrate (10). In addition to these chemo-autotrophic processes of nitrate reduction sulfate reduction with molecular hydrogen is also known (10, 11, 12, 13) although decisive experiments to show development of the sulfate reducing bacteria in mineral media, on the basis of oxidation of hydrogen with sulfate, have not yet been carried out. Even in the absence of oxygen, nitrate, or sulfate, hydrogen gas may lead to bacterial development, as during the conversion of hydrogen-carbon dioxide mixtures to methane (14) or acetic acid (15).

In general, it can therefore be said that chemical reactions between inorganic substances, which take place with an increase in entropy, can be used by micro organisms as a source of energy with which the synthesis of organic matter from carbon dioxide is possible.

The early studies with pure cultures of chemo-autotrophic bacteria led to another discovery which emphasized the physiological peculiarity of these organisms. It was again Winogradsky who established that the nitrifying bacteria are adversely affected by the presence of organic compounds, low concentrations inhibiting growth, higher ones even preventing their metabolic activities. Comparable results were later reported for some of the sulfur bacteria (8, 16). The inability of nitrifying and sulfur-oxidizing bacteria to utilize organic substances has often been contested, but the more careful investigations of this problem (17, 18, 19) have sustained Winogradsky's claims.

Nevertheless, it has been recognized from the beginning that the hydrogen bacteria can all be grown equally well in the absence of hydrogen, at the expense of organic matter. Also certain *Thiobacillus* species can develop normally in organic media even in the absence of oxidizable sulfur compounds (8, 19, 20, 21). While these findings made it impossible to apply Winogradsky's rigorous definition of the physiological characteristics of "inorgoxidants" (22)—which included the inability to decompose organic substances—to all chemo-autotrophic bacteria, they did not present a serious obstacle to the formulation of a clear-cut criterion for the latter. As such could be considered any organism capable of development in darkness in a strictly mineral medium, by the oxidation of an

inorganic substance, and the concomitant assimilation of carbon dioxide. This definition eliminated the inclusion of various organisms which, like *Aspergillus niger*, can oxidize elementary sulfur, but only in organic media (23). Oxidations of this type appear more nearly comparable with phytochemical reductions, they represent a side-reaction of doubtful physiological significance rather than the primary source of energy for the organism concerned.

Recent advances have, however, made this definition also rather illusory as a satisfactory and unequivocal means of distinction between chemo-autotrophic and heterotrophic organisms. A good example of the difficulty is furnished by the hydrogen bacteria. Already Niklewski (10) made the observation that either one of two pure cultures, isolated from profusely growing crude cultures, did not grow by itself in the mineral medium, whereas inoculation of the two types together resulted in excellent growth. From unpublished experiments of Dr M. Doudoroff (personal communication) the explanation of such a "symbiotic" relationship appears to be that each type of these hydrogen bacteria requires one or more organic growth factors, produced in excess by the other kind, a situation very similar to the "symbiosis" of certain yeasts and molds which will grow in a mineral medium with sugar when inoculated together, although neither one appears capable of such development by itself (24). This has been shown to be due to the fact that one of the symbionts needs the pyrimidine part of the thiamin molecule for growth, which is produced in excess by the other partner, while the latter requires the thiazole moiety, furnished in turn by the former.

In the case of the hydrogen bacteria it is evident that the combination of the two types can be designated as chemo-autotrophic, either one alone does not correspond to the definition. Although the growth factors for the hydrogen bacteria have not yet been worked out, each one of the two species can be grown in pure culture, and largely by oxidizing hydrogen and reducing carbon dioxide, provided that the medium is supplemented with a small amount of organic matter, the latter serving as a source of supply of one or more substances which the organism needs in a small quantity but which it is unable to synthesize. The question then arises whether this quantitatively insignificant lack of synthetic ability should be regarded as a sufficient reason for excluding the species from the group of chemo-autotrophic bacteria, thus losing sight of its major physiological characteristic, *viz.*, that of being able to synthesize the bulk of its cellular constituents from carbon dioxide with energy derived from the oxidation of an inorganic substance.

It would, of course, be possible to re-define chemo-autotrophism in such a manner that the above difficulty could be avoided, for example by emphasizing the occurrence of a carbon dioxide assimilation in the dark. But at present such attempts also appear doomed to failure. This is due to the discoveries of the past 7 or 8 years that carbon dioxide assimilation or reduction is far from limited to organisms which one might still be inclined to accept, though not in the strictest sense of the word, as chemo-autotrophs. It has been shown that *E. coli* can convert carbon dioxide and hydrogen into formic acid (25), that the

bacterial production of methane is actually a process of complete carbon dioxide reduction (26, 27), that propionic acid bacteria (28-29), *E. coli* (30), molds (31), and even protozoa (32, 33) and animal tissues (34, 35) can assimilate carbon dioxide. In the last-mentioned cases the assimilated carbon occurs normally in the form of acidic metabolic products, among which the four-carbon dicarboxylic acids are the most important (36, 37). In spite of this genuine carbon dioxide assimilation no one would be willing to apply the epithet chemo-autotrophic to the organisms in question, whose metabolism, under all circumstances, consists predominantly of decomposition processes of organic substances.

At one time the differentiation between an autotrophic and heterotrophic mode of life carried the implication that the former was quite independent of the activities of other living organisms. In a measure this, of course, is true. But considering what the reality of the cycle of matter connotes, this viewpoint is also vulnerable, ultimately the autotrophs now living are as much dependent upon the heterotrophs as *vice versa*. And fortunately, the important problem is not so much to find an unassailable definition of chemo-autotrophism as it is to reach a better understanding of natural phenomena. Hence we may leave the decision as to whether the above-mentioned hydrogen bacteria and various other organisms with similar properties should properly be called chemo-autotrophs or heterotrophs to those who can make out a good case for its significance. This attitude seems the more justifiable because a number of other facts have tended to cause a merging of the two designations.

2 *Energetic relations in the metabolism of chemo-autotrophic organisms* The great importance of the chemo-autotrophic mode of life lies in the fact that it admits of a comparative study of the biochemistry of carbon dioxide assimilation. So long as this process was considered as the special prerogative of green plants, it was necessary to regard the photochemical nature of the reaction as essential for the fate of carbon dioxide. It could, therefore, not be decided whether carbon dioxide assimilation was connected with the absorption of radiant energy in a direct or indirect manner. The existence of organisms which could accomplish an assimilation of carbon dioxide in the dark showed conclusively that for the conversion of carbon dioxide into organic matter the absorption of light was not a necessary prerequisite.

In looking for a common denominator of the photo- and chemo-autotrophic assimilation processes, it became clear that a meeting ground could be found by considering the energetic relations. In both cases one could point to a source of energy by which the synthesis of organic substances from carbon dioxide was made possible. To the photosynthetic organisms the energy was obviously supplied by absorbed light quanta, while to the colorless chemo autotrophs it was furnished by an exergonic chemical reaction.¹

Thus it becomes understandable that studies on the energy relations were among the first which were carried out with chemo-autotrophic bacteria. Initially such investigations dealt with a determination of the quantity of inorganic

¹ The term 'exergonic' is used in preference to 'exothermic'. See C. D. Coryell, *Science* 62: 330, 1940.

substrate that was oxidized and of the amount of organic matter meanwhile synthesized by the organisms. The application of thermodynamic data to the results then gave rise to computations of the "efficiency" of the processes, and to a comparison with that of the photosynthetic reaction. Since this particular phase has been reviewed in a previous volume of this Journal (38), it will suffice to summarize the results. As a rule, the efficiency of a variety of types of chemo-autotrophic metabolism was found to be of the same order of magnitude (± 7 per cent). The hydrogen bacteria, as an exception, appeared noticeably more efficient, from Ruhland's data (39) on the ratio of hydrogen oxidized to carbon dioxide assimilated an efficiency of over 25 per cent was calculated. It was further stressed that none of the chemo-autotrophic processes even approaches the efficiency of photosynthesis which, according to the results of Warburg and Negelein and of Wurmser, is around 80 per cent.

In the light of recent studies of the photosynthetic reaction this comparison can no longer be considered valid, the high efficiency values have not been substantiated. First, Arnold (40) and Manning *et al* (41), using different methods of experimentation, arrived at considerably lower values (± 35 per cent). The discrepancy with the earlier data has been satisfactorily accounted for by the fine work of Emerson and Lewis (42), in which the manometric measurements of Warburg and Negelein could be fully corroborated, but which also showed that the method of computation of the efficiency was incorrect because the underlying assumption that the gas produced during brief periods of illumination is exclusively oxygen is contrary to the facts. At present, therefore, the best values for the efficiency of photosynthesis must be accepted as well below 40 per cent.

Secondly, there is a good reason for maintaining that this high efficiency measured during photosynthesis is not really comparable with the figures computed by Becking and Parks for chemo-autotrophic processes. The former is based upon metabolism studies of short duration so that one may reasonably expect that the carbon dioxide assimilation has resulted chiefly in the formation of the primary assimilation product, carbohydrate. In addition, the assimilation values are always corrected for the simultaneously occurring respiration. The data on chemo-autotrophic organisms, on the other hand, are derived from experiments in which the extent of carbon dioxide assimilation was determined by measuring the organic carbon content of cultures in mineral media after a period of growth of the bacteria often extending over weeks. Consequently the assimilation process must have gone far beyond a primary assimilatory product, all the different cell constituents, ultimately derived from the primary product by secondary reactions, are included in the final determination. It will be evident that such secondary processes, as, for example, the formation of lipids, may involve quite considerable losses. Furthermore, corrections for possible respiration processes in which organic compounds are oxidized have not been applied here. Thus it becomes clear that the measured or computed efficiencies in those cases must fall considerably below the maximum values which would represent the

efficiency of the primary carbon dioxide assimilation in a chemo autotrophic process. The above-mentioned attempts at evaluating the efficiency of chemo-autotrophs have, therefore, not contributed much beyond the demonstration that the over all conversion of carbon dioxide into the various components of bacterial cells is less efficient than the production of a primary assimilate from carbon dioxide by photosynthesis.

While Ruhland was fully aware that his data did not give an accurate idea of the true efficiency of the carbon dioxide assimilation of hydrogen bacteria and left it at that,² Burk (43) believed that in this case an accurate computation of the 'thermodynamic efficiency'—as contrasted with Ruhland's "machine efficiency"—could be accomplished by applying to the over all figures a correction for energy consumption not directly connected with the assimilation process. In this manner the conclusion was reached that this assimilation must be considered as, thermodynamically, completely reversible. On account of its theoretical importance this paper will be considered in some detail especially because the method of calculation rests upon an assumption which is open to serious doubt.

Ruhland had shown that the hydrogen bacterium, *Bacillus pycnoticus*, when growing in the presence of both glucose and hydrogen, does not appear to oxidize the latter. From this and similar observations Burk drew the inference that the oxygen consumption by these hydrogen bacteria should be ascribed in its entirety to an oxidation process of organic substances, and that oxygen is not used at all for the direct oxidation of molecular hydrogen. Starting with this assumption it then follows that the oxygen utilization in Ruhland's experiments can only be accounted for by an oxidation of organic compounds previously synthesized from carbon dioxide and hydrogen. This would permit of a calculation of the total organic matter synthesized by the bacteria during the experiments by adding the equivalent of the oxygen consumed to the amount formed during growth in a culture in inorganic media. If this is done, the total carbon dioxide assimilation corresponds very closely to that required by the reaction equation



the slight deviation being due to the fact that the average cell material of the bacteria is slightly more reduced than carbohydrate.

Burk further showed that, since the oxidation of 2 mols of hydrogen can furnish 108460 cal. of free energy, and the reduction of 1 mol of carbon dioxide

² 'Über die Energieausnutzung dieses Prozesses für die Chemosynthese schlechthin lässt sich nichts aussagen da der in der Bilanz der letzteren genau entgegengesetzte Vorgang der Atmung gleichzeitig abläuft und es nicht gelingt uns über das während der Assimilation erreichte Mass derselben Klarheit zu verschaffen. Wir können uns vielmehr nur über den für den Körperaufbau nutzbar gemachten Bruchteil der bei der Knallgasreaktion disponibel werdenden Gesamtenergie eine Vorstellung verschaffen also m.a.W. für die Differenz organische Stoffproduktion minus Betriebsstoffe (39 p. 384)

requires 105140 cal, the theoretical relation for the above process, if it were completely reversible, is

$$\frac{\text{No of mols H}_2 \text{ needed}}{2 \times \text{No of mols CO}_2 \text{ reduced}} = \frac{105140}{108460} = 0.970$$

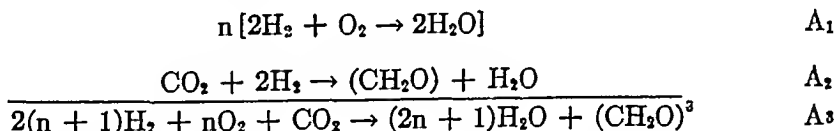
The experimental data, treated in the above manner, furnish practically the same result.

$$\frac{\text{No of mols H}_2 \text{ used}}{2 \times \text{No of mols CO}_2 \text{ reduced}} = 0.966 \pm 0.012,$$

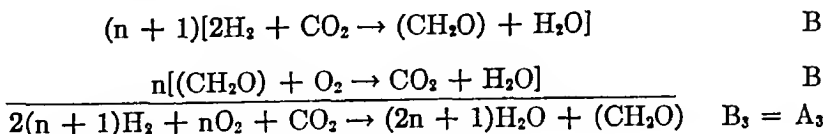
from which follows the conclusion that the reduction of carbon dioxide is indeed a perfectly reversible process

This argument seems, however, fundamentally deficient, and amounts to proving an assumption by taking its correctness for granted, because in the original assumption the outcome of the computation is already implied. This follows from a simple analysis

The culture of hydrogen bacteria growing in a mineral medium in the presence of hydrogen contains as oxidizable materials only hydrogen and the organic matter of the bacterial cells. The consumption of oxygen must, therefore, be due to an oxidation of A, molecular hydrogen, B, organic matter, or C, both. Since meanwhile organic matter is formed from carbon dioxide, case A can be represented by the set of equations



Similarly, case B corresponds to



while case C is a combination of A and B

The analytical data concerning hydrogen, oxygen and carbon dioxide utilization and organic matter production in Ruhland's experiments obviously apply only to the final, overall equations. And, since these are identical for all three cases, a decision as to which reactions occur must be based upon other considerations. Now, the assumption that all oxygen, consumed during the growth of the organisms, has been used for the oxidation of (CH_2O) implies that the hydrogen can only have reacted according to equation B_1 . That a computation on this premise leads to the theoretical value of the entropy relations is,

³ In these equations (CH_2O) designates the assimilation product, not formaldehyde. Though an approximation, it is sufficiently accurate for the purpose, and has the advantage of simplicity.

therefore, obvious. Burk's results could thus have been anticipated. But they prove nothing beyond the fact that Ruhland's analyses have been accurate.

It has already been mentioned that all known hydrogen bacteria can live heterotrophically. As such they are capable of oxidizing a great variety of organic compounds. It could therefore, be expected that in the presence of both hydrogen and an organic substrate the oxidation of the former is suppressed. Furthermore, the inability of bacteria to oxidize hydrogen when grown in organic media is often due to selection, adaptation, or both. Hence the observations of Ruhland on the inhibition of hydrogen oxidation by glucose do not justify the assumption that autotrophically growing hydrogen bacteria use oxygen only for the oxidation of organic substrates.

In three recent reports (44, 45, 46) on the oxidation of molecular hydrogen by hydrogen bacteria, purple bacteria, and green algae it has been pointed out that in all cases this reaction is dependent upon the presence of carbon dioxide. This finding may seem to strengthen Burk's assumption which would naturally require the presence of carbon dioxide for the utilization of hydrogen. It must, however, be borne in mind that also for the oxidation of organic substances the presence of carbon dioxide is a prerequisite (47) and here the explanation for this phenomenon must evidently be quite different (37). Thus it is readily conceivable that the reason for the necessity of carbon dioxide in the oxidation of hydrogen would be the same as in the oxidation of organic compounds.

3 *Biochemical mechanisms in the chemo-autotrophic bacteria* As long as the link between chemo-autotrophic and photosynthetic carbon dioxide assimilation was considered to be principally an energetic one, the approach outlined in the previous section was the most promising. It could have been refined by attempts at obtaining a clearer separation of the primary assimilation process from secondary conversions, for example by conducting experiments of short duration. In addition, careful measurements of an endogenous respiration process, both before and after a period in which an inorganic substrate was being oxidized, might have permitted the application of a satisfactory correction for the destruction of organic matter during the assimilation process proper. Such refinements would have yielded data on the efficiency of the assimilation more directly comparable with those available for photosynthesis. However, the interest in a comparative study of the two assimilation processes had meanwhile begun to move in a different direction.

Where energy from absorbed light quanta or from exergonic chemical reactions is used for the conversion of carbon dioxide into organic matter, there must exist a mechanism for the transfer of energy. The gradual development of a better understanding of the chemical mechanisms involved in catabolic processes both oxidative and fermentative, had been spectacular, and toward the end of the 1920's a clear enunciation of the major principles of these mechanisms had been achieved. Briefly these principles can be summarized as follows:

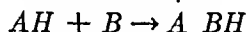
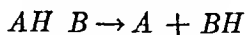
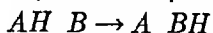
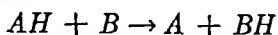
1 Any biochemical process can be considered as consisting of a series of individual step-reactions.

2 Each one step constitutes a chemically intelligible and extremely simple type of reaction.

3 The common property of all such reactions is that they can be regarded as examples of hydrogen (electron) transference from one constituent to another

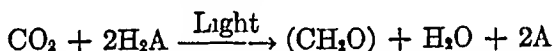
4 Thermodynamically each step is a spontaneous (exergonic) reaction

The most general expression of these principles was given in Kluyver's well known reaction equations (48)



It is understandable that the fruitfulness of these concepts of the intimate mechanism of catabolic processes led to a desire to apply them to those biochemical reactions which are known as anabolic. Since the conversion of carbon dioxide into organic matter is quantitatively and economically the most important instance of the latter, early attempts were made to formulate possible step-reactions for this process which would be in harmony with these ideas

Photosynthesis soon appeared amenable to such an interpretation, at least in part, when it was found that certain colored bacteria, the green and purple sulfur bacteria, carry out a reduction of carbon dioxide which is dependent upon both illumination and the presence of oxidizable substances, and which proceeds without the evolution of molecular oxygen (49, 50). These results led to a generalized formulation of the photosynthetic process as rendered by the equation



From this equation it would appear that green plant photosynthesis represents a special case in which H_2O serves as the hydrogen donor, H_2A , which is dehydrogenated to molecular oxygen

It thus became possible to compare the features of various types of carbon dioxide reduction in the hope of thereby establishing those characteristics which are common to all such processes, and of eliminating secondary, perhaps fortuitous aspects. An approach of this kind, for which Kluyver had coined the name "comparative biochemistry" (48), has frequently yielded remarkably instructive results (see, *e g*, (51))

Such a comparison of the different photosynthetic processes reveals the fact that the common features are the absorption of radiant energy and the reduction of carbon dioxide, while the specific hydrogen donors may differ widely. Since, furthermore, the oxidation of all the possible hydrogen donors, with the sole exception of H_2O , can also be accomplished by the respective organisms in the dark with the utilization of oxygen, it appeared as if there would exist a direct link between the carbon dioxide reduction and the absorption of light quanta. But here the existence of chemo-autotrophic organisms warns to caution, their metabolism shows unambiguously that the reduction of carbon dioxide *per se* does not require light. And because, in this group of organisms, we are therefore compelled to admit the existence of a mechanism whereby the conversion of carbon dioxide into organic matter can be accomplished without the co-opera-

tion of radiant energy, our present concepts of "comparative biochemistry" make it tempting to suppose that the same, or at least a closely similar mechanism, may well be operative in photosynthetic organisms too. Some recently established facts make this even more than suggestive.

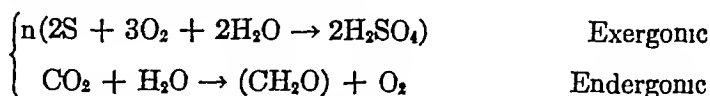
Among the photosynthetic purple bacteria are certain species which can assimilate carbon dioxide in the presence of molecular hydrogen. These organisms can also be grown in the dark like regular hydrogen bacteria. Instead of carrying out a photosynthetic metabolism they now behave as chemo-autotrophs. A similar conversion of photochemical to non photochemical carbon dioxide assimilation has been accomplished with certain green algae by Gaffron (46). These observations force us to the conclusion that either two entirely different mechanisms for carbon dioxide reduction exist side by side in the same organism, or that the biochemical mechanism for the assimilation of this compound is always independent of light in these organisms, and that the absorption of radiant energy in photosynthesis is immediately connected with a step reaction which is somewhat removed from the reduction process itself. At present the tendency is distinctly in favor of the latter alternative. In this line of thought a study of the metabolism of the chemo-autotrophic bacteria naturally becomes all the more important because it may contribute to an elucidation of the mechanism of carbon dioxide assimilation in photosynthesis as well.

Recently some advances of great interest have been made in this direction. Experimenting with the colorless sulfur bacterium *Thiobacillus thiooxidans*, Vogler has found that the assimilation of carbon dioxide, which in growing cultures accompanies the oxidation of sulfur to sulfuric acid, can be separated in time from the energy yielding oxidation process. A suspension of the organisms, supplied with a small quantity of sulfur in the absence of carbon dioxide, rapidly consumes oxygen until the sulfur has been completely oxidized. If at this point carbon dioxide is admitted, a rapid uptake of carbon dioxide is observed. It could, moreover, be shown that this assimilation process is entirely independent of simultaneous oxidation reactions because it occurs, and quantitatively to the same extent, in an atmosphere devoid of oxygen (52). From these results it may, therefore, be concluded that during the oxidation of sulfur, and in the absence of carbon dioxide the energy released during the process is stored up in the cells and can be used afterwards for the assimilation of carbon dioxide. It is then logical to infer that normally, when the bacteria oxidize sulfur and grow in the presence of carbon dioxide, the assimilation proceeds by the same mechanism.

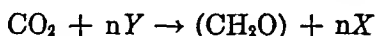
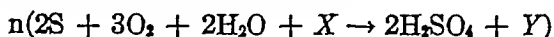
The discovery that oxidation of sulfur and assimilation of carbon dioxide do not necessarily occur simultaneously, but can be separated in time, suggests strongly that the mechanism of energy storage and release involves the building up of a store of chemical substances with a high energy content upon which the cells can draw at some later time in order to make possible the occurrence of a reaction which by itself is endergonic. And the very fact that the net result can be represented by a reaction equation in which substances other than sulfur, oxygen, carbon dioxide, and the assimilation product do not occur implies that the 'high-energy compounds' would be involved in a cyclic change. It then

becomes possible to formulate the chain of events associated with the chemotrophic metabolism somewhat more satisfactorily

Instead of the more conventional representation



amplified by the statement that these reactions are energetically coupled, a series of reactions can be postulated as follows



in which both steps are exergonic

At first sight this modified formulation does not appear particularly useful as long as X and Y remain unspecified entities. It might also, and rightly, be objected that it does not present an unusual or new feature. Physical chemists as well as those biologists who have occupied themselves with studies on the actual mechanism of energy transfer have long felt that the energetic coupling of two reactions requires a chemical mediator. And, if no further evidence as to the nature of X and Y were available, it would indeed be futile to stress this formulation. The point to be made is, however, that there are good reasons to believe that in this respect important information has been gained which not only tends to reveal the nature of the chemical mediators, but also indicates the very general application in biochemical processes of one and the same group of compounds in this capacity.

Vogler and Umbreit (53) have, namely, succeeded in demonstrating the direct coupling of phosphate transformations with both sulfur oxidation and with carbon dioxide assimilation. Evidently this became possible only after the experimental separation of the last-mentioned reactions had been accomplished. Their studies on the amounts of phosphate derivatives in the medium and in the cells had previously shown that in the combined presence of sulfur, oxygen and carbon dioxide significant changes in the phosphate compounds could not be observed. But if *Thiobacillus thiooxidans* was allowed to oxidize sulfur in the absence of carbon dioxide the oxidation was found to be accompanied by the disappearance of inorganic phosphate from the medium, and its conversion, in the cells, into an organic phosphate ester. Conversely, the subsequent assimilation of carbon dioxide, unaccompanied by a simultaneous oxidation of sulfur, results in the concomitant release of inorganic phosphate to the medium. It thus appears that in the assimilation process of *Thiobacillus thiooxidans* a phosphate cycle is involved in which the product responsible for the storage and transfer of energy can be identified with an organic phosphate ester. The composition of the organo-phosphates of *Thiobacillus* cells has been elucidated by the recent analyses of Le Page and Umbreit (54), and in a personal communication Umbreit has stated that the energy-storage material has been shown to be adenosine-triphosphate, identical with that from yeast.

The significance of this discovery can hardly be over-estimated. Not only does it permit of a clearer concept of the nature of the terms *X* and *Y*, but it further reveals that the chemical mechanisms for energy transfer are very closely similar in all living organisms, including autotrophic as well as heterotrophic cells. Particularly impressive in this connection becomes the "utility in biochemistry," advocated so convincingly by Kluyver and Donker (55) as early as 1926, to which now the generality of the phospho-organic esters as energy transferring compounds may be added. The important rôle played by these esters in biological syntheses and in the mechanism of muscular contraction have recently been clarified by the important contributions of Cori *et al.*, Hanes, Kalckar, and especially Lapmann (56-59). It now appears likely that also the initial stages of carbon dioxide assimilation in chemo-autotrophs are associated with these substances. And Ruben (60) has just proposed a well-conceived working hypothesis of the mechanism of photosynthesis in which these aspects are incorporated.

Two problems have been opened up by this new development. The first concerns a clarification of the reaction steps in which inorganic phosphate becomes esterified, the second, the establishment of the actual mechanism of the initial carbon dioxide fixation. Regarding the former point nothing can be said as yet with any degree of certainty. In the metabolism of organic compounds phosphate esters arise in which, through dehydrogenation, the phosphate bond energy can become so increased as to represent up to 12 000 calories. Whether similar phosphate esters are possible with inorganic sulfur compounds, or whether the latter themselves are combined with organic phosphate esters, conceivably replacing the phosphates, is unknown.

Also the chemical reactions by which carbon dioxide is converted into an organic substance have not yet been elucidated, although much progress has been made in this respect during the past few years. One of the best established mechanisms is that in which a four-carbon dicarboxylic acid is formed from carbon dioxide and a three-carbon compound, the latter in all probability being pyruvic acid (36, 37, 61, 62). That this mechanism may not be operative in the chemo-autotrophic bacteria seems to follow from the observation of Umbreit *et al.* that here pyruvate in low concentration inhibits carbon dioxide fixation. However further experiments are needed, and it seems likely that any advances made in this field will immediately reflect on our present concepts of carbon dioxide assimilation by any one organism, whether photosynthetic, chemo-autotrophic, or heterotrophic. It is becoming increasingly evident that all biochemical reactions follow similar general pathways, so that a better understanding of one is soon followed by direct applications to other processes.

4 *Autotrophic organisms and the metabolism of organic matter*. One aspect of the transformation of carbon dioxide into cellular materials remains to be discussed. This concerns the means whereby the great variety of cell constituents are formed. Two main possibilities offer themselves as working hypotheses. The first is that each substance is produced more or less directly from carbon dioxide and whatever other minerals enter into its composition. The alternative

would be the assumption that only one or a very few organic substances result from the process of carbon dioxide assimilation *per se*, and that the different and manifold components which together constitute the cell originate by a series of secondary transformations of such primary assimilation products. From the point of view of "comparative biochemistry" the latter hypothesis seems infinitely more probable and logical. This, however, implies that the organism so operating must be capable of carrying out conversions of organic compounds. Theoretically it should even be able to grow heterotrophically on the proper organic substrates. Many of the photo-autotrophic organisms have yielded to this treatment, also a number of genuine or presumed chemo-autotrophic organisms, such as hydrogen bacteria, certain sulfur bacteria, and iron bacteria, can develop satisfactorily in organic media in the absence of the specific oxidizable inorganic substance. But there remain, as apparently insuperable obstacles, those cases which seem to fit Winogradsky's most rigorous definition of the chemo-autotrophs *par excellence*, *i e.*, organisms which, at best, cannot utilize organic compounds, and are often harmed by them. Clearly, if autotrophs exist which cannot metabolize any organic material, this fact alone would suffice to disprove the second possibility.

However strong and convincing the arguments in favor of the occurrence of such organisms may have seemed, such claims can no longer be considered conclusive. On the contrary, a number of recent studies have shown that the experimental evidence points decisively in the opposite direction. First, Cataldi has successfully cultured *Beggiatoa alba*—for which Keil (16) had maintained the ineffectiveness of organic substances, and the utilization of carbon dioxide as only carbon source—in sulfide-free organic media (63). Secondly, also the iron bacteria of the genus *Leptothrix* are, in pure culture, not dependent upon the presence of ferrous ions but can grow at the expense of organic matter (64). Finally, even the repeatedly substantiated reports that the nitrifying bacteria, as well as certain *Thiobacillus* species, cannot metabolize organic substances have been refuted. Boltjes (17) had observed a favorable influence of "Nährstoff Heyden," an egg-albumen product, and some of the fatty acids on the growth of nitrifying bacteria. Later, Bömeke (65) showed that, in the absence of ammonia and nitrite, these organisms actually carry out an oxidation of organic substances. The occurrence of a similar process in *Thiobac thiooxidans* has also been proved (66, 67). It must, consequently, be conceded that even these most typical of chemo-autotrophic bacteria have failed to furnish experimental facts which would rule out the hypothesis that the synthesis of cellular materials proceeds by way of secondary conversions of one or a few primary assimilation products. It is true that the above experiments with nitrifying bacteria and *Thiobac thiooxidans* have only shown that previously synthesized organic matter can be oxidized by these bacteria themselves. Also, the rate at which such oxidations occur is very low. Attempts at increasing this rate by the addition of various organic substances which might function as metabolites have, so far, not been promising. Nevertheless, it seems well within the realm of possibility that future work in this direction may establish the existence of specific types of

organic compounds or of the need of particular environmental conditions to accomplish this end. Then it might ultimately become possible to provide the organisms with an organic medium, devoid of oxidizable inorganic energy sources, in which development can be secured. It should, however, be emphasized at this point that a successful achievement of this program must not be interpreted to mean that, under natural conditions, one could find the organisms growing heterotrophically wherever the proper organic materials and conditions are present, ecological considerations show that in nature their development and distribution would be restricted to those environments where the specific inorganic substrate occurs.

The ability of the nitrifying bacteria to oxidize organic materials has suggested to Bömeke that this function might explain the wide discrepancies in previous determinations of the ratio ammonia (nitrite) oxidized to carbon dioxide assimilated. For if a culture were analyzed some time after the oxidation of the inorganic substrate had been completed a considerable fraction of synthesized organic matter might meanwhile have been re-oxidized. It cannot now be decided for which experiments this would hold true, but it is certain that future work on this phase must pay close attention to this possibility.

At first sight, Ruhland's data on the hydrogen bacteria appear to contradict this idea because the ratio hydrogen oxidized to carbon dioxide reduced is definitely not a function of time. However, the unusual experimental conditions provide a satisfactory answer to this situation. In all cases the amount of hydrogen in the cultures was considerably in excess of the available oxygen, so that the bacteria were never exposed to conditions where oxidation of cell materials could supersede the chemo-autotrophic reactions for lack of oxidizable inorganic substrate. This may partly account for the high efficiency values observed with the hydrogen bacteria.

In addition to the just discussed uncertainty attaching to the evaluation of the previously determined substrate-carbon dioxide ratios, another factor must also be considered. It has already been remarked that in long time experiments the oxidation of an inorganic substrate will be accompanied by a further conversion of a primary assimilation product which may entail appreciable losses. In that event all previously established values for such ratios are low. In view of what has been said earlier in connection with the metabolism of the hydrogen bacteria (p. 344-345) it is clear that even the simultaneous determination of substrate, oxidation product, oxygen consumption, and carbon dioxide assimilation could not overcome this difficulty. At present the closest approximations could be achieved by short-time experiments in which due consideration is given to experimentally determined corrections for the concomitant oxidation of organic substances.

5 *The evolutionary significance of chemo-autotrophic organisms* The discovery of chemo-autotrophic bacteria showed that living organisms can exist and grow in a mineral environment and in the absence of light. The assumption that such a combination of factors occurred on earth when the surface had cooled down far enough to permit the existence of living beings has led to specu-

lations in which the chemo-autotrophic bacteria were considered as the most "primitive" of all known organisms. The most interesting reconstruction of an evolutionary scale among microbes is unquestionably Orla Jensen's attempt (68), based upon the consistent use of such biochemical premises. In this and similar schemes it is taken for granted that, at the time when living organisms could start inhabiting the earth, organic matter must of necessity have been lacking. Recently, however, Oparin has exposed the fallacy of this premise (69), and pointed out that the synthetic mechanisms of the known autotrophic organisms in general appear so much more complex than those of heterotrophs that, on biochemical grounds, one could make out a good case for the thesis that the most primitive of bacteria must have belonged to the latter category. The simple nutrient requirements of the chemo-autotrophs certainly do not justify the conclusion that hence their metabolism is simple!

Metabolism is governed by enzyme systems, and many of the known enzymes contain active groups which have been identified with vitamins and growth factors (51, 70). It follows that a knowledge of the vitamins required or synthesized by an organism may make it possible to draw inferences as to its metabolic activities. Although only a single investigation on the synthesis of vitamins by strictly chemo-autotrophic bacteria has been published to date, the results are of great interest in that they substantiate the supposition that there exists a close similarity in the metabolism of autotrophic and heterotrophic organisms. O'Kane (71) has established that *Thiobac thiooxidans*, grown autotrophically in a sulfur-containing medium, contains thiamin, riboflavin, nicotinic and pantothenic acids, pyridoxin, and biotin, *i e*, practically the full complement of B-vitamins whose function in the metabolism of organic compounds has either been elucidated or can be readily surmised. This fact militates strongly against considering the metabolism of these bacteria as "primitive." The ability of all known hydrogen bacteria and many other potentially autotrophic organisms to develop with a variety of organic compounds makes it very likely that in these species the conditions would not be materially different. The peculiarities in the metabolism of the nitrifying bacteria make the latter a tempting group of organisms for an extension of this type of investigation.

If, therefore, as the present trends indicate, organic compounds were present before life appeared on the earth, one can readily subscribe to Oparin's further deductions to the effect that purely chemical interactions between such substances may have resulted in the formation of a number of biocatalysts before a wholesale destruction of organic matter by living microbes became possible, and that, consequently, the earlier conditions may have been more conducive to the development of heterotrophic than of autotrophic bacteria.

On the other hand, it must be realized that the foregoing statements do not necessarily imply that the metabolism of the heterotrophic micro-organisms is the more primitive. It becomes increasingly evident that the fundamental biochemical activities which the now living organisms display are found universally distributed. This makes it impossible to infer the course of evolution from such general biochemical considerations.

REFERENCES

- (1) WINOGRADSKY, S Botan Ztg 45 480 ff, nos 31-37, 1887
- (2) WINOGRADSKY, S Zur Morphologie und Physiologie der Schwefelbakterien Leipzlg, 1888
- (3) WINOGRADSKY, S Botan Ztg 46 261 1888
- (4) WINOGRADSKY, S Die Nitrifikation In Lafar's Handb d technischen Mykologie 3 132 1904
- (5) PFEFFER W Pflanzenphysiologie 2nd ed vol I p 346, 1897
- (6) PRINGSHEIM E G Naturwiss 20 479 1932
- (7) NATHANSON A Mitt Zool Stat Neapel 15 655 1902
- (8) BELJERINCK M W Arch Sci Exactes et Natur, Haarlem, Ser 2, 9 131 1904, Centr f Bakt II 9 592 1904
- (9) BELJERINCK M W Proc Kon Akad Wetensch Amsterdam 22 899 1920
- (10) NIKLEWSKI B Bull Acad Sci Cracovie Sér Sci Mathém et Natur 1906 911 Centr f Bakt II 20 460 1903
- (11) NIKLEWSKI B Juhleumschrift für Prof Dr E Godlewski Kralau Kosmos, Lemberg 38 906 1913 Centr f Bakt II 40 430 1914
- (12) NIKITINSKY J Centr f Bakt II 19 495 1907
- (13) STEPHENSON, M AND L H STICKLAND Blochem J 25 215 1931
- (14) SCHNIGEN N L Het ontstaan en verdwynen van waterstof en methaan onder den invloed van het organische leven Diss Delft 1906
- (15) WIERINGA K T Antonio van Leeuwenhoek 6 251 1941
- (16) KEIL, F Cohn's Beitr z Biol d Pflanzen 11 335 1912
- (17) BOLTJES T J KINGMA Onderzoekingen over nitrificerende bacterien Diss Delft, 1934 Arch Mikrobiol 6 70 1935
- (18) WINOGRADSKY, S AND H WINOGRADSKY Ann Inst Pasteur 50 350 1933
- (19) STARKEY, R L J Bact 28 365 1934
- (20) STARKEY, R L Soil Sci 39 197, 1935
- (21) TRAUTWEIN K Centr f Bakt II 53 513 1921
- (22) WINOGRADSKY S Centr f Bakt II 57 1 1922 Compt Rend Acad Sci 175: 301, 1922
- (23) RIPPPEL, A Centr f Bakt II 62 200 1924
- (24) SCHOFFER, W H Ergebn d Biol 16 1 1939 espec pp 147-151
- (25) WOODS D D Blochem J 30 515 1933
- (26) BARKER H A Arch Mikrobiol 7 404, 1936
- (27) BARKER H A J Biol Chem 137 153 1941
- (28) WOOD H G AND C H WERKMAN Blochem J 30 48 1936 32 1262, 1938, 34 7, 129 1940
- (29) CARSON S F AND S RUBEN Proc Nat Acad Sci 26 422 1940
- (30) WOOD H G O H WERKMAN, A HEMINGWAY AND A O NIER J Biol Chem 135 789 1940 139 365 1941
- (31) FOSTER J W S F CARSON S RUBEN AND M D KAMEN Proc Nat Acad Sci 27 500 1941
- (32) THOMAS J O The anaerobic carbohydrate metabolism of *Tetrahymena geleii* Dissertation Stanford Univ 1943
- (33) VAN NIEL C B J O THOMAS S RUBEN AND M D KAMEN Proc Nat Acad Sci 28 157 1942
- (34) RUBEN S AND M D KAMEN Proc Nat Acad Sci 26 418 1940
- (35) EVANS E A AND L SLOTIN J Biol Chem 135 301 1940
- (36) WERKMAN C H AND H G WOOD Advances in Enzymology 2 135 1942
- (37) VAN NIEL, C B S RUBEN S F CARSON, M D KAMEN AND J W FOSTER Proc Nat Acad Sci 28 8 1942
- (38) BAAS BECKING, L G M AND G S PARKS Physiol Rev 7 85, 1927

- (39) RUHLAND, W Jahrb wiss Botan 63 321, 1924
- (40) ARNOLD, W A Investigations in photosynthesis Thesis, Harvard Univ , 1935
- (41) MANNING, W M J Physical Chem 42 815, 1938
- (42) EMERSON, R AND C M LEWIS Am J Bot 28 789, 1941
- (43) BURK, D J Phys Chem 35 432, 1931
- (44) LEE, S B AND W W UMBREIT Centr f Bakt , II, 101 354, 1940
- (45) VAN NIEL, C B Advances in Enzymology 1 263, 1941
- (46) GAFFRON, H J Gen Physiol 26 241, 1942
- (47) HES, J W Ann d Fermentations 4 547, 1938
- (48) KLUYVER, A J The chemical activities of microorganisms Univ of London Press, 1931
- (49) VAN NIEL, C B Arch f Mikrobiol 3 1, 1931
- (50) VAN NIEL, C B Cold Spring Harbor Symposia 3 138, 1935
- (51) VAN NIEL, C B In *The cell and protoplasm*, pp 106-119, Science Press, 1940
- (52) VOGLER, K G J Gen Physiol 26 103, 1942
- (53) VOGLER, K G AND W W UMBREIT J Gen Physiol 26 157, 1942
- (54) LE PAGE, G A AND W W UMBREIT J Biol Chem 147 263, 1943
- (55) KLUYVER, A J AND H J L DONKER Chem d Zelle u Gewebe 13 134, 1926
- (56) CORI, C F In *A symposium on respiratory enzymes*, pp 175-189, Univ of Wisconsin Press, 1942
- (57) HANES, C S Proc Roy Soc , London, Ser B 129 174, 1940
- (58) KALCKAR, H M Chem Rev 28 71, 1941
- (59) LIPMANN, F Advances in Enzymology 1 99, 1941
- (60) RUBEN, S J Am Chem Soc 65 279, 1943
- (61) CARSON, S F The rôle of carbon dioxide in cellular metabolism Thesis, Stanford Univ , 1941
- (62) EVANS, E A , B VENNESLAND AND L SLOTIN J Biol Chem 147 771, 1943
- (63) CATALDI, M S Revista Inst Bacteriológico (D N H) (Argentina) 9 393, 1940
- (64) CATALDI, M S Estudio fisiológico y sistemático de algunas *Chlamydo bacteriales* Dissert Buenos Aires, 96 pp , 1939
- (65) BÖMEKE, H Arch Mikrobiol 10 385, 1939
- (66) VOGLER, K G J Gen Physiol 25 617, 1942
- (67) LE PAGE, G 'A Arch Biochem 1 255, 1942
- (68) ORLA-JENSEN, S Centr f Bakt , II, 22 305, 1909
- (69) OPARIN, A I The origin of life McMillan, New York, 1938
- (70) PETERSON, W H The merging of growth factors and vitamins Biol Symposia 5 31, 1941
- (71) O'KANE, D J J Bact 41 441, 1941

INTERRELATIONS BETWEEN THYROID FUNCTION AND VITAMIN METABOLISM

VICTOR A. DRILL¹

Department of Physiology Northwestern University Medical School Chicago

During the past fifteen years considerable literature has accumulated on the interrelationships between the function of the thyroid gland and vitamin metabolism. Most of these studies are experimental, although some clinical observations have been reported. The experimental observations can be divided into two main groups: 1, the effect of a specific vitamin deficiency on the thyroid gland; 2, the effect of administration of a vitamin on animals which were given desiccated thyroid, or injected with thyroxine, or with the thyrotropic hormone of the anterior pituitary gland.

Hyperthyroidism, both experimental and clinical, has been shown to increase the requirements for certain vitamins. This increased vitamin requirement should not imply an antithyrogenic effect, although the increased requirements for certain vitamins indicate that some of the symptoms of hyperthyroidism, previously seen in animals and man, may be due to a secondary deficiency of these vitamins. The administration of these vitamins in larger amounts will correct these secondary changes, as will be pointed out in certain cases. An actual antithyrogenic effect has only been definitely shown in a few cases, although other suggestive evidence is available, which awaits confirmation and elucidation.

THYROID GLAND AND VITAMIN A. *1 Effect of deficiency of vitamin A on the thyroid gland.* McCarrison (1931) found hypertrophy of the rat thyroid to occur during vitamin A deficiency. The thyroid gland of rats and guinea pigs has also been reported to be enlarged and inactive as a result of vitamin A deficiency (Mitzkowsitch, 1934, Uotila, 1938, Schulze and Hundhausen, 1939a). However, other authors were unable to find thyroid hypertrophy during vitamin A deficiency (Drennan, Malcolm and Cox, 1931, Sampson and Korenchevsky, 1932, Sure, 1938). Sampson and Korenchevsky did, however, observe hypertrophy of the thyroid gland when the diet was deficient in both vitamin A and iodine.

Coplan and Sampson (1935) have studied this problem in the greatest detail and with adequate control observations. Their studies show the important influence of sex, time interval and diet in studying such problems. They found that iodine deficiency alone produced thyroid hypertrophy in male and female rats, which persists longer in the female, and is followed by atrophy in both sexes. Vitamin A deficiency produced a definite hypertrophy in female, but consistent atrophy in male rats. Whereas iodine deficiency and vitamin A deficiency produced hyperplasia of the epithelial cells of the thyroid gland, vitamin A deficiency also produced degeneration of the epithelial cells, which the authors

¹National Research Council Fellow, 1942-1943. Present address, Dept. of Pharmacology, College of Physicians and Surgeons, New York.

believe is a specific effect of vitamin A deficiency. A deficiency of both iodine and vitamin A produced hypertrophy in male and female rats followed by atrophy in the male. Harris and Remington (1939) observed that neither vitamin A nor carotene influenced the utilization of minimal amounts of iodine in the rat.

2 *Effect of vitamin A administration on the thyroid gland* As early as 1923 McCarrison found that the administration of cod liver oil would delay the metamorphosis of tadpoles receiving a high iodine intake, and later carotene was reported to exert a similar effect in delaying the metamorphosis of axolotls (Rokhlina, 1936). It was also found that vitamin A would depress the accelerating effect of thyroxine on the metamorphosis of tadpoles (Eufinger and Gottlieb, 1933, 1935) and of salamander larvae (Fleischmann and Kann, 1936). These results demonstrate an antagonistic relationship between vitamin A and the thyroid gland in amphibia.

Harvey (1927) found that feeding cod liver oil, which contained some iodine, to goats increased the amount of iodine in the milk more than an equivalent amount of iodine as potassium iodide. The administration of large amounts of vitamin A was reported by Sherwood, Toth and Carr (1934) to reduce the amount of colloid in the thyroid gland of rats, a similar but not as marked a result being obtained with caritol and haliver oil (Sherwood and Luckner, 1935). Uotila (1938) observed that an excess of vitamin A produced a diffuse hyperplasia of the thyroid. Collazo and Rodriguez (1933) also reported exophthalmos in rats receiving large doses of vitamin A. Schulze and Hundhausen (1939a) observed a decreased thyroid activity and decreased thyrotropic content of the anterior pituitary during hypervitaminosis A. According to Wegelin (1939) and Elmer, Giedosz and Scheps (1935) vitamin A does not materially alter the thyroid gland, although in some cases smaller follicles were observed. The addition of 1 per cent cod liver oil to the stock diet of young rats for 4 months significantly reduced the thyroid weight, when compared with rats on the stock diet alone (Freudenberger and Clausen, 1935).

Hypervitaminosis A can be produced in rats by administering 8,000 to 40,000 I U vitamin A per day (Drigalski, 1933, Drigalski and Laubmann, 1933, Moll et al., 1933). Fasold and Peters (1933) administered 1 cc of Vogan² per day to rats and produced symptoms of hypervitaminosis A which they reported could be prevented, or cured before paralysis occurred, by administering thyroxine. However, Baumann and Moore (1939) and Weslaw and Wroblewski (1939) could not confirm these results; in fact, they both found that the symptoms of hypervitaminosis A were enhanced by injections of thyroxine.

3 *Effect of vitamin A on weight loss of hyperthyroid animals* In an extensive series of studies Abeln (1930a, 1930b, Abeln, Goldener and Koborn, 1926, Abeln, Knochel, and Spichtin, 1930) showed the beneficial effects of yeast, egg yolk, cod liver oil, high protein and high fat diets on the weight of rats fed thyroid gland. These authors were interested in finding a beneficial diet for use

² Vogan, used extensively in German literature, 1 cc contains about 6 gamma of iodine, 40,000 rat units of vitamin A, vitamin D potency not stated.

during hyperthyroidism and not in the effect of any particular compound. Von Euler and Klusman (1932) found that rats injected with thyroxin lost weight less rapidly when carotene was administered each day. According to Loumos (1934) a daily dosage of 10,000 U S P units of vitamin A administered to rats receiving 100 mgm of thyroid gland per day had little effect on the loss of weight. An initial loss of weight was prevented for a few days after which time the loss of weight continued at about the same rate as control rats. Others have observed that vitamin A, administered in various forms, will affect the loss of weight of hyperthyroid animals to various degrees, either only partially or nearly completely preventing the loss of weight (Abelin, 1935, Schneider and Widmann, 1935, David, 1938, Steffan and Zois, 1938). Vitamin A in arachis oil, or arachis oil alone would prevent the toxic action of thyroxin (Fasold and Peters, 1933). These results also depend to a large degree on the dosage of thyroxin or thyroid gland employed, and the age and sex of the rats used. Rats weighing over 140 grams will rapidly lose weight when 100 mgm of thyroid gland are fed per day, whereas rats averaging 100 grams will gain weight for a while. Also, 100 mgm of thyroid gland per day will produce a more rapid loss of weight than will an injection of 100 gamma of thyroxin each day, and will thus offer a more rigorous method of testing the effect of vitamin A on weight loss. The sex differences in hyperthyroid rats can be seen from the data presented by Drill (1938b) and Logaras and Drummond (1938). The latter authors administered 10 doses of 100 gamma of thyroxin to rats over a period of 28 days. With thyroxin, and without vitamin A in the diet their male rats lost an average of 11.0 grams in weight, and with 3000 I U of vitamin A per day the hyperthyroid male rats lost an average of 8.0 grams. In the meantime normal male rats receiving 3000 I U vitamin A per day gained an average of 21.0 grams. On the other hand, female rats injected with thyroxin without vitamin A in the diet lost only an average of 1.6 grams whereas hyperthyroid female rats receiving 3000 I U vitamin A per day gained an average of 2.6 grams. Normal females receiving the same amount of vitamin A gained an average of 7.0 grams. Their other experiment with rats receiving 10 I U vitamin A per day showed a similar result. Although vitamin A may have some protective effect, under specific conditions, against the loss of weight of hyperthyroid animals, it is not as great as generally interpreted in the literature. The slight effect of vitamin A on weight reported by Logaras and Drummond was obtained by the use of small doses of thyroxin. Sure and Buchanan (1937b) showed an increased requirement for vitamin A during hyperthyroidism as judged by the appearance of xerophthalmia, but did not obtain any effect of moderate doses of vitamin A on the loss of weight of the rats.

According to Weslaw and Wroblowski (1939) rats injected with thyroxin survived longer if vitamin A (as Vogan) was administered. However, they reported an equally good effect by administering sesame oil, the solvent for the vitamin A in Vogan. Thus the effect seems non-specific due to the administration of fat. In fact, the authors state the rats receiving sesame oil were in better condition, had better growth curves and survived longer than those fed the vitamin A supplement.

Wegelin (1939) found that whereas thyroxin increased the number of mitotic figures in the liver, this increase could be prevented by vitamin A. An excess of vitamin A is also reported to reduce the protective action of thyroxin against the toxicity of acetone in the Reid-Hunt reaction in mice (Fleischmann and Kann, 1936). Greaves and Schmidt (1936) obtained evidence of an increased utilization of vitamin A in the hyperthyroid rat. In the thyroidectomized rat the requirement for vitamin A was decreased.

4 *Thyroid activity and storage of vitamin A* Euler and Klussman (1932) obtained a reduction of vitamin A and carotene in the liver when thyroxin was administered. When guinea pigs were fed a vitamin A free diet, the administration of carotene led to the storage of vitamin A and carotene in the liver, but when both carotene and thyroxin were given the liver failed to show storage of vitamin A and carotene (Abeln, 1933, Fasold and Peters, 1933). Although Schneider and Widmann (1935) found no carotene and little vitamin A in the liver of hyperthyroid rats, they obtained an increase in liver carotene in thyroidectomized guinea pigs injected with thyroxin. If this report were confirmed it might mean that in the absence of the thyroid gland, even though thyroxin was injected, carotene could not be metabolized to vitamin A. According to Schneider and Widmann (1934) the injection of thyrotropic hormone will also lower the vitamin A stores in the liver of rats and guinea pigs. Logaras and Drummond (1938) found no reduction of hepatic vitamin A in rats injected with thyroxin, although the amount of thyroxin used was small. The administration of thyroxin to scorbutic animals did not cause a reduction of hepatic vitamin A (Balassa and Szanto, 1938). Also, feeding large doses of vitamin A, Baumann and Moore (1939) did not observe any reduction of vitamin A in the liver when thyroxin was injected.

In human cases of exophthalmic goiter normal values or an increase in hepatic stores of vitamin A have been reported. Wolff (1932) observed an increase in hepatic vitamin A in this disease, the mean value for 5 cases of exophthalmic goiter being 210 I U per gram, whereas in accidental death the value was 147 I U per gram. A similar result was obtained by Moore (1937), four exophthalmic patients showing an average of 304 I U per gram of liver, the values after accidental death being 210 I U per gram.

5 *Effect of vitamin A on carbohydrate and protein metabolism in hyperthyroid animals* Abeln, Knochel and Spichtin (1930) reported that vitamins A and D would prevent the fall of muscle and liver glycogen of rats generally produced by thyroid feeding, and a similar result was obtained with carotene (Abeln, 1935). David (1938) also reported that vitamin A tended to reduce the carbohydrate changes of hyperthyroid animals to a minimum. Carotene was able to counteract the decrease of liver glycogen produced by thyrotropic hormone in guinea pigs but vitamin A did not prevent the disappearance of liver glycogen when thyroxin was administered (Schneider, 1934, Schneider and Widmann, 1934). Microscopically, Wegelin (1939) showed some effect of vitamin A on liver glycogen, whereas the liver glycogen decreased when both vitamin A and thyroxin were administered, it did not altogether disappear, as it did when thy-

roxin was administered alone. However Steffan and Zois (1938) and Fasold and Peters (1933) did not obtain any effect of vitamin A on the liver glycogen of hyperthyroid rats. It was also reported that carotene did not prevent the fall of liver glycogen of thyroidectomized guinea pigs injected with thyroxin (Schneider and Widmann, 1935).

Vitamin A has been shown to lessen the creatinuria seen during hyperthyroidism (Fischer and Oehme, 1933, 1937, De la Bernardie, 1939), and also to prevent the decrease of creatinine in heart and skeletal muscle (David, 1938), but one group of workers were unable to find any effect of vitamin A or carotene on the creatinuria (Steffan and Zois, 1938).

Török and Neufeld (1938) noted that the effect of thyroxin in lowering the serum lipase content of rabbit serum could be prevented by the simultaneous administration of large doses of vitamin A, but the effect was only temporary, for the serum lipase began to fall in a few days, even though the administration of vitamin A was continued.

6 Relation of thyroid function to carotene metabolism This part of the review is not concerned with any antithyrogenic properties of carotene or vitamin A, but with the effect of thyroid gland function on the conversion of carotene to vitamin A. Noorden (1907) first suggested the association of carotenemia with metabolic disturbances. Since then various authors (Hess and Meyers, 1919, Head and Johnson, 1921, Stoner, 1928) have noted the appearance of carotenemia in certain individuals, and were unable to reproduce this condition by over feeding of vegetables to control patients. In the meantime Kunde (1926) had noted the appearance of xerophthalmia in rabbits, on a diet that was adequate for normal rabbits, after they had been thyroidectomized for 8 to 12 months. Her result can only be interpreted now to show that in the absence of the thyroid gland a molecule of carotene was not converted into two molecules of vitamin A, with the resultant occurrence of xerophthalmia.

In 1932 Fellenberger and Grueter reported that the milk of thyroidectomized goats remained yellow, which was attributed to the presence of a lipochrome, probably carotene. A year later Fasold and Heidemann showed that thyroidectomy in goats decreased the vitamin A content of goat's milk and increased the carotene content, leading to the conclusion that the thyroid gland is necessary for the conversion of carotene to vitamin A. In the face of this evidence and the work of Kunde it seems certain that in the absence of the thyroid gland carotene is not metabolized to vitamin A, although the work of Kunde should be repeated using synthetic diets with carotene as the only source of vitamin A.

Wendt (1935a) also believes that the thyroid is necessary for the conversion of carotene to vitamin A and for the storage of vitamin A in the liver. Anderson and Soley (1938) reported 13 patients with carotenemia, 5 of which were hypothyroid, 1 hypothyroid case showed hepatic insufficiency, and three other cases showed abnormal liver function. Savy et al (1938) observed 5 cases of carotenemia with liver damage, and later (1939) one case of carotenemia with hypothyroidism. By studying the dark adaption of hypothyroid patients Wohl and Feldman (1939) also obtained evidence that the conversion of carotene to vitamin

A was disturbed Escamilla (1942) reported 7 cases and Mandelbaum et al (1942) reported 1 case of hypothyroidism associated with carotenemia. As thyroid medication was instituted the blood carotene level fell.

Since carotene is a lipochrome its metabolism might be expected to follow the metabolism of other lipochromes during disease. Although carotenemia was observed in hypothyroid patients, some functioning thyroid tissue is still left in these patients. This then raises the question as to cause of the hepatic damage seen in some of these patients. Is it due to a long standing thyroid hypofunction or the effect of an excess of carotene on the liver? Since carotenemia was also seen in patients without evidence of hypothyroidism, but with hepatic damage, it is possible that an abnormal liver function alone may be the cause of the carotenemia. These problems still await experimental elucidation.

7 Effect of vitamin A on metabolic rate during experimental hyperthyroidism. There is a good deal of evidence to show that vitamin A partially counteracts the high oxygen consumption produced by thyroid feeding. Rappai and Rosenfeld (1935) increased oxygen consumption 42.4 per cent by injecting thyroxin, whereas a rise of only 13 per cent was obtained when both vitamin A and thyroxin were administered, and an increase of 10 per cent when carotene and thyroxin were given. Sesame oil had no effect on the B. M. R. Abelin (1935) obtained a similar increase of 50 per cent in oxygen consumption by administering thyroxin and only 20 per cent rise when vitamin A and thyroxin were administered to rats. These results were confirmed on rats by Logaras and Drummond (1938) and Belasco and Murlin (1940). In an acute study on cats, the injection of thyroxin for three days increased O_2 consumption 45.7 per cent, and with carotene and thyroxin the rise was only 25.4 per cent (Smith and Perman, 1940).

The R. Q. of hyperthyroid rats was not affected by vitamin A (Rappai and Rosenfeld, 1935), nor did carotene influence the R. Q. of cats injected with thyroxin for 3 days (Smith and Perman, 1940). This suggests that vitamin A did not selectively affect the metabolism of any particular foodstuff. Belasco and Murlin (1940) also reported that the increase in liver and kidney metabolism seen in hyperthyroidism was not changed by vitamin A.

Chevalier and Baert (1934) reported that vitamin A deficiency increased the B. M. R. of rats, and that large doses of vitamin A decreased the metabolic rate below normal. However, Sherwood, Toth and Carr (1934), Belasco and Murlin (1940) and Sheets and Struck (1942) did not find any effect of vitamin A on oxygen consumption of normal rats. The latter authors also found no significant change in thyroidectomized rats fed large doses of vitamin A. Rappai and Rosenfeld (1935) found that vitamin A lowered the B. M. R. of normal rats 4 to 12 per cent.

Sheets and Struck (1942) confirmed the above reports, finding that after pre-medication with vitamin A for 50 days thyroid feeding raised the B. M. R. of rats an average of 25.5 per cent, whereas other rats receiving only thyroid showed a rise of 58 per cent. However, after the B. M. R. of these rats had risen to 58 per cent treatment with vitamin A showed a tendency to lower the level, but did not produce any significant change. Thus, while the administration of thyroid

and vitamin A together will prevent the rise in oxygen consumption to the level produced by thyroid alone, there is no experimental evidence to show that treatment with vitamin A will reduce the high B M R., once it has been produced by thyroid feeding

8 *Thyrotropic hormone of the anterior pituitary gland and vitamin A* There are reports which indicate that vitamin A will partially prevent the histological changes produced in the thyroid gland of guinea pigs by injection of thyrotropic hormone (Schneider, 1934, Fellingner and Hochstaedt, 1936, Elmer, Giedosz and Scheps, 1935) Parhon and Werner (1935) have reported that thyroxin or thyrotropic hormone reduced the blood carotene in ducks According to Schulze and Hundhausen (1939a) a lack of vitamin A leads to increased thyroid activity and increased thyrotropic potency of the pituitary gland, whereas hypervitaminosis A has the opposite effect

9 *Clinical studies on thyroid function and carotene and vitamin A metabolism* Mellanby and Mellanby reported (1921b) that patients with exophthalmic goiter receiving a diet high in cod liver oil and low in fat gained weight Although no figures were given, the B M R. was also reported to be lowered Others have also studied the effect of iodized fatty acid and vitamins A and D in the treatment of Graves' disease (Adamson and Cameron, 1928, Fraser and Cameron, 1929, Rabinowitch, 1929) Their results are complicated by the simultaneous administration of iodized fatty acids or of iodine contained in the cod liver oil

Wendt (1935a, 1935b) observed that patients with Graves' disease had practically no serum vitamin A and had low serum carotene values. The administration of vitamin A to such patients caused less of a rise in plasma vitamin A than is seen in normal persons These serum values were observed to increase after successful iodine treatment or surgery He also found a low serum vitamin A value in cretins, which showed little change when carotene was administered orally This confirms experimental work discussed above, where the thyroid gland was found to be necessary for the conversion of carotene to vitamin A. Clausen and McCoord (1938) observed two hyperthyroid patients with low plasma vitamin A and carotinoids The majority of their hypothyroid patients showed a high plasma carotene value, and in all cases the vitamin A value was low When several of the hypothyroid patients were studied, following thyroid therapy to elevate the B M R. and lower blood cholesterol, the carotene and vitamin A values tended to return to normal Wendt (1935c) also reported that large doses of vitamin A (as Vogan²) increased the weight and lowered the B M R. from 46 per cent to 20.5 per cent in three hyperthyroid patients, and two other patients showed some improvement (cf Wendt, 1936) Dietrich (1936) also found vitamin A to be beneficial in three of six hyperthyroid patients Abelin (1936) advocates the use of vitamin A in conjunction with iodine and diiodotyrosine as an aid in controlling crisis and the temporary exacerbation that may occur under such treatment

Studies on the dark adaptation of hyperthyroid patients also indicated a deficiency of vitamin A in hyperthyroid patients (Wohl and Feldman, 1939) Evidence was obtained which suggested that the administration of thyroid ex-

tract or a-dinitrophenol facilitates the utilization of vitamin A by the visual mechanism, representing an increase in the speed and extent of visual purple regeneration (Patek and Haig, 1941) Godtfredson (1941) found impaired dark adaptation and liver function in ten hyperthyroid patients. He suggests that the liver damage in hyperthyroidism disturbs vitamin A metabolism.

Fasold (1937) treated 7 girls with adolescent goiter, none showing any symptoms of hypo- or hyperthyroidism, with Vogan, administering 30 drops 3 times a day. After about one month of treatment the tumor had regressed, but recurred a few weeks after treatment was discontinued. The dose of Vogan used supplied about 3.6 gamma of iodine per day.

In 1938 Catel reported a case of hyperthyroidism in a child which was treated with vitamin A. The blood level of vitamin A was raised but the B M R and other symptoms were not affected. Jacoby and Pomp (1938) studied 14 cases of hyperthyroidism, some treated by rest and diet, and others treated by rest, diet and the administration of vitamin A as Vogan. The criteria of improvement they used were decreased B M R and pulse rate, increase in weight, and improvement of general condition, but they did not find any beneficial effects from the vitamin A supplement.

Although experimental evidence shows that vitamin A has some relation to thyroid function, the clinical results are as yet too few to draw any conclusions concerning the efficacy of this treatment, and such factors as hospitalization, diet and rest. It should also be borne in mind that plasma carotene and vitamin A will vary from the norm in diseases other than thyroid disorders (Clausen and McCoord, 1938, Moore, 1937).

Summary A deficiency of vitamin A will produce thyroid hypertrophy, although a sex difference in response is present. An excess of vitamin A seems to decrease the amount of colloid in the thyroid gland, although this result is still controversial, as is the effect of thyroxin on hypervitaminosis A. In amphibia, however, a definite antagonism between thyroxin and vitamin A has been demonstrated.

Experimental hyperthyroidism in mammals increases the requirements for vitamin A. However, the degree to which the administration of vitamin A will prevent a loss of weight in such animals is not clear, especially as some authors have observed no effect of vitamin A on weight loss and others have obtained the same effect with the vehicle in which the vitamin A is dissolved. The effect of hyperthyroidism on the liver stores of vitamin A, and the effect of vitamin A on liver glycogen during hyperthyroidism still await further clarification, although vitamin A seems to decrease the creatinuria observed in such animals.

All of the evidence to date indicates that in the absence of the thyroid gland carotene is not metabolized to vitamin A. Various authors also agree that the simultaneous administration of vitamin A with thyroxin will partially prevent a rise in the B M R, this being the first definite antithyrogenic action of vitamin A to be demonstrated. However, there is no evidence to indicate that the treatment of hyperthyroid animals with vitamin A will lower the B M R. There is some evidence to indicate that vitamin A will partially prevent the histological changes in the thyroid produced by the thyrotropic hormone.

Clinically, hyperthyroidism increases the requirement for vitamin A, also lowering serum vitamin A and serum carotene. Although the administration of vitamin A to such patients will provide for the increased requirements, any other effect of vitamin A in such patients awaits further demonstration.

THYROID GLAND AND VITAMIN B₁ *Effect of deficiency of vitamin B₁ on the thyroid gland* McCarrison (1914) first reported hyperplasia of the thyroid gland of pigeons fed a polished rice diet. Later Spence (1932, 1934) observed thyroid enlargement in rats, the diet however containing multiple deficiencies. There is also said to be a decreased amount of thyroid hormone in the thyroid gland during vitamin B deficiency (Verzar and Vasarhely, 1924) and Analsmeer (1932) suggests that beriberi is associated with dysfunction of the thyroid gland. According to Fischer (1933) a deficiency of both iodine and vitamin B₁ will produce thyroid hypertrophy. However, iodine deficiency alone will produce thyroid hypertrophy and will reduce the amount of iodine in the thyroid gland.

A recent study by Sandhurg and Holly (1933) revealed some interesting results. They fed rabbits an autoclaved diet of alfalfa hay and rolled oats and found that the thyroid increased in size and was very vascular in appearance. They then made the observation that the administration of either iodine or yeast had an effect on the Ca and P metabolism of rabbits with hyperplastic thyroids. Both the iodine and yeast caused a marked increase in Ca excretion, changing the ratio of Ca and P retention from $Ca/P = 1.0.3$ to $Ca/P = 1.216$. Presumably the effect of the yeast on the Ca and P metabolism of rabbits with hyperplastic thyroid glands was due to its vitamin B₁ content, as no effect was obtained with autoclaved yeast.

Other experiments on vitamin B deficiency have generally shown an increase in colloid, later, as the time of deficiency increased, followed by atrophy of the thyroid gland (cf. Meyer, 1937, for earlier references,—Schneider, 1938a, Hundhausen and Schultze, 1939). Suro (1938) reported an increase in thyroid weight in B₁ deficiency. No change in the size, iodine content, dry matter, or structure of the thyroid gland of rats on a vitamin B deficient diet has been observed by Carpenter and Sharpless (1937) and Harris and Remington (1939). Carpenter and Sharpless also concluded that the colloid goiter developed in rats by feeding a low iodine and a vitamin B₁ deficient diet could be prevented by feeding more iodine or vitamin B. Harris and Remington failed to confirm this observation. They found no difference between the effect of yeast or autoclaved yeast on the thyroids of rats fed a low iodine diet, and supplements of vitamin B₁ failed to prevent the picture of colloid goiter from appearing. A diminished food intake per se is reported to have no effect on the thyroid gland (Hundhausen, 1939).

Spence (1934) found no effect of a vitamin B extract on size or vascularity of the thyroid gland of rabbits fed fresh cabbage and rolled oats.

Baglioni (1940) reported that the administration of vitamin B₁ did not alter the histological appearance of the guinea pig thyroid, whereas Gledosz (1938a) has reported injections of vitamin B₁ in the guinea pig stimulate the thyroid gland.

2 *Effect of deficiency of other B vitamins on the thyroid gland* Gledosz (1938b) observed stimulation of the thyroid in guinea pigs during a deficiency of vitamin

B₂, and Sure (1938) reported that 88 per cent of the rats showed an average increase of 42.8 per cent in thyroid weight during a vitamin B₂ deficiency. Sure also found a slight increase in thyroid weight during a deficiency of vitamin B₆, and also found that 65 per cent of the rats showed a 28 per cent increase in thyroid weight on a B complex free diet. Uotila (1938) reported that a deficiency of the vitamin B complex produced thyroid atrophy, the follicles being enlarged and filled with colloid.

3 *Relation of B vitamins to calorie intake and weight during experimental hyperthyroidism* That a relationship exists between calorie intake and vitamin B₁ requirements has been demonstrated by many authors (cf. Cowgill, 1934). Himwich, Goldfarb and Cowgill (1932) first studied the relation of calorie intake to the B vitamins during hyperthyroidism. They found that normal dogs fed a yeast-free diet developed anorexia in an average of 32 days, whereas hyperthyroid dogs fed a yeast-free diet developed anorexia in an average of 17 days. These dogs started to regain their lost weight when 10 grams of a vitamin B concentrate was fed each day. Cowgill and Palmieri (1933) also found that the vitamin B requirement (as yeast) of pigeons was increased by feeding thyroid gland. This report has been amply confirmed (Capraro, 1937, Mouriquand, Morin and Czerschowska, 1939, Morin and Czerschowska, 1939).

It was then observed by Sure and Smith (1934) that a potent vitamin B concentrate protected rats receiving thyroxin from a loss of weight. With the advent of crystalline vitamin B₁ Sure and Buchanan (1937a) restudied the effectiveness of vitamin B₁ in preventing the loss of weight produced by hyperthyroidism. Their tables show that 7 rats fed diet 3080, containing 15 per cent autoclaved yeast, and receiving 0.2 mgm of thyroxin (orally or parenterally?) per day gained 64 to 108 per cent of the weight of control rats when a supplement of 30 to 300 gamma of vitamin B₁ was administered each day. Rats on the same diet fed 0.5 gram of yeast per day plus 0.2 mgm of thyroxin per day gained 52 to 132 per cent of the weight of control rats. The change in weight of untreated rats receiving the same diet and thyroxin is not stated.

Drill (1938b) studied the effect of vitamin B₁ and yeast on hyperthyroid rats that had lost weight, to determine if such treatment would enable them to regain their lost weight. When the rats had lost an average of 23 grams in weight they were injected with 500 gamma of vitamin B₁ per day. The vitamin B₁ stopped a further loss of weight, but the rats did not regain their lost weight until a rich source of the vitamin B₂ complex was administered. A sex difference in response was also observed. These results were confirmed and extended by Drill and Sherwood (1938). They reported that the effect of vitamin B₁ in stopping further loss of weight in hyperthyroid rats was due to the increased calorie intake which it produced. Although vitamin B₁ increased food intake and prevented a further loss of weight, the rats still did not regain their lost weight until a rich source of the vitamin B₂ complex was supplied. Thus in addition to vitamin B₁, some other factors in the B₂ complex are also required in larger amounts than normal. If the rats were limited to 13 grams of food per day the vitamin B₁ injections did not stop a further loss of weight. The effect of vitamin B₁ in pre-

venting a further loss of weight of hyperthyroid rats was confirmed by Peters and Rossiter (1939). It was later found that pyridoxine (vitamin B₆) and calcium pantothenate can effectively replace the B₂ complex addition to the diet of hyperthyroid rats, and the rats regained and maintained their lost weight while still receiving thyroid gland (Drill and Overman, 1942). Thus in addition to vitamin B₁, both pyridoxine and pantothenic acid are required in larger amounts during experimental hyperthyroidism.

When a small amount of yeast was fed to hyperthyroid dogs an initial increase in food intake was observed. The removal of the yeast from the diet after 4 to 9 weeks of thyroid feeding produced a sudden and marked drop in appetite to values below normal within a few days (Drill, 1941). The subcutaneous injection of 2 mgm. of vitamin B₁ restored the appetite to its previous hyperthyroid level within 24 to 48 hours. This suggests that anorexia is not a primary effect of hyperthyroidism but is a secondary symptom due to a deficiency of vitamin B₁.

Hyperthyroid dogs that lost weight, following the removal of the yeast from the diet, require increased amounts of vitamin B₁ and the vitamin B complex in order to regain their lost weight (Drill and Shaffer, 1942), confirming previous work on rats. By administering sufficient B vitamins from the start of thyroid feeding it was found possible to maintain the weight of 3 of 4 hyperthyroid dogs for as long as 112 days. The food intake of such dogs is above normal. A similar maintenance of body weight of thyroid fed rats receiving yeast concentrate was obtained over a period of 79 days (Drill, Overman and Leatham, 1943).

4 Effect of B vitamins on estrous cycle during hyperthyroidism Earlier studies have shown that thyroid feeding soon produces a constant diestrus in rats. Hyperthyroid rats receiving vitamin B₁ and yeast supplements were observed to maintain normal estrous cycles (Drill and Sherwood, 1938). In further studies it was shown that hyperthyroid rats receiving a normal but small amount of yeast each day, had only two or three estrous cycles before entering complete diestrus. Besides a loss of weight, these rats also showed a fall in pituitary and ovarian weight, ovarian sections suggesting a lack of anterior pituitary hormone. Other rats received thyroid gland and yeast concentrate for 79 days with complete maintenance of weight and estrous cycles. The weights of the pituitary and ovaries were normal, as was ovarian histology (Drill, Overman and Leatham 1943).

5 The B vitamins and liver function during experimental hyperthyroidism Youmans and Warfield (1926), using the phenoltetrachlorophthalein test, did not detect hepatic damage in hyperthyroid dogs. With the use of more sensitive tests thyroid feeding was shown to produce an increase in bromsulphalein retention (Drill and Hays, 1940) and a rise in serum phosphatase (Drill and Shaffer, 1943). Drill and Hays (1940) fed thyroid gland to 5 dogs receiving a small but normal amount of yeast. Three of the dogs developed abnormal liver functions during the period of thyroid feeding, the dye retention being further increased by removing the yeast from the diet. The other two hyperthyroid dogs still

had a normal liver function during this period, and removing the yeast from their diet produced an abnormal dye retention within 24 hours. Although the deficiency of the B vitamins seems to bear a causal relationship to the production of hepatic damage in thyroid fed dogs, it does not mean that it is the only or the most important factor. Later studies on this problem were reported (Drill and Hays, 1942), showing that once an abnormal liver function had been produced in hyperthyroid dogs, treatment with large doses of vitamin B₁ and yeast concentrate did not improve the abnormal liver function. It was also shown that a yeast-free diet renders dogs extremely susceptible to the effects of thyroid feeding, an abnormal liver function being produced in an average of 22 days (Drill, Shaffer and Overman, 1943). Thyroid fed dogs receiving a small amount of yeast each day developed an abnormal liver function in an average of 45 days. When hyperthyroid dogs were fed a high B vitamin diet it took an average of 90 days before an abnormal liver function was observed. Thus, the amount of B vitamins fed has a direct relationship to the time elapsed before an abnormal liver develops. A high B vitamin diet will delay but will not prevent the appearance of an abnormal liver function in hyperthyroid dogs.

6 *The B vitamins and pulse rate during experimental hyperthyroidism* The effects of diets deficient in vitamin B on the cardiovascular system of man and animals have been discussed by Weiss and Wilkins (1937) and Frazier and Ravdin (1938). In the dog and rat a deficiency of vitamin B₁ produces bradycardia, whereas in human beriberi bradycardia is rarely observed and tachycardia is common. Parade (1938b) reported that thyroid feeding during a deficiency of vitamin B₁ will retard the development of bradycardia and subnormal temperature. In experiments on dogs thyroid feeding produced a marked tachycardia of 150 to 160 beats per minute (Drill and Hays, 1942). The removal of the yeast from the diet of these dogs after 30 to 60 days caused a marked drop in pulse rate to values below 100 beats per minute, while still feeding thyroid gland. The injection of these dogs with vitamin B₁ raised the pulse rate to its previous hyperthyroid level within 24 to 48 hours. Thus, the action of an excess of thyroid gland in producing tachycardia in dogs depends in some manner on an adequate supply of vitamin B₁, possibly through an effect on food intake (Parade, 1937, 1938a).

Hyperthyroid dogs fed a yeast-free diet develop only a slight tachycardia which returns to normal within 10 days (Drill, Shaffer and Overman, 1943), and hyperthyroid dogs receiving a high B vitamin diet maintain a high pulse rate for only 80 to 100 days, after which time the pulse rate falls towards normal. The drop in pulse rate at this time seems to be associated with a compensatory hypertrophy of the heart.

7 *The B vitamins and liver glycogen during hyperthyroidism* Abeln and co-workers first studied the effect of foodstuffs on liver glycogen during experimental hyperthyroidism (Abeln, 1930, Abeln, Knochel and Spichtin, 1930). Among other findings, discussed elsewhere in this paper, they found that yeast would prevent the fall in liver glycogen of rats fed thyroid gland for 5 to 6 days. This observation was confirmed by Drill (1937) who studied the liver glycogen of rats

injected with small amounts of thyroxin Frazier, Brown, and Vars (1939) obtained a partial rise of liver glycogen in one of three groups of hyperthyroid rats treated with yeast and McIver and Winter (1941) obtained maintenance of liver glycogen in 4 of 6 hyperthyroid rats treated with yeast Drill, Overman and Shaffer (1942) also found that yeast concentrate would maintain the weight and liver glycogen of rats fed thyroid gland for 86 days Vitamin B₁ is also reported to diminish the creatinuria produced in rats by injecting thyroxin (De la Bernardia, 1939)

8 *Effect of hyperthyroidism on vitamin B₁ content of tissues* Rats fed 100 mgm of thyroid gland per day and 12 grams of a normal diet per day supplying 10.8 I U of vitamin B₁ per day showed a normal amount of vitamin B₁ in the spleen, a reduction in the kidney, and a marked reduction in the liver The ability of hyperthyroid rats to store vitamin B₁ was studied in a similar group of rats injected with 500 gamma of vitamin B₁ during the last nine days of the experiment When compared with control rats injected with vitamin B₁ the hyperthyroid rats showed a normal amount of vitamin B₁ in the spleen and muscle, a slightly raised content in the heart and a definite reduction in the kidney and liver The storage in the whole liver was 35.7 per cent less than the controls (Drill, 1938a) Peters and Rossiter (1939) confirmed the above report using rats injected with thyroxin and the castorulin test for vitamin B₁, and found a lowered amount of cocarboxylase in rat tissues, the greatest lowering again being observed in the liver Hyperthyroidism in the rat does not increase the rate of absorption of vitamin B₁ from the intestine (Stockholm, Althausen and Borson, 1941)

Schneider and Burger (1938) found that control patients excreted 80 to 100 gamma of vitamin B₁ in the urine per day, being between 7 and 8 gamma per cent, with a serum value of 6.4 gamma per cent. Hyperthyroid patients excreted an average of 8.4 gamma per cent of vitamin B₁ in the urine but with a daily output averaging 224.8 gamma per day Coincident with this large increase in B₁ excretion was a daily urine output averaging 2770 cc After operation the urine output sank to an average of 1100 cc with a normal value of 79.9 gamma of vitamin B₁ per day

9 *Vitamins of the B₂ complex and the thyroid gland* The effect of a deficiency of the vitamins of the B₂ complex on the thyroid gland has been discussed above In 1926 Kunde reported that thyroidectomized rabbits, receiving the same diet as normal animals, developed pellagra like lesions on the dorsum of the feet, the neck, mouth and nose, after 8 to 20 months of complete thyroidectomy It is interesting that Greene (1938) observed two patients with myxedema and pellagra that showed a similarity of gastroenteric, neurologic, and psychic symptoms and to a certain extent, similar dermatologic manifestations Drill and Overman (1942), studying the weight changes of hyperthyroid rats, did not find any evidence of an increased requirement of riboflavin, above that supplied by the daily yeast supplement The increased requirements of pyridoxine and pantothenic acid during hyperthyroidism have been reported above

10 *Thyrotropic hormone of the anterior pituitary gland and the B vitamins*

Elmer, Giedosz and Scheps (1937) did not find any antagonistic effect of vitamin B₁ on the thyroid stimulation produced in guinea pigs with the thyrotropic hormone. Similar results were obtained by Schneider (1936b). Cutting and Robson (1939) reported no effect of daily administration (length of administration?) of 40 I U of vitamin B₁ and 12 Sherman units of vitamin B₂ on the B M R of two guinea pigs injected with thyrotropic hormone. Vitamin B₁ did not prevent the death of guinea pigs or lessen the reduction of liver glycogen of guinea pigs injected with large doses of thyrotropic hormone (Schneider, 1938b). Gentzen and Moire (1938) reported that premedication with vitamin B₁ lessens the effect of thyrotropic hormone on the B M R of guinea pigs.

The thyroid gland of rats fed a B₁ deficient diet is said to respond normally to an injection of thyrotropic hormone (Schneider, 1938a), although extracts of the pituitaries of such rats, when tested on immature guinea pigs, were found to be less active than extracts from normal rats (Hundhausen and Schulze, 1939).

Elmer, Giedosz and Scheps (1938), Hoen and Oehme (1938), and Wahl (1939), showed that the administration of riboflavin (vitamin B₂) did not affect the B M R or histological picture of the thyroid of normal guinea pigs, or of guinea pigs injected with thyrotropic hormone. Wahl (1939) reported that riboflavin augmented the increase in B M R produced by thyrotropic hormone. Riboflavin deficiency does not affect the thyrotropic content of the pituitary (Schulze and Hundhausen, 1939).

11 Clinical studies on the B vitamins and thyroid activity Shimazono (1931) reported that iodine and thyroid substance have a curative effect on the paralysis produced by vitamin B deficiency, but that these substances were not tolerated by patients with beriberi until the cardiac symptoms were first treated and relieved. In studying blood iodine, Takasugi (1931) found that in beriberi there was first an increase in blood iodine and B M R both of which later dropped.

Means (1937) mentioned 3 hyperthyroid patients, studied by Lerman and Hertz, that gained weight when a high B vitamin diet was administered. In 1938 Fraser and Ravdin studied the effect of vitamin B₁ and yeast on the preoperative preparation of patients with Graves' disease. They found not only improved nutritional status, as judged by increased appetite and gain in weight, but also that "patients with severe hyperthyroidism can be adequately prepared for operation in a shorter time". The patients treated with the B vitamins also showed a larger preoperative fall in pulse rate than control patients. No influence of the supplement of B vitamins was found on the B M R or on the severity of the post-operative reaction. Frazier and Ravdin administered about 2½ times the estimated daily requirement of vitamin B₁. Experimental work indicates that the requirement for vitamin B₁ during hyperthyroidism may be larger than this (Drill and Shaffer, 1942), suggesting that larger doses of the B vitamins might be more beneficial. Scrutinio (1939) also reported that administration of 1000 I U of vitamin B₁ increased the weight and decreased the B M R of hyperthyroid patients. The author favors the use of vitamin B₁ in cases of hyperthyroidism with cardiac decompensation. Hertzler (1941) also uses vitamin B₁ in preoperative preparation of toxic patients, cardiotoxic

patients, and in thyroid crisis Jacoby and Pomp (1938) reported on 14 cases of hyperthyroidism, some were treated by rest and diet, while others received the same regimen plus the administration of vitamin A, either alone or in combination with vitamin B₁. They reported no apparent beneficial effects from the administration of vitamin A, either alone or in combination with vitamin B₁. The increased urinary excretion of vitamin B₁ in patients with Graves' disease has been discussed in section 8 of this review.

Summary As various results have been reported no definite conclusion can be stated at this time, as to the effect of a vitamin B₁ deficiency of the thyroid gland. However, the experiments of Carpenter and Sharpless, and Harris and Remington show no effect of vitamin B₁ deficiency on the thyroid gland, and in other cases the possibility of an iodine deficiency must be ruled out. Hyperthyroidism increases the requirements for vitamin B₁, vitamin B₆ and pantothenic acid. The administration of sufficient yeast concentrate to thyroid fed animals will prevent a loss of weight, or will allow hyperthyroid animals which have lost weight to regain their lost weight. The maintenance of body weight is due to the increase in food intake that occurs when the increased requirements for the B vitamins are met. Such animals will also maintain normal estrous cycles.

Experimental hyperthyroidism has been shown to produce hepatic damage, which is related in part to the amount of B vitamins supplied in the diet. Vitamin B₁ also shows a relation to the cardiovascular system in experimental hyperthyroidism, and yeast concentrate tends to maintain the liver glycogen of thyroid fed animals.

Hyperthyroidism decreases the amount of vitamin B₁ in various rat tissues, and clinically there is an increased excretion of vitamin B₁. Vitamin B₁ does not appear to antagonize the administration of the thyrotropic hormone. Clinically most authors have reported a beneficial effect of vitamin B₁ and yeast in patients with Graves' disease, although one paper reported no effect when vitamin B₁ was administered.

THYROID GLAND AND VITAMIN C 1 *Effect of a deficiency of vitamin C on the thyroid gland* In 1915 Rondoni and Montagnani observed hemorrhagic infiltration of the thyroid gland of guinea pigs on a vitamin C deficient diet. McCarrison (1920a, b) confirmed this finding and also noted an increase in thyroid weight of scorbutic guinea pigs, sometimes 2 or 3 times normal. An irregular enlargement of the thyroid was also observed by Bessenes (1923). However, Löwy (1923) did not find changes in the thyroid gland of guinea pigs during scurvy, and Meyer (1928) reported irregular changes in the thyroid of guinea pigs fed a vitamin C deficient diet for 30 days and concluded that no noteworthy changes took place.

Harris and Smith (1928) reported an increase in both the height of the follicular epithelium and number of inter follicular cells, with a decrease in amount and an increase in the vacuolation of the colloid, after chronic scurvy lasting 97 days. They also suggested a possible influence of vitamin C on iodine metabolism. Abercrombie (1935) confirmed the findings of Harris and Smith, also observing hemorrhagic infiltration to a slight extent in normal animals, more so

in *acute* scurvy of 29 days' duration, and much more marked in 126 days of *chronic* scurvy. He further found that potassium iodide or thyroid gland, administered during acute or chronic scurvy, exerted their characteristic effect on the thyroid gland, without prolonging the life of the vitamin C deficient guinea pigs, and concluded that vitamin C is not concerned in iodine metabolism. Neither Rondoni and Montagnani, Löwy, Harris and Smith, nor Abercrombie found any effect of starvation on the histology of the guinea pig thyroid.

May (1937) also found that vitamin C deficiency in the guinea pig produced a marked hyperemia, somewhat increased activity, irregular structure, and the formation of utricles and vesicles without colloid. The therapeutic or prophylactic administration of vitamin C would prevent these changes. Other reports on vitamin C deficiency in the guinea pig have also shown hyperplasia and hypersecretion of the thyroid gland, which was more marked in chronic than acute cases (Schulze and Linnemann, 1938, Uotila, 1938). Vitamin C did not prevent the hyperplasia produced by feeding fresh cabbage to rabbits (Spence, 1934).

2 *Increased requirements of vitamin C and effect of vitamin C during experimental hyperthyroidism.* Whereas the administration of 0.5 mgm. of ascorbic acid per day would prevent the loss of weight of scorbutic guinea pigs, Demole and Ippen (1935) reported that 10 to 20 mgm. per day were required when the animals were injected with 0.1 mgm. of thyroxin per day. Fischback and Terbrüggen (1937b) found that thyroxin administration to scorbutic guinea pigs increased the loss of weight, but that if large doses of ascorbic acid were given before the thyroxin the loss of weight was less. Ray (1938) also reported that the requirements of thyroid-fed rabbits for vitamin C was increased. Vitamin C deficiency and hyperthyroidism are also said to produce the same blood picture in guinea pigs (Aszodi, 1937). Brandt (1937) observed that the effect of thyroid gland on the axolotl was less when vitamin C was also given. It is also reported that vitamin C will reduce the blood iodine of normal and hyperthyroid animals (Lohr, 1936).

3 *Effect of vitamin C on carbohydrate and protein changes in hyperthyroid animals.* Fischbach and Terbrüggen (1937a) found that the effect of thyrotropin in lowering liver glycogen was inhibited by large doses of vitamin C, but that vitamin C did not prevent the fall in liver glycogen when thyroxin was administered. Large doses of ascorbic acid were also reported to prevent a loss of muscle glycogen and partially prevent a fall of liver glycogen produced by thyroxin (Steffan and Zois, 1938), and would prevent or suppress the loss of muscle glycogen produced in guinea pigs by injecting thyrotropic hormone.

The creatinuria observed during hyperthyroidism has been found to be reduced by the administration of vitamin C (Fischer and Oehme, 1937, v. Plehwe, 1938, Steffan and Zois, 1938, De la Bernardia, 1939). Similar results have also been reported after the administration of thyrotropic hormone (Steffan and Zois, 1938).

Vitamin C will not prevent the fall in serum lipase induced in rabbits by thyroxin (Török and Neufeld, 1938).

4 *Thyroid activity and tissue vitamin C* Many authors have reported a decrease of vitamin C in the adrenal during hyperthyroidism (Demole and Ippen, 1935, Mosonyi, 1935, Plaut and Bülow, 1935, Nespor, 1936, Farmer and Fribourg, 1942) Farmer and Fribourg believe that the effect of thyroid feeding in increasing the anaphylactic response of guinea pigs is due to the reduction of adrenal vitamin C, which in turn lowers the cortin content of the adrenal. This hypothesis, however, requires further testing as to the therapeutic administration of vitamin C in preventing the changes reported. Contrary to all of the above reports Paal and Brecht (1937) reported that the administration of thyroxin and thyrotropic hormone to guinea pigs increased the amount of vitamin C in the adrenal, and Ray (1938) observed no decrease in vitamin C in adrenals of thyroid fed rabbits. Mosonyi (1936) found that the loss of vitamin C in the liver and adrenals of guinea pigs after thyroxin could be prevented by vitamin A. In dogs, hyperthyroidism also reduced the vitamin C content of the liver and adrenals, whereas thyroidectomy produced the opposite results (Thaddeus and Runne, 1938). Sure and Theis (1939) observed that the reduction of vitamin C in various rat tissues produced by thyroxin was accentuated when a supplement of vitamin B₁ was not administered.

5 *Effect of vitamin C on metabolic rate during experimental hyperthyroidism* Demole and Ippen (1935) and Oehme (1936) found that vitamin C would partially reduce the high B. M. R. seen in hyperthyroidism. This was confirmed by Belasco and Murlin (1940), who also reported that the increased metabolism of liver and kidney during hyperthyroidism was not influenced by vitamin C.

6 *Thyrotropic hormone of the anterior pituitary gland and vitamin C* The administration of ascorbic acid is said to produce changes in the thyroid gland similar to that induced by thyrotropic hormone (Heyl, 1934). Schulze and Linnemann (1938) did not find an increase of thyrotropic hormone in the pituitary gland during vitamin C deficiency.

There is some evidence that vitamin C will partially inhibit the action of the thyrotropic hormone in the thyroid gland (Marino, Baumann and Rosen, 1934, Elmer, Giedosz and Scheps, 1935, Schulze and Linnemann, 1938). Other authors, however, did not obtain any effect of large doses of vitamin C on the thyroid hyperplasia produced by thyrotropic hormone (Spence and Scowen, 1935, Schäffer, 1936, Schöber, 1939). Fischback and Terhüggen (1937a) reported that 20 mgm. of vitamin C per day did not prevent thyroid hypertrophy or loss of weight in animals injected with thyrotropic hormone. Also, the effect of thyrotropic hormone on tadpole metamorphosis was not lessened by vitamin C (Schäffer, 1936).

7 *Clinical studies on vitamin C and hyperthyroidism* According to Löhr (1936) vitamin C will reduce the blood iodine in normal and hyperthyroid patients. He reports clinical improvement in Graves' disease, but often without the B. M. R. being altered. In 1938 Eitel observed a latent vitamin C deficiency in patients with hyperthyroidism. He concluded that the administration of vitamin C to hyperthyroid patients had a symptomatic effect but not a direct action on thyroid activity. At the same time Thaddeus and Runne (1938) showed

that hyperthyroid patients had a subnormal excretion of vitamin C after a test dose was administered, while two patients with myxedema excreted large quantities of vitamin C. This was confirmed by Lewis (1938) who found that the vitamin C excretion of 5 hyperthyroid patients receiving a constant diet was below normal, but rose to normal in 4 of the 5 cases after thyroidectomy.

Summary Vitamin C deficiency produces hemorrhagic infiltration and hyperplasia of the thyroid gland of scorbutic guinea pigs, the effect being more marked in chronic than acute scurvy. Experimental hyperthyroidism increases the requirements for vitamin C. The effect of vitamin C on the liver glycogen of hyperthyroid animals is not definite, but vitamin C will reduce the creatinuria found in hyperthyroid animals. Hyperthyroidism will also reduce the amount of tissue vitamin C. Vitamin C will partially reduce the B M R of hyperthyroid animals, but its effect on thyroid stimulation produced by the thyrotropic hormone is still controversial. Clinical studies have also shown an increased requirement for vitamin C in hyperthyroidism.

THYROID GLAND AND VITAMIN D 1 *Effect of vitamin D deficiency on the thyroid gland* In early studies on rickets thyroid hypertrophy and hyperplasia was observed (Mellanby and Mellanby, 1921a, Murray, 1923). Rats maintained on the Steenbock rachitogenic diet also show thyroid hypertrophy and hyperplasia, but the changes produced developed in the presence or absence of vitamin D (Clausen, 1928, Krause and Monroe, 1930, Thompson, 1932, Levine, Remington and v Kolnitz, 1933). The latter authors definitely showed that the changes produced in the thyroid by Steenbock's rachitogenic diet were due to a deficiency of iodine. The administration of cod liver oil to such rats may supply the daily requirement of iodine. In a later report Remington and Levine (1936) found no effect of the presence or absence of vitamin D on the degree of goiter produced in rats. Drennan, Malcolm and Cox (1931) and Sure (1938) did not observe any effect of vitamin D deficiency on thyroid size. Changes in the thyroid gland reported by other authors (Nitschke, 1933, Bennholdt-Thompson and Wellman, 1934, Uotila, 1938) can be regarded as due to imbalanced diet. Similarly, the decrease of iodine in the thyroid gland during vitamin D deficiency is due to a low intake of iodine (Krause and Monroe, 1930, Levine, Remington and v Kolnitz, 1933).

Although human rickets is said to reduce blood iodine (Nitschke and Doering, 1933, Nitschke, 1934) this observation has not been confirmed (Fasold, 1934a, b, Toepfer, 1934a, b). According to Kunde and Williams (1926) rabbits thyroidectomized soon after birth developed changes in the bones resembling rickets.

2 *Effect of vitamin D administration on the thyroid gland* Large doses of irradiated ergosterol were found to increase the B M R (Reed, Thacker, Dillman and Welch, 1933, Nitschke, 1933, Reed, 1934). Elmer, Geidosz and Scheps (1935) did not observe any effect of vitamin D on the thyroid of guinea pigs. However, Lands and Stoland (1935) observed that while non toxic amounts of irradiated ergosterol had no effect on the thyroid of cats, larger doses increased the amount of colloid. Similar results were obtained by Nitzesco and Bratiano (1936), Bruman and Bromberg (1936), Kucera and Soos (1933) and Goormagh-

tigh and Handovsky (1935) Handovsky and Goormaghtigh (1937) reported that 40 to 60 gamma of vitamin D₂ will produce some increase in thyroid function in dogs, and that with 110 to 230 gamma per day the thyroid was histologically hyperplastic. Thyroparathyroidectomized dogs tolerated 600 gamma per day very well, whereas thyroidectomized dogs tolerated this dose very badly with severe damage to the aorta and large arteries. They concluded that the action of the thyroid tends to protect the aorta and large arteries, while the action of the parathyroid gland intensifies the injurious action of excessive vitamin D.

As parathyroid extract did not increase the B. M. R. of dogs, Steck, Reed and Miller (1934) decided that vitamin D did not produce its effect by this means. Later Deutsch, Reed and Struck (1936) administered vitamin D to 2 thyroparathyroidectomized dogs and did not obtain any increase in metabolic rate as they had in normal dogs. Thus the effect of large doses of vitamin D on the metabolic rate depends on an intact thyroid gland. Unpublished results have shown that the calorogenic effect of vitamin D is mediated through the thyrotropic hormone of the anterior pituitary gland (cf. Reed, Struck and Steck, 1939).

Vitamin D has also been reported to stimulate the oxygen consumption of frog muscle (Gelfan, 1935). Elmer Giedosz and Scheps (1935) found no effect of vitamin D on thyrotropic stimulation of the thyroid gland, and vitamin D did not produce involution of the thyroid of rabbits fed a cabbage diet (Spencer, 1934).

3 Experimental hyperthyroidism and vitamin D It has been shown that the calcium balance during hyperthyroidism may become negative due to a large increase in fecal calcium. The administration of vitamin D to normal animals will decrease fecal calcium and simultaneously increase urinary calcium excretion, suggesting that the effect of vitamin D on calcium metabolism during hyperthyroidism should be studied. Thus Taylor and Weld (1932) reported that vitamin D decreased the fecal calcium output of hyperthyroid dogs and Pugsley and Anderson (1934a) obtained similar results on rats although a positive calcium balance was not produced. It was then demonstrated that, with the proper dosage, vitamin D would produce a calcium balance in thyroid fed rats (Pugsley and Anderson, 1934b).

4 Clinical studies on vitamin D and hyperthyroidism Tibbets, McLean and Aub (1932) found no effect of vitamin D on calcium metabolism during hyperthyroidism, whereas Hansman and Wilson (1934) reported a beneficial effect of vitamin D on calcium balance.

Summary A deficiency of vitamin D has no effect upon the thyroid gland. The administration of vitamin D to normal animals increases the B. M. R., probably through its effect on the thyroid gland. When given in experimental hyperthyroidism, vitamin D will counteract the increased calcium excretion, returning the calcium balance to normal. Further work is needed before the effect of vitamin D on calcium balance in Graves' disease can be ascertained.

THYROID GLAND AND VITAMIN E 1 *Effect of vitamin E deficiency on the*

thyroid gland The reports of Paal and Kleine (1933), Singer (1936), Barrie (1937) and Bromskov and Schneider (1939) indicate that vitamin E deficiency in rats produces a picture of decreased thyroid activity. However Telford, Emerson and Evans (1938) did not find any evidence of thyroid hypoplasia in vitamin E deficient female rats, and Biddulph and Meyer (1941, 1942) reported an increase in thyroid activity during vitamin E deficiency. The latter authors found that vitamin E deficiency increased the thyroid weight and B M R of male rats, producing no change in female rats. They also found that the E deficient animals were receiving only about one-fourth as much iodine as control rats on a stock diet. By the addition of iodine to the diet of E deficient males they were able to prevent the changes in the thyroid and the increase in B M R from occurring. They conclude that the effect of vitamin E deficiency in increasing thyroid weight and the B M R is due to a relative deficiency of iodine.

Bromskov and Schneider (1939) noted that the thyroid of vitamin E deficient rats resembled that of ovariectomized animals, and that the administration of follicular hormone restored the thyroid function of vitamin E deficient rats. Vitamin E would also restore the thyroid of the deficient animals to normal, but had no effect on the thyroid of deficient animals that were ovariectomized. They believe, therefore, that the effect of vitamin E on the thyroid is mediated through the ovary.

The administration of vitamin E had no effect on the thyroid of normal rats (Bromskov and Schneider, 1939) or guinea pigs (Giedosz, 1938c), although Paal and Kleine (1933) reported stimulation.

2 *Thyrotropic hormone and vitamin E* Bromskov and Schneider (1939) reported that the administration of thyrotropic hormone would restore the thyroid of their vitamin E deficient animals to normal. They also found no reduction in the thyrotropic content of the pituitary of E deficient animals, and no change in the antithyrotropic function of the blood of such rats.

Summary Further experiments are necessary to ascertain if the changes reported to occur in the thyroid gland during vitamin E deficiency are a result of this deficiency or are due to other dietary factors.

GENERAL SUMMARY

Certain general statements on the interrelations between thyroid function and vitamin metabolism may be made. While some vitamin deficiencies will affect the thyroid gland, a number of the reports emphasize the necessity of controlling such factors as the length of time a deficient diet is fed, the influence of sex difference and whether or not the deficiency is acute or chronic. Each of these variables will influence the results obtained. Also, if a given vitamin deficiency will produce a picture of thyroid hypo- or hyperfunction, it does not follow that overdoses of the same vitamin will produce the opposite effect. Further work is also needed to ascertain the relation of the pituitary gland to the changes produced in the thyroid gland by a vitamin deficiency or the administration of a vitamin.

It has been demonstrated that the requirements for vitamins A, B and C are

increased during hyperthyroidism, and if these increased requirements are not met a relative deficiency of the vitamins will ensue. Such a vitamin deficiency may produce changes previously ascribed to an effect of hyperthyroidism per se. Whereas the administration of the necessary vitamins will correct these changes, it should not imply an antithyrogenic action, unless such an effect is demonstrated by further experiments. Conversely, if a vitamin will antagonize certain effects of thyroid feeding, it does not follow that a deficiency of the vitamin alone will increase thyroid activity. In studying vitamin metabolism during experimental hyperthyroidism there is also a sex difference in response, at least in the rat, and a difference in the degree of hyperthyroidism produced by the commonly used doses of thyroxin or thyroid gland. Also, growing rats may gain weight for a considerable period on the same dose of thyroxin or thyroid gland that will produce a progressive loss of weight in adult rats. These factors are of importance in studying the effect of a given vitamin on hyperthyroid animals.

REFERENCES

- AALMEER, W. C. *Klin Wchnschr* 11 2111 1932
- ABELIN, I. *Biochem Ztschr* 228: 165 1930a
Biochem Ztschr 228 211, 1930b
Ztschr f physiol Chem 217: 109 1933
Ztschr f Vitaminforsch 4 120 1935
Schweiz med Wchnschr 68 1108, 1936
- ABELIN, I., E. GOLDENER AND B. KOBORI. *Biochem Ztschr* 174 232, 1926
- ABELIN, I., M. KNOCHEL AND W. SPICHTIN. *Biochem Ztschr* 228 189 1930
- ABERCHROMBIE, W. F. *Am J Path* 11 469 1935
- ADAMSON, G. L. AND A. T. CAMERON. *Canad M A J* 19 420 1928
- ANDERSON, H. H. AND M. H. SOLEY. *Am J Med Sci* 195 313 1938
- ASZODI, Z. *Klin Wchnschr* 16 716 1937
- BAGLIONI, T. *Boll Soc ital biol sper* 15 322 1940
- BALASSA, G. AND G. SEANTO. *Ztschr f Vitaminforsch* 8 233 1938
- BARRIE, M. M. O. *Nature* 139 286 1937
Lancet 2 251 1937
- BAUMANN, C. A. AND T. MOORE. *Biochem J* 33 1639 1939
- BELASCO, I. J. AND J. R. MURLIN. *J Nutrition* 20 577 1940
- BENNHOLDT THOMPSON, C. AND M. WELLMAN. *Klin Wchnschr* 13: 800 1934
- DE LA BERNARDIE, A. M. *Compt rend soc Biol* 208 1170 1939
- BESSESEN, D. H. *Am J Physiol* 63 245 1923
- BIDDULPH, C. AND R. K. MEYER. *Am J Physiol* 132 250 1941
- BIDDULPH, C. AND R. K. MEYER. *Endocrinol* 30: 551 1942
- BRANDT, W. *Ztschr ges exper Med* 100 205 1937
- BROMSKOV, C. AND E. SCHNEIDER. *Arch exper Path u Pharmacol* 191 715, 1939
- BRUMAN, F. AND A. BROMBERG. *Ztschr f d ges exper Med* 97 220 1936
- CAPRARO, V. *Atti accad Lincei, Class sci fis* 26 50 1937
- CARPENTER, M. D. AND G. R. SHARPLESS. *J Nutrition* 13 235 1937
- CATEL, W. *Klin Wchnschr* 17 574 1938
- CHEVALIER, A. AND H. BAERT. *Compt. rend soc Biol* 116 1037 1934
- CLAUSEN, E. M. L. *Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med* 26 77 1928
- CLAUSEN, S. W. AND A. B. MCCOORD. *J Pediat* 13 635 1938
- COLLAZO, J. A. AND J. S. RODRIGUEZ. *Klin Wchnschr* 12 1732 1933
- COPLAN, H. M. AND M. M. SAMPSON. *J Nutrition* 9 469 1935
- COWOILL, G. R. *The vitamin B requirement of man*. Yale Univ Press, New Haven 1934

- COWGILL, G R AND M L PALMIERI *Am J Physiol* 105 146, 1933
- CUTTING, W C AND G B ROBSON *J Pharmacol and Exper Therap* 66 389, 1939
- DAVID, C *Ztschr ges exper Med* 104 397, 1938
- DEMOLE, V AND F IPPEN *Ztschr f Physiol Chem* 235 226, 1935
- DEUTSCH, H, C I REED AND H C STRUCK *Am J Physiol* 117 1, 1936
- DIETRICH, H E *München med Wchnschr* 83 313, 1936
- DRENNAN, A M, J MALCOLM AND G A COX *Brit J Exper Path* 12 430, 1931
- DRIGALSKI, W *Klin Wchnschr* 12 308, 1933
- DRIGALSKI, W AND W LAUBMANN *Klin Wchnschr* 12 1171, 1933
- DRILL, V A *J Nutrition* 14 355, 1937
Am J Physiol 122 486, 1938a
Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 39 313, 1938b
Am J Physiol 132 629, 1941
- DRILL, V A AND H W HAYS *Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med* 43 450, 1940
Am J Physiol 136 762, 1942
- DRILL, V A AND R OVERMAN *Am J Physiol* 135 474, 1942
- DPILL, V A, R OVERMAN AND J H LEATHEM *Endocrinol*, 32 327, 1943
- DRILL, V A, R OVERMAN AND C B SHAFFER *Endocrinol* 31 245, 1942
- DRILL, V A AND C B SHAFFER *Endocrinol* 31 567, 1942
Gastroenterol 1 308, 1943
- DRILL, V A, C B SHAFFER AND R OVERMAN *Am J Physiol* 138 370, 1943
- DRILL, V A AND C R SHERWOOD *Am J Physiol* 124 683, 1938
- EITEL, H *Ztschr Vitaminforsch* 7 45, 1938
- ELMER, A W, B GIEDOSZ AND M SCHEPS *Compt rend soc de Biol* 120 560, 1935
Compt rend soc de Biol 126 1037, 1937
Compt rend soc de Biol 129 343, 1938
- ESCAMILLA, R F *J Clin Endocrinol* 2 33, 1942
- EUFINGER, H AND J GOTTLIEB *Klin Wchnschr* 12 1397, 1933
Monatschr Geburtsh u Gynec 98 257, 1935
- v EULER, H AND E R KLUSMANN *Ztschr f Physiol Chem* 213 21, 1932
- FARMER, L AND R FRIBOURG *Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med* 50 208, 1942
- FASOLD, H *Ztschr f Kinderheilk* 56 408, 1934a
Ztschr f Kinderheilk 56 695, 1934b
Klin Wchnschr 16 90, 1937
- FASOLD, H AND E R HEIDEMANN *Ztschr f d ges exper Med* 92 53, 1933
- FASOLD, H AND H PETERS *Ztschr f d ges exper Med* 92 57, 1933
- v FELLENERGER, T AND F GREUTER *Biochem Ztschr* 253 42, 1932
- FELLINGER, K AND O HOCHSTAEDT *Wien klin Wchnschr* 49 1339, 1936
- FISCHBACH, H AND A TERBRÜGGEN *Klin Wchnschr* 16 1125, 1937a
Arch f path Anat 301 186, 1937b
- FISCHER, G *Schweiz med Wchnschr* 30 749, 1933
- FISCHER, G AND C OEHME *Klin Wchnschr* 12 1397, 1933
Klin Wchnschr 16 1453, 1937
- FLEISCHMANN, W AND S KANN *Wien Klin Wchnschr* 47 1488, 1936
- FRASER, R H AND A T CAMERON *Canad M A J* 21 153, 1929
- FRAZIER, W D, R B BROWN AND H M VARS *Trans Am Assn Study of Goiter*, p 247, 1939
- FRASIER, W D AND I S RAVDIN *Surgery* 4 680, 1938
- FREUDENBERGER, C B AND F W CLAUSEN *J Nutrition* 10 549, 1935
- GELFAN, S *Am J Physiol* 113 464, 1935
- GENTZEN, G AND T MOIR *Klin Wchnschr* 17 1243, 1938
- GIEDOSZ, B *Compt rend Soc Biol* 129 333, 1938a
Compt rend Soc Biol 129 335, 1938b
Compt rend Soc Biol 129 342, 1938c

- GODTFREDSON, E Nord Med 10 1785, 1941
- GOORMAUGHTIGH, N AND H HANDOVERSKY Compt rend soc Biol 118 1616, 1935
- GREENE, J A. Am. J Med Sci 195 618, 1933
- GREEVES, J D AND C L A SCHMIDT Am J Physiol 116 456 1936
- HANDOVERSKY, H AND N GOORMAUGHTIGH Arch Internat Pharmacodyn 56: 376 1937
- HANSMAN, F S AND F H WILSON Med J Australia 1 37 1934
- HARRIS, P L AND R. E REMINGTON J Biol Chem Proc 128 xl 1939
- J Nutrition 17 31 1939
- HARRIS, K D AND E A SMITH Am J Physiol 84 599, 1928
- HARVEY D Blochem J 21 1268 1927
- HEAD G D AND R. A JOHNSON Arch Int Med 28 268 1921
- HESS, A. F AND V C MEYERS J A M A 73 1743 1919
- HERTZLER, A E Diseases of the thyroid gland Paul B Hoeber New York 1941
- HEYL J G Acta. brev Neerland 4 12 1934
- HIMWICH, H. E W GOLDFARB AND G R. COWHILL Am J Physiol 89 689, 1932
- HOEN, E AND O OEHME Klin. Wchnschr 17 452 1938
- HUNDHAUSEN G Arch. Exper Path und Pharmakol 192 634 1939
- HUNDHAUSEN, G AND E SCHULZE Arch Exper Path und Pharmakol 191 570 1939
- JACOB, J AND H. POMP Klin. Wchnschr 17 873, 1938
- KRAUSE, W E. AND C F MONROE J Biol Chem 89 581 1930
- KUCERA, C AND M BOOS Compt rend Soc Biol 113 619, 1933
- KUNDE, M M Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 23 812 1926
- KUNDE M. M. AND L WILLIAMS Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med. 23 812 1926
- LANDS, H M. AND O O STOLAND Endocrinol 19 701 1935
- LEVINE, H R. E REMINGTON AND H v HOLNITZ J Nutrition 6 325 1933
- LEWIS, R A Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp 63: 31, 1933
- LOGANAS G AND J C DRUMMOND Blochem J 32 964 1933
- LOHN, H Arch f exper Path u. Parmakol 180 344 1938
- LOUMOS, S Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 31 895 1934
- LÖWY E Ztschr f d ges exper Med 38 407 1923
- MANDELBAUM T S CANDEL AND S MILLMAN J Clin Endocrinol 2 465 1942
- MARINE D, E J BAUMANN AND S H ROSEN Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 31 870 1934
- MAY M. M Ztschr f Vitaminforsch 6 239 1937
- MCCARRISON R Ind. J Med Res 2 869, 1914
- Brit Med J 2 236, 1920a.
- Ind J Med Res 7 633, 1920b
- Ind J Med. Res 11 1 1923
- Brit Med J 1: 889, 1931
- McIVER, M. A. AND E A WINTER J Clin Investigation 21: 191 1942
- MEANS J H The thyroid and its diseases p 378 J B Lippincott Co, 1937
- MELLANBY E AND M MELLANBY J Physiol 55 vii, 1921a
- J Physiol 55 x, 1921b
- MEYER, A W Stanford Univ Publ, Univ Series, Med Sc 2 173 1928
- MEYER, A Klin. Wchnschr 16 1893, 1937
- MITCHELWITSCH M S Arch exper Path. und Pharmakol 174 339 1934
- MOLL, T, O DALMER, P v DOBENICK, G DOMAGK AND F LAQUER Arch f exper Path und Pharmakol 170 176, 1933
- MOORE T Blochem J 31 185, 1937
- MORIN G AND R. CZERSCHOWSKA Compt rend soc Biol 131 1070 1939
- MOSONTI J Ztschr f physiol Chem 237: 173, 1935
- MOURIQUAND, G, G MORIN AND R. CZERSCHOWSKA. Compt. rend Soc Biol 131 1070 1939
- MURRAY, I. Brit. J Exper Path 4: 335, 1923

- NESPOR, E Compt rend soc Biol 122 427, 1936
 NITSCHKE, A Klin Wehnschr 12 1793, 1933
 Ztschr f Kinderheilk 56 690, 1934
 NITSCHKE, A AND H DOERING Klin Wehnschr 12 1910, 1933
 NITZESCO, I I AND S BRATIANO Compt rend soc Biol 121 1533, 1936
 v NOORDEN, C Die Suckerblaubleit 4th ed, Berlin, 1907
 OEHME, C Klin Wehnschr 15 512, 1936
 PAAL, H AND H O KLEINE Beitr z all Path 91 322, 1933
 PAAL, H AND K BRECHT Klin Wehnschr 16 261, 1937
 PARADE, G W Z Vitaminforsch 6 327, 1937
 Z Vitaminforsch 7 35, 1938a
 Z Vitaminforsch 7 40, 1938b
 PARHON, C I AND G WERNER Compt rend soc Biol 118 1659, 1935
 PATEK, A J AND C HAIG Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 46 180, 1941
 PETERS, R. A AND R J ROSSITER Biochem J 33 1140, 1939
 PLAUT, F AND M BULOW Klin Wehnschr 14 1318, 1935
 v PLEHWE, H J Deutsch Arch Klin Med 182 145, 1938
 PUGSLEY, L I AND E ANDERSON Biochem J 28 754, 1934a
 Biochem J 28 1313, 1934b
 RABINOWITCH, I M Canad M A J 21 156, 1929
 RAPPAI, S AND P ROSENFELD Pfüger's Arch 236 464, 1935
 RAY, S N J Ind Chem Soc 15 237, 1938
 REED, C I Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 32 274, 1934
 REED, C I, H C STRUCK AND I E STECK Vitamin D p 145, Chicago University Press 1939
 REED, C I, E A TRACKER, L M DILLMAN AND J W WELCH J Nutrition 6 35 1933
 REMINGTON, R E AND H LEVINE J Nutrition 11 343, 1936
 ROKHLINA, M L Bull biol med exp U R S S 2 219, 1936
 RONDONI, P AND M MONTAGNANI Sperimentale Arch di biol 69 659, 1915
 SAMPSON, M M AND V KORENCHESKY Biochem J 26 1322, 1932
 SANDBERG, M AND O M HOLLY J Biol Chem 99 547, 1933
 SAYV, P, M JEUNE AND J LEDRU J de med de Lyon 20 257, 1939
 SAYV, P, A VACHON AND D VINCENT J de med de Lyon 19 245, 1938
 SCHÄFFER, A Klin Wehnschr 15 406, 1936
 SCHNEIDER, E Deutsch Ztschr f Chir 242 189, 1934
 Klin Wehnschr 17 542, 1938a
 Deutsch Ztschr f Chir 250 167, 1938b
 SCHNEIDER, E AND A BURGER Klin Wehnschr 17 905, 1938
 SCHNEIDER, E AND E WIDMANN Klin Wehnschr 14 1786, 1935
 Klin Wehnschr 13 1497, 1934
 SCHÜBER, M Endokrinol 22 24, 1939
 SCHULZE, E AND G HUNDHAUSEN Arch exper Path und Pharmakol 192 43, 1939a
 Arch exper Path und Pharmakol 192 664, 1939b
 SCHULZE, E AND H LINNEMANN Arch exper Path und Pharmakol 189 448, 1938
 SCRUTINIO, L Boll Soc ital Biol sperim 14 563, 1939
 SHEETS, R F, JR AND H C STRUCK Science 96 408, 1942
 SHERWOOD, T C AND W G LUCKNER J Nutrition 9 123, 1935
 SHERWOOD, T C, L A TOTH AND K D KARR Endocrinology 18 254, 1934
 SHIMAZONO, J Ergebn d inn Med u Kinderheilk 39 1, 1931
 SINGER, E J Physiol 87 287, 1936
 SMITH, D C AND J M PERMAN Endocrinology 27 110, 1940
 SPENCE, A W Brit J Exper Path 13 157, 1932
 St Bartholomew Hosp Rept 67 201, 1934

- SPEER, A. W AND E F SCOWEN Biochem J 29 562, 1935
- STECK, I E, C I REED AND D S MILLER Am. J Physiol. 110 1 1934
- STEFFAN F AND T ZOIS Arch exper Path und Pharmacol 189 75 1938
- STOCKHOLM M, T L ALTHAUSEN AND H J BORSON Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 46 387, 1941
- STONE, W C Am J Med Sc, 175 31, 1928
- SURE, B Endocrinology 23 575, 1938
- SURE, B AND K. S BUCHANAN J Nutrition 13 513, 1937a
J Nutrition 13 521, 1937b
- SURE, B AND M. E SMITH J Nutrition 7 547 1934
- SURE, B AND R M THEIS Endocrinology 24 672 1939
- TAKASUGI, T Jap J Med Sci, Sect. VIII 2 26 (Proc) 1931
- TAYLOR, N B AND C B WELD Brit J Exper Path 13: 109 1932
- TELFORD I. R. G A EMERSON AND H M EVANS Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med. 38 623, 1938
- THADDEA S AND H J RUNNE Ztschr ges exper Med 103 283, 1938
- THOMPSON, J J Nutrition 6 359, 1932
- TIBBETS, D M, R McLEAN AND J C AUB J Clin Investigation 11: 1278 1932
- TOEPFER, D Ztschr f Kinderheilk 56 405 1934a
Ztschr f Kinderheilk. 56 693, 1934b
- TÖRÖK G AND L NEUFELD Ztschr ges exper Med 103: 69 1938
- UENO, J Jap J Obstet and Gynec 17 267, 1934
- UOTILA U Virchow's Arch. 301: 535 1938
- VERIAR, F AND B VASARHELYI Pflüger's Arch 206 575 1924
- WAHL, H. Klin Wchnschr 16 1363 1939
- WEGELIN, C West J Surg Obstet and Gynec 47 147, 1939
- WEISS S AND R. W WILKINS Ann Int Med 11 104, 1937
- WENDT H Klin. Wchnschr 14 9, 1935a
München. med Wchnschr 82 1160 1935b
München med Wchnschr 82: 1670 1935c
München med. Wchnschr 83: 808 1939
- WESLAW, W AND B WROBLEWSKI Ztschr ges exper Med 105 497 1939
- WOHL, M G AND J B FELDMAN Endocrinology 24 339 1939
- WOLFF, L K Lancet 2 617 1932
- YOUNANS, J B AND L. M WARFIELD Arch. Int Med 37: 1 1926

